This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

**Usage guidelines**

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

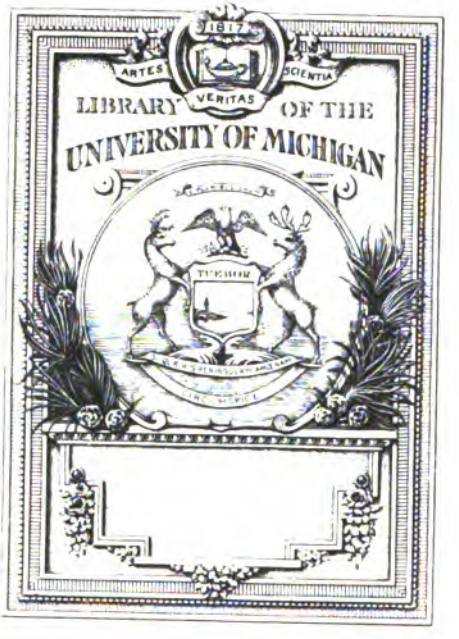
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

**About Google Book Search**

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`




Digitized by Google

822
M3
1901

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

822.8
M35e
1901

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

822.8
M35c
1901

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

# MARLOWE'S FAUSTUS

# GREENE'S FRIAR BACON & FRIAR BUNGAY

*A. W. WARD*

Digitized by Google

HENRY FROWDE, M.A.
PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD
LONDON, EDINBURGH
NEW YORK AND TORONTO

Digitized by Google

# MARLOWE

## *TRAGICAL HISTORY OF DR. FAUSTUS*

# GREENE

## *HONOURABLE HISTORY OF FRIAR BACON AND FRIAR BUNGAY*

EDITED BY

ADOLPHUS WILLIAM WARD, LITT.D.

MASTER OF PETERHOUSE, CAMBRIDGE
LATE PRINCIPAL OF THE OWENS COLLEGE, MANCHESTER

FOURTH EDITION
REVISED AND ENLARGED

OXFORD
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS
1901

Digitized by Google

OXFORD
PRINTED AT THE CLARENDON PRESS
BY HORACE HART, M.A.
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

Digitized by Google

TO MY OLD FRIEND AND COLLEAGUE

PROFESSOR

THOMAS NORTHCOTE TOLLER, M.A.

ETC., ETC., ETC.

WHOSE GENEROUS SCHOLARSHIP WAS OF MUCH ADVANTAGE

TO THE FIRST EDITION OF THIS LITTLE BOOK

I DEDICATE THE FINAL EDITION

PREPARED AT A DISTANCE FROM THE SCENES

OF OUR JOINT LABOURS AND PASTIMES

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Rupert.
Wahr
6-17-32
26315

## PREFACE TO THE FOURTH EDITION

THE present edition of this book must, I fear, so far as I am concerned, be looked upon as final. Since the third edition was issued, Marlowe's *Doctor Faustus* has continued to attract, in an exceptional degree, the attention of scholars, and I have sought to make the best use I could of their labours. The *Faustus-Notes* of Professor H. Logeman (Ghent, 1898) in particular have determined me, in more instances than one, to discard hesitations for which the time seems now to have passed; and I gladly acknowledge the debt which I owe to this very able commentary. The same scholar's quite recent publication of *The English Faust-Book of* 1592 (Ghent and Amsterdam, 1900) has enabled me to substitute in my Introduction extracts from this edition of the English history for those from the German *Faustbuch*; but I have carefully compared his text with that of the British Museum copy. For the bibliography of the story of Faustus, I have made frequent use of the *Faustsplitter* of Dr. A. Tille (1898), to whom I owe several courteous communications in connexion with the subject. The excellent Catalogue of the Faust Exhibition, held at Frankfort-on-the-Maine in the autumn of 1893, has been of considerable general service.

Among the fresh additions to my Notes will be found several parallel or illustrative passages with which I have

Digitized by Google

met in Dante, and among those to *Doctor Faustus* in particular, several references to the earlier books of *Paradise Lost*, suggested by an examination of Mr. A. W. Verity's admirable edition. The notes to *Doctor Faustus* have been increased much more largely than those to *Friar Bacon and Friar Bungay*; like other lovers of Greene, I am looking forward to Mr. Churton Collins' promised edition of his Dramatic Works.

I have retained the Appendices kindly furnished by Mr. Fleay to my second edition; nor shall I ever forget the aid which he so liberally gave to me on this and other occasions.

A. W. W.

KENSINGTON, *August*, 1900.

Digitized by Google

## PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION

In revising the text of *Doctor Faustus* for this edition, I have had the advantage of the corrections in Professor Breymann's most kind and careful review of the second edition of this book in *Englische Studien* (1888). Although I have refrained from adopting many of the emendations suggested in this review, I am by no means blind to their ingenuity.

I have also for this edition compared the text of *Friar Bacon and Friar Bungay*, reprinted from the Duke of Devonshire's copy of the quarto of 1594 by Dr. Grosart in vol. xiii of his Huth Library edition of Greene's Works, printed for private circulation (1881–8). But that a renumbering of the lines would have been extremely troublesome, I should have followed Dr. Grosart's example in avoiding Dyce's frequent practice of breaking up six-foot lines after this fashion:

> 'Nor have
> I seen, my lord, more frolic in the chase.'

Six-foot lines abound in this play, and many have been left standing in Dyce's text.

My colleague, Dr. Hager, has favoured me with several references which have proved of value in the revision of the Introduction; and Professor Adamson has sent me some further curious information as to the sources of Marlowe's very second-hand theosophy.

A. W. W.

*January* 18, 1892.

Digitized by Google

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

For the present edition a considerable part of the Introduction has been rewritten, while many of the Notes have been expanded or recast. The widespread interest which has of late years been taken in the play of *Doctor Faustus* must be my apology for the extent of these changes. An Index to the Notes has likewise been added.

In preparing this edition I have been aided by many friends and critics; and I may truly say that in this instance the terms have been convertible. The late Professor Wagner, instead of resenting a 'rival' edition, inserted in vol. ii of the *Anglia* (1879) an elaborate review of my book which has been of genuine use to it. Still greater is my debt to Mr. Fleay, whose new *Life of Shakespeare* will, in my opinion, before long be acknowledged as one of the most important works on the history of the Elizabethan drama which this age has produced. He has not only allowed me to publish, as appendices to my Introduction, his own researches and conclusions concerning the date and authorship of the plays here reprinted; but he has also generously furnished me with a series of comments on my first edition, which have enabled me to correct it in numerous points. The kindness and the learning of my friends, Professors Adamson and Toller, proved to have been very far from

Digitized by Google

exhausted by my former large drafts upon them. To Dr. Furnivall and Professors Dowden and Palgrave I owe some valuable hints. Lastly, I have to thank Mr. C. H. Herford, both for valuable information, and for the opportunity of perusing before publication his most interesting and thorough *Studies on the Literary Relations of England and Germany in the Sixteenth Century* (Cambridge University Press, 1886).

Since the date of my first edition Mr. Bullen has enriched our libraries with a standard edition of Marlowe, which I have of course largely used. Several recent publications (chiefly German) in connexion with the two plays, and with *Doctor Faustus* in particular, are mentioned where I have laid them under contribution; I may however express my special obligations to Mr. L. Proescholdt's careful collation of the unique copy of the 1604 quarto of *Doctor Faustus* in the Bodleian (*Anglia*, vol. iii, 1880). Professor T. S. Baynes was good enough to oblige me with the loan of the quarto of 1655 of *Friar Bacon*; and Mr. W. Heinemann to send me a copy of his *Essay towards a Bibliography of Doctor Faustus* (1884).

I may add that my references to 'Nares' are to the 1867 edition, with additions by J. O. Halliwell [-Phillips] and Thos. Wright.

A. W. W.

*September* 18, 1886.

Digitized by Google

## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION

It may be well to state that this edition was undertaken before I became aware that my distinguished friend, Professor Wilhelm Wagner of Hamburg, had in the press an edition of *Doctor Faustus*, which has since been published by Messrs. Longmans, Green & Co. Of this excellent edition the plan differs in several respects from that of my own; but it would have been a poor compliment to the labours of Professor Wagner not to make such use of them as I could. The special feature of his edition is the Critical Commentary on the Text, which has been of the greatest service to myself. The courtesy of the authorities at the Bodleian, to whom I return my sincere thanks, has however enabled me to supplement Professor Wagner's labours on this head, by means of a personal inspection of the unique copy of the 1604 edition of *Doctor Faustus* in that Library.

I have also to thank Mr. T. H. Ward, Tutor of Brasenose, and several of my colleagues and friends at Manchester, for information as to various matters on which I consulted them in connexion with the Notes to my edition. I am under special obligations to Professor R. Adamson and Mr. T. N. Toller, upon whose learning and kindness I have largely drawn. Mr. Toller was good enough to read through the whole of the proof-sheets of this edition; and much of whatever value it may prove to possess will be due to his suggestions.

A. W. W.

The Owens College, Manchester,
*June* 3, 1878.

Digitized by Google

# CONTENTS


| | PAGE |
|---|---|
| INTRODUCTION . . . . . | xv |
| APPENDIX A (BY F. G. FLEAY), ON THE DATE AND AUTHORSHIP OF DOCTOR FAUSTUS . . | clxvii |
| APPENDIX B (BY F. G. FLEAY), ON THE DATE OF FRIAR BACON AND FRIAR BUNGAY . . | clxxii |
| THE TRAGICAL HISTORY OF DOCTOR FAUSTUS . | 1 |
| THE HONOURABLE HISTORY OF FRIAR BACON AND FRIAR BUNGAY . . . . . | 47 |
| NOTES ON DRAMATIS PERSONAE OF DOCTOR FAUSTUS . . . . . | 111 |
| NOTES ON DOCTOR FAUSTUS . . . . . | 124 |
| NOTES ON DRAMATIS PERSONAE OF FRIAR BACON AND FRIAR BUNGAY . . . . . | 213 |
| NOTES ON FRIAR BACON AND FRIAR BUNGAY . | 216 |
| INDEX TO NOTES . . . . . | 303 |


Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

# INTRODUCTION

*Doctor Faustus* and *Friar Bacon and Friar Bungay*. The connexion between the plays, and the prima facie difference between them.

THE internal connexion between the two plays reprinted in this volume is indisputable. There is, as will be seen, no evidence amounting to absolute proof as to the priority of either of them to the other in date of composition; and it is highly probable that both were written and performed for the first time without more than a brief interval between them. Thus as Marlowe was born in 1564 (N. S.), and Greene probably not long before 1560 (for he is known to have taken his Bachelor of Arts' degree in 1578), the two plays belong to not very different stages in the lives of their respective authors, and offer fair materials for a comparison between their gifts and powers as dramatic poets. While, however, *Friar Bacon and Friar Bungay* has doubtless come down to us very much as it was written by Greene, and has indeed been described by a comparatively early tradition[1] as one of the two plays of which he was sole author, the earliest copy we possess of *Doctor Faustus* contains additions, and possibly further alterations, by other hands than Marlowe's. None of his plays, except *Edward II* (for *Dido Queen of Carthage* was written conjointly with Nash), is to be regarded as the unadulterated expression of his own art[2]; and least of all the tragedy before us. Yet on no other are the marks of his mighty genius more visibly impressed; although it is impossible,

[1] Edward Phillips, in the *Theatrum Poetarum*, 1675. See R. Simpson, *The School of Shakspere*, ii. 339. The other play, *Faire Em*, is almost certainly not by Greene.

[2] See W. Wagner, *Emendationen und Bemerkungen zu Marlowe*, in *Jahrbuch der deutschen Shakespeare-Gesellschaft*, xi. (1876) 73-5.

Digitized by Google

were it only for the reason given, to term *Doctor Faustus*, what *Friar Bacon* may be unhesitatingly termed, the masterpiece of the dramatist whose name it bears.

Relations between Greene and Marlowe. Greene's jealousy of Marlowe.

That jealousy of rivals which is the bane of all but the highest kinds of artist-life has never raged with greater fury than in Robert Greene. His relations with Christopher Marlowe, who was, like him, University (Cambridge) bred, seem to have varied at different periods in his career. Their plays were mostly, though not invariably, written for different companies. Marlowe's *Tamburlaine the Great* and Greene's *Comical History of Alphonsus King of Arragon* were in all probability both produced in 1587 by the Lord Admiral's (the Earl of Nottingham's) servants, acting at the Curtain in Shoreditch, but in which order of succession is unknown[1]. It therefore remains a conjecture only that the success of Marlowe's first tragedy suggested the composition of Greene's *Alphonsus*, and that the latter play was designed to challenge a comparison with the former. On the other hand, *Friar Bacon* (though in 1592 we find it in the possession of Lord Strange's company, which in 1594 was absorbed into the Lord Chamberlain's, and was finally called the King's) is held to have been first performed by the Queen's company, acting at the 'Theater,' likewise in Shoreditch; while *Faustus* was probably from the first performed, like most of Marlowe's plays, by the Lord Admiral's (the Earl of Nottingham's) servants[2]. It seems a highly probable conclusion that Greene had in the course of the year transferred himself to the Queen's company, while Marlowe remained with the Admiral's men, performing at the Curtain near by. Not long afterwards, in his prose-tract *Perimedes the Blacksmith* (entered on the Stationers' Registers March 29, 1588), Greene, referring to some remarks about a change made by him in the motto which, after the fashion of the time, he was accustomed to append to his publications, wrote as follows:

[1] See Fleay's *Life of Shakespeare*, pp. 96, 97.

[2] See Henslowe's *Diary*; and compare Fleay, *Shakespeare Manual*, p. 88, and *Life of Shakespeare*, pp. 9, 97.

Digitized by Google

'I keepe my old course, to palter vp something in prose, vsing mine old poesie still, Omne tulit punctum; although latelye two gentlemen poets made two mad men of Rome beate it out of their paper bucklers, and had it in derision, for that I could not make my verses iet vpon the stage in tragicall buskins, euerie worde filling the mouth like the fabunden of Bo-bell, daring God out of heauen with that atheist *Tamburlan*, or blaspheming with the mad priest of the sonne: but let me rather openly pocket vp the asse at Diogenes hand than wantonlye set out such impious instances of intollerable poetrie, such mad and scoffing poets that haue propheticall spirits as bred of Merlins race. If there be anye in England that set the end of scollarisme in an English blanck-verse, I thinke either it is the humor of a nouice that tickles them with selfe-loue, or too much frequenting the hot-house (to use the Germaine prouerbe) hath swet out all the greatest part of their wits, which wasts *gradatim*, as the Italians say poco à poco. If I speake darkely, gentlemen, I craue pardon, in that I but answere in print what they haue offered on the stage[1].'

The references to Marlowe in this passage[2] explain themselves; though it must be regarded as a mere coincidence only that the expression 'scollarisme' occurs in the Opening Chorus of *Doctor Faustus* (16). Whether or not in consequence of this attack, Marlowe very probably soon after its publication followed Greene to the Queen's company; but by the autumn of 1589 they were again at issue, Marlowe having, if we may accept Mr. Fleay's most apt conjecture[3], deserted the Queen's company for another (Pembroke's). In his *Menaphon, Camilla's alarum to slumbering Euphues* (entered on the Stationers' Registers August 23, 1589), of

[1] Quoted by Dyce, in the Account of R. Greene and his Writings, in the *Works of R. Greene and G. Peele*, 35. Compare Simpson, *u. s.*, ii. 351.

[2] In Beard's *Theatre of God's Judgments*, 1597 (cited by Dyce, in the Account of Marlowe, in the *Works of Marlowe*, xxxi), and presumably elsewhere, Marlowe is called 'Marlin.'

[3] *Life of Shakespeare*, p. 99.



Digitized by Google

which, as Mr. Fleay points out, the very title '*Menaphon*' is taken from Marlowe's *Tamburlaine*[1], the same scholar has pointed out a manifest allusion to Marlowe in the following passage[2]:

'Whosoeuer . . . descanted of that loue, tolde you a *Canterbury* tale; some propheticall full mouth that as he were a coblers eldest sonne, would by the laste tell where anothers shooe wrings, but his sowterly aime was iust leuell, in thinking euerie looke was loue, or euerrie faire worde a pawne of loyaltie.'

Marlowe was the son of a shoemaker, and born at Canterbury, where his monument was erected in our own days. And, in the Epistle '*to the Gentlemen Students of both Universities*' prefixed by Thomas Nash to Greene's tract, there can be little doubt that, while the former insinuates a compliment to his friend and *collaborateur* by inveighing[3] against the

'idiote art-masters, that intrude themselues to our eares as the alcumists of eloquence; who (mounted on the stage of arrogance) think to outbraue better pens with the swelling bumbast of a bragging blanke verse[4],'—

Marlowe is included in the sneer, who had taken his degree of M.A. at Cambridge in the very year when Nash had been obliged to quit the University in disgrace[5]. Here, it is quite possible that Nash may have intentionally chosen the expression 'alcumists,' and the phrase describing these alchemists as 'mounted' on a stage of arrogance, in remembrance of the alchemist Doctor Faustus in Marlowe's play, who for no mountebank purpose, 'mounts him up to scale Olympus' top.' (Chorus before sc. vii, l. 3.) Greene returned to the

[1] He appears there as one of the 'Persian Captains.'

[2] P. 54 in Professor Arber's edition in *The English Scholar's Library*, No. 12.

[3] Arber, *u. s.*, pp. 5, 6.

[4] See W. Bernhardi, *Robert Greene's Leben und Schriften* (1874), 48, 49; and compare Collier, *History of English Dramatic Poetry*, iii. pp. 110–2.

[5] I see no need for stumbling at the expression 'idiote art-master,' which surely need not be taken to signify, as Mr. Fleay thinks it does, 'one *not* M.A.'

Digitized by Google

attack in the Epistle prefixed to his *Farewell to Folly* (not known to have been published before 1591, though possibly written earlier[1]). Here, his assertion that the whole impression of a previous tract by him, *England's Mourning Garment*, had been sold, is accompanied by a sneer to the effect that the pedlar, finding it too dear, had been forced to buy 'the life of Tomlivolin, to wrap up his sweet powders in those unsavoury papers.' In this passage 'Tomlivolin' has been with obvious probability interpreted as a misprint for 'Tamburlan,' which had been first printed in 1590.

His posthumous warning to him,

The bitterness of Greene against Marlowe came to an end —driven out, may be, by that greater bitterness of which the expressions have contributed more to provoke the ill-will of posterity against Greene's name than all the errors for which he so loudly did penance. In his tract, *A Groatsworth of Wit bought with a Million of Repentance*, published in 1592 by Henry Chettle soon after its author's miserable death, Greene addresses 'those gentlemen his quondam acquaintance, that spend their wits in making playes,' wishing them 'a better exercise, and wisedome to preuent his extremities.' And the first of those whom, in a passage often quoted, he entreats 'to take heed,' is beyond all doubt Marlowe.

'Wonder not (for with thee will I first beginne), thou famous gracer of tragedians, that Greene, who hath said with thee, like the foole in his heart, "There is no God," should now giue glorie vnto his greatnesse; for penetrating in his power, his hand lyes heauy vpon me, he hath spoken vnto me with a voyce of thunder, and I haue felt he is a God that can punish enemies. Why should thy excellent wit, his gift, be so blinded that thou shouldest giue no glory to the giuer? Is it pestilent Machiuilian policie that thou hast studied? O peevish follie! what are his rules but meere confused mockeries, able to extirpate in small time the generation of mankinde? for if *sic volo, sic iubeo*, holde in those that are able to commaund, and if it be lawfull *fas et nefas*, to doo any thing that is beneficiall, onely tyrants should

[1] See below, p. cxix.



Digitized by Google

possess the earth, and they, striuing to exceed in tiranny, should ech to other be a slaughterman, till, the mightyest outliuing all, one stroke were left for Death, that in one age man's life should end. The brocher of this dyabolicall atheisme is dead, and in his life had neuer the felicitie he aymed at, but, as he beganne in craft, liued in feare, and ended in dispaire. *Quam inscrutabilia sunt Dei judicia!* This murderer of many brethren had his conscience seared like Cayne; this betrayer of him that gaue his life for him inherited the portion of Judas; this apostata perished as ill as Julian; and thou wilt, my friend, be his disciple? Looke vnto mee, by him perswaded to that libertie, and thou shalt finde it an infernall bondage. I know the least of my demerits merit this miserable death; but wilfull striuing against knowne truth exceedeth all the terrors of my soule. Deferre not (with mee) till this last point of extremitie; for little knowest thou how in the end thou shalt be visited[1].'

and Marlowe's reception of it.

In a subsequent passage (addressed to Peele) occurred the celebrated attack upon Shakespeare. Both he and Marlowe naturally took offence at the publication, the exhortations in which may have been needed by Marlowe, but are delivered in a ranting tone hardly surpassed by Tamburlaine or Barabas themselves. Hereupon Chettle, in a statement prefixed to his *Kind-Harts Dreame* (1592), made a handsome apology to Shakespeare; but Marlowe, after observing that he was not acquainted with him and 'cared not if he neuer be,' merely requests in no very gracious terms to excuse his indiscretion—'For the first, whose learning I reuerence, and, at the perusing of Greenes booke, stroke out what then in conscience I thought he in some displeasure writ, or, had it beene true, yet to publish it was intollerable, him I would wish to vse me no worse than

[1] Quoted by Dyce, Some Account of Marlowe and his Writings, *Works of C. Marlowe*, xxvii. To avoid a passing misapprehension it may be well to refer to Malone's MS. note quoted by Dyce, in which the 'brocher' of atheism is conjecturally identified with Francis Kett, Fellow of Benet College, Cambridge, burnt for heresy at Norwich in February, 1589.

Digitized by Google

I deserve'—pleading haste as his defence[1]. It is known how awful a comment on his unhappy friend's well-meant but not unnaturally ill-taken warnings Marlowe's sudden end was speedily to furnish. On June 1, 1593, he was killed in a shameful quarrel.

No proof which of the plays was written first.

This summary of the known facts as to the relations between our two dramatists points to the conclusion, that their two plays before us, which must have been brought out at a time preceding their reconciliation, such as it was, were not written in a spirit of friendly emulation. It likewise suggests, what such evidence as we possess with regard to priority of date will be found to corroborate, viz. that *Friar Bacon* was written after *Doctor Faustus*, to which it was in some sense intended to be a rival play. It has indeed been remarked[2] that a line occurs in *Doctor Faustus* which seems to have been taken from a passage or passages in *Friar Bacon*, while there is no similar plagiarism in the latter from Marlowe's tragedy. In *Doctor Faustus* (i. 86) the hero says:

> 'I'll have them wall all Germany with brass';

in *Friar Bacon* (ii. 30) Burden says:

> 'Thou mean'st ere many years or days be past
> To compass England with a wall of brass';

and ibid. (ii. 177) the Friar says himself:

> 'And hell and Hecate shall fail the friar,
> But I will circle England round with brass.'

But there can hardly be any question of plagiarism in lines expressing in the most natural way, and in similar though not identical terms, a traditional boast which was probably quite familiar from the story-book of Friar Bacon[3]. It seems still

[1] See Dyce, ibid., xxix, and compare Dr. Ingleby's Introduction to Part I of the *Shakspere Allusion-Books* printed for the New Shakspere Society, which contains both the *Groatsworth of Wit* and *Kind-Harts Dreame*.

[2] By Bernhardi, *u. s.*, 39, who recognizes the inadequacy of the evidence, but inclines to the conclusion which he thinks it suggests.

[3] In *The Jew of Malta*, i. 2:

> ''Twould have moved your heart,
> Though countermined with walls of brass, to love,'

Digitized by Google

less suggestive of any special cause for the selection when 'wise Bacon's works' are found among those recommended to Faustus as fit preparation for his acquiring a close knowledge of magic (*Doctor Faustus*, i. 152)[1].

Probability that *Friar Bacon* was written after *Faustus*.

There is accordingly no reason for differing from the generally received view, that Greene's play was suggested by Marlowe's[2]. The two pieces are assuredly connected by something more than the general cognateness of their themes; and it can hardly be overlooked that while the Doctor Faustus is a Wittenberg professor, in Greene's drama Oxford becomes *mutatis mutandis* the Wittenberg of Friar Bacon[3]. Indeed, it seems hardly too great an assumption to regard Bacon's victory over Vandermast as a kind of cheery outdoing by genuine English magic of the pretentious German article, in which Faustus was the representative

Difference of character between the two plays.

the primary allusion is of course to the 'turris ahenea' of Danaë. Düntzer ('Zu Marlowe's Faust' in *Anglia*, i. 52) oddly assumes as a matter of course that Marlowe derived the fancy of 'walling all Germany with brass' from Greene's *Friar Bacon*. O. Ritter, in his doctor's *Dissertation on Friar Bacon and Friar Bungay* (Thorn, 1886), points out the general resemblance between the notion of surrounding England with a wall of brass, and the tradition borrowed from Giraldus Cambrensis by Spenser in the *Faerie Queene*, iii. 3, 10, how—

> 'a little whyle
> Before that Merlin dyde, he did intend
> A brazen wall in compas to compyle
> About Cairmadin, and did it commend
> Unto these sprights to bring to perfect end.'

[1] C. H. Herford, *Studies*, &c., p. 190.

[2] This view derives a certain measure of confirmation from the repeated references in Greene's play to Helen. Margaret asks (x. 93–6):

> 'Shall I be Helen in my froward fates,
> As I am Helen in my matchless hue,
> And set rich Suffolk with my face afire?—'

alluding apparently to *Doctor Faustus*, xiii. 91–2. See also *Friar Bacon*, x. 35; xii. 7, 11.

[3] Ibid., p. 193. In a later passage of his book (p. 395) Dr. Herford points out a less important but equally curious 'literary link' between Oxford and Wittenberg in the instance of the derivation of *Grobiana's Nuptials* from the *Grobianus*.

Digitized by Google

'traveller[1].' Coincidences of vocabulary and phraseology were, in consequence of the similarity of their subjects, inevitable in the two plays; but the coincidences hardly go much further than this[2]. On the other hand, it seems saying too much to assert, that, 'just as in his Alphonsus Greene attempted to outdo Tamburlaine, ... he attempted to outdo Faustus by his Friar Bacon[3].' In a happier moment than that in which he may have conceived the possibility not only of out-Heroding Herod (the phrase is rather apposite, for both the Scythian shepherd and the 'haughty Arragon' have a smack of the old mystery-style about them), but of pitting his lifelike vigour against the torrent of Marlowe's passion, Greene seems to have resolved upon an altogether distinct treatment of a theme cognate with that of his rival's tragedy. In *Faustus* (the buffoonery apart, for which Marlowe cannot be held more than partly, if at all, responsible), awe and terror are inspired by the treatment of the story; in *Friar Bacon*, as Tieck has observed, joviality is the predominating element, but a joviality refined by a truly poetic vein. Instead of the *terra incognita* of German localities, apparently not familiar in name even to the author himself (or at least to his printer[4]), and of a Rome which he knew only at second-hand, we have here English scenery peopled by figures and called by names familiar to the poet's youth; instead of journeys through the air to foreign climes and into the empyrean, postings from Suffolk to Oxford; instead of

[1] Ibid., pp. 194, 195. A certain general resemblance is incontestable between *Friar Bacon*, sc. vii. and *Doctor Faustus*, sc. x. In the expanded version of the previous scene (ix) in the quarto of 1616, Pope Bruno is announced as about to arrive at the Emperor's Court, and with him

> 'the German conjurer,
> The learned Faustus, fame of Wittenberg,
> The wonder of the world for magic art.'

[2] No great weight is, for instance, likely to be attached to the resemblance between the opening of sc. viii of *Doctor Faustus* and sc. xv of *Friar Bacon*, unless on the supposition that the former scene was part of the first stage edition of *Doctor Faustus*.

[3] See Wagner, Introduction to *Doctor Faustus*, xxxvii.

[4] Rhodes (Roda); Wertenberg (Wittenberg); Vanholt (Anhalt).

Digitized by Google

a tragic catastrophe, a prompt and satisfactory repentance in the hero and a brace of weddings to close the honourable history. Friars Bacon and Bungay are not magicians who would be 'uncanny to meet'; and the representative of Darkness himself is bantered as a 'goodman friend.' On a legend which in itself he treats with so light a touch, Greene has engrafted a charming love-idyll, fresh with the sparkling dew of the meadows; there is nothing sombre in the action, even where it takes us into the Friar's cell; the play 'has all the leisurely beauty of an English summer day, while Marlowe's is like a tropical thunderstorm, intense, brief and unrelieved[1].'

Thus Greene sought rather to rival than to outvie Marlowe; not so much to surpass Faustus on his own ground, in the way in which Friar Bacon surpasses the 'German' Vandermast, as to produce a successful original play resembling Marlowe's tragedy in the primary aspect of their main themes. But in the *primary* aspect only. Of plagiarism there is therefore here as little question as of parody; and of real similarity no question at all. Even in the comic passages there is no imitation; Miles is of the same family as Wagner, but has grown up in his own way. Greene's work is, in a word, altogether of a distinct kind from Marlowe's, from whose genius his own stood widely apart—neither of them coming near to Shakespeare except where they differed altogether from one another[2]. In one point, however, the two plays agree, namely in the peculiarities of style which

Resemblances of style between them.

[1] I have taken the liberty, and given myself the pleasure, of borrowing one or two phrases from an interesting paper on Greene, entitled 'An Early Rival of Shakespere,' contributed by Professor J. M. Brown to the *New Zealand Magazine*.

[2] 'In his treatment of the magician,' writes J. A. Symonds (*Shakspere's Predecessors in the English Drama*, pp. 561, 562), 'Greene differed widely from his friend Marlowe. Marlowe idealized the character of Faustus, using that legend for his interpretation of the criminal passion for unlawful power. Greene left Bacon as he found him in the popular romance.' It is, however, justly remarked by Dr. Herford, *u. s.*, p. 191, that in the repentance-scene (xiii) Greene 'abruptly abandons the lighter tones of his model,' the story-book.

Digitized by Google

help to mark the difference between the group of dramatists to which both Marlowe and Greene belonged, and the great master who was soon to outshine all his predecessors and contemporaries. Both these plays are not only full of bombastic diction and ultra-classicality of phrase and figure—the former being a sign of the immaturity which still characterized the poetic style of our dramatists, not yet masters of the secret reasons of their own effectiveness; the latter a conscious endeavour to prove to the world the academical scholarship which seemed the proudest of literary distinctions. But they are also still tinged with an artificiality of manner betraying itself in affectations and oddities of construction and vocabulary which seek to emphasize the difference between the poetic style and the common speech—such as the omission of the article before the substantive[1]; and the formation of new and high-sounding words; and again the habit of making the personages of the action address themselves by their proper names or speak of themselves in the third person, as if conscious of their unreality, instead of simply using the first personal pronoun like living human beings[2]. These are, however, merely the fashions of

[1] Compare *Doctor Faustus*, xi. 40; xiii. 90; *Friar Bacon*, x. 143, 154; xiii. 8.

[2] The late Mr. Simpson has some extremely striking remarks on this practice, of which numerous examples will be found, *passim*, in both our plays, and which is a curious combination of artificiality and childlikeness. Perhaps, however, he urges a point rather too far when he says: 'With our earlier dramatists the principles of the dumb show, or rather puppet show, affect the whole form of their dramas. As poets, they speak rather like interpreters to the puppets than as dramatists.' See *The School of Shakspere*, ii. 394. Professor Wagner likewise adverts to the peculiarity of Marlowe's use in *Doctor Faustus* of 'a proper name where a pronoun would be commonly substituted.' In one passage, iii. 94, the change from the third to the first person has an unpleasingly abrupt effect. Compare also xi. 39–44. Symonds (*u. s.*, pp. 562–3) plausibly suggests that the artificiality of Greene's style may have been heightened by his desire to outdo Marlowe: 'The language of *Friar Bacon*, in spite of its essentially English character, is curiously defaced with superficial pedantry. The serious characters make use of classical mythology on all occasions.... But these flowers of rhetoric are

Digitized by Google

a school or of an age, worth noting, but not worth dwelling upon, in comparison with the distinctive characteristics of individual genius which are its own, and which in the case of Marlowe and Greene a critical analysis of these dramas, such as cannot be attempted here, would find occasion to mark in glorious abundance.

Legends of magic and magicians:

The main themes of both these plays are derived from that vast and infinitely interwoven body of legend which deals with magicians—men who have become possessed of powers and are capable of performances not admitting of explanation by any of the ordinary conditions of humanity. The magician or sorcerer is a conception distinct from that of the witch, who was looked upon as an ignorant instrument in the hands of the Evil One, and whose practices brought with them little but persecution in this world, and damnation in the next[1]. The magician, on the other hand, was usually regarded as having acquired and as exercising his art for purposes of his own, not merely nor essentially from an inclination or tendency towards doing evil and inflicting harm. Hence in the popular belief pre-eminent success in any of the paths which human ambition follows, especially if achieved with extraordinary rapidity or in the teeth of unusual difficulties, was associated with the possession of supernatural powers; while the pursuit of studies and occupations of which the objects and conditions were unintelligible or obscure to the multitude, especially if carried on under conditions of isolation or of other apparent mystery, was similarly accounted for. These notions were not peculiar to the Middle Ages; but in this period they passed through peculiar phases, and took a peculiar colouring from its dominant ideas and ways of life. Pagan antiquity had regarded these supposed

in pagan antiquity;

mere excrescences upon a style of silvery simplicity. . . . Writing in direct competition with Marlowe, and striving to produce 'strong lines,' Greene indulged in extravagant imagery, which, because it lacks the animating fire of Marlowe's rapture, degenerates into mere bombast.'

[1] See T. Wright, *Narratives of Sorcery and Magic*, i. 1–5.

Digitized by Google

supernatural or magical powers as the gift of the gods, and those who exercised them as *theurgi*, human executants of divine works. The prototype of these magicians of classical antiquity was Pythagoras, to whose mysterious fame both the Doctor Faustus[1] and the Friar Bacon[2] of our plays make appeal. On the overthrow of heathen polytheism, its gods were converted by the Christian world into maleficent daemons, whose agency was controlled but not extinguished by the new Dispensation. At the very threshold of the Christian era stands the strange figure of Simon Magus, whom early ecclesiastical tradition represents as so successful in the use of his accursed powers that his repeated overthrow by the Apostle St. Peter amounted to victory upon victory for the holy cause of the Church. This is but an instance of the contrast, on which that Church was never tired of insisting, between the efforts of pagan sorcery and the miraculous agency of divine gifts[3]. The magicians of the earlier Middle Ages were thus regarded as the conscious servants of the Powers of Evil, who, in return for the promise of their souls after death, helped them, or those whom they wished to serve, to the good things of this world. They stood outside Christian life, and were therefore often Jews or Mahometans; while at the same time, mediaeval legend clustered round some of the most popular names of Classical antiquity, such as Hippocrates the physician, under the corrupted form of 'Ypocras[4],' and more especially the Roman poets, Horace, Ovid, and above all Virgil[5], and attributed to these sages a variety of magical exploits. It was usually by means of contracts with the Devil, in which Jews were frequently supposed to have acted as brokers—occasionally by a close

at the dawn of Christianity;

and in the early Middle Ages.

Legends of contracts with the Devil.

[1] Compare *Doctor Faustus*, xiv. 105.

[2] Compare *Friar Bacon*, ix. 30.

[3] Cf. Neander's *Church History* (E. Tr.), i. 95–104; and see below, pp. xli and note, and xlix. As to later dramatic treatments of the story or of the personage of Simon Magus see Erich Schmidt, *Zur Faustsage*, in *Zeitschrift für deutsches Alterthum und deutsche Litteratur*, xxix. (1885) 85–6.

[4] Compare note to *Doctor Faustus*, viii. 21.

[5] Compare note to *Doctor Faustus*, vii. 13.

Digitized by Google

personal relationship with him (that of son to father)—that in a number of mediaeval legends men were said to have obtained a full command over the objects of those passions which it was the task of the Christian religion to repress or expel. Thus they were thought to have been enabled to drink to the dregs the cup of sensual indulgence, to satisfy the cravings of earthly ambition, to glut the accursed hunger for gold and for all that gold can buy, and to gratify the desire for knowledge of all things good and evil and for the power which knowledge ensures. But against this Devil's magic the Christian Church was not deemed to be powerless. Her spells were more potent than those of the Prince of Darkness; her magic outshone with its whiteness the Black Art of her adversary. Her holy offices and her blessed Sacraments offered a sure refuge against the assaults of the Enemy; Guardian Angels hovered round those who trusted in their care; the Saints vouchsafed their protection to the pure, and their aid to the penitent; and the Mother of God mediated between the sinner who prostrated himself at her feet and the Divine wrath provoked by his guiltiness [1].

These conceptions pervade a variety of legends, which partly are reproductions of their predecessors, partly attach themselves to historic figures, partly are consciously elaborated by later literary treatment. Among these legends those may here be left aside, which do not contain the element of a contract with the Devil, but account for the possession of supernatural gifts or powers by the supposition of a filial relationship towards him. It is, however, noteworthy that in two of the best-known of this class, in the story of Merlin which belongs to the Arthurian cycle of romance, and in the legend of Robert the Devil, the saving power of Grace is in both cases exercised by the Blessed Virgin. The contract-stories differ from one another as to the objects which in the several instances the human party to the bargain designed to secure by it; but they all adhere to the

[1] For a suggestive treatment of this part of a wide subject, see sect. iv of a comprehensive essay on Goethe's *Faust* by Kuno Fischer, in the *Deutsche Rundschau* for October, 1877.

Digitized by Google

fundamental idea, that the obligation is invalid against the interposition of the Divine Mercy on behalf of the repentant sinner. Such is the significance of one of the earliest, which also became one of the most widely spread of these legends[1], and which no commentator on the Faust legend has failed to notice. Theophilus was a bishop's seneschal or *vice-dominus* at Adana in Cilicia in the reign of the Emperor Justinian. Filled with anger and dismay by unmerited dismissal from his office, he sought through the agency of a Jew the help of the Devil, with whom he sealed a contract, renouncing the Saviour and His Mother, and acknowledging the Devil as his lord. Immediately he was restored to his post. But soon terror of soul fell upon him; for forty nights he fasted and prayed to the Blessed Virgin, till at last she appeared to him at midnight and lent ear to his agony. Assured of a hope of mercy, he proclaimed his penitence and the miracle of his preservation before the congregation; the infernal contract was cast into the flames; soon he passed away in peace, and the Church inscribed his name on the roll of her saints as that of Theophilus the Penitent. Of this legend that of Militarius[2] is a reproduction—the

The legend of Theophilus.

[1] The story, supposed to have been told by Theophilus' pupil Eutychianus as a living witness, was translated from the Greek into Latin by Paulus Diaconus, and spread in a variety of versions through Eastern and Western Christendom. Hrotsvitha, the learned abbess of Gandersheim, narrated it in leonine hexameters; it was introduced into the Golden Legend; Rutebeuf, a French *trouvère* of the thirteenth century, brought it on the miracle-stage; it appears in early English narrative and Low German dramatic literature, and is stated to have been made the subject of an English poem, serving as a kind of apologia of the Roman Catholic faith, by William Forrest (1572). Two Icelandic versions are also extant. See Ludorff's essay in *Anglia*, vol. vii. (1844); and cf. Erich Schmidt, *u. s.*, 87, for further references and for a summary of two seventeenth-century Jesuit dramas on the subject. It should be noted that, at the close of the earlier of these two 'comedies,' 'Faustus et Scotus Magi in medio flammarum aequalis pene sceleris inaequalem lamentantur exitum.'

[2] It was treated by Gotefridus Thenensis (Gottfried von Thienen) in a narrative in leonine hexameters, of which a specimen is given by Professor von Reichlin-Meldegg in his elaborate treatise reprinted in Scheible's *Kloster*, xi. 256.

Digitized by Google

story of the soldier who, to prolong a life of jollity, entered (likewise through the agency of a Jew) into a contract with the Devil, but was finally saved by his refusing to renounce the Blessed Virgin, although he had already renounced her Divine Son. In other stories, sensual indulgence reappears as the motive of the unholy compact; such is, to give only one later example, the significance of the tradition of the original Don Juan (Tenorio), who has a literary history second in interest only to that of Faustus himself, and who was said to have been the associate of King Pedro the Cruel of Castile (1350–55)[1].

In the legend of Cyprian of Antioch, which seems even earlier in its origin than that of Theophilus, and which, early in the seventeenth century, Calderon took for the theme of a drama that no student of Marlowe or Goethe will pass by —*El Magico Prodigioso*[2]—the thirst for knowledge appears as the primary, though not as the only, motive for Cyprian's contract with the Devil. Still here, as in the Italian *Miracolo di Nostra Donna*, which belongs to the close of the fourteenth or the beginning of the fifteenth century[3], the conditions of the conflict of which a human soul is the subject are still the same; and that Divine Grace, of which the Church holds the stewardship, is consistently victorious over its natural enemy.

Legends of ecclesiastics as magicians.

As the course of mediaeval history slowly but surely progressed towards its close, marked in a wide variety of ways by those co-operating but not identical movements which we speak of as the Renascence and the Reformation, the

[1] As to Don Juan, see the collection of materials in vol. iii. of Scheible's *Kloster*; cf. as to the later history of the character, Ticknor's *History of Spanish Literature*, ii. 324–6, and ibid. 63 note; and J. Fitzmaurice-Kelly's *History of Spanish Literature* (1898), 312. As it is there pointed out, the glory of having created a universal type which the world has accepted as a purely Spanish conception, belongs to the dramatist Tirso de Molina, whose *Burlador de Sevilla* was published at Barcelona in 1630.

[2] For analyses of this drama see Lewes' *Life of Goethe*, and Hayward's translation of Goethe's *Faust*. As to Cyprian, cf. Erich Schmidt, *u.s.*, 86.

[3] Klein, *Geschichte des Dramas*, iv. 174.

Digitized by Google

popular conceptions of magic and of magicians were affected both by sentiments which the multitude could not avoid and by phenomena which it could not understand. On the one hand, the worldliness of life and manners exhibited by prelates and popes, and the prominence which they more and more asserted in struggles actually or seemingly directed to the acquisition of secular power—the profligate lives of many who had taken religious vows, whether as knights or as monks—and more especially the shortcomings of the latter, with whom the multitude was most familiar—all these things could not fail to exercise their natural effect. Already of a famous ecclesiastic of the tenth century, Gerbert, it had been told that he had sold himself to the Fiend in return for the promise of the papacy, which he afterwards held under the name of Sylvester II; in his case an Arabian philosopher, with whom Gerbert associated at Toledo, was reported to have acted as intermediary[1]. A still more illustrious occupant of St. Peter's chair—Gregory VII—was believed to have been furnished by the Devil with a magic glass, and to have paid the last penalty of his familiarity with evil arts. That the pious Protestant[2] who assiduously collected a variety of such illustrations for his version of the Faust-legend should have found no lack of them in the history of the Popes nearer to the Reformation, may hardly seem to warrant a belief in the earlier prevalence of these traditions. But, apart from such well-known historical facts as the charges of diabolic sorcery which, together with other accusations of impiety and crime, served as a pretext for the ruin of the Knights Templars early in the

[1] See Wright, *u. s.*, 3.

[2] Widmann. See the passage in his Commentary in Scheible's *Kloster*, ii. 770 seqq., and cf. below as to Barnes' play, *The Divil's Charter*. Bodin (as translated by Fischart, Scheible, ii. 226) takes exception to the opinion that all the popes from Sylvester II to Gregory VII were sorcerers, and inclines to the view that there were not more than *five* who combined both characters. Of Hans Sachs' verses on Pope Sylvester and his contract with the Devil (1558) an English version will be found in a paper on the Faust-legend, read by Mr. R. M'Clintock at Liverpool, in 1887.

Digitized by Google

fourteenth century, it is evident that in the popular mind the conviction was gaining ground that the profession of religious vows was frequently combined with the nefarious practice of magic. Old popular fancies may have helped in maturing the idea that the Devil was wont to make his appearance in the shape of a monk[1]; but the association could hardly have suggested itself to an age full of reverence for the monastic orders. The stories of compacts between the Evil One and monks or bishops were by no means inventions of the Reformation, though they were eagerly cherished by its champions and adherents. If these tales never found their way to the pre-Reformation stage, this may be easily accounted for by the control which the Church so largely exercised over it. On the other hand, the age of miracles had long passed away in the consciousness of the people; and we know with what suspicion or ridicule popular poetry and fiction treated the vendors of religious charms pretending to mysterious powers. That by the fifteenth century the belief in witchcraft had to all intents and purposes died out in Germany and in the West generally, seems an extremely hazardous assumption[2]. Thus, everything was in readiness for the audacity with which the Reformers proclaimed the existence of a direct connexion between the Black Art and the old ecclesiastical system. The interpretation seemed clear of the warning of Holy Writ[3] against the ministers of the Evil One 'transformed as the ministers of righteousness.' Luther meant no metaphor when he described the clergy of the Church of Rome as the Devil's priests, and the monk's hood as the proper way of Satan himself; and Calvin was in earnest when he termed necromants and magicians the agents of Hell, and the Papists their slavish imitators[4].

Scientific inquiry

It was thus that in an age when the belief in magic and

[1] See note on *Doctor Faustus*, iii. 26.
[2] See F. Stieve, *Der Hexenwahn*, in *Abhandlungen*, &c. (Leipzig, 1900), p. 309.
[3] Cf. ii. Epistle to the Corinthians, xi. 13–15.
[4] See Reichlin-Meldegg, *u. s.*, 239–47.

Digitized by Google

witchcraft not only survived, but was about to assume new and more revolting proportions, the popular conceptions of the safe refuge suggested by the Church against these forms of sin had partly grown faint, partly been changed into a feeling of hostility against herself or her representatives. But long before this, ignorance and superstition had combined their brute forces to associate suspicions and traditions of magical powers with intellectual efforts and tendencies, largely indeed in contact with theological speculation and therefore with religious belief and conduct of life, but primarily directed to different ends. It has been seen how the love of knowledge, a passion of all passions the least explicable to the vulgar, had from an early time been assigned as a motive for supposed compacts with the Powers of Darkness. The history of mediaeval science contains hardly a page without the blot upon it of this long ineradicable popular misconstruction. And in this case aid was not to be sought from the influence of the Church, which would alone have been able to introduce the gentle light of tolerance and kindle from it that of intelligence; it was but fitfully given by the hand of temporal power, rarely extended to protect, oftener to repress; nor was it generally to be found where its proper source should have lain, in the organized and representative seats of learning, the colleges and universities of Europe. For besides the ignorance of the ignorant there lay as a stumbling-block in the path of a freer scientific research that unwillingness of the learned to learn new things in new ways, which has often brought the apostles of progress to the verge of despondency. 'Because men,' wrote Roger Bacon, 'do not know the uses of philosophy, they despise many magnificent and beautiful sciences; and they say in derision, and not for information: "What's the worth of this science or of that?" They are unwilling to listen; they shut out, therefore, these sciences from themselves, and despise them. When philosophers are told in these days that they ought to study optics, or geometry, or the languages, they ask with a smile: "What is the use of these things?" insinuating their uselessness. They refuse to hear a word

associated with magic.



Digitized by Google

said in defence of their utility; they neglect and condemn the sciences of which they are ignorant. And if it ever happens that some of them profess a willingness to learn, they abandon the task in a few days, because they do not see the use of these things[1].' This apathy on the part of the scholastic philosophizers was a sure ally of the suspicious ignorance of the vulgar, who confounded the search after hidden knowledge with a desire to know forbidden things, and to whom experimental science in particular seemed undistinguishable from the Devil's magic, the Black Art.

Astrology and alchemy.

In the Middle Ages, two branches of study, the votaries of which were necessarily to a large extent groping in the dark or unsteadily moving in the twilight, were specially likely to attract inquiring minds, and to excite the suspicions of the ignorant. These were astrology, which in the terminology of the Middle Ages included what we call astronomy, but which also occupied itself with speculations on the supposed influences of the heavenly bodies upon the inhabitants of the earth and their destinies, as well as with their actual or supposed influences upon the earth itself; and alchemy or chemistry, the speculative part of which treated of the production of all things out of the elements, while the practical part sought to rival or outdo nature in the production of colours and of many other things, but more especially of precious metals. The connexion which both these sciences thus assumed with common life, with its chief events and most cherished objects, could not fail to impress and excite the wild imagination of common men; and the isolation in which these studies have to be carried on, the loneliness of the observatory and the laboratory, added a peculiar element of mystery. In these and in other sciences the instruments used or invented by their professors seemed a machinery of a more than human character and origin. All these studies and their appliances were regarded as magic and as appliances of magic by the vulgar, who could not, like philosophic minds, distinguish the mighty powers of nature and the still

Scientific inventions and instruments regarded as magical.

[1] *Opus Tertium*, c. vi. The passage is translated by Brewer, in his Introduction to *Fr. Rogeri Bacon Opera Inedita*, i. xxi, xxii.

Digitized by Google

mightier powers of art which uses nature as its instrument, from that which passes beyond the powers of nature and art, and is, therefore, either superhuman or fiction and imposture. 'For there are persons,' writes the thinker and student already quoted, 'who by a swift movement of their limbs or by changing their voice or by fine instruments or darkness or the co-operation of others produce apparitions, and thus place before mortals marvels which have not the truth of actual existence. Of these the world is full .... but in all these things neither is philosophic study concerned, nor does the power of nature consist[1].' Thus true though imperfect science and honest though often misdirected research, were rudely elbowed and discredited by the competition of imposture, and in the mind of the people confounded with their counterfeits.

Roger Bacon.

Wherever, then, in the Middle Ages scientific pursuits, especially of the kinds referred to, sought to assert themselves by the side of the scholastic philosophy and theology which were the ordinary mental *pabulum* of students, there the popular suspicion of magic found an opportunity for introducing itself. One out of many instances of this familiar phenomenon is that of the group or school of inquirers to which belonged Roger Bacon, the hero of the legend on which one of our plays is founded. In the pages of a narrative of English history, unsurpassed as a vivid picture of such episodes in the progress of our national civilization[2], may be read a summary of Bacon's attempt to give a freer and wider range of culture to the University of Oxford where he resided, and of its failure. The suspicion of magical practices was not indeed the main cause of his persecution, but appears to have contributed to it; and we have his own complaint that to speak to the people of astronomy, was to cause oneself to be immediately clamoured against as a magician, and that not only laymen, but most clerks regarded as wonderful

[1] See Roger Bacon's *Epistola de Secretis Operibus Artis et Naturae, et de Nullitate Magiae*, cap. i. (Brewer, *u. s.*, pp. 523–4). Compare L. Schneider, *Roger Bacon*, 99.

[2] J. R. Green's *History of the English People*, i. 259 seqq.



Digitized by Google

things for which philosophy had a simple explanation[1]. With Roger Bacon the studies he had pursued passed away from his university, and his own name, as will be seen, was long enveloped in the haze of a popular myth.

The historical Roger Bacon.

Of the historical Roger Bacon no more need be said here than will suffice to explain the basis and some of the details of the legend which, at all events in the form in which it supplied Greene with materials for his play, seems to date from a much later age than that in which the philosopher lived[2]. Roger Bacon, born in 1214 near Ilchester in Somersetshire, sprang from a well-to-do family; for he speaks of his brother as wealthy, and was himself able to spend considerable sums on books and instruments. But the troubles of Henry III's reign interfered with the prosperity of the family, and drove some members of it into exile. After carrying on his studies at Oxford and (as is said) taking orders in the year 1233, Bacon resided at Paris, where the rivalry of the Franciscan and Dominican Orders was then attracting public attention. But the theological discussions in which this rivalry found expression, the philosophy which while pretending to base itself upon Aristotle neglected a complete and careful survey of the very author to whom it consistently appealed, and the disregard of experimental methods in the cultivation of so-called physical science, were alike unsatisfactory to his mind; and when, in or before 1250, he returned to Oxford, he may be held to have fully determined upon his own courses and methods of study. It seems to have been about this time that, after taking the degree of doctor of

[1] See the references to the *Opus Majus* and the *Epistola de Secretis Operibus Artis et Naturae*, in L. Schneider, *Roger Bacon*, 3; and compare ibid., 4.

[2] For the known facts of Roger Bacon's life and for summaries of his writings, see, in addition to the notices in Brewer's Introduction to the *Opus Tertium* and other previously unpublished works of the philosopher, E. Charles, *Roger Bacon, sa vie, ses ouvrages et ses doctrines* (Paris, 1861); L. Schneider, *Roger Bacon Ord. Min.* (Augsburg, 1873); and Professor R. Adamson's article on Roger Bacon in the new edition of the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*, which last I have used without ceremony.

Digitized by Google

theology at Paris, he entered the Franciscan Order. His fame as a teacher rose so high that, according to the fashion of the age of scholasticism, he was known by the distinctive appellation of *doctor mirabilis*. About 1257, however, his lectures were interdicted by the General of his Order, and he was commanded to quit Oxford for Paris, where he was placed under strict supervision, and prohibited from writing for publication. But Clement IV, a friend of the sciences, on his accession to the Papacy in 1265, requested Bacon to send him a treatise on them; and in eighteen months Bacon completed his *Opus Majus*, *Opus Minus*, and *Opus Tertium*, and dispatched them by a friendly hand to the Pope. Soon (in 1267) permission was given to him to return to Oxford, where he continued his studies, and in 1271 produced his *Compendium Studii Philosophiae*. The attacks contained in this work, not only upon the insufficiency of the existing studies, but upon the ignorance and vices of the clergy and monks, were the main cause of the persecution which now befell him. His books were condemned by the General of his Order, and in 1278 he was thrown into prison, where he appears to have remained for fourteen years. In the year of his release, 1292, he produced what is probably his latest work, the *Compendium Studii Theologiae*; and it would seem that two years afterwards he died.

To the two later periods of Bacon's residence at Oxford, from 1250 to 1257, and from 1268 to his imprisonment, may be assigned the origin of such local legends as came to cluster round his name, and of his popular fame in England at large. Among those with whom he had been intimate as a student was the famous Robert Grosseteste, afterwards Bishop of Lincoln, whom popular tradition asserted to have been, like Bacon, the inventor of a Brazen Head[1]; and among the faithful companions of his researches was Friar Thomas or John de Bungaye[2], whose name is coupled with that of Friar

[1] So Butler in *Hudibras*, Part II. canto iii, speaks of 'Old Hodge Bacon and Bob Grosted.' (The same satirist refers to Friar Bacon's 'noddle of brass,' ibid., canto i.)

[2] See Friar Bungay in notes on dramatis personae of *Friar Bacon*.

Digitized by Google

Traditional connexion of Bacon with Brasenose.

Bacon in the fictions of the Elizabethan story-book. Friar Bacon's connexion with Brasenose College, on the other hand, must be mythical—for the best of reasons. Brasenose College was not in existence in the thirteenth century[1]; but there is no reason why Bacon should not be supposed to have resided in or near one of the halls out of which the College grew. These halls or houses may have been of very ancient date, and it is just possible that one of them may have already in Bacon's time borne the name of Brasin- or Brazen-house. In any case, already in the Elizabethan age, Miles Windsore, whose manuscript notes Hearne reproduced in a volume of his *Diary*[2], connected the story of Friar Bacon's wonderful Brazen Head with the well-known 'brazen nose' in the face over Brasenose College gate, from which nose the college was supposed to have derived its name; and reported that a likeness, either of Bacon or of the Head, was kept in the secret recesses of the *Aula*, i.e. the *Aula Philosophiae*, which once occupied part of the site of the present Brasenose College. His chemical studies the Friar was said to have carried on in one of the secluded places of retreat then common at Oxford, and his astrological in an observatory in the tower of the church in the neighbouring village of Sunningwell. See Hearne's *Diary*, vol. civ. pp. 166–9:

His places of study in and near Oxford.

'*The second commaundment is ffore this werk* [chemica ars] *thou haue a specialle priue place from mennes sight with 2. chambres or 3. to make these sublimations fixations calcinations solutions distillations and congelations.* Such private places were common in Oxford. ffryer Bacon always desired

[1] See, as to Brasenose College, note on *Friar Bacon*, ii. 11.

[2] See Hearne's *Diary*, MSS. Bodleian, vol. cxxxii. pp. 73, 74. After the passage quoted in the above note the *Diary* continues: 'Cuius Baconem mathematicum praedicat antiquitas authorem eo loci artibus mathematicis exstinctum. Cuius simulacrum in imis aulae penetralibus sopitum in umbras repositum fertur. At penes authorem fides esto.' The construction of the first of these sentences is the reverse of transparent; but it seems impossible to doubt that the antecedent of the *cuius* with which it begins is 'imago aenea facie' in the previous sentence; and that it is either to the same word or to 'Baconem' that the 'cuius' of the next sentence refers.

Digitized by Google

such retirement, whenever he searched into the secrets of nature. 'tis true, the place, in the South suburbs of Oxford, is now very common, but in his time it was much more private; tho' after all I do not think that at that place he carryed on any chymical Experiments, or even the Machines for wch he hath been so famous ever since, even among the vulgar, who daily speak of his brazen Head, a thing wch nevertheless others were noted for performing, as well as he, as the famous Mr. Thomas Allen, of Gloucester-Hall, hath sufficiently shown in a MS. of the Bodleian Library. Unless I am mistaken, the Place, known now by the name of his Study (the lower part whereof is certainly very old) was used by him chiefly for his Astronomical Studies, and here I believe he penned many of his writings, that any thing related to that Subject[1], whilst what he did in Chymistry was carried on by him in places more private, sometimes in the Suburbs ... in wch there was also a fine grove of trees, now a bare meadow, and sometimes at Sunningwell, then much more retired than even at this time, abundance of woods having been destroyed thereabouts.... At Sunningwell they have the tradition of ffryer Bacon's studying there to this day, where (according to the same tradition) he had an Observatory, and that too upon the Tower of the Church. There is always some ground for such sort of Tradition, and 'tis not therefore to be despised. 'Tis very likely that he might often go up to the top of that Tower and make his observations, tho' (as I take it) the Church and the Tower have been much altered since his day.... Other Scholars of Oxford had, in those times, likewise their retiring Places, in imitation of ffryer Bacon, whose Example was much followed, he being indeed a Prodigy of Learning, wch made him so much taken notice of by all sorts of people, that he was prosecuted as a magician, tho' he writ against that practice.'

[1] 'After come home from the schools, I out with the landlord to Brazen-nose College.... Thence with coach and people to Physic-garden, 1*s*. So to Friar Bacon's study: I up and saw it, and give the man 1*s*. ... Oxford mighty fine place; and well seated and cheap entertainment.' *Diary of Samuel Pepys*, June 9, 1668 (H. B. Wheatley's edition, viii. 40–1).

Digitized by Google

Popular ideas on the studies of Bacon. His supposed inventions.

Of the real nature of Bacon's studies, and of the method by which he sought to give unity to them, the popular mind necessarily had no conception. 'His fame in popular estimation,' says Professor Adamson, 'has always rested on his mechanical discoveries,' although 'careful research has shown that very little in this department can with accuracy be ascribed to him. He certainly describes a method of constructing a telescope, but not so as to lead one to conclude that he was in possession of that instrument. Gunpowder, the invention of which has been claimed for him on the ground of a passage in one of his works, which fairly interpreted at once disposes of any such claim, was already known to the Arabs. Burning-glasses were in common use, and spectacles it does not appear he made, although he was probably acquainted with the principle of their construction.' As to the invention of gunpowder, the popular story-book in which the legend of Friar Bacon was stereotyped is, oddly enough, silent. As to the telescope, the statement of Bacon in his work on Perspective, that by refraction the sun, and moon, and stars might (by being represented as nearer) be made to *appear* to descend, may have given rise to a belief in possessing a power ascribed to magic from a very early date[1]. But, the 'glass prospective,' commemorated both in the story-book and in our play, seems to be a combination in the popular mind of the *camera obscura* and burning-glass and the telescope, all of which Bacon was supposed to have invented or used. In his *Opus Majus* he states that by artificial condensation of the air and arrangement of several mirrors a variety of '*appericationes*' can be produced, whereby the foes of the realm and the infidels may be terrified; the apparition of camps of soldiers and of armies in the air (*visio reflexiva*[2]), i.e. the so-called *fata morgana*, he says, is

The Magical Glass.

[1] See note to *Doctor Faustus*, iii. 38.

[2] A mirror producing such results was made by the enchanter Virgil 'of his clergie,' in which the Romans might behold their enemies 'by thritty mile about.' See Gower's *Confessio Amantis*, bk. v. A magical mirror was, as has been seen, also attributed to Pope Gregory VII; compare Görres in Scheible's *Kloster*, ii. 30.

Digitized by Google

regarded by some as diabolical sorcery, whereas such phenomena have a perfectly natural explanation. Julius Caesar, he continues, used large mirrors in Gaul, in order to discover the position of the enemy[1]; burning-glasses in particular are very useful in war, and in time to come the Devil will by such means set fire to towns, villages, &c. Hence Bacon calls the burning-glass (*speculum comburens*) a miraculous work[2]. The vulgar of course connected the use of these instruments with the practices of magic, in which it was thought feasible 'to make a spirit appear in a crystal[3]'—more especially angels, who entered into the glass and gave

[1] I have a strong suspicion that a confusion between 'speculum' (mirror) and 'specula' (high place for watching) lay at the bottom of this blunder, which may have been further encouraged by such a passage as that in Lucan's *Pharsalia*, vi. 278 :—

'vix proelia Caesar
Senserat, elatus specula quae prodidit ignis.'

Caesar mentions *speculatores* in his *De bello Gallico* (v. 49), but I do not find the word *specula* there.

[2] See Schneider, *u. s.*, 82, 83.

[3] See R. Scot's *Discovery of Witchcraft*, bk. xv, ch. xvii. Compare the glass borne by the last of the Eight Kings who appear before Macbeth, and see Jonson's *Alchemist*, i. 1, where Face mentions, among other tricks, that of 'taking in of shadows with a glass.' This mode of divination was very common, and was 'usually conducted by confederacy; for the possessor of the glass seldom pretended to see the angels or hear their answers. His part was to mumble over some incomprehensible prayers; after which a *speculatrix*, a virgin of pure life, was called in to inspect the crystal.' See Cunningham's note loc. cit., and quotation from Lilly's life.—The belief in magical mirrors, probably of Arabian origin, communicated itself to the Greeks and Romans; see Maury, *La Magie et l'Astrologie*, &c., 437, 438. In *Saldmán and Absál*, a Persian allegory by Jámí, translated by Edward Fitzgerald (*Life and Literary Remains*, 1889, iii. 440), the 'Sage-Vizyr' manufactures a mirror which enables the Shah to see his fugitive son and his son's paramour. O. Ritter, *u. s.*, refers to the miraculous mirror introduced into *The Squieres Tale* (Pars Prima) by Chaucer, and to that ascribed to Merlin's invention in the *Faerie Queene*, bk. iii, canto ii; also to the globe showing to Vasco de Gama future kingdoms and events in the *Lusiad* of Camoens, canto x, and to Dr. Dee's 'devil's looking-glass,' see *Hudibras*, part ii, canto iii. The magic mirror is duly introduced in the scene of the Witches' Kitchen in Goethe's *Faust*.

Digitized by Google

responses, as the English astrologer William Lilly reports, 'in a voice like the Irish, much in the throat'; whence also the allegorical fancy of wonderful glasses showing 'all things in their degree,' as they have been, are, or should be[1]. Of Bacon's reputation as an astrologer Dr. Adamson says that 'his wonderful predictions (in the *De Secretis*) must be taken *cum grano salis*; and it is not to be forgotten that he believed in astrology, in the doctrine of signatures, and in the philosopher's stone, and *knew* that the circle had been squared.' There appears to be little doubt that it was partly in consequence of his occupation with *astrologia iudiciaria*, thoroughly as his notions in this respect agreed with those of his age, that Bacon acquired a popular notoriety sufficient to furnish a popular pretext for his persecution, the real cause of which was his spirit of liberty and reform. The belief in his powers of forecast long survived, and finds expression in a very pleasing poem of a later age (1604), by William Terilo, entitled *A Piece of Friar Bacons Brazen-heads Prophesie*— a satire on the degeneracy of the times[2]. Of necromancy Bacon was an avowed opponent, and one of his minor works[3] was directed against it.

His relations to astrology;

and necromancy.

As for the famous tradition of the Brazen Head itself, which may possibly have suggested the tradition of Roger Bacon's supposed connexion with Brasenose College, it is not peculiar to the legendary history of the Friar, but reappears in many other stories of magic and magicians. It seems to connect itself with the fancies arising from the popular wonder excited by the chemical knowledge and the experiments in metals of which the Arabians set the examples[4]. The enchanter Virgilius was said to have made certain images of the gods upon the Capitol at Rome, which by their motions and the 'clynking' of bells prepared the citizens for hostile attacks[5].

The Brazen Head.

[1] See Gascoigne's *The Steele Glas*, 55 seqq., in Arber's reprint.
[2] Printed in the Percy Society's Publications, vol. xv.
[3] *De mirabili potestate Artis et Naturae.* See Charles, *u. s.*, 45.
[4] See Warton's *History of English Poetry* (W. C. Hazlitt's edition), ii. 338 seqq.
[5] See *The Lyfe of Virgilius* in Thoms' *Early Prose Romances*, ii. 20.

Digitized by Google

In the romance of *Valentine and Orson*, a brazen head compounded by a magician declares their royal parentage to the princes[1]. William of Malmesbury relates how Gerbert (Sylvester II) owned a magical head, founded of metal, which prophesied. A similar head was said to have belonged to the illustrious Albertus Magnus[2]. A brazen head which could speak is reported by Gower to have been constructed by Roger Bacon's early friend, Robert Grosseteste[3]. Nor, if Bacon's Brazen Head was not the first, was it the last of the series. Stow mentions a story of a head of clay made at Oxford in the reign of Edward II, which at a time appointed spake the mystic words: '*Caput decidetur;—Caput elevabitur;—Pedes elevabuntur supra caput*[4].' A similar head was said to have been made at Madrid by Henry de Villeine, which was afterwards taken to pieces by order of King John II of Castile (who died in 1450)[5]. And, from an earlier period, we may finally recall the idol or head said to have been worshipped by the Knights Templars—according to some made '*in figuram Baffometi*,' and thence regarded

[1] See Warton, *u. s.*

[2] See the Introduction to the *History of Friar Bacon*, v, in Thoms' *Early Prose Romances*, iii. Cf., as to Pope Sylvester, Nash's *Haue with you to Saffron-Walden* (*Works*, ed. Grosart, iii. 42): 'I will giue as suddaine extemporall answeres, as Pope *Siluesters* or *Friar Bacons* brazen head, which he would have set vp on the Plain of *Salsbury*.' As to Albertus Magnus, see note on *Doctor Faustus*, i. 152.

[3] See *Confessio Amantis*, bk. iii :—

> For of the grete clerk Grostest
> I rede how busy that he was
> Upon the clergie an heved of bras
> To forge—and make it for to telle
> Of suche thinges as befelle.
> And seven yeres besinesse
> He laide, but for the lachesse
> Of half a minute of an houre
> Fro firste he began laboure
> He lost all that he hadde do.'

See also the Latin poem by the monk, Richard of Bardney, cited by O. Ritter, p. 24.

[4] See Thoms, *u. s.* [5] Ibid.

Digitized by Google

as a proof that the Templars had secretly embraced Mahometanism[1]. Thus there is no need to take refuge in the ingenious alchemistic 'explanation' of Sir Thomas Browne in his *History of Vulgar Errors*, bk. vii. ch. xvii:—

'Every ear is filled with the story of Friar Bacon, that made a Brazen Head to speak these words, *Time is*. Which though there went not the like relations, is surely too literally received, and was but a mystical fable concerning the philosopher's great work, wherein he eminently laboured: implying no more by the copper head, than the vessel wherein it was wrought; and by the words it spake, than the opportunity to be watched, about the *tempus ortus*, or birth of the magical child, or philosophical King of Lullius, the rising of the *terra foliata* of Arnoldus; when the earth, sufficiently impregnated with the water, ascendeth white and splendent. Which not observed, the work is irrecoverably lost, according to that of Petrus Bonus, "Ibi est operis perfectio aut annihilatio; quoniam ipsâ die oriuntur elementa simplicia depurata, quae egent statim compositione, antequam volent ab igne." Now letting slip the critical opportunity, he missed the intended treasure: which had he obtained, he might have made out the tradition of making a brazen wall about England: that is, the most powerful defence or strongest fortification which gold could have effected.'

The story of Friar Bacon's Brazen Head became a favourite subject of allusion in popular literature; it is more than once referred to by the Elizabethan dramatists[2]; and the Friar's

[1] See Wright's *Sorcery and Magic*, i. 60. The 'capita ydolorum' recur in the criminal examinations of the Templars in France in Michelet's *Procès des Templiers*, i. 309 *et al.* In Greene's *Alphonsus King of Arragon*, act iv, Mahomet speaks out of a brazen head to the priests and princely ambassadors. I may add that in Sir Henry Taylor's drama, *St. Clement's Eve*, iii. 2, the two Austin Fathers, Buvulan and Betizan (agents employed to inflame the bigotry of the Paris populace, and to circumvent the rival of the Duke of Burgundy), are discovered in 'an apartment of the Château St. Antoine furnished with a brazen head fixed on a skeleton, crystal globes, magic mirrors, and celestial squares.'

[2] So in Jonson's *Every Man in his Humour*, i. 4, Cob says: 'Oh, an' my house were the Brasen-head now!' (so that this may have been a popular sign for a house), 'faith it would e'en speak *Mo*'

Digitized by Google

great namesake on a memorable occasion pointed with it the advice he offered to his royal mistress[1]. The version of it referred to on which Greene founded his play will be cited below, when I give the requisite extracts from the story-book in question, which was probably written towards the close of the sixteenth century.

The theosophy of the Renascence.

The life of Roger Bacon is almost conterminous with the thirteenth century. In the next are already perceptible the beginnings of the long and manifold movement known as

*fools yet.*' (Cob seems to think that Bacon was burnt to death.) Compare also in Greene's *Tu Quoque, or The City Gallant* (printed in 1614, but said to have been acted before Queen Elizabeth):—

'Look to yourself, sir;
The brazen head has spoke, and I must leave you.'

[1] See Bacon's *Apology concerning the Earl of Essex* (of his advice to the Queen as to taking proceedings against Essex for his conduct in Ireland), Spedding's *Letters and Life of Bacon*, iii. 152: 'Whereunto I said (to the end utterly to divert her), Madam, if you will have me to speak to you in this argument, I must speak to you as Friar Bacon's head spake, that said first, *Time is*, and then *Time was*, and *Time would never be*; for certainly (said I) it is now far too late, the matter is cold and hath taken too much wind.' It was certainly a maxim that Queen Elizabeth needed being reminded of on many occasions, which Bacon clothed in the form of the old story. An accomplished eighteenth-century writer, John Byrom of Manchester (see his *Poems*, 1773, i. 339), has thus expanded it:—

'Time that is past thou never canst recall;
Of time to come thou art not sure at all;
Time present only is within thy Pow'r:
Now, now improve, then, whilst thou canst, the Hour;'

while Goethe has reproduced it in his wise lines beginning,

'*Niemand versteht zur rechten Zeit.*'

The measured eloquence of the Brazen Head is used as a familiar illustration by the lively Mistress Carol in Shirley's *Hyde Park* (acted 1632, printed 1637), ii. 4; and, a generation later, Oldham, in his *Character of an Ugly Old Priest*, says that his head might be mistaken for the enchanted brazen one of Friar Bacon. In De Foe's *Journal of the Plague Year*, 'Fryar Bacon's Brazen-head' is said to have been the usual sign of the dwellings of fortune-tellers, astrologers, and pretenders to the Black Art in general. Even later, in reference to the crisis of 1688, was published a doggerel prophecy entitled *The Brazen-Head*, 1688. (See *Poems on State-Affairs*, 1697, 176–7.)

Digitized by Google

the Renascence, which was in the end to join its current to that of the Reformation. Its earliest home was Italy; and a new impulse was here first given to it by the study of Greek, facilitated by the approach, and then by the accomplishment, of the overthrow of the Eastern Empire. In times which had accustomed themselves to clothe their theological propositions in philosophical forms, and to take these forms from the Greek philosopher, Aristotle, this study could not fail to turn with special energy to Greek philosophy. The Platonic Academy of Florence resumed the speculations of the Platonic Academy of Athens, which the Emperor Justinian had suppressed; and the last endeavours on the part of pagan speculation, to conceive of the world as an emanation of the Deity, became the beginnings of the *theosophy* of the Renascence. Eager to find a dogmatic exposition of mystic conceptions incomprehensible to the outer multitude—for nothing is more characteristic of the Renascence than its 'Odi profanum vulgus et arceo'—leading scholars both in Italy and in Germany sought refuge in the cabbalistic or secret books in which Jewish learning had developed its ideas of the system of the universe and its Divine government, and had sanctified them by an appeal to primitive revelation [1]. To penetrate into the inner life of Nature, to learn her hidden truths, to understand the conflict of the powers at work in her system, was the aim of what at once sought to be a religious, and to become a natural, philosophy. And here, more than ever, it was inevitable that the conceptions and practices of magic should associate themselves with such cravings and studies; that astrology and alchemy should reassert their endeavours to lay bare the secrets of Nature; and that of all her powers she should be called upon to reveal specially those which men most thirsted to control—the power of making gold and that of giving life [2].

Cabbalistic studies.

The Renascence movement, which bridged so wide a distance of time, likewise, in conjunction with the geographical

The *scholastici vagantes*.

[1] See note to *Friar Bacon*, ii. 106.

[2] See Kuno Fischer, *u. s.*, pp. 62, 63.

Digitized by Google

discoveries of the fifteenth century, and the love of travel and adventure everywhere engendered, did much to throw down the barriers of place. Formerly students had migrated in masses, or whole bodies of doctrine had been carried from university to university, transplanting as it were part of Paris to Oxford and Oxford to Prague; now the individual has become cosmopolitan, and we are in the age of the *scholastici vagantes*, the knights-errant of the New Learning, possessed of and practising a multitude of arts, and masters of a mysterious variety of knowledge. They are seen at the courts of kings and princes, in the rapidly multiplying universities, in the houses and homes of every class of men. They are famous physicians, like Theophrastus Paracelsus; academical lecturers, like Giordano Bruno[1]; knights whose pen is ready to be turned into a sword, like Ulrich von Hutten. In Germany more especially, which the Renascence and the Reformation are combining to make the centre of the intellectual life of Europe, and where the art of printing is first used as an agency working upon the mind of the people at large, a whole succession of scholars whom the multitude is apt to regard, and the Church is willing to see regarded, as sorcerers, hurriedly carry the torch from hand to hand. The South-west, whence the national highroad of the Rhine flows past seat after seat of clerical and learned life, whence communication is easiest with France and Switzerland and Italy—the home of the High-German tongue and of its ancient literary glories, the birthplace of the new art of printing, and the foster-mother of the Reformation—is the region most favourable to the growth of speculative genius. Here Reuchlin taught in the University of Tübingen, and gained his victory over the Obscure Men of Cologne; here Johann Tritheim was born (1462) in the village from which he took his name, on the left bank of the Mosel; and after many wanderings pursued his studies at Heidelberg, and spent his latter years

The German South-west.

Tritheim.

[1] Giordano Bruno's direct influence upon Goethe is beyond dispute: see H. Brunnhofer's essay in *Goethe-Jahrbuch*, vii. (1886) 241 seqq.; and cf. ibid., 278–80, S. Singer's suggestion of the passages in *Faust* recalling this influence.

Digitized by Google

as abbot of the Benedictine monastery of Sponheim, which he exchanged for another abbacy at Würzburg, where he died in 1516. Encouraged by the goodwill of the Emperor Maximilian I, he wrote on many subjects and in many branches of literature, especially theology; but his studies likewise extended to the physical and metaphysical speculations, and in his *Steganographia* he approached the boundary line between cabbalism and magic. Though he condemned necromancy and witchcraft, the vulgar persisted in believing him a magician; and stories were told of him virtually identical with some afterwards told of Doctor Faustus[1].

His pupils.

Tritheim was the reputed master of Paracelsus, and of Cornelius Agrippa von Nettesheim, a native of Cologne, whose life is sketched elsewhere[2]. All these personages popular report represented as magicians, and upon the lives and characters of all it fastened features which reappear in the popular legend of the last of the great magicians, Doctor Faustus.

Increase of popular belief in sorcery and witchcraft in the Reformation and following ages.

It had long been the practice of orthodoxy to proclaim the connexion which is thus expressed by a Catholic[3] of the sixteenth century: '*Crescit cum magia haeresis, cum haeresi magia.*' Towards the close of the fifteenth, the languishing though by no means extinct popular belief in witchcraft had been stimulated by Pope Innocent VIII's bull of 1484, and by the *Malleus Maleficarum* of the Dominican inquisitors[4]. But undoubtedly the influence of the Reforma-

[1] Compare note on *Doctor Faustus*, x. 68 (Tritheim summons the shadow of Mary of Burgundy before the Emperor Maximilian). As to the life and writings of Tritheim, see Scheible's *Kloster*, iii. 1012–1064. His *Epistolae Familiares*, with which the literature of Faust may be said to begin, were published at Hagenau in 1536. As to his mention in these of 'Georgius Sabellicus, Faustus junior,' see below, pp. lix seqq. The latest modern monograph concerning him is W. Schneegans' *Abt Johannes Trithemius und Kloster Sponheim* (Kreuznach, 1882).

[2] See Cornelius in notes on Dramatis Personae of *Doctor Faustus*.

[3] Thomas Stapleton (Bellarmine's tutor). See Maury, *u. s.*, 192.

[4] For an account of this book, written by Heinrich Institoris and Jacob Sprenger in 1486, but not known to have been printed before 1489, see Janssen, *Gesch. d. deutschen Volkes*, ergänzt von L. Pastor,

Digitized by Google

tion movement, which had widely sapped the popular belief in the remedy provided in the miracles of the Church against the machinations of the Devil, while it strenuously asserted his personality and identified his operations with those of its adversaries, itself increased the popular belief in these perils. The century of the Reformation and that which succeeded to it were the period in which the belief in necromancy and witchcraft reached its height. An era of theological controversy on an unprecedented scale had set in; and it was only where the schism never came to a head, as in Italy and Spain, or where, as in parts of the Empire, it was averted by a practical compromise, that the epidemic found little or no material to feed on[1]. Warning voices were indeed not wanting to protest against the perils of popular credulity; some of these, as has been seen, were those of the very men who were decried or persecuted as sorcerers. 'In England,' says an eminent historian[2], 'the belief in the reality of witchcraft was strongly rooted in the minds of the population. James I, in his book on *Daemonology*, had only echoed opinions which were accepted freely by the multitude, and were tacitly admitted without inquiry by the first intellects of the day[3]. Bacon and Raleigh alike took the existence of witches for granted. In 1584, indeed, Reginald Scot[4], wise

England.

viii. 51 seqq. (Freiburg-im-Breisg., 1894). Although, writes the Catholic historian, this work, as the production of private individuals, by no means obtained a legal validity in the Church, yet it became the source of unspeakable woe.

[1] Cf. Stieve, *u. s.* Riezler, in his *Geschichte der Hexenprozesse in Bayern* (of which Stieve's essay is a review), is inclined to attribute the revival of the popular belief in witchcraft to the two earlier special causes mentioned in the text.

[2] Gardiner, *Personal Government of Charles I*, i. 28, 29.

[3] Queen Elizabeth, Mr. Gardiner might have added, made no pretence to superior insight. Though immediately upon her accession Bonner, as Bishop of London, was ordered by the Council to proceed against certain men who practised conjuring in the City, Elizabeth's confidential maid, Blanche Parry, was an adept in the art; and the Queen declined to be crowned till the notorious Dr. Dee had chosen a lucky day. (See Bridgett and Knox, *The True Story of the Catholic Hierarchy*, p. 83, citing Miss Strickland.)

[4] *Discovery of Witchcraft*; and also *A Discourse upon Divels and Spirits*; both of which are several times cited in the notes in this



Digitized by Google

before his time, had discoursed to ears that would not hear on the shallowness of the evidence by which charges of witchcraft were sustained, but even he did not venture to assert that witchcraft itself was a fiction. A few years later, Harsnet[1], who rose to be Bishop of Norwich and Archbishop of York, charged certain Jesuits and priests with imposture in pretending to eject devils from possessed persons, in sheer forgetfulness of the fact that these priests did no more than take in sober earnestness the belief which was all around them. That the tide, however, was beginning to turn, there is a slight indication in *The Witch of Edmonton*[2], a play produced on the London stage about 1622, the authors of which directed the compassion of their hearers to an old woman accused of having entered into a league with Satan. Yet even here the old woman was treated as being in actual possession of the powers which she claimed. So, again, in Thomas Heywood's *The Wise Woman of Hogsdon* (pr. 1638), although the false and fraudulent practice of witchcraft is ridiculed and reprobated, a passage seems to indicate a *substratum* of belief in the thing itself[3]. As late as 1643, a certain Thomas Browne was indicted before a Middlesex jury for selling his soul to an evil spirit for an annuity of £1000, but acquitted[4]. As late as 1652, witches were hanged without mercy in England[5]; nor was the law making witch-

volume. George Giffard's *Dialogue concerning Witches and Witchcraft* (reprinted in the Percy Society's Publications, vol. viii) is likewise noticeable as showing a critical and temperate spirit in the author, who however does not present himself as a disbeliever in the superstition itself.

[1] From Harsnet's book, Shakespeare took some hints for the scene in *King Lear* (iii. 4) where Edgar appears 'disguised as a madman.'

[2] By Ford, Dekker, and, according to the publishers, William Rowley (not Samuel, who made 'additions' to *Doctor Faustus*).

[3] See ii. 1:

> 'What can this witch, this wizard, or old trot
> Do by enchantment, or by magic spell?
> Such as profess that art should be deep scholars.
> What reading can this simple woman have?'

[4] See a notice in *Athenæum*, August 24, 1889, of vols. ii and iii of *Middlesex County Records*, edited by J. C. Jeaffreson.

[5] See Gardiner, *History of the Commonwealth and Protectorate*, ii. 10.

Digitized by Google

craft punishable by death repealed in this country till 1736[1]. It is needless to add that our Elizabethan and early Stuart dramatic literature largely deals with themes concerned with practices of witchcraft[2], astrology[3], and alchemy[4]; while a hellish sorcerer is a prominent figure in the great allegorical epic of the Elizabethan age[5]. If, however, the play called *The Divil's Charter* (1607) be excepted, the idea of an actual contract with the Devil appears, in the later plays of this period, either as a satiric allusion[6], or is converted into a theme for comic treatment[7], in accordance with the attempt already made in a (probably) earlier comedy of which the authorship has been falsely ascribed to Shakespeare—*The Merry Devil of Edmonton*[8]. In following the shameful tradition which attributed the glorious achievements of the Maid of Orleans to a compact with the Powers of Hell, the author of passages in 1 *Henry VI* adhered to the belief kept alive in English minds by a popular chronicler[9].

Testimony of the English drama.

[1] See Lecky, *History of England in the Eighteenth Century*, i. 267.

[2] See especially *Macbeth*; Middleton's *The Witch*; and Heywood and Brome's *The Lancashire Witches*, besides Jonson's *The Sad Shepherd* and *The Mask of Queens*.

[3] See Tomkis's *Albumazar*, which is not, however, original.

[4] See above all Jonson's *The Alchemist*, where the treatment is of course satirical, as it is in Fletcher's *The Chances*.

[5] Archimago in *The Faerie Queene*.

[6] So in C. Tourneur's *The Atheist's Tragedie*, iv. 3.

[7] See Jonson's *The Devil is an Ass*. *The Birth of Merlin*, which was published in 1662 as the work of Shakespeare and William Rowley, is a different kind of play, which of course follows the old legend. The notion of a contract with the Devil is introduced by Dryden into his earliest comedy, *The Wild Gallant* (1673).

[8] The legend of Peter Fabel of Edmonton, who sells his soul to the Evil One, but contrives to outwit the purchaser, is said to be identical with the German popular story, afterwards turned into English verse under the title of 'The Smith of Apolda,' and thus published in *The Original*, and reprinted in Thoms' *Lays and Legends of Germany*. This I have not at hand; but it is noticeable that in the English legend the hero is a university man (of the age of Henry VII)—educated, I regret to say, at the most ancient College in Cambridge.

[9] Holinshed; who, in one of his versions of the end of Joan, states that she was found, at the inquiry conducted by the Bishop of Beauvais, 'all damnably faithless to be a pernicious instrument to hostility and bloodshed in devilish witchcraft and sorcery.'



Digitized by Google

Influence of German stories upon contemporary English notions.

These delusive fancies of the English popular mind had been no doubt propagated from many and various sources, but from none so persistently and abundantly as from the 'news' which numberless sheets professed to bring 'out of Germany.' It is impossible here to trace the causes of the very curious phenomenon, that in the course of the period connecting the Reformation age proper with the closing years of the sixteenth century, the character of the relations between England and Germany had greatly altered, and that the moral and intellectual, as well as the most general, influence of the latter country upon the former had sunk from a very high to a far lower level. 'To the average contemporary of Bishop Bale,' says a writer who has luminously surveyed the literary relations between the two nations in the sixteenth century[1], 'Germany was the mother-country of the Reformation, the refuge of the persecuted Protestants, the seat of literary accomplishments and civic splendour which England could at the most barely rival. To the average contemporary of Jonson and Fletcher, probably enough, it was famous only as a land of magicians and conjurors, as the home of Albertus and Agrippa, Paracelsus and Doctor Faust.'

And, indisputably, there was some colour for this latter conception, of which our contemporary dramatic literature furnishes a more than sufficient number of illustrations.

Germany

In Germany, even more largely than in other continental countries, the popular belief in the infernal origin of practices of sorcery in this age found expression in wild scandals and uncontrollable fictions. It attached itself to a wide variety of personages—from the *scholastici vagantes*, of whom Hans Sachs had already brought an example on the stage[2], to an Elector of the Empire such as Joachim II of Brandenburg (1535–71). In France charges of this kind were even brought against a king (Henry III) and his royal mother

[1] Dr. C. H. Herford, in his *Studies in the Literary Relations of England and Germany in the Sixteenth Century* (1886), p. 165.

[2] See his *Der Fahrende Schüler mit dem Teufelspannen* ('The Scholar-Errant with the Devil's bans').

Digitized by Google

(Catharine de' Medici). But if princes were the patrons of necromancy (as they were more especially of alchemy), they likewise persecuted its practice with the utmost severity; thus we find an edict of the Elector Augustus of Saxony (of the year 1572) proclaiming the penalty of death by fire against whosoever 'in forgetfulness of his Christian faith shall have entered into a compact, or hold converse or intercourse, with the Devil, *albeit such person by magic may do no harm to any one*[1].' The clause I have italicized strikes me as particularly significant. In vain did a writer such as Johannes Wierus (Wier, Weiher, or Weyer) seek, in the spirit of Reginald Scot, to stem the tide of popular prejudice, and to vindicate the memory of those whose fame, like that of Cornelius Agrippa, had by that prejudice been converted into infamy. Wierus' noble effort (1583[2]) in the cause of reason, and the partial protest of his contemporary, Augustine Lercheimer[3] (1585), were outclamoured by eager witnesses to the truth of the popular superstitions and of the narratives by which they were supported, such as, above all, Bodin (1591[4]), whom Fischart translated into German, and Hondorff (1572[5]). Thus fostered, these beliefs flourished in Germany through the sixteenth and part of the seventeenth century, the troubles of which furnished them with new materials. But of these all notice must be left aside. The neighbouring countries were not in advance of Germany; the last personage widely believed to have entered into

Neighbouring countries.

[1] The *constitutiones* of the Elector Augustus were drawn up on the basis of the Carolina (the code of the Emperor Charles IV, who appears occasionally to have patronized magicians). See R. Calinich, *Aus dem sechszehnten Jahrhundert*, 289, 290.

[2] See Scheible's *Kloster*, ii. 187–205; and cf. C. Binz, *Doctor Johann Weyer, ein rheinischer Arzt, der erste Bekämpfer des Hexenwesens* (Bonn, 1885).

[3] See ibid., v. 263–348; and compare Düntzer, *Die Sage von Faust*, 73. Lercheimer protests against the prevalent treatment of witches, who, he says, should be taken to the physician and the sacristan rather than to the judge and the magistrate. He, however, advocates a more rigorous treatment of sorcerers, conjurers, and jugglers than they have hitherto received.

[4] See ibid., ii. 218–32.

[5] See ibid., 233–42.

Digitized by Google

a compact with the Evil One (for the period, it was affirmed, from 1659 to 1695) was the French Marshal Luxembourg, whose *Dialogues in the Kingdom of the Dead with Doctor Faustus* were a catchpenny of the year 1733[1]; and if Germany had its Faustus in the sixteenth century, Bohemia had had its Zytho in the fifteenth (in the age of Charles IV), and Poland had its Twardowski, said to have been a contemporary of the German magician, of whose legend his is a reflexion or a singularly close parallel[2]. How the story of Faustus found a ready welcome in the Netherlands and in France, as it did in England, will be immediately shown.

Faustus a real person.

The supposition[3], first put forward as early as 1621 by the Tübingen theologian, Schickard, that the story of Faustus is a legendary fiction pure and simple, invented as a warning against practices of magic, is altogether untenable. Faust or Faustus was a real personage. His original German sur-

[1] See Scheible's *Kloster*, v. 575-637; and cf. below, lxxix, note 1.

[2] See ibid., xi. 526 seqq. Mr. Sutherland-Edwards has introduced the Polish Faust to English readers in a paper in *Macmillan's Magazine*, July, 1876. The *origines* of the local Faust-legend at Prague seem to connect themselves with the patronage extended to alchemy about the period 1460–7 by one of the Dukes of Troppau, to whom the so-called Faust-house in Vysherad belonged. See E. Kraus, *Das böhmische Puppenspiel vom Doctor Faust* (Breslau, 1891).

[3] The literature on Faust and the Faust-legend has swelled to proportions so enormous that even an enumeration of its principal works is quite out of question here. Of the earlier of these, many are collected in vols. ii, iii, v, and xi of Scheible's *Kloster*, an uncouth repertory of odd learning indispensable to every student of the subject; but a more complete enumeration appears to be contained in K. Engel's *Zusammenstellung der Faustschriften vom* 16. *Jahrh. bis Mitte* 1844 (2nd ed., Oldenburg, 1884). See also Dr. A. Tille, *Die Faustsplitter in der Literatur des* 16. *bis* 18. *Jahrh.* (Weimar, 1898); and cf. the earlier portions of the catalogue of the interesting exhibition of MSS., printed works, pictures, and musical compositions connected with the legend of Faust and its poetical treatment, held at Frankfort-on-the-Maine, August–November, 1893. Much of the information summarized in my text is taken from Düntzer's *Die Sage von Doctor Johannes Faust*, printed both in Scheible, vol. v, and in a separate edition, or from Baron von Reichlin-Meldegg's *Die deutschen Volksbücher von Johann Faust und Christoph Wagner*, &c., printed in Scheible, vol. xi; but I have also referred to a variety of other authorities.

Digitized by Google

name may be uncertain; for the Latin form 'Faustus,' in which his name occasionally appears already in the oldest German literary version of the legend, is obviously either a Latinization of a native name, or a name bestowed on account of its significance. In the latter case 'Faust' would only be a Germanization of 'Faustus,' the favourite Roman name which had so remarkable a vitality[1]. And 'Faust' would accordingly mean much the same as 'Fortunatus,' a name familiar to mediaeval legend, and thence transplanted into the Elizabethan drama[2]. In the other and more probable case, we may suppose the original German form to have been 'Faust,' or possibly 'Fust.' But the notion that Faustus or Faust the magician and Fust the printer are the same person cannot be accepted. It was suggested by Dürr, an Altdorf professor of theology, in a letter written in 1676, but not published till 1726; and it has since been adopted by various writers, including the German dramatists, Klinger and Klingemann, who wrote plays on the subject, Heinrich Heine, F. V. Hugo (the French translator of Marlowe's tragedy), and no less an authority than the late Karl Simrock. But it must be rejected nevertheless. It rests primarily on the specious assumption, that the art of printing was regarded as an invention of the Evil One by the people,

The name 'Faustus' or 'Faust.'

Doctor Faustus not identical with the printer Fust.

[1] Sulla gave to one of his sons the *praenomen* of Faustus, which no man is known to have borne before him. A celebrated 'Faustus' at the other end of the series was Faustus Socinus (1539–1604), of whom a brief account will be found in the late Mr. C. Beard's Hibbert Lectures *On the Reformation of the Sixteenth Century*, &c., pp. 272–81. 'Faust' was certainly a *praenomen* in Germany as late as 1555, when a coat of arms was granted by Charles V to 'Andreas Faust von Schorndorff.'

[2] See Dekker's *Olde Fortunatus*. As to the history of this Teutonic legend, and of the *Volksbuch*, based apparently upon some Romance version of it, see C. H. Herford, *u. s.*, pp. 203 seqq. and Appendix iii. Hans Sachs has a 'Tragedia' on the same subject (1553). In one of the German puppet-plays on the story of Faustus, the hero asks for a purse which shall never be empty—Fortunatus' purse. See Simrock, *Faust, Das Volksbuch und das Puppenspiel*, 208. It may be mentioned that one of the interlocutors (the 'uplondyshman') in Barclay's *VIth Eclogue*, imitated from Jo. Bapt. Mantuan, is named Faustus.

Digitized by Google

or decried as such by the monks. Of this, however, there is no satisfactory proof. The story that the printer, Johann Fust, who was in Paris in 1466, was there looked upon as a conjurer, has no historical foundation; just as there is no reason to attribute the dispersion of Fust and Schoeffer's printing establishment at Mainz in 1462 to any cause but the sack of the city by Archbishop Adolf of Nassau and its natural effects. The printer Fust in his Latin colophons never assumed the name of 'Faustus'; and there is no basis whatever for the ingenious fancy which identified or identifies him with the necromant[1].

The Manichaean Bishop Faustus.

Faust or Faustus shared his surname in its Latin form with the legendary father of St. Clement of Rome, whom St. Peter himself was said to have converted to Christianity at Antioch, notwithstanding the efforts to the contrary of Simon Magus. A haze of romance surrounds the traditions concerning the family of St. Clement; and though it is doubtless a tempting fancy that the story of Faustus and Simon Magus 'furnishes the germ of the story of Faust and Mephistophiles,' especially as there is a Helena involved in it as the magician's companion, to argue from such premisses would be to build upon a quicksand[2]. The name 'Faustus' was likewise borne

[1] Mr. Sutherland-Edwards, I observe, thinks it 'just possible' that the printer may have been the father of the professor of the Black Art. This superfluous suggestion does not absolutely disagree, but does not very well tally, with the probable dates of the life and death of the conjurer. I may add that the anonymous author of an unprinted Latin-Bohemian dictionary of the seventeenth century is stated to have, in his preface, identified not only Faust with Fust, but Fust with Guttenberg; stating him to have assumed the latter name in memory of the Kuttenberg near Prague, on taking refuge at Strassburg about the year 1421, at the time of the Hussite troubles. Johann von Kuttenberg is the hero of a long modern Bohemian poem, by J. E. Vocel (1846). (Kraus, *u. s.*, pp. 8, 12.)

[2] Mr. Sutherland-Edwards has, however, not shrunk from the attempt; see his *Faust Legend* (1886), where he cites the Abbé Maistre's *St. Clément à Rome* (Paris, 1883), which I have not seen. The necessary references will be found in the article 'Clément (Romain)' in the *Nouvelle Biographie Générale*, vol. x; see also Bishop Lightfoot's *St. Clement of Rome, an Appendix* (1877), p. 262 and note. Mr. Sutherland-Edwards notices that Bodin in his *Dae-*

Digitized by Google

by several Christian ecclesiastics of the early Middle Ages, two of whom were canonized by the Church of Rome, while a third (Faustus Reiensis, i. e. Bishop of Riez) was accounted a heretic by the orthodox. This personage plays an important part in the *Confessions of St. Augustine*, a book of the greatest significance both for the literature and for the general history of Christendom. The attractive qualities and intellectual accomplishments of the Manichaean bishop at first charmed the young lecturer at Carthage, who had eagerly looked forward to intercourse with him. But he began to doubt the depth of Faustus' scholarship long before he emancipated himself from the power of the doctrines with which the bishop was identified; and indeed he acknowledges the prudence with which Faustus declined to be involved in arguments concerning the astronomical matters of which, as St. Augustine informs us, the books of the Manichaeans were full. When he ultimately entered the lists against their doctrines, it was however Bishop Faustus whom he attacked by name as their spokesman. The Manichaeanism, against which the great Christian father directed his memorable efforts, was to reappear in not a few of the most daring theories concerning the world and its government promulgated during the course of the Middle Ages and in the Reformation epoch[1]. Of no real importance, though rather striking at first sight, is the coincidence of the existence at

Other early Faustuses.

*monomania* (lib. ii, cap. vi) states Simon Magus to have changed the face of Faustinianus by magic, and refers to the history of St. Clement as his authority. Faustinianus is said to have been the name of St. Clement's brother. The story of Simon Magus 'absorbing' a wagon loaded with hay, like Faust in *Faustbuch*, is told by Bodin in his *Opinionum Joannis Wieri Confutatio*, p. 463. As to Simon Magus and Helena, see Helen in Dramatis Personae of *Doctor Faustus*.

[1] See below as to Herman Grimm's view concerning the relation between the Manichaean controversy and the *Faustbuch*. The passages in the *Confessions* referring to Bishop Faustus are in bk. v, chaps. iii, vi, vii; see also the opening of *St. Augustini contra Faustum Manichaeum*, lib. xxxii. Cf. Hagenbach's *Kirchengeschichte* (3rd ed.), i. 57, and Neander's *Church History* (Engl. tr.), iii. 503. A mention of this Faustus by Sebastian Frank (1531) is quoted by Scheible, ii. 271, in a way likely to mislead.

Digitized by Google

Rome in the Reformation age of a Faustus Sabaeus[1], who is called a 'clerk of Brescia,' and was one of the custodians of the Vatican library under six successive pontiffs. This scholar, between 1523 and 1524, published with a colleague at Rome a work of Gebir, the famous Arabian 'master of masters,' as Roger Bacon calls him[2]. Finally, another Italian scholar must not be overlooked, who called himself Faustus Andrelinus, and was a shining light among the Renascence 'poets' at Paris. He died in 1518, and his decease, his popularity at Paris, and the licentiousness of his ways were recorded in the correspondence of Erasmus, who had been on intimate terms with the author of the *Epistolae proverbiales* and the *Amores*[3].

The Christian name of Doctor Faustus.

The Christian name of the magician is in the legend, with all but unvarying consistency, given as John (Johannes or Johann), and is the same in several of the authentic notices of him as an actual personage. It is perhaps worth noticing that the name of Tritheim (said to have been Faust's instructor) was John, and that Tritheim has himself handed down the fame of an Italian named Johannes, who called himself 'philosophus philosophorum' and 'Mercurius, messenger of the gods,' and who aired his pretensions to universal knowledge in 1501 at the court of King Lewis XII of France[4]. But, oddly enough, there exist two notices of

Who was 'Georgius'

[1] Sabaeus is of course = Arabian.

[2] A copy of this is in the possession of Professor Dowden, who was kind enough to communicate to me the above particulars, with a reference concerning 'Fausto Sabeo' to Roscoe's *Leo X*, ii. 279 (Bohn).

[3] See Herman Grimm, *Die Entstehung des Volksbuches vom Dr. Faust*, in *Preussische Jahrbücher*, vol. xlvii. (1881) pp. 454–7, where, as will be seen, the author of the German *Faustbuch* is supposed to have taken over some features of this Faustus Andrelinus from the *Letters of Erasmus*.

[4] See Herman Grimm, ibid., 447–8. The name of Goethe's Faust is Henry; because neither in Goethe's day nor at the present could a German reader or audience tolerate a 'Johann' as taking part in any but a *comic* love-scene.—For speculations as to Goethe's reasons for substituting 'Henry' see *Goethe-Jahrbuch*, viii. (1887) 231–2.—'Johannes' had, as readers of *Quentin Durward* will remember, been preceded at the Court of France by another celebrated Italian

Digitized by Google

unquestioned authenticity, in which, under a distinct but not altogether different form of appellation, mention is made of a strolling necromant of precisely the same kind as the Doctor Johannes Faustus of other authentic notices and of the legend. In the year 1507 the already-mentioned Tritheim informs a friend that in an inn at Gelnhausen (in the countship of Hanau) he had found traces of a personage to whose acquaintance Tritheim's friend had been looking forward with eager curiosity. On Tritheim's approach the impostor had decamped, but he had left behind him a card for a citizen of Gelnhausen identical with one he had sent to Tritheim's friend, as bearing his name (without his address) and 'additions' as follows:— Sabellicus or 'Faustus'?

'Magister Georgius Sabellicus, Faustus junior, fons necromanticorum, magus secundus, chiromanticus, agromanticus [query aeromanticus?], pyromanticus, in hydra arte secundus[1].'

This worthy, whom in another passage of his letter Tritheim calls simply 'Georgius Sabellicus,' he proceeds to describe as having at Würzburg blasphemously boasted his power to equal the miracles of Christ, and having in this year 1507, through the good offices of Franz von Sickingen (the famous knight), obtained a post as schoolmaster at

astrologer in the days of Lewis XI. See Scott's note on Martius Galeotti, who was a native of Narni in Umbria, and had formerly served King Matthias Corvinus of Hungary.

[1] With this 'card' it may be worth while to compare the phrases in the letter sent by Giordano Bruno to the Vice-Chancellor of the University of Oxford by way of introduction, and printed in the *Explicatio xxx Sigillarum* (see J. A. Symonds, *The Renaissance in Italy*, vii. 156): 'Philotheus Jordanus Brunus Nolanus magis laboratae theologiae doctor, purioris et innocuae sapientiae professor. In praecipuis Europae academiis notus, probatus et honorifice exceptus philosophus, etc.' A quasi-coincidence will be noticed between the 'philotheus' in this passage and the 'Helmitheus' of Mutianus. Cf. the passage in Shirley's *The Bird in a Cage* (1632), ii. 1, as to 'the juggling mountebanks,' of whom Italy is there said to be full:

'here an empiric dares boast
Himself a Paracelsian, and daub
Each post with printed follies.'

Digitized by Google

Kreuznach. Soon, however, he had to quit the place in haste, having been guilty of the most shameful immorality. A few years later (in 1513 or 1514) another witness of unimpeachable trustworthiness, the celebrated humanist and friend of Reuchlin and Melanchthon, Mutianus Rufus (Conrad Mudt), writes to a friend that 'a week ago there came to Erfurt a chiromant, by name Georgius Faustus Helmitheus Hedebergensis, a mere braggart and fool. His art, like that of all sorcerers, is vain, and such a physiognomy is lighter than a water-spider (*typula*, i. e. *tippula*). The ignorant marvel thereat. The theologians should rise against him, instead of seeking to annihilate Reuchlin. I heard him jabber at the inn; I did not chastise his ignorance; for what is the folly of others to me?' It would therefore appear that by this time the adventurer in question, whoever he was, called himself Faustus without adding the word 'junior,' but using epithets which can hardly have any other signification than 'semi-divine' (ἡμίθεος[1]), and 'of the Hedeberg *s.* Heidenberg type,' i. e. of the type of Tritheim, whose family name was 'von Heidenberg.' And in two parallel notices found in the town archives of Ingolstadt 'the soothsayer' and 'Dr. Jörg Faustus of Heidelberg' are respectively stated to have been expelled from Ingolstadt on the Wednesday after St. Vitus in the year 1528[2]. The question arises whether this personage (for Tritheim's man, Mutianus', and the visitor to Ingolstadt, can hardly but be one and the same) is to be regarded as identical with the Doctor *Johannes* Faustus or John Faust, of whom there is no trace before the year 1520, and to whom it would therefore be surprising if a competing necromant had, as early as 1507, sought to compare himself

[1] Hemithea, it may be worth noticing, was a goddess who, as Diodorus Siculus states, in the Thracian Chersonese exercised the same miraculous powers as those ascribed to Isis. See Maury, *u. s.*, 239.

[2] See Tille, *Faustsplitter*, No. 4 (p. 6), from the *Oberbayerisches Archiv für vaterländische Geschichte*, vol. xxxii (Munich, 1872–3). This notice gives colour to Düntzer's otherwise unnecessary emendation 'Hede/bergensis' (of Heidelberg). See Herman Grimm, *u. s.*, p. 776.

Digitized by Google

as 'junior' or 'secundus[1].' Was this man's surname really Faust, or was it Sabellicus? The latter can hardly be a mere Latinisation, but must surely have been adopted in allusion to the Sabine magic mentioned by the Roman poets—and indeed Widmann speaks of the hero of his narrative, Johannes Faustus, as having studied among other books *Sabellicum Ennead*[2]. If George and John Faust were one and the same person[3], then it is not absolutely impossible that George may have assumed the name of John in memory either of the printer John Fust or Faust, or of some earlier necromant bearing that name. But there is no obvious connexion between the reputation of the printer and the sort of notoriety a strolling charlatan endeavoured to acquire; while of an earlier necromant, John Faust or Faustus, no real evidence whatever exists. On the other hand, there is no improbability in the supposition of George and John Faust having been competitors, although the evidence of the notoriety of John is later in date than that of the vagabond who called himself 'junior,' and in some branches of his profession 'secundus.' The unwarranted assumption by popular entertainers of a name to which they have no birthright has, I believe, been a common practice in much later times than those in question; and if a 'Johannes Faustus,' who, according to the Heidelberg registers, took his degree there as a bachelor of divinity in 1509, was the same person as the famous Doctor, Georgius may perchance have decorated himself not only with the surname of Johannes, but

[1] Moreover, Herman Grimm, *u. s.*, p. 449, may be right in supposing 'secundus' to be in relation to Simon Magus, who was *magus primus*.

[2] Part I, chap. iv; Scheible's *Kloster*, ii. 297. The *Enneades* are a collection of treatises by Plotinus. H. Grimm compares the line in Goethe's *Faust*, Part II, act iv, sc. 2:

'Der Necromant aus Norcia, der Sabiner.'

See above, p. lviii, as to the Italian nationality of the magician Johannes.

[3] This hypothesis is most ably advocated by Professor Erich Schmidt in his essay *Zur Vorgeschichte des Goetheschen Faust* (ii), in the *Goethe-Jahrbuch*, iii. (1882).

Digitized by Google

also with the name of his university. But this is quite uncertain, more especially as the register attaches to the name the letter '*d*,' signifying '*dedit*,' i.e. he paid his fees.

Evidence as to the real (Johannes) Faustus.

Passing by the statement of the Württemberg historian, Sattler, that according to 'trustworthy information,' which he does not cite, a Doctor Faust in the year 1516 visited his fellow-countryman and good friend, the Abbot Johann Entenfuss, in his monastery at Maulbronn (in Württemberg), we come to a series of well-authenticated notices of Faust or Faustus by persons who were actually or nearly contemporary with him. Among these can hardly be included the famous inscriptions in Auerbach's Cellar, an ancient wine-tavern and vault at Leipzig. One of these inscriptions appears to make reference (by the words 'at this time,' '*zu dieser Frist*') to a date, 1525, twice written on the wall, where a fresco still recalls the magician's exploit of riding out of the cellar on a wine-butt, and another represents him as treating a party of students with its contents[1]. The date, 1525, is said to be of proved authenticity, and is unhesitatingly adopted in Vogel's *Leipzig Annals*, published in 1714. It was possibly from the Leipzig legend that Widmann, in his version of the story of Faustus—where, on the evidence of a book 'with concealed letters,' he states Faustus' contract with the Devil to have been sealed in 1521—took the date of 1525 as that of the beginning of the conjurer's public career.

Contemporary notices. 1520.

But an indisputable record of Faust has been recently discovered, which proves him to have 'flourished' as early as 1520, five years before the supposed date of his visit to Auerbach's Cellar. In the accounts for that year of Hans

7 Müller, Chamberlain (Kammermeister) of George von Limburg, Prince-Bishop of Bamberg, J. Mayerhoffer has found an entry purporting that by the orders of Reverendissimus ten florins were, on the Sunday after Scholastica (whose festival falls on February 10), paid to Doctor Faust, pho

[1] These pictures are described and the inscriptions quoted in a note to Hayward's translation of Goethe's *Faust* (6th edition), where the scene in Auerbach's Cellar is immortalized.

Digitized by Google

[= philosopho], as a gratuity, he having cast a nativity or indicium to his lordship. The bishop, a patron of the New Learning and friend of Luther, died May 31, 1522; and it seems probable that the consultation took place at the castle of Altenburg, the bishop's favourite residence[1].

The first known writer who mentions Faustus as a real personage is the eminent scholar Joachim Camerarius, in a letter dated August 13, 1536. Addressing Daniel Stibar, a lawyer in the service of the city of Würzburg, and connected by his studies and tastes with the Erfurt humanists, Camerarius, then at Tübingen, banters him on the 'uanissima superstitio' with which he has been inflated by 'his Faustus,' but at the same time expresses curiosity as to Faust's opinion concerning the prospects of Charles V's campaign. Taken in conjunction with the reference in the letter of Philip von Hutten to be mentioned immediately, this points to a sojourn of Faust in Upper Franconia within the years 1535–7[2]. 1536.

Next comes another quite recently discovered reference to the 'Philosophus Faustus' in a letter from Philip (the cousin of the famous Ulric) von Hutten to his brother Maurice, Prince-Bishop of Eichstedt, dated January 16, 1540; though the actual date of the event with which the name of Faust is here connected is obscure, and may possibly lie back as far as 1535[3]. A certain vagueness likewise attaches to the mention of Faust by Dr. Philip Begardi, physician to the Free Imperial City of Worms, in his *Index Sanitatis* of 1539. He there speaks of 'Faustus' as a famous necromant and medical quack, who 'a few years ago' travelled about 'through all countries, principalities and kingdoms, and 1539, &c.

[1] See *Vierteljahrschrift für Litteraturgeschichte*, iii. (1890) 177–8. A facsimile of this entry was exhibited at Frankfort.

[2] See G. Ellinger, 'Das Zeugniss des Camerarius über Faust,' in *Vierteljahrschrift für Litteraturgeschichte*, ii. 314 seqq. (1889); cf. *Goethe-Jahrbuch*, x. 256. The letter of Camerarius first appeared in his collection entitled *Libellus Novus*, &c., published at Leipzig in 1568, of which there is a copy in the Royal Library at Berlin.

[3] See S. Szamatólski, *Der historische Faust*, in *Vierteljahrschrift*, *u.s.*, 156–9; and cf. *Faustsplitter*, Nos. 6 seqq. for this and the subsequent notices.

Digitized by Google

made his name known by every one there.' He made, says Begardi, no secret of it himself, adding to it the title of 'philosophus philosophorum.' In 1545, another medical writer, Conrad Gesner of Zurich, mentions a 'Faustus quidam' as famous among the *scholastici vagantes* who practised magic, and as not long since dead. In the second edition, 1548, of a book of historical anecdotes of which the first volume was published in its first edition in 1543, the Protestant theologian Johann Gast relates two stories of Faustus' marvellous doings, the scene of one being laid in the Palatinate, that of the other, which Gast narrates as an eye-witness, in the great College at Basel. Gast mentions the wonderful dog, which, together with a similarly uncanny horse, attended Faustus[1], and the magician's terrible death—but these things only on hearsay. A still more remarkable piece of evidence is furnished by the *Locorum Communium Collectanea*, published at Basel in 1562 by Manlius (Johann Mennel of Ansbach), a pupil of Melanchthon, of whose sayings the collection professes to a great extent to consist[2]. In this book Melanchthon (for it is clearly he who is supposed to be speaking) says that he was acquainted with one of the name of Johannes Faustus, of Kundling, evidently a corruption for Knittlingen, a small town near his own native place[3], who studied and learnt magic at Cracow[4], and practised his devilish art at Venice and elsewhere. 'A few years ago' he met with his death 'in a village of the Duchy of Württemberg,' having predicted a terrible event for the night in which he died, and being found in the morning dead in

[1] Cf. below as to Agrippa's dog in Dramatis Personae of *Doctor Faustus*: Cornelius, and see Maury, *u.s.*, 103, note 2, as to the supposed assumption by the Devil of the forms of animals.

[2] A German translation was published in 1566 at Frankfort by J. H. Ragor, under the title of *Schöne ordentliche Gattierung allerley alten und neuen Exempel.*

[3] Melanchthon was born at Bretten in the Lower Palatinate.

[4] This may indicate some connexion with the story of Twardowski, the 'Polish Faust'; though according to Creizenach, in *Allgemeine Deutsche Biographie*, vi. 585, the Cracow University registers have been searched in vain for Faust's name.

Digitized by Google

his bed with his face twisted, 'so the devil had killed him.' Melanchthon proceeds to mention that this Faustus, whom he calls 'Johannes,' had a dog 'who was the Devil'; and that he twice made his escape from impending imprisonment, on one occasion from 'our town of Wittenberg,' where 'the excellent prince, Duke John,' had ordered his arrest, and on another from Nürnberg. He adds that 'this conjurer Faustus, an infamous *bestia*, a *cloaca* of many devils,' boasted that all the victories gained by the Imperial armies in Italy were due to his magic, 'which,' adds Manlius, 'for the sake of the young, lest they should at once give credit to such fellows,' 'was the emptiest of lies.' Melanchthon, who twice introduces an anecdote of 'Faustus' into his commentaries on the Gospels[1], is likewise said to mention him in his letters; but the passage has not proved discoverable. On the other hand, in Luther's *Table-Talk* (*Tischreden*), published posthumously in 1566, it is stated that the conversation one evening at supper turned on a necromant called Faustus, whereupon Dr. Martin solemnly said: 'The Devil doth not use the services of the magicians against me: had he been able and strong enough to do harm to me, he would have done so long ago. He has in truth more than once had me by the head; but yet he was constrained to let me go.' This shows that the name of Faustus was well known at Wittenberg, and confirms the statement of his visit there attributed by Manlius to Melanchthon, whose own residence at Wittenberg lasted from 1518 to his death in 1560. Shortly after this, in 1561, the learned Conrad Gesner mentions Faust as a magician of the kind which had its origin at Salamanca, and called *fahrende Schüler*, and as a personage

[1] See the passages from *Explicationum Melanchthoniarum* in *Evangelia Dominica*, Parts II and IV (1594–5), *Faustsplitter*, Nos. 9 and 10. In the former, on St. Matthew iv, the attempt of Simon Magus to fly is mentioned, and it is added: 'Faustus Venetiis etiam hoc tentavit. Sed male est allisus solo.' (This was afterwards repeated by Lercheimer.) In the latter, on St. John iv, it is related, in illustration of the power of the Devil, how at Vienna Faustus devoured another magician, who, a few days afterwards, was found in a cave.



Digitized by Google

whose fame was extraordinary and who died 'not so very long since.' The next witness is the worthy and liberal-minded Wierus, in an addition to whose work, *De praestigiis daemonum*, &c., bearing date 1583, are found copied the statements reported by Manlius concerning the university studies and death of Faustus, and it is stated (possibly on the authority of Begardi) that Faustus practised magic shortly before 1540 in different parts of Germany. Wierus adds some stories of the conjurer's tricks, of one of which the scene is laid at Batenberg on the Maas, and of another at Goslar in the Harz. The Batenberg story is related on the personal authority of the chaplain, 'Dr. Johann Dorst,' who was the subject of the experiment (he was induced to shave himself by a fomentation of arsenic instead of a razor, and the consequences were very unpleasant). Another story is likewise given by Wierus, on the authority of a man 'mihi non incognitus,' to whom in it an insulting speech is made by Faustus.

Appeals to contemporary evidence.

The theologian, Heinrich Bullinger, who died in 1575, in his work against the Black Art speaks of the necromant Faustus as having lived 'in our times'; and in 1570 Bullinger's son-in-law, Ludwig Lavater, refers to the marvellous stories about the magical arts of 'the German Faustus.' The so-called *Zimmern Chronicle*, of about the year 1565, mentions the death of Faustus, the marvellous *nigromanta*, as having occurred about the year 1539 not far from Staufen in Breisgau. In 1568 Andreas Hondorff, in his *Promptuarium Exemplorum*, reproduces the statements in Manlius as to Johannes Faustus' visits to Nürnberg and Wittenberg, and as to his death in a Württemberg village; and they again reappear in a work (1615) by the learned jurist, Philip Camerarius, the son of the Joachim cited above, who says that he has 'heard many proofs of Johann Faust's eminence in magic from persons who were well acquainted with that impostor,' and tells a story (which afterwards reappeared in the *Faustbuch*) of his conjuring up a vine full of grapes in the middle of winter, and deluding the company in the manner in which Mephistophiles befools the students at

Digitized by Google

the close of the scene in the Cellar in Goethe's play. It is necessary to pass by several other references to Faustus dating from the years 1569 to 1582, including quite a collection of stories concerning him, illustrated by woodcuts and claiming a Nürnberg origin, which was completed in 1570[1]. In 1583, when the name of Dr. Faustus is found in the *Onomasticon* of the learned Brandenburg Court physician, Leonhart Thurneysser zum Thurn, it likewise found its way, with that of Agrippa, into a diplomatic report of the nuncio Minucci to Duke William of Bavaria concerning the condition of things brought about in the archbishopric of Cologne by the revolt of the Archbishop Gebhard Truchsess, whose heretical predecessor, Hermann von Wied, is there stated to have patronized and followed the instruction of these magicians at the time of his apostasy. In 1585 appeared the *Christian Considerations on Magic* of Augustine Lercheimer, a pupil of Melanchthon, in which occur several notices of Faustus, doubtless of Wittenberg origin. Lercheimer calls him 'Johann Faust of Knütlingen,' and tells stories of his doings at Wittenberg, at Salzburg, and at 'M.' (which Düntzer conjectures to be Magdeburg). He relates an interview between Faustus and Melanchthon, with a repartee of the divine to the vapourings of the sorcerer in Luther's most robust style, and gives the story of the attempted conversion of Faustus by an old pious man, which found its way, together with some of Lercheimer's tales about other conjurers, into the *Faustbuch*, and thence into Marlowe's play[2].

We are now near the date at which the story of Doctor Faustus was to be made the theme of a popular story-book,

[1] *Nürnberger Faustgeschichten.* Von Wilhelm Meyer aus Speyer. See *Fausssplitter*, No. 20 (p. 24), from the *Transactions of the Royal Bavarian Academy of Sciences*, 1895.

[2] There can be no doubt that Herman Grimm, *u. s.*, p. 450–1, is correct in tracing the origin of the episode of the old man to the passage in the *Confessions* of St. Augustine (iv. 5), where he mentions how he was warned by a wise physician against his fondness for *libri genethliacorum*. Elsewhere (vii. 6) the name of this 'acutus senex' is given as Vindicianus.



Digitized by Google

and near the end of the list of notices possessing more or less value as historical evidence of the actual man. To this list may perhaps be added the statement cited from an old Erfurt chronicle by a later author, Motschmann, in his *Erfordia Literata Continuata*, as to the attempted conversion of Dr. Faust at Erfurt by the Guardian of the Franciscans, Dr. Kling (who actually lived there from 1520 to 1556), of Faust's recalcitrance, and of his consequent expulsion from the city[1]. Probably, however, this incident was borrowed by the compiler of the old chronicle from an episode in the later edition of the popular story-book with which it almost *verbatim* agrees. The first edition of the story-book was, as will be immediately seen, published in 1587; and the statement in its Second Preface ('to the Christian Reader'), that Dr. Johann Faust 'lived within the memory of men,' is the last of such notices of him appealing to contemporary evidence as appear to be discoverable. Gradually, doubts as to his historic existence began to spread; nor was it till, nearly a century after the first publication of the story-book, the Wittenberg theologian, Johann Neumann, had in his *Disquisitio historica de Fausto praestigiatore* (1683) reviewed the evidence on the subject, that further historical notices of the hero of so vast a body of legend were thought worth discovering[2].

Dates of the public life of the real Faustus.

The writer of this story-book annotates the account of Faustus' dealings with Sultan Soliman (chap. xxvi) by the remark that 'Solimannus began his reign in 1519'; and it is therefore clear that he considers the life of Faustus to have been spent in the earlier half, and partly in the first quarter, of the sixteenth century. This agrees with the evidence as to chronology already cited, as well as with the dates on the wall at Leipzig, and with those given by Widmann, the author of a later literary version of the legend. But Widmann's dates fail to tally with the notices of Georgius

[1] Compare An Old Man in Dramatis Personae of *Doctor Faustus*, and note to stage-direction before xiii. 36.

[2] See W. Creizenach, *u. s.*, vi. 583.

Digitized by Google

Sabellicus or Faustus; and whether or not we assume him to have been a different person from the real Doctor Johannes Faustus, it will be safe to assign the public life of the latter to some time between the years 1510 and 1540. The places in which one or the other is stated to have made his appearances are, as has been seen, numerous already in the historical notices, which likewise mention as such Würzburg, Gotha, Meissen, and Prague; their number was largely increased by the legend, and was doubtless in the case of the actual Faustus very large and multifarious. It has even been thought possible to distinguish between an Upper-Rhine, a Wittenberg, and an Erfurt Faust tradition; the former two being on the whole unfriendly to Faust, who at Wittenberg was asserted to have been born and to have died in the South-West, Melanchthon's country, while the humanistic circles at Erfurt had been favourably impressed by him[1]. Such comment as appears requisite in the case of one or two of these places will be made below, after some of the variations offered by the legend have been noticed. It may here be added, that the various writings on magic attributed to the actual Dr. Faustus are all palpable forgeries. These tractates, of which the earliest is the famous 'Doctor Faustus' Triple Charm of Hell' (*Dreifacher Höllenzwang*), pretending to have been printed at Lyons in 1469, begin with the end of the sixteenth, or the early part of the seventeenth century, and continue into the eighteenth[2]. The name of Faustus had by this time become, in one way or another, indispensable for every publication of the sort. Nor, on the other hand, will any value be attached to the assertion by Widmann in a

Places in which he is said to have appeared.

His supposed writings

[1] See W. Scherer's introduction to the reprint of *Das älteste Faustbuch* (Berlin, 1884), ix, xiii. Scherer considers that it was from the Upper-Rhine and Wittenberg sources that the author of the *Faustbuch* derived his materials.

[2] See Reichlin-Meldegg, *u. s.*, xi. 549 seqq.; and cf. the elaborate list of Dr. Faust's magical works, manuscript and printed, in the *Frankfort Catalogue*, which includes a Passau MS. of the Höllenzwang of 1505, and a seventeenth-century copy described by Goethe to Zelter in 1829. Much of this strange rubbish will be found in Scheible's earlier volumes.

Digitized by Google

passage of his commentary[1], that he is citing rhymes composed by Dr. Faustus himself, when he quotes some verses developing in German the sentiment:

'Credite mortales, noctis potatio mors est;'

(which verses Dr. Faustus, he asserts, bore as his *symbolum* or motto when a student of medicine)—and a Latin distich, with its German translation, impressing a similar maxim and said to have been inscribed by Dr. Faustus 'in a physic book.' Almost as readily might we regard the Doctor's narrative of his journey among the stars, which the old *Faustbuch* (chap. xxv) professes to copy from a manuscript written by Faustus himself, and dedicated to his friend Jonas Victor, a physician of Leipzig—or his second Contract with the Devil, which 'was found left behind him after his death'—as genuine documents. Lastly, the personal appearance of the man must be left to the imagination, to which faculty doubtless already Rembrandt owed his conception of the famous magician, apparently varied by the great painter in at least three several etchings[2].

and pretended portraits.

The collective legend of Doctor Faustus.

In the latter part of the sixteenth century the name and story of Dr. Faustus had thus, in Germany and its vicinity, become typical of the figure and career of the strolling magician, who after selling his soul to the Evil One and thus acquiring the supernatural powers of which he gave evidence in the practice of his arts, had to pay the penalty of his bargain in a violent death. They were at the same time the name and story, not indeed of the last of the necromants, astrologers, and alchemists, but of the last of the cosmopolitan type of *scholastici vagantes* famed for their magical powers and doings. And thus it came to pass that all the wonderful tales which—some of them for centuries—

[1] On Part I, chap. xiv; Scheible's *Kloster*, ii. 371, 372; compare Reichlin-Meldegg, ibid., xi. 726.

[2] See Moehsen's statement in Scheible, ii. 254. A coarse, but telling, woodcut 'after Rembrandt' accompanies this volume; and a reproduction of one of the etchings forms the frontispiece of the *Frankfort Catalogue*. Cf. also Erich Schmidt, in the *Goethe-Jahrbuch*, iii. (1882) 96–7.

Digitized by Google

had floated about among the people were fathered upon this the last representative of the mediaeval magicians. There is accordingly hardly one, if any, incident or feature in the legend of Faustus to which a parallel may not be found in one or more of the legends of his predecessors. His tricks are the old tricks; his adventures the old adventures; his canine companion is the dog of Agrippa and Friar Bungay; his death is the magician's traditional doom. Hence too the double nature of the purpose of Faustus' contract with the Devil. It is not knowledge only, or pleasure only, but both ends intermixed, to compass which he barters his soul. But the sixteenth century impresses a character of its own—and this in more than one respect—upon its condensation into a single collective legend of all these contributory stories. In the first place, the colour of the Faust legend is altogether anti-Papal or anti-Roman; for the age of the Reformation delights in casting derision upon monks and priests, upon cardinals and upon the Pope himself. Yet this age started violently back from the threshold of rationalism to which it had been brought so near; and as there has never been a firmer believer in the Devil than was Luther himself, so the fancy of the infernal compact never flourished with more vital vigour than in these times, when it was by no means confined to the uses of fiction[1]. It was an age which, notwithstanding the 'Epicurean' elements in it, held most devoutly the doctrine of eternal punishment, and entertained no doubts as to the inevitable consequences of an obstinate revolt against the ordinances of religion. The greater seriousness distinguishing the age of the Re-

General characteristics.

[1] See the notice in R. v. Mohl's account of the manners and behaviour of the students of the University of Tübingen in the sixteenth century (p. 70, 2nd edition), as to the proceedings of the Senate against a student of the name of Leipziger, said to have sold himself to the Devil when in want of 'a little money,' in the year 1596. This curious incident is particularly apposite, on account of the connexion of Tübingen with the literary history of the Faust legend to be noticed below. As to Luther's nocturnal disputation with the Evil One, and the way in which it impressed itself on Roman Catholic minds, see Herman Grimm, *u. s.*, p. 458 and note.

Digitized by Google

formation from those which had preceded it, gives a tragic dignity to its conception of the revolt of a human being against his God, and invests the spirit of such a defiance with what has been truly called a Titanic character[1]. The individual is contending against the Divine Order of things; and thus the legend of Faustus begins to acquire a significance, which later poetic genius was to develop, in a sense resembling that of the ancient Prometheus myth[2].

The old *Faustbuch.*

The first, so far as we know, and for the purpose of the present inquiry the one important, form in which the legend of Faustus made its appearance in literature is the '*Historia of Dr. Johann Faust*, the widely-noised conjurer and master of the Black Art: How he sold himself to the Devil against a fixed time: What in the meanwhile were the strange adventures he witnessed, himself set on foot and practised, until at last he received his well-merited reward. Mostly collected and put in print from his own writings left by him, as a terrific instance and horrible example, and as a friendly warning to all arrogant, insolent-minded and godless men'; with the motto from the Epistle of St. James (iv. 7): 'Submit yourselves to God. Resist the devil and he will flee from you.' This book, 'printed at Frankfort-on-the-Main by Johann Spies, in the year 1587,' is the *editio princeps* of the famous *Faustbuch* (as it is usually called, and as I have called it in the present volume), on an early English version of which Marlowe founded his tragedy. The printer, in his Preface, states that the story was 'recently communicated and sent' to him 'through a good friend from Speyer' (in the Rhenish Palatinate).

*Editio princeps* and later editions.

Of this edition a copy is preserved in the Imperial Library at Vienna; four other copies however are said to exist, and one of these, from Prince Stolberg's library at Wernigerode,

[1] See Kuno Fischer, *u. s.*, 65.

[2] I cannot help referring with astonishment to a passage touching upon this familiar parallel in Mr. W. Watkiss Lloyd's interesting work, *The Age of Pericles*, i. 334—which passage must be left to the judgement of other critics.

Digitized by Google

was exhibited at Frankfort in 1893[1]. A reprint of the *editio princeps*, of which only a single copy is extant, appeared at Hamburg in 1587. A second enlarged edition of the same year exists in two copies, one at Ulm and another at Wolfenbüttel; it differs to some extent in arrangement, and is enlarged by some additional stories taken from Lercheimer. Three or more editions, one at least of which is a reprint of the *editio princeps*, exist of the year 1588; one of 1589; and one of 1590, which contains six additional chapters, taken from the old *Erfurt Chronicle* already mentioned, or (as seems more probable) taken by the *Chronicle* from this edition of the *Faustbuch*. There exist, or are mentioned, a number of later editions, among which the rhymed version of 1597 will be mentioned below, while the edition of 1598 is noticeable as professing in its title (for the book itself has not been discovered) to narrate the doings of the three famous conjurers, Dr. Johann Faust, Christophorus Wagner, and Jacobus Scholtus. Of Wagner we shall hear more; 'Scholtus' is another form of Schotus, who on the title of the *Wagnerbuch* adverted to below appears as its author under the name of Fridericus Schotus Tolet (i.e. Toletanus, of Toledo)—the name of a real man; for the late Professor Gindely discovered notices of an alchemist named Scotus, who practised his art in the

[1] An exact and critical reprint of the *editio princeps* of the *Faustbuch*, with the variations of the edition of 1590, and Introduction and Notes, has been published by Dr. August Kühne, Zerbst, 1868. To this my quotations refer, and not to Scheible's reprint in vol. ii of his *Kloster*, which is from the second edition, likewise of the year 1587. See also the facsimile reprint, *Das älteste Faustbuch*, published in 1884 as vol. ii of the *Deutsche Drucke älterer Zeit*, edited by W. Scherer, and accompanied by an admirably concise and lucid Introduction. As to the enlarged edition of 1587, and one of 1588, see Th. Delius, *Marlowe's Faustus und seine Quelle* (Bielefeld, 1881), pp. 5, 6, and cf. the Frankfort Catalogue, though this is seemingly not quite complete. I regret not to have been able to consult the observations of the late Professor Zarncke on the order of editions, in his introduction to Braune's reprint (1878), or his notes *Zur Bibliographie des Faustbuches* in *Berichte der Kön. Sächsischen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften* (1888).

Digitized by Google

Netherlands, at Prague, and in different parts of Germany early in the seventeenth century[1].

Sources of the *Faustbuch*.

The genesis of the *Faustbuch*, in itself a most attractive subject of study, has been discussed with remarkable vigour and acumen by an eminent literary critic of our day[2]. In Herman Grimm's opinion the reader must, on the first perusal of the book, be struck by the difference in the treatment of its various parts, and will be unable to avoid the conclusion that he has before him a nucleus originally simple, but surrounded by manifold additions. Herman Grimm finds the first substance of the story in the traditions concerning Georgius Faustus (of whom he thinks Dr. Johannes Faustus was only a mythical transformation). The materials of the chief accretions he believes the author of the *Faustbuch* to have taken from several sources, to most of which reference has been made in this sketch. The *Confessions* of St. Augustine, and the references contained in them to the Manichaean Bishop Faustus, are held to have suggested, if not a kind of designed contrast throughout the course of the narrative, at least a pointed allusion to more than one Manichaean doctrine or notion—the eternity of matter, the ineptitude of marriage. Another source is thought discoverable in the stories concerning the Parisian scholar, Faustus Andrelinus, to whom the *Faustbuch* and his hero are supposed to owe features recalling the least respectable associations of the Latin Quarter. Particular passages may, in addition, have been suggested by the author's reading, such as it was. As a rule, his 'facts' in natural history, astronomy, and physiography seem to have come at second—or third—hand; mainly from M. (Meister) Elucidarius, 'a brief and merry review of all sorts of creatures of God,' printed at Frankfort in 1549, 1572, 1584, and 1589. This work was an enlargement of the *Lucidarius*, a popular encyclopaedia of 'science' arranged in the well-known question-and-answer

[1] See Kühne's Introduction, xviii–xx. This must be the 'Scoto' mentioned in Minucci's relation cited above, p. lxvii.

[2] In the essay in the *Preussische Jahrbücher*, already repeatedly cited.

Digitized by Google

form, and familiar to the households of Germany and other countries of the fifteenth century[1]. The dry data of the expeditions made by Faustus through the air may be a rude imitation of the aerial journey in Lucian[2]; but such geographical knowledge as is displayed in them is likewise thought to be traceable to contemporary sources easy of access[3]. He seems further to have put under contribution Agricola, Sebastian Brant, and the dictionary of Petrus Dasypodius[4].

These conjectures may be more or less exact. With regard to the most interesting among them, there can be no doubt but that, under various names, Manichaeanism lurked in much of the speculation of the later, as well as of the earlier, Middle Ages; nor was it only at Paris that in the Renascence age students led the lives of libertines. But Herman Grimm's general conception of the composite character of the *Faustbuch* is unmistakably sound, and supplies one more reason for the extraordinarily wide popularity to which this book and its story attained. This conception does not necessarily conflict with the fact that the tendency of the author or compiler is unmistakably one-sided, i.e. Lutheran[5].

The popularity of the *Faustbuch* was in 1593 interfered with by the publication of the *Wagnerbuch*—an imitation or continuation professing to give an account of the doings of Doctor Faustus' famulus Wagner, whose adventures were of course a mere copy or expansion of those of Doctor Faustus himself[6], the wonders of the New World being laid

The *Wagnerbuch*.

[1] See S. Szamatólski, *Kosmographisches aus dem Elucidarius*, in *Zu den Quellen des ältesten Faustbuches*, in *Vierteljahrschrift für Literaturgeschichte*, i. (1888) 161 seqq.

[2] In the *True History*, the first of a long line of 'true histories.'

[3] Cf. Hugo Hartmann, *Faust's Reisen*, in *Vierteljahrschrift*, &c., *u. s.*, 183–9.

[4] Cf. L. Fraenkel and A. Bauer, *Entlehnungen im ältesten Faustbuch*, in *Vierteljahrschrift*, &c., iv. (1891) 361 seqq.

[5] See Erich Schmidt in the *Goethe-Jahrbuch*, iii. 101 seqq., where the whole *Faustbuch* is admirably analysed. Some curious parallels are adduced (iii. 113 note) from Luther's *Tischreden*.

[6] Compare Wagner in notes on Dramatis Personae of *Doctor Faustus*.

Digitized by Google

The rhymed *Faust-buch.*

under contribution already in the first edition. Meanwhile, already in 1588 had appeared a rhymed version of the *Faust-buch*[1]. The earliest German popular ballads on the story of Faustus, including one which had a distinguished literary history, do not call for mention here, as not one of them can safely be ascribed to a century earlier than the eighteenth[2]. The supposition favoured by Simrock, that in Germany the subject had likewise at once been treated in a dramatic shape, seems to rest on a mistake[3]. A notice in the protocols of the Senate of the University of Tübingen, stating that by resolution of the Senate, dated April 18, 1587, the printer Hock and the '*autores* of the *historia Fausti*' were to be arrested, and that the '*autor comoediae nuper habitae*' was to be put in the *carcer* (university prison), was misread[4], so as to identify the comedy with the history. What the comedy was is unknown; the '*historia Fausti*' must have been the rhymed version of the *Faustbuch*, published by Alexander Hock at Tübingen early in 1588 (with the date 1587). Whether a non-extant Latin drama, '*Justi Placidii: Infelix prudentia*' (Leipzig, 1598) dealt with the story of Faustus, or some other theme of the same kind, is unknown[5]; and it is necessary to leave aside any mention of the seventeenth-century writers who treated one or more of the motives of the Faust story apart from its proper

Early plays on Faustus in Germany.

[1] Reprinted in Scheible's *Kloster*, xi. 1–211.

[2] The ballad which describes itself as 'a broadside from Cologne' was reprinted in the famous collection, *Des Knaben Wunderhorn*, by Arnim and Brentano, where it attracted the attention of Goethe, who briefly noticed it in the *Jenaische Allgemeine Litteratur-Zeitung*. This production, which introduces the figure of the Good Angel to be found in Marlowe, but neither in the *Faustbuch* nor in its English version, is printed in Scheible's *Kloster*, ii. 120–3. On the whole subject of the popular German lyric literature concerning Dr. Faustus, see A. Tille, *Die deutschen Volkslieder vom Doctor Faust* (Halle, 1890); and cf. the Frankfort Catalogue, pp. 30–1.

[3] See W. Creizenach, *Versuch einer Geschichte des Volksschauspiels vom Doctor Faust* (Halle, 1878), 34–6, and cf. Düntzer, *Zu Marlowe's Faust*, in *Anglia*, i. 44 seqq.

[4] By Mohl, *u. s.*, 57.

[5] See Creizenach, *u. s.*, 36–40. The title *Infelix Sapientia* was afterwards taken by a popular puppet-play on the story of Faustus.

Digitized by Google

framework[1]. No play on the subject of Faustus can be shown to have been produced on the German stage before the *Tragoedia von Dr. Faust*, acted by the 'English Comedians' at Dresden in 1626; and this was presumably Marlowe's[2]. From the latter part of the seventeenth century onwards, the story of Faust frequently appeared on the German stage—the first known instance being at Danzig in 1668, from which year we have the report of a performance recalling in its main features Marlowe and the *Faustbuch*[3]. Again, in 1696, 'German comedians' performed a 'terrible tragedy' of Doctor Faustus at Basel in 1696; and the comedians of the Elector of Bavaria represented the *Life of Dr. Faustus* at Nürnberg, in 1748 'with Hanns-Wurst,' and in 1752 'with Arlequin[4].' Out of these popular dramas arose in its turn that long succession of popular puppet-plays on the story of Faustus, which forms the most interesting series of a branch of the German popular drama deserving, for reasons which cannot here be detailed, the attention of all students of the history of dramatic literature or of the German national life[5]. Puppet-plays.

[1] See, however, Erich Schmidt, *Zur Vorgeschichte des Goetheschen Fausts*, iv, in *Goethe-Jahrbuch*, iv. (1883) 128 seqq., and *Zur Faustsage*, in *Zeitschrift für Deutsches Alterthum und Litteratur*, xxix. (1885), 100, as to Johann Valentine Andreae and his remarkable allegory *Turbo, sive moleste et frustra per cuncta divagans ingenium* (1601). In his dialogue *Institutio magica pro curiosis* Andreae actually introduces the name 'Mephistopholes.'

[2] See Creizenach, *u. s.*, 45. Cf. Cohn's *Shakespeare in Germany*, and Fleay's *Life of Shakespeare*, p. 310. I cannot pretend to have been seriously shaken in the view indicated above by the very elaborate argument of A. Bielschowsky, *Das Alter der Faustspiele*, in *Vierteljahrschrift*, &c., iv. (1891) 196 seqq., in favour of the assumption of an earlier German dramatic treatment of the study of Faust, conceived independently of Marlowe's tragedy and created in the shape of a play acted by the English Comedians in Germany.

[3] Ibid., 47.

[4] Cf. *Vierteljahrschrift*, &c., iv. (1891) 157–9. As to the popularity of the Faust-legend in Saxony and Silesia about the middle of the eighteenth century, see K. Burdach, *Zur Geschichte der Faustsage*, in *Vierteljahrschrift*, &c., i. (1888) 9 seqq., 290.

[5] For a history of this treatment of the Faust-legend, which possesses a special interest by reason of the impression made by it

Digitized by Google

Elaborations of the *Faustbuch*. Widmann, &c.

Meanwhile the legend of Faustus in its narrative form had courted a new class of readers in Germany, since in 1599 G. R. Widmann, a literary man of much learning (including a good deal that was useless and even, under the circumstances, pernicious) and an ardent Lutheran, had published his greatly enlarged version of the story, accompanied by a commentary replete with examples and precepts more or less directly suggested by the text. This didactic version of the story was, in 1674, unctuously elaborated by a doctor of medicine, J. N. Pfitzer, and a doctor of divinity, C. W. Platz; and their version again was condensed into a shorter and more popular form in 1725, by an author who called himself 'one of Christian purpose' ('ein Christlich Meynender'), under which demure designation he is known in the bibliography of the subject. This book is of importance, as the first smaller book on the Faust-legend in its most elaborate version, and as one which, together with its larger original, was read by Goethe in his youth[1]. It went through several editions, and is said still to be sold at fairs

upon Goethe in his youth, the reader must be referred to the work of W. Creizenach cited in a previous note, to the Introduction to C. Engel's *Das Volksschauspiel Doctor Johann Faust* (Oldenburg, 1874), where one of these plays is reprinted from the MS., and to Simrock's *Faust, Das Volksbuch und das Puppenspiel* (Frankfort-on-the-Maine, 1877). In this last the endeavour—for which few were qualified like Simrock—is made to restore the old puppet-play from memory and from the reports of others. An English version of the German puppet-play of *Doctor Faustus*, as performed at Dresden so late as 1844, was published in 1893 as No. I of the Mediaeval Legends Series. In an altered form the puppet-play of *Faustus* is said to be still performed on the most popular stages of this humble description. It notably survived, or till recently survived, about Vienna and elsewhere in the Austrian dominions. See an interesting paper in the Vienna *Neue Freie Presse*, September 13, 1890, *Doctor Faust in Tirol und Steiermark*, by A. Tille.

[1] Pfitzer's version, condensed by the 'Man of Christian Purpose,' contains in germ the episode of Gretchen. But it is also familiar to the more sophisticated audiences of the Reichshauptstadt on the Spree. See Lübke's elaborate article, *Die Berliner Fassung des Puppenspiels vom Doctor Faust*, in *Zeitschrift für deutsches Alterthum und deutsche Litteratur*, vol. xxxi. (1887) 105 seqq.

Digitized by Google

in Germany; and with it the growth of the popular legend as such in Germany may be held practically to close[1].

The *Faustbuch* and its story in other continental countries.

But from its native Germany the legend, as put into some sort of literary shape by the printer Spies in 1587, had with extraordinary rapidity passed into the popular literature of other countries. A Low-German version had appeared at Lübeck in 1588; and thus it was easy for a Dutch translation to follow in 1592, which contains no additions of note except a characteristic precision in the matter of dates—informing the reader, for instance, that the Evil One carried off Faustus in the night from the 23rd to the 24th of October, 1538, between the hours of 12 and 1 a.m. A close French translation had been put forth already in 1589 by Victor Palma Cayet, whose end, according to tradition, was the same as that of Doctor Faustus himself[2]. There seems a trace, though an uncertain one, of the existence, in Holberg's day, of a popular version of the legend on the Danish stage: on the other hand, there can be little doubt that the Polish story of Twardowski, already noticed, was elaborated with the help of the German *Faustbuch*. A Czechish puppet-play on the subject is also mentioned, but without a date[3]. The *Wagnerbuch* was in its turn translated and adapted in several Dutch editions, the interest excited by it in the Netherlands doubtless arising from the circumstances that it professed to be by a Spanish author, and that the scene of its adventures was mostly laid in Spain. In France, Wagner never attained to a similar popularity.

[1] For a list of some narrative versions of the story of *Doctor Faustus*, current in Germany in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, see the Frankfort Catalogue. It begins with two books concerning his doings with Marshal Luxembourg (see *ante*, liii-iv, and note.

[2] For a series of seventeenth-century editions of the French *Histoire Prodigieuse et Lamentable de Jean Fauste*, and of other foreign versions of the story, see the Frankfort Catalogue.

[3] The Bohemian puppet-play, translated and discussed by E. Kraus (*u. s.*), is concluded by him to have been based upon a German original, itself a revision, acted at Prague in the last quarter of the seventeenth century.

Digitized by Google

The story of Faustus in England.

Date of Marlowe's tragedy. External evidence.

At last we come to what for us possesses a more direct importance, the English versions of the legend of Doctor Faustus; among which it will be convenient to mention first Marlowe's tragedy itself. Now, though the earliest extant edition of this tragedy is the quarto of 1604, we find the following entry in the Registers of the Stationers' Company of London under the date of January 7, 1600—i. e. 1601 N. S.:

'7 Januarij

Thomas Bushell Entred for his copye under the handes of master Doctor BARLOWE and the Wardens a booke called *the plaie of Doctor FAUSTUS*[1].

And between six and seven years before this, under the date of September 30, 1594, we find in Henslowe's *Diary*[2] the first of a long series of notices of his share of receipts from this play. The first notice is a remarkable one, for it appears that Henslowe on this occasion

'R[d] at Doctor Fostose . . . . iij[li] xjj[s],

being the largest sum except one which, so far as I have observed, Henslowe ever notes as received by him as his share after a performance[3]. Between this date and the end of October, 1597, Henslowe has not less than twenty-three notices of receipts 'at *Doctor Faustus*,' most of which attest the popularity of the play, though by December, 1596, the receipts sink to 'ix[s],' and by the January following to 'v[s],' till one more repetition—in October—appears to have brought in nothing at all. Henslowe's entries begin as far back as February, 1592 (N. S.), when the first play entered is 'fryer bacone.' But *Doctor Faustus*, having in all probability been written for the Lord Admiral's company[4], with which so far as is known Henslowe did not become connected till the summer of 1594, is not mentioned by him as acted before

[1] See Arber's *Transcript of the Stationers' Registers*, iii. 67 *b*.

[2] Collier's edition, 42.

[3] Oddly enough, 'the taner of Denmarke,' on account of which Henslowe, on May 23, 1592, received 'iij[li] xiij[s] vj[d]' as his share, and which he marks as a new play, does not appear to have been repeated. *Tamburlaine* brings in good sums on several occasions.

[4] See Fleay's *Life of Shakespeare*, p. 97.

Digitized by Google

September 30 of that year, and the amount of the receipts on this occasion certainly points to the performance having proved specially attractive. Henslowe does not, however, append to his mention of it the letters *ne* (new), as he usually does in the case of plays performed for the first time; and it is in itself quite unlikely, even supposing *Doctor Faustus* not to have been brought out in Marlowe's lifetime, that an unacted posthumous play by him should not have been performed till more than a year after his death, which occurred on June 1, 1593. The conjecture is therefore not hazardous, that Henslowe and his company took advantage of the notoriety which that death had attracted to 'revive,' together with other plays by the same author[1], a play which had for some time previously remained unacted, and which was not yet on sale as a book; and that it was already on this occasion—in September, 1594—produced with additions from other hands. Certainly, the reference to Doctor Lopez (xi. 46) would have been specially effective in September, 1594, as he had been executed not longer ago than the previous June for having conspired to poison the Queen[2]; and the passage could not have been written at a much earlier date. Again, since a series of passages and phrases occur in the old *Taming of a Shrew* (a play entered in the Stationers' Registers in 1594, and very probably produced on the stage before August 23, 1589[3]), which imitated certain other passages and phrases to be found in the quarto of *Doctor Faustus* of 1604, this would show that Marlowe's play was on the stage by 1594 certainly, and in all probability by 1589. For the contrary assumption, that the passages in question, and those in *Tamburlaine* which resemble others in the old *Taming of a Shrew*, were imitated by Marlowe from that work, seems too preposterous to require discussion. It remains, on the other hand, pos-

The performance in September, 1594, probably a revival.

[1] *The Jew of Malta*, *The Massacre of Paris*, *Tamburlaine*. See Henslowe's *Diary*, pp. 35–42.

[2] See note on the passage in *Doctor Faustus* (xi. 46).

[3] i.e. before the entry on the Registers of Greene's *Menaphon*; cf. Fleay, *Life of Shakespeare*, pp. 99–100.



Digitized by Google

sible that certain comic passages which formed part of the earliest additions to *Doctor Faustus* were so imitated; but this, as shown by Mr. Fleay, could hardly have been done after it had, in 1589, been satirised by Greene and Nash for its plagiarisms from plays produced by the Admiral's men[1].

*The Ballad of Doctor Faustus.*

This would not in itself necessarily take us very far back[2]. But already in the year 1589 there occurs another entry in the Stationers' Registers, dated 'ultimo die Februarij' (O. S. 1588):

'Ric. Jones Allowed vnto him for his Copie, A ballad of the life and deathe of Doctor *FFAUSTUS* the great Cunngerer. Allowed vnder the hand of the Bishop of

[1] See below, Appendix A, *ad finem*. Cf. as to the resemblances in *Tamburlaine*, Dyce, *Some Account of Marlowe and his Writings*, li-liii; and see Professor Brown *ap.* Grosart, *Introduction to Greene's Works*, I. xv.—The parallelisms between the old *Taming of a Shrew* and *Doctor Faustus*, several of which had been previously pointed out, have been brought together by Professor Logeman in a convincing note to sc. iv. of *Doctor Faustus*, which has led me to rewrite the whole of this passage of my Introduction. The most important of these, which it is not possible to cite in the compass of a single note, are pointed out below in the notes on iii. 1, xiii. 91 (and on Opening Chorus, 21); also on sc. iv, on xi. 73, and iv. 41; while a coincidence of phrases is mentioned in the notes on i. 81, ix. 2, and xiii. 92. It should be added that, as already pointed out by Dyce, the line in the 1616 quarto of *Doctor Faustus*,

'Or hew'd this flesh and blood as small as sand,'

recalls one in the old *Taming of a Shrew* (p. 205)—

'And hew'd thee smaller than the Libian sands';

and that the repeated use in the latter of the epithet 'chrystalline,' as applied to the heavens, seems to recall the *coelum cristallinum* mentioned by Faustus in the former (sc. vi).

[2] In the Introduction to his recent edition of Mountford's *Life and Death of Doctor Faustus*, p. xix, O. Francke quotes a passage from '*Four letters, and certaine sonnets*: especially touching Robert Greene and other parties by him abused in London 1592,' where Greene is ridiculed as 'having searched every corner of his Grammar-schoole witte (for his margine is as deeplie learned as Fauste precor gelida).' This is certainly an allusion, in 1592, either to Marlowe's play, or, far less probably, to the story-book. The words 'precor gelida' puzzle Dr. Francke; are they peradventure taken from the fifth eclogue of Baptist Mantuan (which was translated by Barclay)?

Digitized by Google

> LONDON, and master warden Denhams hand beinge to the copie . . . vj$^{d}$.'[1]

There is, of course, nothing to *prove* that the ballad referred to in this entry was later in date than Marlowe's play, on which it *need* not have been founded. For there are certain discrepancies between the form in which the ballad has been preserved and the tragedy—though I think too much importance has been attached to these differences; and it is quite clear that the writer of the ballad in its existing form was acquainted with the English translation of the *Faustbuch*[2]. But, whether or not the ballad entered in 1589 was identical with that which we now have, it is certainly more *probable* that it should have been founded on the play than vice versa. The usual process of the Elizabethan age was no doubt for dramas to be founded on favourite stories, and for popular ballads or other brief treatments of the kind to summarize the incidents and morals of favourite plays[3]; and such was probably also the order of sequence in the present instance, though the ballad-writer also refreshed his remembrance of the prose story.

Internal evidence as to the date of Marlowe tragedy.

This would place the probable date of the first performance of Marlowe's tragedy some time before February, 1589, and very possibly in 1588, by which year *Tamburlaine* had cer-

[1] Arber's transcript, ii. 241 *b*.

[2] The ballad makes Faustus to be born at 'Wittenburge,' and not at 'Rhodes'; and 'of good degree,' instead of 'of parents base of stock.' It likewise, herein following the English *History*, states him to have been brought up by his 'uncle,' who left him 'all his wealth,' instead of 'chiefly by kinsmen.' But it takes its own course in representing Faustus as unrepentant till his end; while it designates as his sole motive for entering into the compact the desire 'to live in peace' (i.e. pleasure); and omits one of the principal features in the tragedy, the episode of Helen. See Wagner's Introduction, xxiii–xxvi; and cf. Logeman, p. 141, where one or two close correspondences of phrase with the English *History* are noted. See also Zarncke, *Das Englische Volksbuch vom Doctor Faust*, in *Anglia*, ix. (1886) 610–1.

[3] Compare Dyce's Introduction, xxii, xx. Thus the ballad of *The murtherous life and terrible deathe of the rich Jew of Malta* is entered May 16, 1594 (Arber's transcript, ii. 307).



Digitized by Google

tainly been performed[1]. Such internal evidence as the play of *Doctor Faustus* furnishes is in accordance with this assumption. This conclusion agrees with that at which Mr. Fleay has arrived by a combination of arguments which he has kindly permitted me to publish in his own words in an Appendix to this Introduction[2]. It has been pointed out with some force[3] that the reference to the Prince of Parma as the oppressor of the Netherlands (i. 91), assuming it, as there is no reason to doubt, to have formed part of the original text, would best suit the time when 'this Prince's hand was still lying heavy upon them,' viz. before 1590, in which year his attention began to be principally turned to France, and at all events before his death in December, 1592. On the other hand, the reference to the destruction of the Antwerp bridge (i. 94) shows that the play must have been written *after* the spring of 1585. The same critic who makes the above suggestion seeks an allusion in the passage (i. 80–3),

'I'll have them fly to India for gold,' &c.,

to the entertainment given by Thomas Cavendish to Queen Elizabeth on shipboard after his return in the autumn of 1588[4] from his voyage round the world; and such may possibly be the case, though the passage does not require to be interpreted as containing any special allusion. It is of more importance that the evidence of versification points to *Doctor Faustus* having been the play composed by Marlowe next after *Tamburlaine*. Collier has shown[5] how the habit of 'terminating nearly all the lines with monosyllables,' and letting 'each line run as if a rhyme were wanting' (so that, it may be added, the verse occasionally, as it were, slips into rhyme[6]), is exchanged for greater variety of endings to

[1] See Collier, *History of English Dramatic Poetry*, iii. 108–12.

[2] See Appendix A.

[3] By Dr. J. H. Albers, in an article on Marlowe's *Faustus* in the *Jahrbuch für romanische und englische Sprache und Literatur, Neue Folge*, vol. iii. (1876).

[4] Not 1587, as Albers gives the date. Cavendish was said to have amassed wealth sufficient 'to buy a fair earldom.'

[5] *u. s.*, iii. 129–31.

[6] See v. 86–7, 89–90.

Digitized by Google

the lines in the middle, and for still greater towards the conclusion of the tragedy; and that, though of course it is impossible to speak decisively in the case of a play which we have in a form that has undergone so many alterations, the appearance is as if the poet had 'improved his blank-verse as he proceeded.' I think that in *Edward II*, which is clearly one of Marlowe's latest works, the versification may fairly be described as freer throughout; and the number of double-endings in that play is twice as great as that in either Part of *Tamburlaine*, and much further exceeds that in *Doctor Faustus*[1].

The English *History of Doctor Faustus.*

There is no external evidence, then, to show that either before or in 1589 any literary materials were in existence of which Marlowe could have availed himself in the composition of his tragedy, except the editions which had already appeared of the German *Faustbuch*. At the same time no doubt can be said to remain that he made full use of an early edition of the English translation of the German book, which very speedily made its appearance. Now, the earliest extant edition of '*The History of the Damnable Life and deserved Death of Doctor Johann Faustus*: Newly Printed and in convenient Places impertinent Matter amended, according to the true Copy, Printed at Frankfort; and translated into English, by P. F. Gent,' was printed at London, by T. Orwin for Edw. White, in 1592[2]. As, how-

[1] See the table in Mr. Fleay's edition of *Edward II*.

[2] A copy of this is in the British Museum. The translator's initials are given as 'P. R.' and 'P. K.' in some later editions. It is 'P. R.' in that printed by R. C. Brown, and used by Thoms for the reprint in vol. iii of his *Early Prose Romances*, 1828. Cf. Logeman, *The English Faust-Book of* 1592, Introduction, p. ix; see also *Marlowe's Works*, edited by A. H. Bullen, vol. i, Introduction, p. xxv, and the second edition of Thoms' *Early English Prose Romances*, iii. 159. Of the three copies in the Bodleian, as I am obligingly informed, one printed by Edward All-de for Edward White, 1618, gives the translator's initials as P. F.; the two others, both printed by C. Brown for M. Hotham, *s. d.*, as P. R. Thoms, in his first edition, mentions an edition of the English *History* of 1626; Dyce's quotations are from that of 1648. Logeman's conjectures as to the identity of the translator are avowedly futile.

Digitized by Google

ever, the expressions 'newly printed' and 'amended' imply[1], the book bearing this title is itself a reprint; there are, moreover, indications in a later edition[2] that it was reprinted from an earlier text. But, most unfortunately, we are without satisfactory evidence as to the date when this original edition of the English translation was issued. No entry of it is to be found in the Stationers' Registers[3]. There is at the same time no prima facie probability in favour of the English translation having been considerably later in date than the German *editio princeps* of 1587; while there remains no reasonable doubt that it was, in any case, made before February 28, 1589, when the *Ballad of Doctor Faustus* was entered in the Registers. The supposition that the compiler of the English *History of Doctor Faustus* had the play before his eyes, or passages from it in his memory, seems a conjecture both *a priori* unlikely, and supported by no special arguments on which it would be worth while to dwell[4]. Furthermore, there seems no

[1] *pace* Düntzer in *Anglia*, i. 47, who thinks it means 'recently.'

[2] viz. that used by Thoms. Cf. Logeman, *u. s.*, pp. xvi, 148 *et al.*

[3] In a note to his edition of Henslowe's *Diary*, p. 42, Collier states the book to have been entered on the Stationers' Registers in 1588; and Mr. Fleay suggests the possibility of a leaf having been abstracted from these.

[4] Wagner, who inclined to this view, thought that certain passages in the English *History* pointed to the translator having made use of the tragedy. The passages on which he relied are those describing Vergil's tomb and the grotto of Posilippo (vii. 13–5), and the Castle of St. Angelo at Rome (ibid., 37–43), which have their proper parallels in the *History*, but to which there is nothing to correspond in the *Faustbuch*. But Th. Delius, *Marlowe's Faustus und seine Quelle* (Bielefeld, 1881), pp. 7–9, has conclusively shown that the chapters (xxii and xxiii) in the English *History* which describe the journeys of Faustus through the world are an expanded and elaborated version of the German original, and contains additional touches which do not occur in the play, e. g. 'the windmill that stood in the water' at Naples; whereas the play contains none that are wanting in the *History* (unless it be vii. 8, which can hardly be considered far-fetched). Whence the English translator derived the body of his additions, has not been discovered. But, as Logeman points out, they can hardly have been the fruit of his own continental travels. They include misstatements, such as that of Carolus Magnus having built the Campo Santo at Rome, and stories of a cock and a bull,

Digitized by Google

reason for concluding the English translation to have been based upon any later edition of the German original than the *editio princeps*, or the pirated edition of 1587, or the reprint of 1588. The arrangement of chapters, though they are slightly reduced in number (from sixty-eight to sixty-two), is substantially the same in the English version as in the German original[1]; and the English *History* does not include the six chapters (lii–lvii) which were added to the *Faustbuch* in the edition of 1590.

At the same time there are certain differences of detail between the German and the English books. These differences it would be impossible to exhibit here with completeness; yet nothing short of a minute comparison can justify the expression of a definite opinion on the question, as to whether the play with which we are specially concerned was based upon the German *Faustbuch* or upon its English version; or, for this third supposition is prima facie by no means unreasonable, upon both the one and the other. This question has been argued with great acuteness, and much energy, by several scholars[2]; and I think can no longer be regarded as open. The internal evidence in favour of the conclusion that Marlowe's play, in the form in which it was printed in 1604, was founded directly on the English *History*

like that of the Brazen Virgin acting as public executioner of naughty children on the bridge at Breslau.

[1] The statements of Delius to this effect, *u. s.*, pp. 5–6, appear on verification to be essentially correct.

[2] Notably by Erich Schmidt, *Marlowe's Faust und sein Verhältniss zu den deutschen und englischen Faustbüchern in Lemcke's Jahrbuch für romanische und englische Sprache und Literatur, Neue Folge*, ii. 42–62 (1875); by Düntzer, *Zu Marlowe's Faust*, in *Anglia*, i. 44–54 (1878); by the late Professor Wagner, *Zu Marlowe's Faustus*, ibid., ii. 308–13 (1879); and, more recently, by Th. Delius in the very able doctor's disputation already cited (1881), by Mr. E. W. Pantin, and by Professor H. Logeman, in *Faustus-Notes*, Ghent, 1898; which last publication seems to me to exhaust all the issues of the controversy. I have freely used the researches of these writers for my statements. I have not seen Münch's essay on the internal relation of Marlowe's *Doctor Faustus* to the *Faustbuch* (Bonn, 1879), which is praised by M. Koch, *Zerstreute Bemerkungen zu M.'s Faust*, in *Shakespeare-Jahrbuch*, xxi. (1886).

Digitized by Google

*of Doctor Faustus* appears to me finally established. To begin with, there is the verbal coincidence between one most salient passage in the play, occurring in the contract with Mephistophilis, and the text of the *History*, which I agree with Mr. Bullen[1] in thinking too striking to be merely accidental. Indeed, the entire arrangement and sequence of the articles in the contract are those adopted in the English, but not in the German, story-book. Other minor points of agreement are noticeable between the *History* and the play, which are wanting in the *Faustbuch*; above all, the account given by Faustus of his Italian travels contains descriptive passages concerning Naples and Rome, of which the originals are to be found in the English, but not in the German, narrative[2]. Furthermore, resemblances

[1] *Marlowe's Works*, vol. i, Introduction, p. xxxvi. The passage in question is the third article of the contract (v. 99–100), where the *History*, in the edition of 1592, reads: 'That Mephistophiles should bring him anything, and doo for him whatsoever.' Only a much later edition, as Dyce pointed out, adds 'he desireth.'

[2] It is due to Mr. W. E. Pantin (see his letter in *The Academy*, June 25, 1887), to acknowledge that he first fully set forth the points of agreement between Marlowe and the English *History*, as distinct from the German. I had previously noticed that the epithet 'sumptuous' in the *History* (chapter xxii) is applied to St. Mark's at Venice, and in the play (vii. 16) to a 'temple' in 'Venice, Padua,' or 'the rest'; in the *Faustbuch* there is no such epithet. In the play (ibid., 5) the town of Trier is described as—

'Not to be won by any conquering *prince*;'

the *History* declares it 'impossible for any *prince's* power to win it'; in the *Faustbuch* it is said that 'they have to fear no foe.' In the play (ibid., 7) the river Maine 'falls' into the Rhine as in the *History*, instead of 'flowing' into it as in the *Faustbuch*; and the description of the streets of Naples (ibid., 11) likewise comes 'straight forth' from the *History*, without there being any equivalent in the *Faustbuch*. See also note 1 to p. lxviii *ante*. In the *History* (chapter xix) Lucifer says that he and his companions have come from hell to show Faustus some pastime; cf. the line in the play (vi. 104), to which there is nothing to correspond in the *Faustbuch*. Mr. Pantin further observes in the English *History*, as in the play (xiii. 18), but not in the German book, Faustus addresses as his friends the students before whom he is about to produce the apparition of Helen; and, again, that in the scene with the Pope the latter in the German book is without a guest; in the English *History*, as in the play, he entertains a cardinal.

Digitized by Google

of phraseology between corresponding passages in the play and in the *History* have been noted which it is difficult to attribute to chance; though as a matter of course no such close similitude could ordinarily have been expected in the corresponding German passages[1]. To this evidence the advocates of the theory which holds the play to have been based directly upon the German *Faustbuch*, have nothing to oppose, that will bear the test of close inquiry[2].

Mr. Pantin, by the way, has overlooked the circumstance, that the line

'Roof'd aloft with curious work in gold'

first occurs in the quarto of 1616.

[1] Compare, for instance, the Emperor's speech (x. 1 seqq.) with the *History* (ch. xxix) and the *Faustbuch* (ch. xxxiii). Thus, in the play (v. 104) as in the English *History*, Faustus gives 'body and soul' to the Evil One. Again in the play (vii. 84), as in the *History*, the Pope's curse has the idiomatic accompaniment of 'with bell, book, and candle.' (Pantin.)

[2] In the play (vii. 2) Faustus speaks of himself as having

'Pass'd with delight the stately town of *Trier*,'

just as in the *Faustbuch* (ch. xxvi) he visits 'the neighbourhood of Trier.' In the corresponding passage of a later edition or editions of the English *History*, used by Thoms for his reprint of 1827 in vol. iii of the *Collection of Early Prose Romances*, the town is called not even Treves, but *Trent*; the discrepancy however loses its significance, since Logeman pointed out that the reading in the 1592 edition is *Treir*. So again, the magnificent lines of xiv. 83–7, expanding, or rather recasting, a passage in the *Faustbuch*, are without an *analogon* in the later edition of the *History* from which the same reprint was made; but the words 'Would God that I knew where to hide me, or into what place to creep or fly,' occur in a chapter (lx) to be found in the 1592 edition. The incident of Faustus eating the load of hay, which occurs in the German *Faustbuch* (ch. xl), has been erroneously supposed not to occur in the English *History*, of which however it forms a chapter (xxxv in Thoms' version). Moreover, the scene in which this incident is introduced occurs neither in the quarto edition of the play of 1604, nor in that of 1609, while it appears in that of 1616, and was therefore manifestly a later addition to the drama. I find that Bodin in his *Opinionum Joannis Wieri Confutatio* tells the story of Simon Magus, who, in the presence of the Emperor Nero, 'currum onustum foeno cum equis et agitatore coram toto populo absorbebat' (p. 463 in the Basel edition, 1583). Logeman has noted one or two

Digitized by Google

The English *History* the main source of the first extant edition of the play.

On the whole, in the absence of any evidence as to the date of publication of the English *History*, beyond the fact that it was reprinted in 1592[1], it would perhaps be unsafe to set down as an absolutely certain fact that this particular edition of the English version of the *Faustbuch* was in Marlowe's hands when he was engaged upon *Doctor Faustus*. But the conclusion that the play, as we have it in its earliest known edition, was composed mainly with the aid of the English *History*, may be regarded as established. To summarize the matter with Logeman in a few words, Marlowe's use of the English *History* was occasional rather than continuous; and though in certain passages, as will be seen by a comparison of text and notes, he copied the narrative as closely as Shakespeare copied his English *Plutarch*, the identity of particular words or verbal forms is rare[2]. That Marlowe was acquainted with the German *Faustbuch* itself remains perfectly possible, and by no means unlikely. In the absence, however, of any direct proof of this supposition, it would be useless to recur to speculations based on the assumption that portions of the play were founded upon the *Faustbuch*, and others upon the English *History*[3].

As to the German *Faustbuch*, it may well have been

trifling correspondences between the *Faustbuch* and the play, of which he magnanimously makes a present to the opponents of his view; but they are not worth repeating.

[1] I cannot see how a certainty that the English *History* was not published before 1592 can be deduced, as Wagner and Th. Delius seem to think it must, from Thoms (2nd edition), iii. 159. In fact, Thoms says the direct contrary.

[2] One of these is the form 'Rhodes' (for 'Roda,' represented in the *Faustbuch* by 'Rod,' which illustrates a favourite perversity of English popular spelling (cf. 'rhodomontade'). See also notes to iii. 19 and vi. 104.

[3] Of course such speculations would have a very great interest, could they be made to subserve a demonstration such as that attempted by Mr. Fleay in the Appendix (A) with which he has favoured me, that parts of the 1604 *Doctor Faustus* were all Marlowe's, and parts are written by another hand (as he thinks, Dekker's). Th. Delius has made such an attempt, and his results are on the whole not dissimilar from Fleay's, though Delius makes havoc of the last, and most powerful, scene of the play.

Digitized by Google

brought over to England in one of its early editions by some person or persons who had travelled in Germany[1], and through them, in its original shape or in that of a manuscript English translation, have come into the hands of 'P. F.,' or whoever was the 'gentleman' who wrote the English *History*, or for that matter, into the hands of Marlowe himself. He can hardly have been abroad as late as 1587. Who, then, were the possible person or persons in question? It has been happily conjectured by van der Velde[2]—and the conjecture is adopted by Professor Wagner[3]—that they were English comedians who had performed in Germany before the year 1588. In a work[4] of which the interest and importance for the study of the English as well as of the German drama have been generally recognized, Mr. A. Cohn has shown that on October 16, 1586, Duke Christian of Saxony appointed five Englishmen 'fiddlers and instrumentalists to play music and exhibit their art in "leaping and other graceful things that they have learnt"'; and that this company of comedians included the names, afterwards well known in the annals of the English stage, of Thomas Pope and George Bryan. They had belonged to the Earl of Leicester's company, and by him been recommended to

The English comedians in Germany and the Netherlands, as possible intermediaries.

[1] On reflexion, I think it best to abstain from complicating an already sufficiently difficult question by the suggestion, advanced by me in my first edition, that the corruption of the name of the Duke of Anhalt (correctly spelled thus in the *Faustbuch*, and 'Anholt' in the English *History*) into 'Vanholt' points to some Dutch manipulation of the story before it was dramatized in England. No doubt the English actors on their way back from Germany might have passed through the Netherlands, where the Faust-legend was sooner or later well known; but, as Mr. Bullen says, it is unsafe to build on foundations so slender. There is no real difficulty in explaining the corruption 'Vanholt' in a less ambitious way. Mr. Fleay thinks it may have been the result of a mere piece of sound-catching (Duke of Vanholt); a correspondent, whose letter I have unfortunately mislaid, thinks it may have arisen from the common German abbreviation 'v.' (=von) 'Anhalt,' or 'Anholt.'

[2] Marlowe's *Faust* (German translation), Introduction, 23.

[3] Introduction, xxxi.

[4] *Shakespeare in Germany in the XVIth and XVIIth Centuries*, xxv-xxvii.

Digitized by Google

the service of King Frederick II of Denmark, whence they were transferred into that of the Duke of Saxony[1]. Mr. Cohn considers that this Thomas Pope was beyond all reasonable doubt the only actor of that name known to us as belonging to this period—the same Thomas Pope who was afterwards the associate of Shakespeare, and who in 1594 took part in Tarleton's revived play of the Second Part of *The Seven Deadly Sins*, which has a special interest for us in connexion with Marlowe's tragedy[2]. 'The above-mentioned Englishmen,' he continues, 'are not met with again in the Dresden Archives after 1586, though other "Jumpers and Dancers" are named at a later period, as e.g. in 1588.' It therefore appears that these Englishmen quitted the Saxon service about 1587, and returned to England. Here we have a link suggested between Marlowe and Germany, and a way in which he might have conceivably become acquainted with the German *Faustbuch* in the very year of its first publication, or in that immediately succeeding it.

The existence of any German Faust-drama before Marlowe's not proved.

The *Faustbuch*, then—but so far as is actually demonstrable, entirely through the medium of a very early English version of it—must be regarded as the source of the tragedy of *Doctor Faustus*. For Marlowe's play cannot reasonably be supposed to have had a model in any German drama, since there is no sufficient reason for assuming that any such existed at so early a date. A weighty authority—Simrock[3]—has indeed held it probable that some such German play existed and was known to Marlowe, who elaborated his tragedy out of it with the help of the *Faustbuch*, and this hypothesis has since been revived[4]. The essential point which Marlowe's tragedy has in common with the puppet-plays, based on an early German drama or dramas, is to be found, as Simrock says, in the apparitions

[1] Cf. Fleay's *Life of Shakespeare*, p. 93.

[2] See sc. vi; and compare *The Seven Deadly Sins* in notes on Dramatis Personae of *Doctor Faustus*.

[3] *u. s.*, 224–7.

[4] Quite recently by Dr. Bruinier, in the *Zeitschrift für Deutsche Philologie*, vols. xxix and xxx. See Logeman, *u. s.*, pp. 144 seqq.

Digitized by Google

of the Good and the Evil Angel—allegorical figures familiar to German legend, but not appearing in the story-book. I cannot think this parallelism, striking as it is, sufficient to make us look for the original of Marlowe's tragedy in an unknown German drama, of which the very existence rests on pure conjecture[1]. To the *Faustbuch* his debt is in any case undeniable. Before making the extracts necessary for rendering patent this fact, it will however be convenient to complete the data as to the history of the legend of *Doctor Faustus* in our Elizabethan literature, by stating that in 1594 was published in London, where it had been entered on the Stationers' Registers, November 16, 1593, '*The Second Report of Dr. John Faustus, containing his appearances and the deeds of Wagner.* Written by an English Gentleman student in Wittenberg an Vniuersity of Germany in Saxony. Published for the delight of all those who desire Nouelties by a frend of the same Gentleman[2].' This English version of the *Wagnerbuch* is preceded by a preface 'unto them which would know the Trueth,' in which they are apprised of some remarkable instances in support of the fact that Faustus was a real man. 'First, there is yet remaining the ruins of his house not farre from Melanchthon's at Wittenberg. Secondly, there is his tree, a great hollow Tree wherein he vsed to read Nigromancy to his schollers, not farre from the towne in a very remote place.... Next, his tomb at Mars Temple a three miles beyond the cittie, upon which is written on a Marble stone by his owne hand this Epitaph, which is somewhat old by reason of his small skill in graving:—

The English Wagner-book.

'Hic iaceo Iohannes Faustus, Doctor diuini iuris indignissimus, qui pro amore magiae Diabolicae scientiae vanissimè cecidi ab amore Dei: O Lector pro me miserrimo damnato nomine ne

[1] Herman Grimm, who has constructed the scheme of such a drama, discreetly declines to give an opinion on the question, whether a play of the kind was actually in existence before the *Faustbuch*, *u. s.*, p. 462.—The 'Tragedy of Doctor Faustus seen in the Air,' described in chapter viii of the *Second Report*, is of course a purely imaginary production.

[2] This publication, of which there is a copy in the Bodleian Library, is reprinted by Thoms, *u. s.*, vol. iii.

Digitized by Google

preceris, nam preces non iuvant quem Deus condemnavit: O pie Christiane memento mei, et saltem vnam pro infiducia mea lachrymulam exprime, et cui non potes mederi, eius miserere, et ipse cave.'

The Stone was found in his Study, and his wil was fulfilled, and he lieth betwixt a heap of three and thirty fir trees in the foot of the Hill in a great hole where this is erected.'

For further testimony to convince the incredulous, he repeats (including their manifest errors) the statements of Wierus; and with this circumstantial evidence conscientiously tendered by an Englishman, scorning, like others of his countrymen, to see with any eyes but his own, I must close my imperfect sketch of the early history of the Faust-legend. Later English translations of German magical works attributed to Faustus have no more significance for the present purpose than their German originals.

The following are the passages in the 1592 edition of the *Historie of the damnable life and deserved death of Doctor John Faustus* (here reprinted from the text of Professor Logeman's recent edition[1]), the parallels to which in the play of *Doctor Faustus* will be immediately recognized. As it would be tedious to print both the original and the translation side by side or in sequence at length; and as the English *History* was demonstrably the direct source of Marlowe's play, I have contented myself with occasional references to the arrangement or phraseology of the German *Faustbuch*. It may be noticed that the *Faustbuch* mentions 'Rod,' the English *History* 'Rhode,' and the play 'Rhodes' as the birthplace of the magician. This is Roda in the Duchy of Saxe-Altenburg, situate between the towns of Jena and Gera, and correctly described by the English *History* as

Discrepancies as to localities between the *Faustbuch*, the English *History*, Marlowe, and other authorities.

[1] *The English Faust-Book of* 1592, edited with an Introduction and Notes by H. Logeman, &c. (Ghent and Amsterdam, 1900). In his Introduction, Professor Logeman 'states emphatically, that if his text proves faultless, it is owing to the great pains taken over it by Miss H. A. Andrews and her friend, Miss L. Taylor,' who generously placed at his disposal a type-written copy of their type-written transcript of the text, and furthermore carefully collated with the latter his proofs. Under these circumstances I have contented myself with a careful personal comparison of his printed text with that of the quarto in the British Museum.

Digitized by Google

'lying in the Province of Weimer,' inasmuch as it was not till 1573 that a partition took place between the Altenburg and Weimar lands, which were alike included in those secured to the Ernestine line by the new Elector Maurice in 1547. Widmann gives Anhalt as the country of Faustus' birth, and the mark Sondwedel, i.e. Salzwedel, as the place of his parents' abode. But we have seen that the older and contemporary authorities stated him to have been born at Knüttlingen, i.e. Knittlingen—or, as several of them, following Manlius' report of Melanchthon's discourse, misspelt the name, 'Kundling'—in Württemberg[1]. The connexion of Faustus with Wittenberg led to a confusion between the names of the South-German duchy and of the Saxon university town by Marlowe or the transcribers of his play, in the first extant edition of which Wittenberg is called 'Wertenberg' or 'Wertenberge[2].' I have seen no reason for retaining this error in the text of the play, as it could only lead to confusion. Again, in both the German *Faustbuch* and its English version, as well as in Marlowe, the student-life of Faustus is passed at Wittenberg only; Widmann makes him study at Ingolstadt, a South-German university of transient celebrity, where Reuchlin was professor. In the German *Faustbuch*, the summoning of the Devil (who is not here called Mephistophiles till his second colloquy with Faustus in chapter iv) takes place in a thick wood near Wittenberg, called 'der Spesser Wald'; and the conjuring of Mephistophiles in the English *History* is likewise localized in 'a thick wood, called in the German tongue Spisser Waldt, that is in English the Spissers Wood[3].' This wood, the 'solitary grove' of the play, has been held to be identifiable with a kind of *bosquet* near Wittenberg called the 'Specke,' a locality where Luther

[1] According to the Second Report, in Silesia.

[2] Cf. Wagner, Introduction, p. xi, as corrected by Proescholdt. Oddly enough, the converse blunder occurs in R. Scot's *Discovery of Witchcraft*, bk. vi, ch. iv (edition of 1654): 'Wierus telleth a notable story.... There was (saith he) in the dukedom of *Wittneberge*, not far from *Tubing*, a butcher, &c.

[3] In Thoms: 'Called in the German tongue, Spisser Holt, that is in English, the Spisser's Wood,' probably the correct reading.

Digitized by Google

is known to have taken his exercise[1]. Lastly, in the German as well as in the English *Faust-book*, 'the village called Rimlich, half a mile from Wittenberg,' and in Marlowe Wittenberg itself, is the scene of Faustus' death; according to Melanchthon it occurred in a village of Faustus' native country (Württemberg). Other places contended for the notoriety of having seen the last of the famous sorcerer—among them another village near Wittenberg called Praten, the castle of Wærdenberg, and the towns Maulbronn and Cologne. The rest of the geography of the *Faustbuch*, the English *History*, and the play, may be left to incidental comment, or must account for themselves[2].

Extracts from the English *History of Doctor Faustus.*

CHAPTER I. *Of Doctor Faustus' parentage and birth.* John Faustus, born in the town of Rhode, lying in the province of Weimer in Germ[any], his father a poor husbandman and not [able] well to bring him up; but having an uncle at Wittenberg, a rich man and without issue, took this J. Faustus from his father, and made him his heir; insomuch that his father was no more troubled with him, for he remained with his uncle[3] at Wittenberg, where he was kept at the University in the same city to study divinity. But Faustus, being of a naughty mind and otherwise addicted, applied not his studies, but took himself to other exercises, the which his uncle oftentimes hearing, rebuked him for it... and laboured to have Faustus apply his study of divinity, that he might come to the knowledge of God and his laws. ... This Faustus having godly parents, and seeing him to be of a toward wit, were very desirous to bring him up in those

[1] See Kühne's quotation from Luther's *Table Talk* in his edition of the *Faustbuch*, 156. The Spesser Wald had been thought to be a synonym for the Spesshart mountains (Spesshart = Spechtshart, woodpeckers' wood).

[2] The spelling of the following Extracts has, as a rule, been modernized; nor have I thought it necessary to adhere to the interpunctuation, or the use of capital letters, adopted in the English *History*.

[3] In the German *Faustbuch*: *Vetter*. The father of Faustus is here said to have had many 'friends,' who, like them, meant well by the child.

Digitized by Google

virtuous studies, namely, of divinity; but he gave himself up secretly to study necromancy and conjuration, insomuch that few or none could perceive his profession.... Faustus continued at study in the University, and was by the Rectors and sixteen Masters[1] afterwards examined how he had profited in his studies; and being found by them, that none for his time were able to argue with him in divinity, or for the excellency of his wisdom to compare with him, with one consent they made him Doctor of Divinity. But Doctor Faustus within short time after he had obtained his degree, fell into such fantasies and deep cogitations, that he was marked of many, and of the most part of the students was called the Speculator[2]; and sometimes he would throw the Scriptures from him as though he had no care of his former profession: so that he began a very ungodly life, as hereafter more at large shall appear. For the old proverb saith, Who can hold that will away[3]; so, who can hold Faustus from the devil, that seeks after him with all his endeavour? For he accompanied himself with divers that were seen[4] in those devilish arts, and that had the Chaldean, Persian, Hebrew, Arabian, and Greek tongues, using figures, characters, conjurations, incantations, with many other ceremonies belonging to these infernal arts, as necromancy, charms, soothsaying, witchcraft, enchantment[5], being delighted with their books, words and names so well that he studied day and night therein; insomuch that he could not abide to be called

[1] In the German *Faustbuch* the sixteen Masters are said to have undergone examination with Faustus, and to have been worsted by him.

[2] In the German *der Speculierer*.

[3] Ibid.: 'Who will to the devil, is not to be stopped nor prevented.'

[4] i. e. he associated with many of repute. Cf. note on the play, i. 137.

[5] The German original is worth quoting in a literal version: 'Moreover Dr. Faustus found his like, who were conversant with Chaldean, Persian, Arabian, and Greek words, *figuris, characteribus, conjurationibus, incantationibus*, and whatever may be such names given to conjurations and magic. And these aforesaid *items* were mere *Dardaniae artes, Nigromantiae, carmina, veneficium, vaticinium, incantatio*, and whatever such books, words and names, may be called.



Digitized by Google

a doctor of divinity, but waxed a worldly man, and named himself[1] an astrologian and a mathematician; and for a shadow[2] sometimes a physician, and did great cures, namely with herbs, roots, waters, drinks, receipts and clisters. And without doubt he was passing wise, and excellent perfect in the Holy Scriptures; but he that knoweth His Master's will and doth it not, is worthy to be beaten with many stripes. It is written, No man can serve two masters; and, Thou shalt not tempt the Lord thy God: but Faustus threw all this to the wind, and made his soul of no estimation[3], regarding more his worldly pleasure than the joys to come; therefore at the day of judgement there is no hope of his redemption.

CHAPTER II. *How Doctor Faustus began to practise in his devilish art, and how he conjured the Devil, making him to appear and meet him on the morrow at his own house.* You have heard before that all Faustus' mind was set to study the arts of necromancy and conjuration, the which exercise he followed day and night; and taking to him the wings of an eagle, thought to fly over the whole world, and to know the secrets of heaven and earth. For his speculation was so wonderful, being expert in using his *vocabula*, figures, characters, conjurations, and other ceremonial actions, that in all the haste[4] he put in practice to bring the Devil before him. And taking his way to a thick wood near to Wittenberg, called in the German tongue *Spisser Waldt*, that is in English the Spissers Wood (as Faustus would oftentimes boast of it among his crew, being in his jollity), he came into the same wood towards evening into a cross-way, where he made with a wand a circle in the dust, and within that many more circles and characters. And thus he passed away the time, until it was nine or ten of the clock in the night. Then began Doctor Faustus to

[1] In the German: 'named himself a *Doctor Medicinae*, and became an *Astrologus* and *Mathematicus*.

[2] Ibid.: *zum Glimpf*, i. e. for good appearance' sake, which seems also to be the meaning of the English.

[3] In the original: 'put his soul on the shelf.'

[4] Neither this phrase nor the German *auff eine Zeit* is quite clear.

Digitized by Google

call for Mephostophiles the Spirit [1], and to charge him in the name of Beelzebub to appear there personally without any long stay [2]. Then presently the Devil began so great a rumor [3] in the wood, as if heaven and earth would have come together with wind, the trees bowing their tops to the ground; then fell the Devil to blare [4], as if the whole wood had been full of lions; and suddenly about the circle ran the Devil, as if a thousand waggons had been running together on paved stones [5]. After this at the four corners of the wood it thundered horribly, with such lightnings as if the whole world, to his seeming, had been on fire. Faustus all this while, half amazed at the Devil's so long tarrying, and doubting whether he were best to abide any more such horrible conjurings, thought to leave his circle, and depart; whereupon the Devil made him such music of all sorts as if the nymphs themselves had been in place [6]; whereat Faustus was revived, and stood stoutly in his circle aspecting [7] his purpose, and began again to conjure the spirit of Mephostophiles in the name of the Prince of Devils to appear in his likeness. Whereat suddenly over his head hanged hovering in the air a mighty dragon. Then calls Faustus again after his devilish manner; at which there was a monstrous cry in the wood, as if hell had been open, and all the tormented souls crying to God for mercy; presently not three fathom above his head fell a flame in manner of a lightning, and changed itself into a globe. Yet Faustus feared it not, but did persuade himself that the Devil should give him his request before he would leave. Oftentimes

[1] In the original: 'he conjured the Devil.'

[2] 'In the name of Beelzebub' is not introduced in the original.

[3] '*Tumult*' (clamour) in the *Faustbuch*. *Rumor* is similarly used in modern German.

[4] To blare (spelt 'blear' in our text), is to roar, which latter is the reading *ap.* Thoms. But in the original we find simply that the Devil behaved as if the wood were full of lions.

[5] The paved stones are an addition by the translator.

[6] This classical allusion is not in the original, where the sounds of music, dances, and sham-fights, are said to have, not revived, but tired out Faustus.

[7] 'Expecting,' *ap.* Thoms.



Digitized by Google

after to his companions he would boast that he had the stoutest head (under the cope of heaven) at commandment; whereat they answered, they knew none stouter than the Pope or Emperor; but Doctor Faustus said, The head that is my servant is above all on earth, and repeated certain words out of Saint Paul to the Ephesians to make his argument good: The Prince of this world is upon earth and under heaven. ... Faustus, vexed at the Spirit's so long tarrying, used his charms with full purpose not to depart before he had his intent, and crying on Mephostophiles the Spirit. Suddenly the globe opened, and sprang up in height of a man; so, burning a time, in the end it converted to the shape of a fiery man. This pleasant beast[1] ran about the circle a great while, and lastly appeared in manner of a Grey Friar, asking Faustus what was his request. Faustus commanded that the next morning at twelve of the clock he should appear to him at his house; but the Devil would in no wise grant. Faustus began again to conjure him in the name of Beelzebub that he should fulfil his request; whereupon the Spirit agreed, and so they departed each one his way.

CHAPTER III. *The conference of Doctor Faustus with the Spirit Mephostophiles the morning following at his own house.*... Then began Doctor Faustus anew with him to conjure him that he should be obedient unto him, and to answer him certain articles, and to fulfil them in all points.

1. That the Spirit should serve him and be obedient unto him in all things that he asked of him from that hour until the hour of his death.

2. Farther, any thing that he desired of him he should bring it to him[2].

[1] The German *Faustbuch*, without using the expression 'this pleasant beast,' which suggests the poodle, states that 'the Devil and Spirit' changed into the figure of a Grey Monk. (The English translator found his 'at last' in '*endert sich*.') In the *Faustbuch* 'the Spirit' (*der Geist*) now becomes the ordinary designation of Faustus' familiar, the name Mephostophiles being first mentioned in the heading of chapter iv.

[2] A mistranslation of the German second article, which signifies

Digitized by Google

3. Also, that in all Faustus' demands or interrogations, the Spirit should tell him nothing but that which is true.

Hereupon the Spirit answered and laid his case forth, that he had no such power of himself, until he had first given his Prince (that was ruler over him) to understand thereof, and to know if he could obtain so much of his Lord; 'therefore speak further, that I may do thy whole desire to my Prince; for it is not in my power to fulfil without his leave.' 'Show me the cause why,' said Faustus. The Spirit answered: 'Faustus, thou shalt understand, that with us it is even as well a kingdom, as with you on earth; yea, we have our rulers and servants, as I myself am one, and we name our whole number the Legion. For, although that Lucifer is thrust and fallen out of heaven through his pride and high mind, yet he hath notwithstanding a Legion of Devils at his commandment, that we call the Oriental Princes[1]; for his power is great and infinite. Also, there is an host in meridie, in septentrio[ne], in occidente; and, for that Lucifer hath his kingdom under heaven, we must charge and give ourselves unto men to serve them at their pleasure. It is also certain, we have never yet opened unto any man the truth of our dwelling, neither of our ruling, neither what our power is; neither have we given any man any gift, or learned him anything, except he promise to be ours.' Doctor Faustus upon this arose where he sate, and said: 'I will have my request, and yet I will not be damned.' The Spirit answered: 'Then shalt thou want thy desire, and yet art thou mine notwithstanding; if any man would detain thee it is in vain, for thine infidelity hath confounded thee.' Hereupon spoke Faustus: 'Get thee hence from me... yet I conjure thee that thou be here at evening, and bethink thyself on that I have asked thee, and ask thy Prince's counsel therein.' Mephostophiles the Spirit, thus answered, vanished away, leaving Faustus in his study, where he sat pondering with himself how he might obtain his request of

that the Spirit should tell the whole truth on any point about which he should inquire.

[1] 'The Oriental Prince' is the German.

Digitized by Google

the Devil without loss of his soul. Yet fully he was resolved in himself, rather than to want his pleasure, to do whatsoever the Spirit and his Lord should condition upon.

CHAPTER IV. *The second time of the Spirit's appearing to Faustus in his house, and of their parley.* [The swift flying Spirit reappears with full powers from his Chief, and, on his demanding to be informed what is Faustus' desire] Doctor Faustus gave him this answer, though faintly (for his soul's sake), That his request was none other but to become a Devil, or at the least a limb of him, and that the Spirit should agree unto these Articles as followeth:—

1. That he might be a Spirit in shape and quality.

2. That Mephostophiles should be his servant, and at his commandment.

3. That Mephostophiles should bring him anything and do for him whatsoever.

4. That at all times he should be in his house, invisible to all men, except only to himself, and at his commandment to show himself.

5. Lastly, that Mephostophiles should at all times appear at his command, in what form or shape soever he would [1].

[The Spirit assents to these conditions, and asks his own in return.] First, that Doctor Faustus should give himself to his Lord Lucifer, body and soul. Secondly, for confirmation of the same, he should make him a wri[ting], written with his own blood. Thirdly, that he would be an enemy to all Christian people. Fourthly, that he would deny his Christian belief. Fifthly, that he let not any man change his opinion, if so be any man should go about to dissuade or withdraw him from it. Further, the Spirit promised Faustus to give him certain years to live in health and pleasure, and when these years were expired, that then Faustus should be fetched away. And if he should hold these articles and conditions,

[1] In the German *Faustbuch* these articles are arranged as six, the second providing that Mephistophiles should do for Faustus 'whatever he might desire and wish to have from him.' The third is the English second; the fourth provides for Mephistophiles being always at hand in the house; the fifth, like the English fourth, provides that Mephistophiles shall be invisible in Faustus' house.

Digitized by Google

that then he should have all whatsoever his heart would wish or desire; and that Faustus should quickly perceive himself to be a spirit in all manner of actions whatsoever. Hereupon Doctor Faustus' mind was so inflamed, that he forgot his soul, and promised Mephostophiles to hold all things as he had mentioned them. He thought the Devil was not so black as they use to paint him, nor hell so hot as the people say, *etc.*[1].

CHAPTER V. *The third parley between Doctor Faustus and Mephostophiles about a conclusion*[2]. After Doctor Faustus had made his promise to the Devil, in the morning betimes he called the Spirit before him, and commanded him that he should always come to him like a friar, after the Order of St. Francis, with a bell in his hand like St. Anthony[3], and to ring it once or twice before he appeared, that he might know of his certain coming. Then Faustus demanded the Spirit, what was his name? The Spirit answered: 'My name is as thou sayest, Mephostophiles, and I am a prince, but servant to Lucifer, and all the circuit, from Septentrio to the Meridian, I rule under him. Even at these words was this wicked wretch Faustus inflamed, to hear himself to have gotten so great a potentate to be his servant; forgot the Lord his Maker, and Christ his Redeemer; became an enemy unto all mankind; yea, worse than the Giants whom the poets feign to climb the hills to make war with the Gods; not unlike that enemy of God and His Christ, that for his pride was cast into hell, so likewise Faustus forgot that the highest climbers catch the greatest falls, and that the sweetest meat requires the sourest sauce[4]. After a while, Faustus promised Mephostophiles to write and make his obligation, with full assurance of the articles in the chapter before rehearsed . . . [To confirm the more assuredly his giving of his soul to the Devil, the unhappy Faustus] took a small penknife, and pricked a vein in his left hand; and for certainty thereupon were seen on his hand these words, written as if they had been written with blood, *O homo fuge*; whereat the

[1] *Sic* in the quarto.
[2] '*Promission*' (promise) in the German.
[3] The 'like St. Anthony' is an addition of the English *History*.
[4] The second simile is added by the English translator.

Digitized by Google

Spirit vanished; but Faustus continued in his damnable mind, and made his writing as followeth.

CHAPTER VI. *How Doctor Faustus set his blood in a saucer on warm ashes, and writ as followeth.* 'I Johannes Faustus, Doctor, do openly acknowledge with mine own hand, to the greater force and strengthening of this letter, that since I began to study and speculate the course and order of the elements, I have not found through the gift that is given me from above, any such learning and wisdom that can bring me to my desires. And, for that I find that men are unable to instruct me any further in the matter, now have I, Doctor John Faustus, unto the hellish Prince of Orient and his messenger Mephostophiles given both body and soul, upon such condition, that they shall learn me, and fulfil my desire in all things, as they have promised and vowed unto me, with due obedience unto me, according unto the articles mentioned between us. Further, I covenant and grant with them by these presents, that at the end of 24 years next ensuing the date of this present letter, they being expired, and I in the meantime, during the said years be served of them at my will, they accomplishing my desires to the full in all points as we are agreed,—that then I give them full power to do with me at their pleasure, to rule, to send, fetch or carry me or mine, be it either body, soul, flesh, blood or goods, into their habitation, be it wheresoever; and hereupon I defy God and His Christ, all the host of heaven, and all living creatures that bear the shape of God, yea all that lives; and again I say it, and it shall be so. And to the more strengthening of this writing, I have written it with mine own hand and blood, being in perfect memory; and hereupon I subscribe to it with my name and title, calling all the infernal, middle and Supreme Powers to witness of this my letter and subscription.

John Faustus, approved in the Elements, and
the Spiritual Doctor[1].

[In CHAPTER VII Faustus is shown by Mephostophiles a

[1] In the German: 'the Expert (*der Erfahrne*) in the Elements, and Doctor of Spirituals (*der Geistlichen*).'

Digitized by Google

series of wonderful apparitions of strange beasts, and listens to a concert of ravishing sounds as from all manner of instruments. After this] came Mephostophiles into the hall to Faustus, in apparel like unto a friar, to whom Faustus spake: 'Thou hast done me a wonderful pleasure in showing me this pastime; if thou continue as thou hast begun, thou shalt win my heart and soul, yea and have it.' Mephostophiles answered: 'This is nothing; I will please thee better. Yet that thou mayest know my power and all, ask what thou wilt request of me, that shalt thou have; conditionally hold thy promise, and give me thy handwriting.' At which words the wretch thrust forth his hand, saying, 'Hold thee, there hast thou my promise.' Mephostophiles took the writing, and willing Faustus to take a copy of it, with that the perverse Faustus, being resolute in his damnation, wrote a copy thereof, and gave the Devil one, and kept in store the other. Thus the Spirit and Faustus were agreed, and dwelt together; no doubt there was a virtuous housekeeping.

[In CHAPTER VIII we learn that Faustus] dwelt in his uncle's house at Wittenberg, who died, and bequeathed it in his testament to his cousin Faustus. Faustus kept a boy with him that was his scholar, an unhappy wag[1], called Christopher Wagner, to whom this sport and life that he saw his master follow seemed pleasant. Faustus loved the boy well, hoping to make him as good or better seen in his devilish exercise than himself, and he was fellow with Mephostophiles. Otherwise, Faustus had no more company in his house, but himself, his boy and his Spirit, that ever was diligent at Faustus' command . . .

CHAPTER X. *How Doctor Faustus would have married, and how the Devil had almost killed him for it.*

CHAPTER XI. *Questions put by Doctor Faustus unto his Spirit Mephostophiles.* Doctor Faustus . . . called on a time his Mephostophiles to him; which, being come, brought with him a book in his hand of all manner of devilish and enchanted arts, the which he gave Faustus, saying, 'Hold, my

[1] The German '*verwegener Lecker*' means a daring votary of the larder.

Digitized by Google

Faustus, work now thy heart's desire.' The copy of this enchanting book was afterwards found by his servant Christopher Wagner. 'Well,' quoth Faustus to his Spirit, 'I have called thee to know what thou canst do if I have need of thy help.' Then answered Mephostophiles and said, 'My lord Faustus, I am a flying spirit; yea, so swift as thought can think, to do whatsoever.' Here Faustus said: 'But how came thy lord and master Lucifer to have so great a fall from heaven?' Mephostophiles answered: 'My lord Lucifer was a fair angel, created of God as immortal, and being placed in the Seraphins, which are above the Cherubins, he would have presumed unto the throne of God, with intent to have thrust God out of His seat. Upon this presumption the Lord cast him down headlong; and where before he was an angel of light, now dwells he in darkness, not able to come near his first place, without God send for him to appear before him; as Raphael, but unto the lower degree of angels, that have their conversation with men, was he come, but not unto the second degree of [the] heavens, that is kept by the archangels, namely, Michael and Gabriel; for these are called angels of God's wonders; yet are these far inferior places to that from whence my lord and master Lucifer fell[1] . . .'

[In CHAPTER XI hell is briefly described; but the Spirit confesses that 'we Devils know not what substance it is of but a confused thing. . . . Further we Devils know not how God hath laid the foundation of our hell, nor whereof it is;

[1] The interpunctuation *ap.* Thoms, 'before him; as Raphael' is clearly preferable to that printed by Logeman from the 1592 text 'before him as Raphael.' But even so the passage is obscure. The corresponding passage in the German *Faustbuch* is probably corrupt in part; but it ends with the explicit statement that 'Lucifer was one of the fair and archangels, and called Raphael, the other twain being Gabriel and Michael.' It appears to be based on H. Cornelius Agrippa, *De Occulta Philosophia*, lib. iii, cap. xvii, where nine 'Hierarchies' and three 'choirs' (*chori*) of angels are distinguished, and the Seraphim, Cherubim, and Thrones (*troni*) are placed *in superiori hierarchia*. See Erich Schmidt, *Zu den Quellen des ältesten Faustbuches*, in *Vierteljahrschrift*, &c., i. 2 (1888) 195. Cf. note to *Friar Bacon*, ix. 140. Raphael here represents 'the Powers,' while Michael is denominated 'the Arch-Angell,' and Gabriel 'the Angell.'

Digitized by Google

but to be short with thee, Faustus, we know that hell hath neither bottom nor end.' In CHAPTER XII follows an exposition of the polity of the ten kingdoms of hell; and in CHAPTER XIII a further account by the Spirit of the former beauty and gloriousness of Lucifer, which inspires Faustus with the terrors of remorse.] In this perplexity lay this miserable Doctor Faustus, having quite forgot his faith in Christ, never falling to repentance truly, thereby to attain the grace and Holy Spirit of God again, the which would have been able to have resisted the strong assaults of Satan ... but he was in all his opinions doubtful, without faith or hope, and so he continued. [Further conferences follow, and in CHAPTER XVI a long disquisition on the torments of hell, in the course of which Mephostophiles answers the question, whether the condemned are ever received back again into grace, with a direct no; for] 'the damned have neither end nor time appointed in the which they may hope to be released; for if ... they might hope at the last God would have mercy on them, they would be comforted; but now there is no hope that God once thinks upon them, or that their howlings shall ever be heard; yea, so impossible as it is for thee to hide thyself from God ... even so impossible it is for thee, Faustus, and the rest of the damned, to come again into the favour of God ...' [In the next Chapter, on being pressed to answer as to what would be his course of conduct were he a human being like Faustus, the Spirit confesses, and with that fetched a great sigh, that he would so humble himself as to win the favour of God.] 'Then,' said Doctor Faustus, 'it were time enough for me if I amended.' 'True,' said Mephostophiles, 'if it were not for thy great sins, which are so odious and detestable in the sight of God, that it is too late for thee; for the wrath of God resteth upon thee ...'

[This concludes the FIRST PART of the story. At the opening of the SECOND, Faustus appears as an astronomer or astrologian, who had the most famous name of all the mathematics that lived in his time. He addresses to the Spirit a series of inquiries connected with these studies and pursuits; but (CHAPTER XIX) to his questions how and after what sort

Digitized by Google

God made the world and all the creatures in them, and why man was made after the image of God, Mephostophiles wrathfully refused to make answer, and hereat vanished away[1]. Whereat Faustus fell to weeping and to howling bitterly, not for his sins towards God, but because the devil was departed from him so suddenly, and in such a rage. In his perplexity, Lucifer, the greatest devil in hell, appeared unto him, with certain of his hideous and infernal company in the most ugliest shapes that it was possible to think upon, and spake to him in this sort:] 'Faustus, I have seen thy thoughts, which are not as thou hast vowed unto me by virtue of this letter'; and showed him the obligation that he had written with his own blood; 'wherefore I am come to visit thee, and to show thee some of our hellish pastimes, in hope that will draw and confirm thy mind a little more steadfast unto us.' 'Content,' quoth Faustus, 'go to; let me see what pastime you can make.' At which words the great Devil in his likeness sat him down by Faustus, commanding the rest of the devils to appear in their form, as if they were in hell. First came Belial in form of a man . . . [and after him Ashtaroth in form of a worm, and others; and the rest of the devils in the form of unsensible beasts, as swine, harts, bears, &c. . . .] Then said Faustus: 'I like not so many of you together'; whereupon Lucifer commanded them to depart, except seven of the principal; forthwith they presently vanished, which Faustus perceiving, he was somewhat better comforted. . . . [Mephostophiles then appeared in the form of a fierce dragon, who changed into that of a friar, whom Faustus bade teach him to transform himself in like manner. Whereupon Lucifer—whose appearance was after the manner of a man, all hairy, but of a brown colour, and with a tail like a squirrel's—] put forth his paw, and gave Faustus a book[2], saying: 'Hold, do what thou wilt'; which he looking upon, straightways changed himself into a hog, then into a worm, then into a dragon, and finding this for his

[1] In the German *Faustbuch* the Spirit makes the Manichaean reply, that the world is uncreated and immortal; cf. the play, vi. 70.
[2] The *Zauberbüchlein* of the original; cf. the play, vi. 172.

Digitized by Google

purpose, it liked him well. [In the end, suddenly] it was clear again, and the devils and all the filthy cattle were vanished; only Faustus was left alone, seeing nothing, but hearing the sweetest music that ever he heard before; at which he was so ravished with delight, that he forgot the fears he was in before; and it repented him that he had seen no more of their pastime.

[In CHAPTER XX Faustus himself visits the lower regions, performing part of the journey in a chariot drawn by two dragons, all of which was of a light burning fire; in the next chapter he is carried in the same way through the air up to the heavens to see the world, according to a letter written with his own hand to a friend, a physician at Liptzig[1]. The chariot is here again described:] the waggon had also four wheels, the which rattled so, and made such a noise as if we had been all this while running on the stones; and round about us flew out flames of fire.... [From above he looks down on the world, whose kingdoms and provinces descried by him are enumerated, and a survey of the universe follows, described for the benefit of his old College friend.]

CHAPTER XXII. *How Doctor Faustus made his journey through the principal and most famous lands in the world.* Doctor Faustus having over-run fifteen years of his appointed time, he took upon him a journey, with full pretence to see the whole world; and calling his Spirit of Mephostophiles unto him, he said: 'Thou art bound unto me upon conditions, to perform and fulfil my desire in all things; wherefore my pretence is to visit the whole face of the earth, visible and invisible, when it pleaseth me; wherefore I enjoin and command thee to the same.' Whereupon Mephostophiles answered: 'I am ready, my Lord, at thy command'; and forthwith the Spirit changed himself into the likeness of a flying horse[2], saying, 'Faustus, sit up; I am ready.'

[1] '*Leiptsig*' in the German. The physician's name in the *Faustbuch* is, in the dative case, 'Ionae Victori'; in the English *History*, by a misprint, 'Ioue Victori'; *ap.* Thoms, 'Love Victori.'

[2] Of a horse which 'had wings like a dromedary,' in the *Faustbuch*. Kühne has some interesting notes on the passage.

Digitized by Google

Doctor Faustus loftily sate upon him, and forward they went. [In the course of this journey, and the additional one described in CHAPTER XXIII, *How Faustus had a sight of Paradise*, they visit a wide variety of countries; but the following extracts will suffice from this portion of the narrative[1].]

CHAPTER XXII. . . . He set forward again on his journey upon his swift horse Mephostophiles, and came to Treir[2], for that he chiefly desired to see this town, and the monuments thereof. But there he saw not many wonders, except one fair palace that belonged unto the Bishop, and also a mighty large castle that was built of brick, with three walls and three great trenches, so strong that it was impossible for any prince's power to win it. Then he saw a church, wherein was buried Simeon, and the Bishop Popo[3]; their tombs are of most sumptuous large marble stone, closed and joined together with great bars of iron. From whence he departed to Paris, where he liked well the academy[4]; and what place or kingdom soever fell in his mind, the same he visited. He came from Paris to Mentz, where the river of Mayne falls[5] into the Rhine. Notwithstanding, he tarried not long there; but went to Campania in the kingdom of Neapolis, in which he saw an innumerable sort of cloisters, nunneries and churches, great and high houses of stone, the streets fair and large, and straight forth from one end of the town to the other as a line; and all the pavement of the city was of

[1] In the *Faustbuch* the corresponding chapters are xxvi and xxvii.

[2] 'Trier' in the German, 'Trent' *ap.* Thoms. In the previous enumeration of countries visited by Faustus the English *History* has 'Shawblandt' for 'Schwabenlandt' in the original. The English *History* adds many geographical names, including 'Cathai,' 'Ginnie,' 'Terra Incognita' (Ameri—which can hardly here stand for America, as Logeman explains, since 'all America' is likewise mentioned), 'Maioria' and 'Minoria' (misprints), 'Island' and 'the Bishoprick of Breame' (Bremen).

[3] So also in the German; *ap.* Thoms, 'the Bishop of Popo.' Archbishop Poppo of Trier was buried there in 1047, in the convent of St. Simeon, of which he was the founder.

[4] 'The *studia* and high school' in the German.

[5] 'flows,' ibid.

Digitized by Google

brick; and the more it rained in the town, the fairer the streets were. There saw he the tomb of Virgil, and the highway that he cut through that mighty hill of stone in one night, the whole length of an English mile; then he saw the number of galleys and argosies that lay there at the city head, the windmill that stood in the water, the castle in the water, and the houses above the water where the galleys might ride most safely from rain or wind[1]. . . . From thence he came to Venice, whereas he wondered not a little to see a city so famously built standing in the sea. . . . He wondered not a little at the fairness of Saint Mark's place, and the sumptuous church standing therein called Saint Mark's; how all the pavement was set with coloured stones, and all the rood or loft of the church double-gilded over[2]. Leaving this, he came to Padoa . . . then saw he the worthiest monument in the world for a church, named S. Anthony's cloister, which for the pinnacles thereof, and the contriving of the church, hath not the like in Christendom[3]. . . . Well, forward he went to Rome, which lay, [and] doth yet lie[4], on the river Tybris, the which divideth the city in two parts; over the river are four great stone bridges, and upon the one bridge called Ponte S. Angelo is the castle of S. Angelo[5]. . . . The city hath eleven gates, and a hill called Vaticinium[6], whereon S. Peter's church is built; in that church the Holy Father will hear no confession, without the penitent bring money in his hand[7]. . . . Adjoining to this church is the Campo Santo, the which Carolus Magnus built[8]. . . . Hard by this, he visited

[1] The references to the pavement of Naples, the tomb of Virgil and the grotto, the ships and the windmill in the water are not in the German *Faustbuch*.

[2] There is no mention of St. Mark's in the German *Faustbuch*. Logeman is inclined to think that the original reading in the English *History* was '*roof* or loft.' See note on the play, vii. 17.

[3] 'In all Italia' in the *Faustbuch*.

[4] 'which lies,' ibid.

[5] The bridge and castle of St. Angelo (and the ordnance in the latter) are not mentioned in the *Faustbuch*.

[6] This is a blunder of the English translator, which is also to be found *ap.* Thoms; the *Faustbuch* reads 'Vaticanum.'

[7] An English addition. [8] Another.

Digitized by Google

the churchyard of S. Peter's, where he saw the Pyramid that Julius Caesar brought out of Africa; it stood in Faustus' time leaning against the church wall of Saint Peter's, but now Papa Sixtus hath erected it in the middle of S. Peter's churchyard[1]. . . . Then he visited the seven churches of Rome[2]. . . . Other monuments he saw, too many to recite; but amongst the rest he was desirous to see the Pope's palace, and his manner of service at table; wherefore he and his Spirit made themselves invisible, and came into the Pope's Court and privy chamber where he was; there saw he many servants attending on his Holiness, with many a flattering sycophant carrying of his meat; and there he marked the Pope and the manner of his service, which he seeing to be so unmeasurable and sumptuous, 'Fie,' (quoth Faustus) 'why had not the Devil made a Pope of me?' . . . Thus continued Faustus three days in the Pope's palace, and yet had no lust to his meat[3], but stood still in the Pope's chamber, and saw everything whatsoever it was. On a time the Pope would have a feast prepared for the Cardinal of Pavia, and as he sat at meat, the Pope would ever be blessing and crossing over his mouth; Faustus could suffer it no longer, but up with his fist, and smote the Pope on the face[4], and withal he laughed that the whole house might hear him, yet none of them saw him nor knew where he was; the Pope persuaded his company that it was a damned soul, commanding a mass presently to be said for his delivery out of purgatory, which was done. The Pope sat still at meat; but when the latter mess came in to the Pope's board, Doctor Faustus laid hands thereon, saying, 'This is mine'; [and]

[1] There is no mention of this monument in the *Faustbuch*.

[2] The English *History*, while enumerating the seven churches, omits to mention the seven hills of Rome, which are duly noted in the original, and in the play (vii. 31).

[3] There are several variations in this passage from the original, but none are of importance.

[4] In the *Faustbuch*, Doctor Faustus 'blew into the Pope's face.' Professor Logeman, who in his *Faustus-Notes*, p. 84, considered the translation of *blasen* = blow = smite, to be either a blunder or a joke, now (English *History*, p. 149) inclines to the former conclusion.

Digitized by Google

so he took both dish and meat and fled unto the Capitol or Campadolia, calling his Spirit unto him, and said: "Come, let us be merry; for thou must fetch me some wine, and the cup that the Pope drinks of, and here upon Monte Caval[1] will we make good cheer in spite of the Pope and all his fat abbey lubbers. His Spirit hearing this, departed towards the Pope's chamber, where he found the[m] yet sitting and quaffing; wherefore he took from before the Pope the fairest piece of plate or drinking-goblet, and a flagon of wine, and brought it to Faustus. But when the Pope and the rest of his crew perceived they were robbed, and knew not after what sort, they persuaded themselves, that it was the damned soul that before had vexed the Pope so, and that smote him on the face; wherefore he sent commandment through all the whole city of Rome, that they should say mass in every church, and ring all the bells for to lay the walking spirit, and to curse him with bell, book, and candle, that so invisible had misused the Pope's Holiness, with the Cardinal of Pavia and the rest of their company. But Faustus notwithstanding made good cheer with that which he had beguiled the Pope of, and in the midst of the Order of Saint Barnard's barefooted friars, as they were going in procession through the market-place, called Campa de fiore[2], he let fall his plate, dishes, and cup; and withal for a farewell he made such a thunder-clap and a storm of rain, as though heaven and earth should have met together; and so he left Rome and came to Millain in Italy.

[Besides Milan, Faustus visits Florence, and thence passes into France and into many other countries and cities, going as far as Constantinople. In CHAPTER XXIII a large variety of other countries are enumerated as visited by Faustus, and it is related how being on the hill of Caucasus, he saw the whole of India and Scythia, and

[1] This well-known local name (*Monte Cavallo*), which by his institution of the *Gymnasium Caballinum* Leo X had made still more widely known, is not in the *Faustbuch*. I confess that I cannot quite understand Logeman's note, not being able to refer to his paper cited by him.

[2] The *Campo di Fiori* is not mentioned in the *Faustbuch*.



Digitized by Google

towards the East saw a clear light shining and four mighty waters springing; and how he was gently told by the Spirit that the light came from the angel that has the custody of the garden of Paradise, and that the water which he saw divided into four parts was the water issuing out of the well in the midst of the garden.

The remainder of this Part of the *History* contains some further brief conferences of Faustus with Mephostophiles, chiefly as to astronomical and meteorological difficulties.]

*The Third and last Part of Doctor Faustus' merry conceits, showing after what sort he practised necromancy at the Courts of great Princes, and lastly of his fearful and pitiful end.*

CHAPTER XXIX. *How the Emperor Carolus Quintus requested of Faustus to see some of his cunning; whereunto he agreed*[1]. The Emperor Carolus, the fifth of that name, was personally with the rest of his nobles and gentlemen at the town of Inszbruck, where he kept his Court; unto the which also Doctor Faustus resorted . . . whom when the Emperor saw, he looked earnestly on him, thinking him by his looks to be some wonderful fellow; wherefore he asked one of his nobles whom he should be; who answered that he was called Doctor Faustus. Whereupon the Emperor held his peace until he had taken his repast; after which he called unto him Faustus into the privy chamber; whither being come, he said unto him: 'Faustus, I have heard much of thee; that thou art excellent in the black art, and none like thee in mine Empire. For men say that thou hast a familiar Spirit with thee, and that thou canst do what thou list; it is therefore' (saith the Emperor) 'my request of thee that thou let me see a proof of thine experience; and I vow unto thee by the honour of mine imperial crown, none evil shall happen unto thee for so doing.' Hereupon Doctor Faustus answered his Majesty, that upon those conditions he was ready in anything that he could, to do his Highness' commandment in what service he would appoint him. 'Well then, hear what I say'

[1] For the whole of this Chapter, cf. the play, sc. x.

Digitized by Google

(quoth the Emperor). 'Being once solitary in my house, I called to mind mine elders and ancestors; how it was possible for them to attain unto so great a degree of authority, yea, so high, that we the successors of that line are never able to come near. As for example, the great and mighty monarch of the world Alexander Magnus was such a lantern[1] and spectacle to all his successors, as the chronicles make mention of so great riches, conquering and subduing so many kingdoms, the which I and those that follow me (I fear) shall never be able to attain unto. Wherefore, Faustus, my hearty desire is that thou wouldst vouchsafe to let me see that Alexander and his paramour[2], the which was praised to be so fair; and I pray thee show me them in such sort that I may see their personages, shape, gesture and apparel, as they used in their lifetime, and that here before my face, to the end that I may say I have my long desire fulfilled, and to praise thee to be a famous man in thine art and experience.' Doctor Faustus answered: 'My most excellent Lord, I am ready to accomplish your request in all things, so far forth as I and my Spirit are able to perform. Yet your Majesty shall know, that their dead bodies are not able substantially to be brought before you; but such spirits as have been Alexander and his paramour alive, shall appear unto you in manner and form as they both lived in their most flourishing time; and herewith I hope to please your Imperial Majesty. Then Faustus went a little aside to speak to his Spirit; but he returned again presently, saying: 'Now, if it please your Majesty, you shall see them; yet upon this condition that you demand no question of them, nor speak unto them; which the Emperor agreed unto. Wherefore Doctor Faustus opened the privy chamber door, where presently entered the great and mighty Emperor Alexander Magnus, in all things to look upon as if he had been a[live], in proportion a strong, thick-set man of a middle stature, black hair, red cheeks,

[1] In the original '*lucern*'; *ap.* Thoms, 'pattern'; but cf in the play, x. 29–30.

[2] '*Gemälin*' (consort) in the original.



Digitized by Google

and a broad face, with eyes like a basilisk; he had on a complete harness burnished and graven, exceeding rich to look upon; and so, passing towards the Emperor Carolus, he made low and reverent courtesy. Whereat the Emperor Carolus would have stood up to receive and greet him with the like reverence; but Faustus took hold of him, and would not permit him to do it. Shortly after Alexander made humble reverence, and went out again; and coming to the door, his paramour met him, she coming in; she made the Emperor likewise reverence. She was clothed in blue velvet, wrought and embroidered with pearls and gold; she was also excellent fair like milk and blood mixed, tall and slender, with a face round as an apple; and thus she passed certain times up and down the house; which the Emperor marking, said to himself: 'Now have I seen two persons, which my heart hath long wished to behold; and sure it cannot otherwise be,' said he to himself, 'but that the spirits have changed themselves into these forms, and have not deceived me,' calling to his mind the prophet Samuel. And for that the Emperor would be the more satisfied in the matter, he thought, I have heard say, that behind her neck she had a great wart or wen; wherefore he took Faustus by the hand without any words, and went to see if it were also to be seen on her or not; but she, perceiving that he came to her, bowed down her neck, where he saw a great wart; and hereupon she vanished, leaving the Emperor and the rest well contented.

CHAPTER XXX. *How Doctor Faustus in the sight of the Emperor conjured a pair of hart's horns upon a knight's head that slept out of a casement*[1]. When Doctor Faustus had fulfilled the Emperor's desire in all things as he was requested, he went forth into a gallery, and leaning over a rail, to look into the privy garden, he saw many of the Emperor's courtiers walking and talking together; and casting his eyes now this way, now that way, he espied a knight leaning out at a window of the great hall, who

[1] Interwoven in the play with the main action of sc. x.

Digitized by Google

was fast asleep (for in those days it was hot); but the person shall be nameless that slept, for that he was a knight, although it was done to a little disgrace of the gentleman[1]. It pleased Doctor Faustus, through the help of his Spirit Mephostophiles, to firm[2] upon his head as he slept an huge pair of hart's horns; and as the knight awaked, thinking to pull in his head, he hit his horns against the glass, that the panes thereof flew about his ears. Think how this good gentleman was vexed, for he could neither get backward nor forward; which when the Emperor heard all the courtiers laugh[3], and came forth to see what was happened, the Emperor also, when he beheld the knight with so fair a head, laughed heartily thereat, and was therewithal well pleased. At last Faustus made him quit of his horns again; but the knight perceived how they came etc.[4]

[The next Chapter describes a futile attempt on the part of the knight to revenge himself upon Faustus[5]; and there follow a series of adventures, some of which are in humble company, as that in]

CHAPTER XXXIV. *How Doctor Faustus deceived an horse-courser*[6]. In like manner he served an horse-courser at a fair, called Pheiffring[7]. For Doctor Faustus through his cunning had gotten an excellent fair horse, whereupon he rid to the fair, where he had many chapmen that offered him money. Lastly, he sold him for 40 dollars, willing him that bought him, that in any wise he should not ride him over any water. But the horse-courser marvelled

[1] *ap.* Thoms, 'to no little disgrace of the gentleman.' The German *Faustbuch*, while expressing a similar intention of reserve as to the gentleman's name, accommodatingly adds in the margin: 'Erat Baro ab Hardeck.'

[2] 'Firm' ('firme' in the quarto) apparently = fix. Or should we read 'form'?

[3] 'laught,' *ap.* Thoms. The construction of the sentence is, in either case, involved.

[4] It is not quite clear what meaning should be attached to this 'etc.' ending of Chapters xxx-xxxii; more especially in the last instance.

[5] Not reproduced in the play.

[6] Cf. in the play, sc. xi.

[7] The horse-courser's name in the *Faustbuch* is given as '*Pfeiffering*.'

Digitized by Google

with himself that Faustus bade him ride over no water; 'but' (quoth he) 'I will prove'; and forthwith he rid him into the river. Presently the horse vanished from under him, and he sat on a bundle of straw, insomuch that the man was almost drowned. The horse-courser knew well where he lay that had sold him his horse; wherefore he went angerly to his inn, where he found Doctor Faustus fast asleep, and snorting on a bed. But the horse-courser could no longer forbear him, took him by the leg and began to pull him off the bed; but he pulled him so, that he pulled his leg from his body, insomuch that the horse-courser fell down backwards in the place. Then began Doctor Faustus to cry with an open throat: 'He hath murdered me.' Hereat the horse-courser was afraid, and gave the flight[1], thinking none other with himself but he that had pulled his leg from his body. By this means Doctor Faustus kept his money.

[CHAPTER XXXV contains the farcical adventure of how Doctor Faustus ate a load of hay[2]. We come into better company again in]

CHAPTER XXXIX. *How Doctor Faustus played a merry jest with the Duke of Anholt in his Court.* Doctor Faustus on a time came to the Duke of Anholt, the which welcomed him very courteously. This was in the month of January; where, sitting at the table . . . [when] they brought in the banqueting dishes[3], said Doctor Faustus to the Duchess: 'Gracious lady . . . I beseech . . . your Grace hide not your mind from me, but tell me what you desire to eat.' She answered him: 'Now truly, I will not hide from you what my heart doth most desire, namely, that if it were now harvest, I would eat . . . ripe grapes, and other dainty fruit.' Doctor Faustus answered hereupon: 'Gracious Lady, this is a small thing for me to do; for I can do more than this.' Whereupon he took a plate, and made open one

[1] A literal translation of the German '*gab die Flucht*'—an obscure idiom.

[2] This adventure is narrated by a carter at the beginning of sc. xi, in the 1616 edition of Marlowe's play.

[3] In modern parlance, the dessert.

Digitized by Google

of the casements of the window, holding it forth, where incontinent he had his dish full of manner of fruits, as red and white grapes, pears and apples, the which came out of strange countries. All these he presented the Duchess, saying: 'Madam, I pray you vouchsafe to taste of this dainty fruit, the which came from a far country; for there the summer is not yet ended.' The Duchess thanked Faustus highly, and she fell to her fruit with full appetite. The Duke of Anholt notwithstanding could not withhold to ask Faustus with what reason there were such young fruit[1] to be had at that time of the year? Doctor Faustus told him: 'May it please your Grace to understand, that the year is divided into two circles over the whole world; that, when with us it is winter, in the contrary circle it is notwithstanding summer; for in India and Saba[2] there falleth or setteth the sun, so that it is so warm, that they have twice a year fruit. And, gracious Lord, I have a swift Spirit, the which can in the twinkling of an eye fulfil my desire in anything; wherefore I sent him into those countries, who hath brought this fruit as you see;' whereat the Duke was in great admiration.

[After further displays of his powers by Doctor Faustus, in Court and University, we come to]

CHAPTER XLV. *How Doctor Faustus showed the fair Helena unto the Students upon the Sunday following* [upon Ash Wednesday[3]]. The Sunday following came these students home to Doctor Faustus' own house, and brought their meat and drink with them. These men were right welcome guests unto Faustus; wherefore they all fell to drinking of wine smoothly; and, being merry, they began some of them to talk of the beauty of women; and every one gave forth his verdit[4], what he had seen and what he had heard. So one among the rest said: 'I never was so desirous

[1] Quarto: 'fruite.' 'Fruits,' *ap.* Thoms.

[2] Cf. note to v. 154.

[3] In the *Faustbuch* the apparition of 'the enchanted Helena' is summoned on 'White Sunday,' i. e. *Dominica Alba* or *Quasimodogeniti*, the First Sunday after Easter.

[4] 'Verdict,' *ap.* Thoms.

Digitized by Google

of anything in this world, as to have a sight (if it were possible) of fair Helena of Greece, for whom the worthy town of Troy was destroyed and razed down to the ground; therefore,' saith he, 'that in all men's judgement she was more than commonly fair, because that when she was stolen away from her husband, there was for her recovery so great bloodshed.'

Doctor Faustus answered: 'For that ... you are all my friends, and are so desirous to see that famous pearl of Greece, fair Helena, the wife of King Menelaus, and daughter of Tindalus and Læda, sister to Castor and Pollux, who was the fairest lady in all Greece, I will therefore bring her into your presence personally, and in the same form of attire as she used to go when she was in her chiefest flower and pleasantest prime of youth. The like have I done for the Emperor Carolus Quintus; at his desire I showed him Alexander the Great and his paramour; but,' said Doctor Faustus, 'I charge you all, that upon your peril you speak not a word, nor rise up from the table so long as she is in your presence. And so he went out of the hall, returning presently again; after whom immediately followed the fair and beautiful Helena, whose beauty was such that the students were all amazed to see her, esteeming her rather to be a heavenly than an earthly creature. This lady appeared before them in a most sumptuous gown of purple velvet, richly embroidered; her hair hanged down loose as fair as the beaten gold ... with amorous coal-black eyes; a sweet and pleasant round face; her lips red as a cherry; her cheeks of rose all colour[1]; her mouth small; her neck white as the swan; tall and slender of personage; and, in sum, there was not one imperfect part in her. She looked round about her with a rolling hawk's eye, a smiling and wanton countenance; which near hand[2] inflamed the hearts of the students, but that they persuaded themselves she was a spirit. Wherefore such phantasies passed away lightly with

[1] 'Of a rose colour,' *ap.* Thoms.

[2] 'Near-hand,' *ap.* Thoms. Though the phrase 'near-hand' occurs elsewhere in the English *History* in the sense of 'well nigh,' the original reading here may have been 'near had.'

Digitized by Google

them; and thus fair Helena and Doctor Faustus went out again one with another. But the students, at Doctor Faustus' entering again into the hall, requested of him to let them see her again the next day, for that they would bring with them a painter and so take her counterfeit[1]: which he denied, affirming that he could not always raise up her spirit, but only at certain times; 'yet' (said he), 'I will give you her counterfeit, which shall be always as good to you as if yourselves should see the drawing thereof'; which they received according to his promise, but soon lost it again. The students departed from Faustus' home every one to his house; but they were not able to sleep the whole night for thinking of the beauty of fair Helena . . .

[After two Chapters of conjuring tricks follows]

CHAPTER XLVIII. *How an old man, the neighbour of Faustus, sought to persuade him to amend his evil life, and to fall unto repentance*[2]. A good Christian, an honest and virtuous old man[3], a lover of the Holy Scriptures, who was neighbour unto Doctor Faustus, when he perceived that many students had their recourse in and out unto Doctor Faustus, he suspected his evil life. Wherefore, like a friend, he invited Doctor Faustus to supper unto his house; unto the which he agreed; and, having ended their banquet, the old man began with these words: 'My loving friend and neighbour Doctor Faustus, I have to desire of you a friendly and Christian request, beseeching you that you will vouchsafe not to be angry with me, but friendly resolve me in my doubt, and take my poor inviting in good part.' To whom Doctor Faustus answered: 'My loving neighbour, I pray you say your mind.' The[n] began the old patron[4] to say: 'My good neighbour, you know in the beginning how that you have defied God, and all the host [of] heaven, and given your soul to the Devil, wherewith you have incurred

[1] i.e. portrait.

[2] See sc. xiii in the play; and cf. the note in Dramatis Personae on the character of An Old Man.

[3] In the *Faustbuch*: 'A Christian pious God-fearing physician and lover of the Holy Scriptures,' &c.

[4] In the original: '*der Alte*.'

Digitized by Google

God's high displeasure, and are become from a Christian far worse than a heathen person. Oh, consider what you have done; it is not only the pleasure of the body, but the safety of the soul that you must have respect unto; of which if you be careless, then are you cast away, and shall remain in the anger of Almighty God. But yet is it time enough, Doctor Faustus, if you repent and call unto the Lord for mercy. . . . Likewise, I beseech you, good brother Doctor Faustus, let my rude sermon be unto you a conversion. . . . Let my words, good brother Faustus, pierce into your adamant heart, and desire God, for His Son Christ's sake, to forgive you. . . .' All this while Doctor Faustus heard him very attentively, and replied: 'Father, your persuasions like me wondrous well, and I thank you with all my heart for your goodwill and counsel, promising you so far as I may to follow your discipline'; whereupon, he took his leave. And being come home, he laid him very pensive on his bed, bethinking himself of the words of the good old man, and in a manner began to repent that he had given his soul to the Devil, intending to deny all that he had promised unto Lucifer. Continuing in these cogitations, suddenly his Spirit appeared unto him, clapping him upon the head, and wrung it as though he would have pulled the head from the shoulders, saying unto him: 'Thou knowest, Faustus, that thou hast given thyself, body and soul, unto my lord Lucifer, and hast vowed thyself an enemy unto God and unto all men; and now thou beginnest to hearken to an old doting fool[1], which persuadeth thee as it were unto God, when indeed it is too late; for that thou art the Devil's, and he hath good power presently to fetch thee. Wherefore he hath sent me unto thee, to tell thee that, seeing thou hast sorrowed for that thou hast done, begin again and write another writing with thine own blood; if not, then I will tear thee all to pieces.' Thereat Doctor Faustus was sore afraid, and said: 'My Mephostophiles, I will write again what thou wilt.' Wherefore he sate him down, and with his own blood he wrote as followeth; which writing was

[1] In the original '*dem alten Lauren.*'

Digitized by Google

afterwards sent to a dear friend of the said Doctor Faustus, being his kinsman.

[In CHAPTER XLIX the Second Contract is given *verbatim*; and the story then returns to the Old Man.]

And presently upon the making of this letter, he became so great an enemy unto the poor old man, that he sought his life by all means possible. But this godly man was strong in the Holy Ghost, that he could not be vanquished by any means; for, about two days after that he had exhorted Faustus, as the poor man lay in his bed, suddenly there was a mighty rumbling in the chamber, the which he was never wont to hear; and he heard as it had been the groaning of a sow which lasted long. Whereupon the good old man began to jest and mock, and said: 'Oh, what barbarian cry is this; oh, fair bird, what foul music is this of a fair angel, that could not tarry two days in his place! Beginnest thou now to run into a poor man's house, when thou hast no power, and wert not able to keep thine own two days?' With these and such like words the Spirit departed. And when he came home, Faustus asked him how he had sped with the old man; to whom the Spirit answered, the old man was harnessed, and that[1] he could not once lay hold upon him; but he would not tell how the old man had mocked him, for the devils can never abide to hear of their fall. Thus doth God defend the hearts of all honest Christians, that betake themselves under His tuition.

[After a recital of divers magical tricks and wonderful experiences of Doctor Faustus, and an account of his life with the Spirit of fair Helena of Greece, who bore him a son whom he named Justus Faustus, we come at last to his doings with his Spirit Mephostophiles and others in his 'twenty-fourth and last year.' First, we have the account of his last will, in which he left his house and garden, with a farm, and 1,600 guilders in cash, and many valuables, to his servant Wagner, of whose service with him some further account is given. The rest of his time Doctor Faustus meant

[1] *Ap.* Thoms, 'harnessed so that.' In the *Faustbuch*: 'was in full armour' (*geharnischt*), 'meaning prayer.'

Digitized by Google

to spend in inns and students' company, drinking and eating, with other jollity (CHAPTER LVI). He also promised to help his servant and heir to a Spirit of his own (CHAPTER LVII). Then, as time ran away with Doctor Faustus as the hour-glass, for but one month out of his twenty-four years remained between him and his doom, he became] like a taken murderer or thief, the which findeth himself guilty in conscience before the Judge have given sentence, fearing every hour to die. For he was grieved, and wailing spent the time; went talking to himself, wringing of his hands, sobbing and sighing; he fell away from flesh, and was very lean, and kept himself close; neither could he abide to see or hear of his Mephostophiles any more (CHAPTER LVIII).

[Faustus' complaints are continued in CHAPTERS LIX, LX, and LXI. In the course of CHAPTER LX he cries:] 'Ah, grievous pains that pierce my panting heart; whom is there now that can deliver me! Would God that I knew where to hide me, or into what place to creep or fly! Ah! woe, woe is me; be where I will, yet am I taken[1].'

[In CHAPTER LXI he exclaims:] 'Ah, that I could carry the heavens on my shoulders, so that there were time at last to quit me of this everlasting damnation[2]!'

CHAPTER LXII. *Here followeth the miserable and lamentable end of Doctor Faustus, by the which all Christians may take an example and warning.* In the 24th year, Dr. Faustus' time being come, his Spirit appeared unto him, giving him his writing again, and commanding him to make preparation; for that the Devil would fetch him against a certain time appointed. Dr. Faustus mourned and sighed wonderfully, and never went to bed, nor slept

[1] Chapter lx, in which this passage occurs, is wanting in the text of the English *History* as reproduced by Thoms. It corresponds to Chapter lxv of the *Faustbuch*, where there follows an additional chapter, in which the Spirit thrusts himself into Faustus' presence, and attacks him in the midst of his despair with strange jests and proverbs.

[2] In the *Faustbuch*: 'Ah, I would willingly miss (*entberen*) heaven, if I might only escape from eternal punishment.' See note to xiv. 67 of the play.

Digitized by Google

wink[1] for sorrow. Wherefore his Spirit appeared again, comforting him and saying: 'My Faustus, be not thou so cowardly-minded; for although that thou losest thy body, it is not long unto the day of judgement; and thou must die at the last, although thou live many thousand years.' . . . Doctor Faustus, that had none other expectation but to pay his debts with his own skin, went on the same day that his Spirit said the Devil would fetch him, unto his trusty and dearest-beloved brethren and companions, as Masters and Bachelors of Art, and other students more, the which had often visited him at his house in merriment. These he entreated that they would walk into the village called Rimlich, half a mile from Wittenberg, and that they would there take with him for their repast part of a small banquet; the which they all agreed unto. So they went together, and there held their dinner in a most sumptuous manner. Doctor Faustus with them (dissemblingly) was merry, but not from the heart; wherefore he requested them that they would also take part of his rude supper; the which they agreed unto. 'For' (quoth he) 'I must tell you what is the victualler's due[2].' And when they slept (for drink was in their heads)[3], then Doctor Faustus paid and discharged the shot, and bound the students and the Masters to go with him into another room, for he had many wonderful matters to tell them. And when they were entered the room as he requested, Doctor Faustus said unto them, as hereafter followeth.

CHAPTER LXIII. *An Oration of Faustus to the Students.* 'My trusty and well-beloved friends, the cause why I have invited you into this place is this: Forasmuch as you have known me this many years, in what manner of life I have

[1] 'A wink,' *ap.* Thoms.

[2] In the original: 'He had something of importance (*was Wichtigs*) to tell them.' The passage in the English text must be a mistranslation due to haste.

[3] In the original: 'When the posset (*Schlaftrunk*) had also been finished.' This is another more excusable, but equally absurd, mistranslation. A comparison of the German and English texts suggests that the translator (as well as, according to him, the students) 'nodded' at this point.

Digitized by Google

lived, practising all manner of conjurations and wicked exercises, the which I have obtained through the help of the Devil, into whose devilish fellowship they have brought me, the which use the like art and practice, urged by the detestable provocation of my flesh, the stiff-necked and rebellious will, with my filthy and infernal thoughts; the which were ever before me, pricking me forward so earnestly, that I must perforce have the consent of the Devil to aid me in my devices. And to the end I might the better bring my purpose to pass, to have the Devil's aid and furtherance, which I never have wanted in mine actions, I have promised unto him at the end and accomplishing of 24 years, both body and soul, to do therewith at his pleasure. And this day, this dismal day, those 24 years are fully expired; for, night beginning, my hour-glass is at an end[1], the direful finishing whereof I carefully expect. For out of all doubt this night he will fetch me, to whom I have given myself in recompense of his service, both body and soul, and twice confirmed writings with my proper blood. Now have I called you, my well-beloved lords, friends, brethren and fellows, before that fatal hour to take my friendly farewell, to the end that my departing may not hereafter be hidden from you; beseeching you herewith, courteous and loving lords and brethren, not to take in evil part anything done by me, but with friendly commendations to salute all my friends and companions wheresoever; desiring both you and them, if ever I have trespassed against your minds in anything, that you would all heartily forgive me. And as for those lewd practices the which this full 24 years I have followed, you shall hereafter find them in writing; and, I beseech you, let this my lamentable end to the residue of your lives be a sufficient warning, that you have God always before your eyes, praying unto Him that He would ever defend you from the temptation of the Devil, and all his false deceits; not falling altogether from God, as I wretched and ungodly damned creature have done, having denied and defied

[1] Cf. below, p. cxxxix, note 3.

Digitized by Google

Baptism, the Sacraments of Christ's Body, God Himself, all heavenly powers and earthly men—yea, I have denied such a God, that desireth not to have one lost[1]. Neither let the evil fellowship of wicked companions mislead you as it hath done me; visit earnestly and oft the church; war and strive continually against the Devil with a good and stedfast belief on God and Jesus Christ; and use your vocation in holiness! Lastly, to knit up my troubled oration, this is my friendly request: that you would to rest, and let nothing trouble you; also, if you chance to hear any noise or rumbling about the house, be not therewith afraid; for there shall no evil happen unto you; also, I pray you, arise not out of your beds. But above all things I entreat you, if you hereafter find my dead carcase, convey it unto the earth; for I die both a good and a bad Christian;—a good Christian, for that I am heartily sorry, and in my heart always pray for mercy, that my soul may be delivered;—a bad Christian, for that I know the Devil will have my body; and that I would willingly give him, so that he would leave my soul in quiet; wherefore I pray you that you would depart to bed. And so I wish you a quiet night, which unto me notwithstanding will be horrible and fearful.'

This oration or declaration was made by Doctor Faustus, and that with a hearty and resolute mind, to the end he might not discomfort them. But the students wondered greatly thereat, that he was so blinded; for knavery, conjuration, and such like foolish things, to give his body and soul unto the Devil; for they loved him entirely, and never suspected any such thing before he had opened his mind to them. Wherefore one of them said unto him: 'Ah, friend Faustus, what have you done to conceal this matter so long from us, we would by the help of good divines, and the grace of God, have brought you out of this net, and have torn you out of the bondage and chains of Sathan; whereas now we fear it is too late, to the utter ruin of your body and soul.' Doctor Faustus answered: 'I durst

[1] The allusion seems to be St. Matthew x. 29.

Digitized by Google

never do it, although I often minded to settle myself unto godly people, to desire counsel and help, as once mine old neighbour counselled me, that I should follow his learning, and leave all my conjurations. Yet when I was minded to amend, and to follow that good man's counsel, then came the Devil, and would have had me away, as this night he is like to do; and said, so soon as I turned again to God, he would dispatch me altogether. Thus, even thus, good gentlemen and my dear friends, was I enthralled in that Satanical band, all good desires drowned, all piety banished, all purpose of amendment utterly exiled, by the tyrannous threatenings of my deadly enemy. But when the students heard his words, they gave him counsel to do naught else but call upon God, desiring Him, for the love of His sweet Son Jesus Christ's sake, to have mercy upon him, teaching him this form of prayer: 'O God, be merciful unto me, poor miserable sinner, and enter not into judgement with me; for no flesh is able to stand before thee[1]. Although, O Lord, I must leave my sinful body unto the Devil, being by him deluded; yet Thou in mercy mayest preserve my soul.' This they repeated unto him; yet it could take no hold; but, even as Cain, he also said his sins were greater than God was able to forgive; for all his thought was on his writing; he meant he had made it too filthy in writing it with his own blood. The students and the other that were there, when they had prayed for him, they wept, and so went forth; but Faustus tarried in the hall. And when the gentlemen were laid in bed, none of them could sleep; for that they attended to hear if they might be privy to his end. It happened, between twelve and one o'clock at midnight there blew a mighty storm of wind against the house, as though it would have blown the foundation thereof out of his place. Hereupon the students began to fear, and got out of their beds, comforting one another; but they would not stir out of the chamber; and the host of the house ran out of doors, thinking the house would fall. The students

[1] St. Luke xviii. 13, and Ps. cxliii. 2.

Digitized by Google

lay near unto that hall wherein Doctor Faustus lay, and they heard a mighty noise and hissing, as if the hall had been full of snakes and adders; with that the hall door flew open wherein Doctor Faustus was; then he began to cry for help, saying, 'Murder, murder'; but it came forth with half a voice hollowly; shortly after, they heard him no more. But when it was day, the students, that had taken no rest that night, arose and went into the hall in the which they left Doctor Faustus; where notwithstanding they found no Faustus; but all the hall lay besprinkled with blood, his brains cleaving to the wall; for the Devil had beaten him from one wall against another; in one corner lay his eyes, in another his teeth, a pitiful and fearful sight to behold. Then began the students to bewail and weep for him, and sought for his body in many places; lastly, they came into the yard where they found his body lying on the horse-dung, most monstrously torn and fearful to behold; for his head and all his joints were dashed in pieces. The forenamed students and masters that were at his death, have obtained so much, that they buried him in the village, where he was so grievously tormented. After the which they returned to Wittenberg . . .

[The closing passages relate how this *History of Doctor Faustus* was found 'noted' in his house at Wittenberg, and how the students added to this an account of his death, and his servant's notes of it were added in another book. The enchanted Helena with her son had vanished; but Wagner the servant remained in the house, where he received a visit from the Spirit of his master; and others, passing by the house by night, saw Doctor Faustus looking out of the window. The *History* ends with an admonition to all Christians to shun the example of Faustus and to honour God all the days of their lives.]

*Ballad of Doctor Faustus.*

To these extracts from the English *History of Doctor Faustus* I append the text of the ballad already mentioned, as printed by Dyce from a copy in the Roxburghe Collection in the British Museum:—



Digitized by Google

'*The Judgment of God shewed upon one John Faustus, Doctor in Divinity.*

*Tune of* Fortune, my Foe.

All Christian men, give ear awhile to me,
How I am plung'd in pain, but cannot die:
I liv'd a life the like did none before,
Forsaking Christ, and I am damn'd therefore.

At Wittenburge, a town in Germany,
There was I born and bred of good degree;
Of honest stock, which afterwards I sham'd;
Accurst therefore, for Faustus was I nam'd.

In learning, loe, my uncle brought up me,
And made me Doctor in Divinity;
And, when he dy'd, he left me all his wealth,
Whose cursèd gold did hinder my souls health.

Then did I shun the holy Bible-book,
Nor on Gods word would ever after look;
But studied accursed conjuration,
Which was the cause of my utter damnation.

The devil in fryars weeds appear'd to me,
And streight to my request he did agree,
That I might have all things at my desire:
I gave him soul and body for his hire.

Twice did I make my tender flesh to bleed,
Twice with my blood I wrote the devils deed,
Twice wretchedly I soul and body sold,
To live in peace and do what things I would.

For four and twenty years this bond was made,
And at the length my soul was truly paid:
Time ran away, and yet I never thought
How dear my soul our Saviour Christ had bought.

Would I had first been made a beast by kind!
Then had not I so vainly set my mind;
Or would, when reason first began to bloom,
Some darksome den had been my deadly tomb!

Woe to the day of my nativity!
Woe to the time that once did foster me!
And woe unto the hand that seal'd the bill!
Woe to myself, the cause of all my ill!

Digitized by Google

The time I past away, with much delight,
'Mongst princes, peers, and many a worthy knight
I wrought such wonders by my magick skill,
That all the world may talk of Faustus still.

The devil he carried me up into the sky,
Where I did see how all the world did lie;
I went about the world in eight daies space,
And then return'd unto my native place.

What pleasure I did wish to plense my mind
He did perform, as bond and seal did bind;
The secrets of the stars and planets told,
Of earth and sea, with wonders manifold.

When four and twenty years was almost run,
I thought of all things that was past and done;
How that the devil would soon claim his right,
And carry me to everlasting night.

Then all too late I curst my wicked deed,
The dread whereof doth make my heart to bleed;
All daies and hours I mourned wondrous sore,
Repenting me of all things done before.

I then did wish both sun and moon to stay,
All times and seasons never to decay;
Then had my time nere come to dated end,
Nor soul and body down to hell descend.

At last, when I had but one hour to come,
I turn'd my glass, for my last hour to run,
And call'd in learned men to comfort me;
But faith was gone, and none could comfort me.

By twelve a clock my glass was almost out:
My grieved conscience then began to doubt;
I wisht the students stay in chamber by;
But, as they staid, they heard a dreadful cry.

Then present, lo, they came into the hall,
Whereas my brains was cast against the wall;
Both arms and legs in pieces torn they see,
My bowels gone: this was an end of me.

You conjurors and damnèd witches all,
Example take by my unhappy fall;
Give not your souls and bodies unto hell,
See that the smallest hair you do not sell.



Digitized by Google

But hope that Christ his kingdom you may gain,
Where you shall never fear such mortal pain;
Forsake the devil and all his crafty ways,
Embrace true faith that never more decays.

*Printed by and for A. M. and sold by the Booksellers of London.*'

Notices of additions to Marlowe's *Doctor Faustus* by other hands.

Much learning and ingenuity have been expended on the question, to what extent *The Tragical History of Doctor Faustus*, in the various forms in which it has come down to us, represents the play as originally written. An entry in Henslowe's *Diary* (Collier's edition, p. 71), which runs as follows—

'P^d^ unto Thomas Dickers the 20 of Desembr 1597, for adycyons to Fostus twentie shellinges, and fyve shellinges for a prolog to Marloes Tamberlen, so in all I payde twenty fyve shellinges'—

has indeed been shown by Mr. G. F. Warner[1] to be a forgery. Another entry, however, in the *Diary* (*u. s.*, p. 228)—

'Lent unto the companye, the 22 of novembr 1602, to paye unto W^m^ Birde and Samwell Rowley for their adicyones in Docter Fostes, the some of . . . . . iiij^li^,'

is genuine. The company in which Henslowe and his partner Edward Alleyn were chiefly interested (though they also had an interest in others) was that 'indifferently called the Earl of Nottingham's or the Lord Admiral's Servants' (who became 'the Prince's Servants' in 1603). To this company in all probability Marlowe's play had from the first belonged, having been written for them at the time when they were acting at the Curtain (on the stage of which an early ballad asserted that Marlowe 'in his early age' was a player and 'brake his leg'). In May, 1594, they began to act at the Rose, and here it must have been that they performed *Doctor Faustus* on September 30, 1594, and repeatedly afterwards[2]. After Alleyn had in 1600 built the Fortune they moved to this house, where they continued till

[1] In his *Catalogue of the Manuscripts and Muniments of Dulwich College*; see Mr. Bullen's Introduction to the *Works of Marlowe*, i. xv.

[2] Cf. Fleay's *Life of Shakespeare*, p. 116.

Digitized by Google

it was burnt down in 1621. In the 'Enventary tacken of all the properties for my Lord Admeralles men, the 10 of Marche, 1598,' given by Henslowe (Collier's edition, 273), occurs the item 'j dragon in fostes.' Alleyn himself at one time performed the hero of Marlowe's tragedy, as appears from a passage cited by Collier from S. Rowlands' *Knave of Clubs*, 1609:

> 'The gull gets on a surplis
> With crosse upon his breast,
> Like Allen playing Faustus;
> In that manner he was drest;'

and an inventory of Alleyn's theatrical apparel includes 'Faustus Jerkin, his cloke[1].'

Estimate of these revisions.

The play was entered on the Stationers' Registers on January 7, 1601, but the earliest extant edition dates from 1604. Before this date, therefore, the play had undergone at least one revision of so substantial a nature that the sum of £4 was risked by Henslowe on the transaction. It is of course possible that this revision restored parts or passages which an earlier revision had omitted; it is likewise possible that parts or passages omitted in one or more of the revisions were re-inserted in the printed editions of the play, of which the third and following contain much that is not in the first and second extant editions. This would be the more likely if we were to accept the view of Mr. Bullen, that Marlowe revised his own work, and that in the edition of 1616 we thus occasionally have before us the author's revised text, or restored passages of his original text which had been omitted in the first edition[2]. There is, however, a third possibility, which is assumed by two high though very diverse[3]

[1] Cited by Dyce, xx, from Collier's *Memoirs of Alleyn*, 20. Cf. the *Works of S. Rowlands*, printed for the Hunterian Club, vol. ii. (1880), cited in *Faustsplitter*, pp. 65 seqq.

[2] See Bullen's Introduction, pp. xxx–xxxiii. His conclusion accordingly is 'that the quartos of 1604 and 1616 were both printed from imperfect and interpolated playhouse copies, and that neither gives the correct text; that in some cases the readings of the earlier editions are preferable, in other cases the readings of the later.'

[3] Mr. Fleay, in the Appendix (A) with which he has favoured me,

Digitized by Google

authorities, viz. that the edition of 1604 contains the play as it was performed from 1597 onwards with additions by an earlier hand, and the edition of 1616 the play as it was performed from 1602 onwards with the additions by Birde and S. Rowley[1]. That earlier hand has—in agreement with the forged entry in Henslowe's *Diary*—been held to be Dekker's. Mr. Fleay, whose elaborate argument should in justice to him be read in his own words, has ventured on the additional conjecture, that Marlowe originally left his play in an unfinished state, and that though Dekker afterwards continued

and Ulrici, *Christopher Marlowe und Shakespeare's Verhältniss zu ihm*, in the *Jahrbuch der deutschen Shakespeare-Gesellschaft*, i. (1865) 64–5.

[1] This hypothesis derives some further support from the fact that a passage printed in the quartos of 1604 and 1609 is omitted in that of 1616; which passage, as has been acutely pointed out by Dr. Albers, *u. s.*, 380, seems like an addition of the year 1597. It is the Clown's contemptuous remark on the identity of value between French crowns and English counters (iv. 36–7). 'In the year 1595 an active and considerable commerce arose between England and France. England commenced to export a large quantity "d'objets de première nécessité" to France, and this commerce, together with the reimbursement of the large sums which Queen Elizabeth had lent to Henry IV, drew a large quantity of French money to England; but this was not the case in the days of Marlowe, and the allusion in question in his days would have been rather incomprehensible. Five years later—in 1602—when Birde and Rowley revised the play, Sully had already improved the French finances so much, that the allusion was omitted as antiquated.' It must, however, be allowed that the passage, as is suggested by Logeman, p. 50, admits of being interpreted in a contrary sense; if the Clown refers not to French crowns in general, but to the guilders which are offered him as French crowns in particular. Some weight attaches to Logeman's argument, that as Bushell, who published the edition of 1604, entered the book on the Stationers' Registers in 1601 (cf. ante, p. lxxx), and did not make over the copyright to Wright, the publisher of the edition of 1616, till 1610, the 1604 text may be concluded to contain none of the Birde and Rowley additions of 1602, though it cannot be called absolutely conclusive. It seems hardly necessary to refer to the same scholar's remark that the mention, vii. 96, of the unknown Friar Sandelo points to the conclusion that the text of 1604 does not represent all Marlowe's work. See the note on the passage, and cf. Dyce's remark that a scene is 'wanting' between scenes viii and ix.

Digitized by Google

to make additions as occasion required, his first contributions to *Doctor Faustus* formed part of the play when it made its first appearance on the stage.

This conjecture I should think it hazardous to discuss. With regard, however, to the other hypotheses noted above, the following may, I think, be safely stated. A general consensus exists to the effect that it is inadmissible to charge Marlowe with the authorship of the comic additions appearing in the publication of 1616[1]. These then may in substance be ascribed to Birde and Rowley. Of William Birde, or Borne, we have nothing of his own left; Samuel Rowley, to judge from the one of his two extant plays with which I am acquainted[2], was a writer resembling Thomas Heywood in his least refined vein—the very man to write down a play to the level of a popular audience.

The question as to the authorship of the comic scenes in the first extant edition left open.

On the other hand, at whatever risk of incurring the imputation of needless hesitancy, I cannot consider it established either that Marlowe was not the author of the comic scenes forming part of the play in the first (1604) edition, or that if he was not their author, Dekker was. My own opinion indeed strongly leans in the direction of both these theories; but conviction ought to wait upon nothing short of proof. Marlowe, though a writer not altogether devoid of humour[3], is far from being distinguished by this quality; and he may not have scrupled to meet the tastes of his audience by a reproduction of comic passages from the story-book in an appropriately vulgar form[4]. Scenes of this kind had been

[1] See Mr. Bullen's Introduction, p. xxx. This would not exclude the possibility, already referred to, that a blank-verse passage or two in the text of 1616 are by Marlowe. See note on Chorus before sc. vii, l. 6.

[2] *When You See Me You Know Me, or the Famous Chronicle Historie of King Henrie the Eight*, &c.

[3] There is a touch of it in Gaveston, in *Edward II.* The Friars in *The Jew of Malta* are coarsely satirical rather than humorous figures, and they may not be altogether from Marlowe's hand; the Nurse in *Dido* (who probably suggested the Nurse in *Romeo and Juliet*) is humorously drawn, but may be Nash's invention.

[4] There is considerable force in the view urged by Dr. Otto

Digitized by Google

introduced into the original *Tamburlaine*, which the printer of that tragedy in 1590 states that he has purposely omitted. And, as it seems to me, those critics whose conclusions are formed rather by means of a generously trained artistic insight than by a close study of historical evidence, have also a right to be now and then heard in arrest of judgement. It is the opinion of Mr. J. A. Symonds, whose criticisms are rarely idle, that 'even the pitiful distractions—pitiful in their leaden dullness and blunt edge of drollery—with which Faustus amuses his worse than Promethean leisure until the last hour of his contract sounds, heighten the infernal effect[1].' And even should it be regarded as certain that Marlowe had no hand in the buffoonery and horseplay which after one fashion or another 'relieves' the action of the play in its earliest extant form, Dekker cannot be irredeemably put in his place. Inasmuch as he was a dramatist devoid neither of genuine comic humour nor of elements of tragic power, something besides a bare sense of justice inclines one to hesitate before voting him guilty of such padding in such a play[2].

Enough has been said to account for the plan pursued in the present volume. The additions of the 1616 text have been unhesitatingly excluded; but *The Tragical History of Doctor Faustus* has been reprinted in full from the text of the first extant quarto.

The first three quartos of the play; and later editions.

This is the quarto, preserved in the Bodleian Library, bearing the date of 1604. A second quarto, a mere reprint, with emendations of the first, is that of 1609, belonging to

Francke, the editor of Mountford's *Faustus-farce*, that Marlowe's authorship of the comic scenes is rendered probable not only by his relation as a playwright to his public, but also by his relation as a dramatist to the narrative on which he founded his play.

[1] J. A. Symonds, *Shakespeare's Predecessors*, p. 633; cf. ibid., p. 644.

[2] In his essay, *Zur Charakteristik der Dramen Marlowe's* (Munich, 1889), Dr. O. Fischer has by means of an exhaustive analysis of the diction and vocabulary of *Tamburlaine* and *Doctor Faustus*, conclusively demonstrated the actual inferiority in these respects of the latter play, notwithstanding the passages of unequalled splendour contained in it. This result is, of course, due to the 'additions.'

Digitized by Google

the City Library at Hamburg[1]. A third edition is that of 1616, in which it is noteworthy that several expressions likely to give offence are changed, and certain lines are even altogether omitted, most of them apparently for the same reason[2]. With this 'the later editions of 1619, 1620, 1624, 1631 and 1663 are more or less in agreement; (in the edition of 1663 is inserted, among others, a scene at Babylon which contains an allusion to the story of *The Jew of Malta*[3]). A careful comparison of the texts will be found in the Critical Commentary in the late Professor W. Wagner's admirable edition of the play; the text of 1616 as well as that of 1604 is reprinted in Dyce's edition of *Marlowe's Works*. In my notes I have adverted to some of the more important variations which the text of 1616 presents; for my text I have compared Dyce's edition of the 1604 quarto with that quarto itself, supplementing my comparison by means of the more accurate collation by L. Proescholdt[4]. I have not thought it desirable to alter Dyce's modernized spelling. In the stage-directions and headings of scenes I have usually followed Dyce, while allowing myself occasional liberties of my own[5].

[1] See Wagner in *Anglia*, ii. 521. This is said to have been reprinted in 1611.

[2] Thus i. 106–17 are omitted; in iii. 53 'all godliness' is substituted for 'the Trinity'; i. 135–6 and vi. 100–2 are omitted altogether; for xiv. 96–8 is substituted the one line,

'O, if my soul must suffer for my sin;'

and in the same scene the word 'heaven' repeatedly takes the place of the Divine name. These changes were no doubt made in consequence of the Act of 1606, for restraining the Abuses of Players; and Logeman may be right in supposing that the feeling which found official expression in that Act had already occasioned one or two changes of the same kind upon the printing of the text of 1604.

[3] See Dyce, xxii, note.

[4] In *Anglia*, iii. 88–96.

[5] I have retained the division of the play into scenes only—not acts and scenes—adopted in my first edition. There is some force in the observation of Wagner, *Anglia*, ii. 523, that the introduction of a chorus into this play makes a division into acts requisite. But in the actual condition of the play this becomes of no moment.

Digitized by Google

Influence of *Doctor Faustus* upon other early plays.

The influence of Marlowe's tragedy upon Elizabethan dramatic literature is undeniable, but cannot be illustrated at length here. Apart from the relation between the two plays printed in this volume, there can be little doubt that the tragedy of *Doctor Faustus* suggested the composition, not long afterwards, of *The Merry Devil of Edmonton*, which presents many points of contact with Marlowe's play, although the experiences of the Peterhouse scholar are, in Dr. Herford's words, 'hardly more than a boyish travesty' of those of the Wittenberg doctor[1]. Of a different cast is a play by Barnabe Barnes, called *The Devil's Charter*, performed before King James I at Christmas, 1606–7, and in October, 1607, and printed at London in the latter year. This 'sensation' tragedy treats of the life and death of Pope Alexander VI, as narrated in Widmann's *Commentary*, and contains a scene of the signing of a contract between Alexander and a 'diuill' disguised as a pronotary; which scene is clearly copied from the corresponding one (v.) in *Doctor Faustus*. There are other reminiscences of Faustus in this curious work[2]. Nor is it likely that the powerful scene towards the close of Nash's remarkable novel, *The Unfortunate Traveller*, could have been written by one unacquainted with the contract-scene, taken by the play from the *History*[3]. The influence of Marlowe's play upon Dekker's dramatic treatment, in his tragedy of *Olde Fortunatus*, of another famous legend in many respects parallel to the Faust-story is quite unmistak-

Wagner himself is in his own edition obliged to begin Act II at the commencement of sc. v, and Act V at that of sc. xiii, where there is no chorus.

[1] See C. H. Herford's *Studies*, pp. 195–7.

[2] See ibid. pp. 197–202; and cf. Collier, *History of English Dramatic Poetry*, i. 368, 435, and Wagner, Introduction, xxxviii–xxxix.

[3] See *Nash's Works*, ed. Grosart, v. 183: 'So affectionately and zealously did hee giue him selfe ouer to infidelitie, as if sathan had gotten the vpper hand of our high Maker. The veyne in his left hande that is deriued from his heart with no faint blow he pierst, and with the bloud that flowd from it, writ a ful obligation of his soule to the diuell: yea more earnestly he praied vnto God neuer to forgiue it his soule, than manie Christians doo to saue theyr soules . . .'

Digitized by Google

able, and furnishes another argument in favour of Dekker's connexion with the earlier of the two plays[1].

References to it in our early literature.

The great popularity of Marlowe's *Doctor Faustus* is further attested by various references in our dramatic and other early literature, some of which, however, may in the first instance have been suggested by the story-book rather than by the drama. The notice of Alleyn's performance of the principal character in the play has been already cited. Not long afterwards (for the allusions do not occur in the earlier version) Shakespeare in *The Merry Wives of Windsor* appeals to the story of Doctor Faustus, and makes Ancient Pistol salute Master Slender as 'Mephostophilus[2].' In Jonson's *The Alchemist* (1610), iv. 4, there is a general allusion to 'the Faustus that casteth figures and can conjure[3].' In Middleton's *Black Book* (1604) a 'villainous lieutenant,' who is described as resembling a private just cut down from the gallows, is furnished with 'a head of hair like one of my devils in *Doctor Faustus*, when the old theatre cracked and frightened the audience[4].' The *Tragedy of Doctor Faustus* and the 'shaggehayrd' devils in it are likewise referred to in John Melton's *Astrologaster or the Figure-Caster* (1620); and there are reminiscences, either of the play or of the story on which it was founded, in J. C.'s comedy of *The Two Merry Milkmaids* (1620), in Thomas Randolph's *Aristippus or the Jovial Philosopher* (1630), in the same author's *Plutophthalmia* (printed 1651, but written much earlier), in 'J. D.'s'

[1] See C. H. Herford, pp. 213–5, 217.

[2] See *The Merry Wives of Windsor*, iv. 5. 71, where Bardolph says: 'As soon as I came beyond Eton, they threw me off from behind one of them, in a slough of mire, and set spurs and away, like three German devils, three Doctor Faustuses;' and cf. ibid., i. 1. 132.

[3] What follows has, however, no precise equivalent in either play or *History*. See Logeman, p. 123, where one or two further allusions are cited. On p. 122, it is pointed out that the allusion in *The Time's Whistle* (1614–5) (*Sat.* iv. ll. 1625 seqq.) to Faustus and his 'soon emptied hourglass' must have been suggested by the *History*, and not by the play. Cf. note to stage-direction after xiv. 63.

[4] See Bullen's edition of *Middleton's Works*, viii. 13; cf. O. Francke, in the publication cited in the next note, p. xx.

Digitized by Google

*The Knave in Grain new vampt* (1640), and in Alexander Browne's *The Cunning Lovers* (1654)[1]. In a collection of *Satires* by 'R. C. Gent.,' written between the years 1614 and 1616, occurs a passage referring, as the modern editor of these *Satires* suggests, 'to the story of the play of *Faustus*, although it may be said the story was common enough for "R. C." to have got it elsewhere[2].'

Perhaps, too, a special allusion to Marlowe's authorship may be sought in the last two lines of the fine passage in which the author of *The Returne from Parnassus* (Part II, i. 2, 294–5), a play produced at Cambridge in December, 1601, though not printed till 1606, contrasts the genius of Marlowe with his 'life and end':

> 'Our theater hath lost, Pluto hath got,
> A tragick penman for a driery plot.'

*Doctor Faustus* and *Paradise Lost.*

A question lying beyond the range of this Introduction, and possessed of too deep a literary interest to allow of a cursory treatment, is that of the influence upon Milton, as the author of *Paradise Lost*, of Marlowe's tragedy and its immediate source[3]. *Doctor Faustus* was revived on the English stage soon after the Restoration[4].

[1] I owe these last references, which it has been impossible for me to verify, to Dr. Otto Francke's Introduction to his edition of Mountford's *Faustus-farce*, in Professor Vollmöller's admirable series of *Englische Sprach-und Literaturdenkmale* (Heilbronn, 1886).

[2] Wagner, Introduction, xxix–xl. The passage occurs p. 53 of Mr. J. W. Cowper's edition of this collection of *Satires* in the Early English Text Society's Publications, 1871. Mr. Cowper (Introduction, xxi) observes that two lines in the same satire appear to be 'another form of one of the opinions "of one Christofer Marlaye," namely, "that the first beginning of religion was only to keep men in awe."'

[3] See on this head the suggestive remarks of Mr. A. W. Verity in the Appendix to his edition of bks. iii and iv of *Paradise Lost* (Pitt Press, 1894); and in particular, with reference to special points to be touched on in the Notes, his conclusion, that Milton's adherence to the Ptolemaic theory was pre-eminently due to Marlowe, Shakespeare, and others having caused this theory to become a tradition of our literature.

[4] On May 26, 1662, Pepys took his wife to the Red Bull (in Clerkenwell), 'where we saw *Dr. Faustus*, but so wretchedly and poorly done, that we were sick of it, and the worse because by

Digitized by Google

Marlowe's play in Germany.

So popular a stage-play as Marlowe's *Doctor Faustus* could hardly fail to be carried into Germany by the English comedians, who, as already noticed, performed in that country in the latter part of the sixteenth and the early part of the seventeenth century. We are accordingly informed that *Doctor Faustus*, as well as *The Jew of Malta*, was acted with nine other English plays by an English company—but in German versions—during the Carnival at Graetz in 1608[1]. These were clearly Marlowe's. Again, among the plays acted at the Dresden Court by the English comedians in 1626 we find mentioned a *Tragœdia von Dr. Faust*[2], which may surely, without hesitation, be identified with our play. Thus Marlowe, who had derived his subject from a German source, seems in his turn to have influenced, if not to have given rise to, the treatment of the same theme by the German popular drama. 'That our old plays,' writes Lessing[3], 'really contain much that is English, I could prove to you with very

a former resolution it is to be the last play we are to see till Michaelmas.'

[1] See Bullen's Introduction, p. xxvii, who refers to J. Meissner, *Die Englischen Comoedianten zur Zeit Shakespeare's in Oesterreich*. As to the evidence for Meissner's statement that *Doctor Faustus* was acted at Frankfort-on-the-Maine, see ibid., p. xxxviii, note.

[2] See above, p. lx; and compare Cohn, *u. s.*, cxv, cxvii, and R. Genée, *Geschichte der Shakespeareschen Dramen in Deutschland*, 41. A 'Barrabas,' clearly a reproduction of Marlowe's *The Jew of Malta*, occurs in the same list. Yet Bielschowsky (cf. ante, lxxvii, note 2) has persuaded himself that the English comedies not only found a Faust-drama already in existence in Germany, but in most cases (vorzugsweise) performed it. See *Vierteljahrschrift, u. s.*, 225. In her *Memoirs* (Leipzig, 1879), the Duchess (afterwards Electress) Sophia relates how her brother-in-law George William, then Duke of Hanover, in 1661 sent for German comedians from Hamburg, and how they performed the carrying off of Doctor Faustus by the Devil. Under the same year she mentions the death of the Bishop of Osnabrück (Cardinal von Warttenberg). In 1708 the Duchess Elizabeth Charlotte of Orleans is found reminding her aunt of both these events, and how 'everybody at the time exclaimed that the Devil had taken the Bishop as well as the Doctor.' (*Aus den Briefen*, &c., ed. Bodemann, 1891, pp. 181 and 266.)

[3] Quoted by Kuno Fischer, *u. s.*, 78. Yet, as Erich Schmidt, *u. s.*, 73, observes, Lessing appears to have known nothing of Marlowe or of the travelling English comedians.

Digitized by Google

little trouble. To name only the best known among them: *Doctor Faust* has a number of scenes, which only a Shakespearean genius was capable of conceiving. And how thoroughly in love Germany was, and partly still is, with her *Doctor Faust!*'

Later dramatic treatments of the subject in England

Here it is necessary to break off. For it would carry me beyond the proper sphere of this Introduction, were I to pursue the history of the literary treatments of the story of Faustus beyond the period of the direct influence of Marlowe's tragedy. It must suffice to observe, on the one hand, that in England no dramatic version of the theme has been attempted after Marlowe's worthy of notice by its side. Fortunately, neither the puppet-play exhibited in the early years of the eighteenth century by Martin Powell, in his Punch-and-Judy show under the piazzas in Covent Garden[1], nor a series of pantomimes beginning with Thurmond's *Harlequin Dr. Faustus* (1724)[2], need be dwelt upon, more especially as the origin of both seems traceable neither to Marlowe's play, nor to the English ballad, but to traditions derived more or less directly from the English *History of Doctor Faustus*[3]. Of the unlucky W. Mountford's *Life and*

[1] This was the Powell to whose 'skill in motions' the *Spectator* (No. 14, March 16, 1711) thought too great encouragement could not be given, provided he were under proper restrictions.

[2] See Geneste's *Hist. of Drama and Stage in England*, iii. 155–6.

[3] Cf. Diebler, *Faust- und Wagnerpantomimen in England*, in *Anglia*, vii. (1884) 341 seqq. Pope alludes in *The Dunciad* (III, 233 seqq.) to the opening scene of Thurmond's pantomime:—

> 'And look'd, and saw a sable Sorc'rer rise,
> Swift to whose hand a wingèd volume flies:
> All sudden, Gorgons hiss, and Dragons glare,
> And ten horn'd fiends and giants rush to war,' &c.

In a subsequent line (308) Faustus is mentioned by name; and in a note Pope describes him as 'the subject of a set of Farces which lasted in vogue two or three seasons,' and ridicules 'persons of the first quality in England' for frequenting such senseless entertainments. See also Engel, *u. s.*, 30; O. Francke, *u. s.*, xxx. Aaron Hill (*Works*, ed. 1754, iv. 62), addressing the opera soprano Senesimo, writes:

> 'Thou to thy famish'd Italy shalt go,
> And rival Faustus to the shades below.'

Digitized by Google

*Death of Doctor Faustus*, on the other hand (a farce produced at Dorset Gardens between 1684 and 1688, and published in 1697), the greater part was borrowed from Marlowe, and the rest was harlequinade[1]. Thus the popularity of the theme, if not of the play, had survived into a new and different age of the English drama[2]. Marlowe's tragedy itself has, except on an isolated occasion, which reflects honour on those who took part in the attempt[3], remained a stranger to our stage. Later English dramatic versions of the story are based partly on the old legend and on Marlowe, partly on Goethe, and have in no case aimed at more than the delectation of theatrical audiences[4]. What little a work of a very different kind—Byron's *Manfred*—owed to Marlowe's *Faustus*, it owed indirectly through Goethe. In Germany, on the other hand, the story of Faustus has been the theme of a numberless series of dramatic treatments; and two of the greatest names of that literature are, though each in a different measure, associated with the subject. Lessing drew up two plans of a drama on Faust; but has left only a single scene[5]. Thus it remained for Goethe to make the subject his own. On Goethe's *Faust*, the inseparable companion of nearly the whole of the poet's literary life, research and criticism have expended,

and in Germany.

Lessing.

Goethe.

[1] See O. Francke's edition already cited.

[2] Sir William D'Avenant in his *The Playhouse to be Let* (written about 1673) refers to *Faustus* as a popular play of the old times. See Collier, iii. 424. Philips, in his *Theatrum Poetarum* (1675), mentions *Dr. Faustus* as by far the most popular of its author's plays.

[3] I refer to the representation of the play at St. George's Hall, London, on July 2 and 4, 1896, by the Elizabethan Stage Society, under the direction of Mr. William Poel. A prologue by Mr. A. C. Swinburne, aflame with enthusiasm, was recited at this performance. The Paris correspondent of the *Times* at a recent date, of which I have mislaid my note, reported the performance at the Théatre de l'Art of a close translation, by MM. F. de Nion and C. Stryienski, of Marlowe, *La Tragique Histoire du Docteur Faust*.

[4] An incomplete list of English Faust-plays is given in the notes to Hayward's translation of Goethe's *Faust* (6th edition).

[5] See Erich Schmidt's essay in the *Goethe-Jahrbuch*, ii. (1881) 65–86.

Digitized by Google

and will continue to expend, their most elaborate efforts; but—in so far at least as the First Part is concerned—no research will really elucidate and no criticism correctly judge the poem, which fail to regard it as a gradual but not systematic growth. A comparison between Marlowe's *Doctor Faustus* and Goethe's *Faust* would be out of place here, and the direct debt owing by the latter to the former can easily be estimated with the aid of a few incidental hints which will be given in my Notes. This direct debt is trifling; the indirect can only be judged by an examination of Goethe's as well as of Marlowe's tragedy[1]. Goethe himself, when spoken to on the subject of Marlowe's *Doctor Faustus*, 'burst out with an exclamation of praise: How greatly is it all planned! He had thought of translating it. He was fully aware that Shakespeare did not stand alone!'[2]

Other German dramatists.

Of other German writers who have treated the subject[3] it will be enough to mention, among the poets of the earlier and later growths of the Romantic School, Friedrich (called 'Maler,' i.e. painter) Müller and Klinger, and (these after the publication of the First Part of Goethe's tragedy) Klingemann, Grabbe, Baggesen (a Dane who wrote, however, in

[1] In an article by M. Foucher de Careil, in the *Revue Politique et Littéraire* (No. 51, June 16, 1877), the contrast drawn by certain other French critics between Marlowe's and Goethe's Fausts as the living man and the philosophic symbol is discriminatingly weighed.

[2] H. Crabb Robinson's *Diary*, ii. 434, under the year 1829, quoted by Cunningham in the Introductory Notice to his edition of *Marlowe's Works*, xiv. In his earlier years Goethe appears to have been unacquainted with Marlowe. Erich Schmidt (*Goethe-Jahrbuch*, viii. (1887) 47 and 112, ingeniously conjectures that the book which in 1818 Goethe sent to Charlotte von Schiller, and which 'introduced her in the strangest way to the *Seven Deadly Sins*,' was no other than Marlowe's *Doctor Faustus*.

[3] See a list of dramatic treatments of the subject in German and other languages, before and after Goethe, in the Frankfort *Catalogue*, pp. 59 seqq. It is one of the earlier of these, by J. F. Schink, who appears to have attempted the theme more than once, that Goethe and Schiller rewarded with the *Xenion* (No. 814 in Erich Schmidt and B. Suphan's Goethe Society edition, 1893):

'Often our countryman Faust has sold himself to the Devil;
Yet was the terrible deed never so prosily done.'

Digitized by Google

German), Heine in his 'dance-poem' written for performance in London[1], the popular playwright Karl von Holtei, and the gifted but ill-fated Lenau[2]. Goethe's drama has received musical illustration from many hands, including those of Berlioz, Spohr, and Gounod. The Faust-story has long been a favourite theme of the pictorial art in almost every conceivable form; it has employed the vivid fancy of Retzsch and the comprehensive genius of Kaulbach, and the varied powers of innumerable competitors. But since Marlowe, its chosen home has been the stage, whence its chief figures, increased with an incomparable addition by the genius of Goethe, are unlikely to be banished so long as a theatre exists. Faustus in other arts.

Of translations of Marlowe's *Doctor Faustus* I am acquainted with three. Two are in German verse and prose— the one by Wilhelm Müller, published with an interesting preface by Achim von Arnim and notes by F. Notter in 1818[3]; the other A. von der Velde's, 1870. The third is in French, by the late F. V. Hugo, 1858[4]. Translations of Marlowe's tragedy.

A very few notes will suffice as a summary of all that is known concerning the sources and history of Greene's *Honourable History of Friar Bacon and Friar Bungay*. This comedy was certainly performed as early as February 19, 1592 (N. S.), as appears from the following entry in Henslowe's *Diary* (Collier's edition, 20): Greene's *Friar Bacon*. External evidence as to date.

'R[d] at fryer bacone, the 19 of febrary, satterdaye . . xvij[s] iij[d].'

*Friar Bacon* is the first play of the performance of which Henslowe states his share of receipts, and heads a list of

[1] See Mr. Sutherland-Edwards's paper, *How Dr. Faust became a Dancer*, in *Macmillan's Magazine*, March, 1877. A ballet *Doctor Faust* was actually performed at Vienna in 1730.

[2] As to these see Reichlin-Meldegg, *u. s.*, xi. 750 seqq. Erich Schmidt, *u. s.*, iii. 96, refers to Arnim's romance *Die Kronenwächter* (1817) as the only attempt of a modern German poet to draw the figure of the *historic* Faust.

[3] Reprinted in Scheible's *Kloster*, vol. v.

[4] Other translations exhibited at Frankfort were one in French by J.-P. A. Bazy (1850), one in German by F. Bodenstedt (1860), and one in Dutch by R. S. T. Modderman (1887).



Digitized by Google

plays performed by 'my lord Stranges mene,' probably at the Rose. It has been already seen that Mr. Fleay holds the play to have been performed at the 'Theater' by the Queen's men before it was transferred by them to Lord Strange's company. Henslowe mentions the performance of the play by Lord Strange's and by Lord Sussex's company (which latter had also borne the name of the Lord Chamberlain's men till the appointment of Lord Hunsdon to that office in 1582) on eight subsequent occasions, ending with April 5, 1593; but the receipts are usually moderate, though in one instance Henslowe's share rises to 'xxxiii$^{s}$ 1.'

The play was first published in 1594, in which year we find in the Stationers' Registers[2]:

'xiiii$^{to}$ die Maij

Entred for his Copie vnder th[e h]andes of bothe Edward White the wardens a booke entituled the *Historye of fryer BACON and fryer BOUNGAY* . . . . . vi$^{d}$ c.'

It was reprinted in 1630 and in 1655. One of the copies of the 1630 reprint in the Bodleian Library, which was erroneously supposed by its owner Malone to be an edition dated 1599[3], and the 1655 edition, which describes the play as 'recently' performed by the servants of the Prince Palatine, have been compared by me with Dyce's modernized text. The comedy was revived, by the Lord Admiral's men, for performance at the Court in 1602, when we find this notice in Henslowe (Collier, 228):

'Lent unto Thomas Downton, the 14 of desember 1602, to paye unto Mr. Mydelton for a prologe and epeloge for the playe of Bacon for the corte, the some of . . . . . v$^{s}$.'

The prologue and epilogue for which the dramatist Thomas Middleton was thus remunerated[4] are not, so far as I know, preserved.

Internal evidence.

There is but scant internal evidence to help us in fixing

[1] See Collier's Henslowe's *Diary*, and compare Fleay, *u. s.*

[2] Arber's Transcript, ii. 307.

[3] The above rectification is due to Prof. Churton Collins. (See his edition of *The Plays and Poems of Robert Greene*, 1905, vol. ii. p. 1 *n.*)

[4] According to Mr. Bell, in Dryden's day popular authors received a regular *honorarium* of five or six guineas for such contributions.

Digitized by Google

the date of the composition of *Friar Bacon*. The insufficiency on this head of two passages in the comedy which a line in *Doctor Faustus* resembles, has been already pointed out[1]. The allusion to the Statute (xv. 27), which Bernhardi thought might possibly be of value for the purpose, will not help us; for the Act of Elizabeth regulating apparel was 5 Elizabeth, c. 9 (1563). Far more striking is the conclusion drawn by Mr. Fleay from the line (i. 136):

'Lacy, thou know'st next Friday is St. James'.'

On the basis of a usage which he declared to be invariable in the dramatists, he concludes that Greene used the almanac for the current year as his date; now the only year which can be brought into question as that of the production of our play, and on which St. James's day (July 25) fell on a Friday, was the year 1589. He further repeats an argument, already before advanced by him, and derived from the form of the motto used by Greene at the conclusion of the play[2], which makes it improbable that it was terminated later than this very month of July, 1589. Bernhardi[3] has also directed attention to the similarity between the opening scenes of *Friar Bacon* and of *A Pleasant Comedie of Faire Em, the Millers Daughter of Manchester; with the Love of William the Conqueror*. This play, which has (but, I am convinced, wrongly) been attributed to Greene, must, whoever was its author[4], have been written after, and not before, *Friar Bacon*; of which its first scene certainly imitates the opening, but, as Simpson justly remarks, in an inferior way[5]. The title of the piece was very possibly suggested by the designation of the Keeper's Daughter in *Friar Bacon* as 'the Fair Maid of Fressingfield.' Moreover, the Epistle 'to the Gentlemen Students of both Universities,' prefixed by Greene to his

[1] Above, p. xxi. [2] See Appendix B. [3] *u. s.*, 38.
[4] Robert Wilson, according to Fleay, *Life of Shakespeare*, p. 105.
[5] See R. Simpson's Introduction to *Faire Em* in *The School of Shakspere*, ii. Professor Churton Collins, who considers that *Friar Bacon* was not written before 1590, supposes Greene's play to have been indebted to *Faire Em*, and not *vice versâ*.



Digitized by Google

*Farewell to Folly*, contains sarcastic allusions to two passages in *Faire Em*[1]. The tract in question was registered June 11, 1587; it is, however, not known to have been printed till 1561. The allusions in the Epistle to Greene's *Mourning Garment* (registered July 1, 1590, as 'England's mourninge gowne[2],' and first printed in that year), and to the published *Tamburlaine* (1590), show that the Epistle at all events cannot have been published with the *Farewell to Folly* till 1590 or 1591. On the other hand, the occurrence in Greene's *Penelope's Web* (received for printing June 19, 1587, but not extant in any earlier edition than that of 1601) of a passage similar in tone to the sneer against *Faire Em* and its author in the Epistle[3], can hardly be regarded as a proof that the Epistle was already written in 1587.

Probable date.

I thus arrive at the conclusion that there are good reasons for the assumption that *Friar Bacon* was written in 1589—and not later than the month of July in that year. Nothing could better accord with the probable chronological relation between the two dramas of Marlowe and of Greene in which we are interested.

Sources of *Friar Bacon*.

*Friar Bacon* is not, like *Doctor Faustus*, a play following the thread of a single narrative in which serious and comic scenes are intermixed, but is constructed on the basis of a narrative of the same kind, with the addition of an underplot, or rather of a combination of two underplots. The chief of these underplots and the link between it and the other are manifestly Greene's own invention. The former is the story of Prince Edward's love for the Fair Maid of Fressingfield, and his resignation of her to the favoured messenger of his suit, Lacy. The notion of this story, which lacks all historical foundation, recurs with variations in other plays, illustrating in different fashions the maxims of Claudio in *Much Ado about Nothing* (ii. 1. 182–5), that

The double underplot. Parallels.

[1] See Simpson, *u. s.*, ii. 377–9. The passage is also cited in Collier's *History of English Dramatic Poetry*, ii. 441–2.

[2] Arber's Transcript, ii. 260.

[3] See Simpson, ii. 350.

Digitized by Google

'Friendship is constant in all other things
Save in the office and affairs of love:
Therefore all hearts in love use their own tongues;
Let every eye negotiate for itself
And trust no agent.'

In 1 *Henry VI*, Suffolk woos Margaret for the King—and for himself at the same time. In *Faire Em* the Marquis Lubeck is sent as William's emissary to Blanche, but in this instance the agent prefers his friendship to his love. In *A Knack to Know a Knave* (printed 1594) King Edgar's nephew is sent to woo a lady as his uncle's proxy, and woos and weds her on his own account[1]. In Lord Orrery's 'heroic' play, *The History of Henry V*, Owen Tudor loyally renounces his passion for the Princess Catharine in the interest of his sovereign, in whose name he has been sent to court her[2]. Parallel passages to the magnanimous resignation of his passion by the Prince, and to Margaret's resolution to become a nun, have been pointed out elsewhere[3]. For the cruel device by which (in sc. x) Lacy tries the faith of the keeper's daughter, analogies might likewise be found in Elizabethan literature (apart from *Patient Grissil*, instanced by Dr. Grosart); nor, as has been well observed[4], was this incident, although quite unnecessary to the plot, in the least likely to arouse the indignation of the patrons of Henslowe's theatre. The story of the enmity between the two neighbours and former friends, and of its fatal results for themselves and for

[1] Collier has pointed out the resemblance of this treatment of the story of Ethelwald and Elfrida to the underplot of Greene's play.

[2] Longfellow has treated a theme similar to that of Greene's underplot in his poem 'The Courtship of Miles Standish'; and a similar story, said to be founded on the experience of two illustrious German scholars—brothers between whom the issue never affected a close friendship immortal in the world of letters—was some years ago brought on the German stage in a harmless but pleasant little piece.

[3] See notes on *Friar Bacon*, viii. 120, xiv.

[4] By Professor N. Storojenko, in his essay on *Robert Greene: his Life and Works* (Moscow, 1878), translated by Mr. C. A. Brayley Hodgetts, and printed in vol. i of Dr. Grosart's edition of Greene's *Works* (Huth Library). *Friar Bacon* is criticized pp. 198–212.

Digitized by Google

their sons, Greene took from the same source as that of *Friar Bacon* itself; but he has ingeniously connected it with the chief underplot by making a rival passion for the Fair Maid of Fressingfield the cause of the quarrel. The poet has laid the scene of his double underplot in Suffolk, with the localities and scenery of which, as a native of the neighbouring county (born at Norwich), he was doubtless well acquainted.

The Elizabethan story-book.

The story of Friar Bacon and his friend and associate Friar Bungay, was taken by Greene from a popular story-book probably written towards the end of the sixteenth century, and founded upon the accretions of the legendary history of Friar Bacon already noticed. The title of the book, which has since been republished, and is reprinted by Mr. Thoms[1], runs as follows: '*The Famous Historie of frier Bacon*: containing the wonderful things that he did in his life: also the Manner of his death, with the Lives and Deaths of the two Conjurers, Bungye and Vandermast.' Even, however, with regard to this part of the action of his play, Greene has at one important point adopted a treatment of his own. 'The repentance-scene in the play' (xiii), says Dr. Herford[2], 'is of altogether a more solemn cast than that of the story-book.' My extracts from the book are (with one exception) taken from this reprint, which I have compared with another in duodecimo, published by J. Hollis in London, apparently in the last or about the beginning of the present century. This story-book does not mention the tradition of Bacon's contract with the Devil, containing a clause that the Devil was to have the Friar's soul provided he died either in the church or out of it, which issue the Friar evaded by causing a cell to be constructed neither in nor out of the church, but in its wall, wherein he

[1] *Early Prose Romances*, vol. ii. It has since been reprinted in the *Bibliotheca Curiosa*, edited by Goldsmid (Edinburgh, 1886).

[2] *Studies*, p. 191. I think it however unnecessary to follow Dr. Herford in regarding Greene's 'discordant and unbalanced character' as more or less accountable for his inconsistent treatment of his theme.

Digitized by Google

both died and was buried[1]; but it makes him die in such a cell, where he had lived for two years 'a true Penitent Sinner and an Anchorite.' The address of Friar Bacon to his friends and scholars before burning his books and withdrawing into a religious retreat, was very possibly suggested by the '*Oratio Fausti ad Studiosos*' in the *Faustbuch*, reproduced in the English *History*[2]. To other incidents interwoven with the action of the play[3] in the narrative it would be easy to find parallels in similar legends and traditions[4], and in the story of Faustus itself. For the rest, it is obvious that the author of the story-book was not altogether acquainted with some of the facts in the life of the real Roger Bacon, and more especially with the titles at least of one or more of his works, though here again he deviates into at least one allusion to a famous work of another philosopher and supposed magician—the *De Incertitudine et Vanitate Scientiarum et Artium* of Cornelius Agrippa.

[*The Famous Historie of Fryer Bacon* begins with a fictitious account of Roger Bacon's parentage and early days, Extracts from the story-book.

[1] See Thoms' Introduction to the *Famous Historie*, &c., ibid. viii. A similar trick is related of Pope Silvester II by Widmann; see Scheible's *Kloster*, ii. 772.

[2] Compare above, p. cxxv seqq.

[3] Professor Storojenko, *u. s.*, p. 247, remarks that 'as far as we know, Greene was the first to bring these comic episodes [of clowns] in closer union with the play. In *Bacon* and in *James IV*, the humorous scenes have a great deal to do with the main plot.' They are certainly less of *intermezzi* than the comic scenes in *Doctor Faustus*; but it is hardly correct to say that 'the stupidity is one of the principal causes that lead to Bacon's rupture with the devil.' As to this, the dramatist follows the story-book.

[4] The notion of Miles conjuring has been compared to a similar episode in *The Friars of Berwick*, a Scottish poem which has been attributed to Dunbar. See Thoms, *u. s.*, vi. O. Ritter, *u. s.*, pp. 29–31, has cited a number of passages parallel to that of Bacon's magic repast (ix. 255 seqq.) from ancient and from mediaeval literature. He has also, pp. 31–2, mentioned various parallels to the rivalry between Bacon and Vandermast (ibid., 77 seqq.), beginning with the contention between the Egyptian magicians and Aaron in *Exodus* (chaps. vii and viii). The instance of St. Peter and Simon Magus might have been added; cf. ante, p. lvi.

Digitized by Google

showing how his father, a wealthy farmer in the west part of England, would not take the advice of the parson of the town, with whom Roger was put to school, to send him to Oxford, and how in the end 'young Bacon' 'gave his Father the slip and went to a Cloyster some twenty miles off, where he was entertained, and so continued his learning, and in a small time came to be so famous, that he was sent for to the University of Oxford, where he long time studied, and grew so excellent in the secrets of Art and Nature, that not England only, but all Christendome, admired him.'

CHAPTER II. *How the King sent for Fryer Bacon, and of the wonderful things he showed the King and Queene,* probably suggested the summoning of the Hostess of the Bell in order to confound Master Burden in the play (sc. ii); but the resemblance is not very close. Chapter IV may be quoted at length from Dyce, who has reprinted it at the close of the play:]

CHAPTER IV. *How Fryer Bacon made a Brasen Head to speake, by the which hee would have walled England about with brasse.* Fryer Bacon, reading one day of the many conquests of England, bethought himselfe how he might keepe it hereafter from the like conquests, and so make himselfe famous hereafter to all posterities. This, after great study, hee found could be no way so well done as one; which was to make a head of brasse, and if he could make this head to speake, and heare it when it speakes, then might hee be able to wall all England about with brasse. To this purpose hee got one Fryer Bungey to assist him, who was a great scholler and a magician, but not to bee compared to Fryer Bacon: these two with great study and paines so framed a head of brasse that in the inward parts thereof there was all things like as in a naturall mans head. This being done, they were as farre from perfection of the worke as they were before, for they knew not how to give those parts that they had made motion, without which it was impossible that it should speake: many bookes they read, but yet could not finde out any hope of what they sought, that at the last they concluded to raise

Digitized by Google

a spirit, and to know of him that which they could not attaine to by their owne studies. To do this they prepared all things ready, and went one evening to a wood thereby, and after many ceremonies used, they spake the words of coniuration; which the Devill straight obeyed, and appeared unto them, asking what they would? 'Know,' said Fryer Bacon, 'that wee have made an artificiall head of brasse, which we would have to speake, to the furtherance of which wee have raised thee; and being raised, wee will here keepe thee, unlesse thou tell to us the way and manner how to make this head to speake.' The Devill told him that he had not that power of himselfe. 'Beginner of lyes,' said Fryer Bacon, 'I know that thou dost dissemble, and therefore tell it us quickly, or else wee will here bind thee to remaine during our pleasures.' At these threatenings the Devill consented to doe it, and told them, that with a continuel fume of the six hotest simples it should have motion, and in one month space speak; the time of the moneth or day hee knew not; also hee told them, that if they heard it not before it had done speaking, all their labour should be lost. They being satisfied, licensed the spirit for to depart.

Then went these two learned fryers home againe, and prepared the simples ready, and made the fume, and with continuall watching attended when this brasen head would speake. Thus watched they for three weekes without any rest, so that they were so weary and sleepy that they could not any longer refraine from rest; then called Fryer Bacon his man Miles, and told him, that it was not unknown to him what paines Fryer Bungey and himselfe had taken for three weekes space, onely to make, and to heare the Brazen-head speake, which if they did not, then had they lost all their labour, and all England had a great losse thereby; therefore hee intreated Miles that he would watch whilst that they slept, and call them if the head speake. 'Feare not, good master,' said Miles, 'I will not sleepe, but harken and attend upon the heed, and if it doe chance to speake, I will call you; therefore I pray take you both your rests and let mee alone for watching this head.' After Fryer Bacon had given him

Digitized by Google

a great charge the second time, Fryer Bungy and he went to sleepe, and Miles, alone to watch the brasen head. Miles, to keepe him from sleeping, got a tabor and pipe, and being merry disposed, sung this song to a northern tune of

*'Can'st thou not from Newcastle?*[1]'

With his owne musicke and such songs as these spent he his time, and kept from sleeping at last. After some noyse the head spake these two words, TIME IS. Miles, hearing it to speak no more, thought his master would be angry if hee waked him for that, and therefore he let them both sleepe, and began to mocke the head in this manner; 'Thou brazen-faced head, hath my master tooke all these paines about thee, and now dost thou requite him with two words, TIME IS? Had hee watched with a lawyer so long as he hath watched with thee, he would have given him more and better words than thou hast yet. If thou canst speake no wiser, thou shal sleepe till doomes day for me: TIME IS! I know Time is, and that you shall heare, Goodman Brazen-face:—

*To the tune of 'Daintie, come thou to me.'*[2]

Time is for some to eate,
Time is for some to sleepe,
Time is for some to laugh,
Time is for some to weepe.

Time is for some to sing,
Time is for some to pray,
Time is for some to creepe,
That have drunke all the day.

'Do you tell us, copper-nose, when TIME IS? I hope we schollers know our times, when to drinke drunke, when to kisse our hostes, when to goe on her score, and when to pay it,—that time comes seldome.' After halfe an houre had passed, the head did speake againe, two words, which were these, TIME WAS. Miles respected these words as little as he did the former, and would not wake them, but still scoffed at

[1] I omit this unpretentious lyric.
[2] Of this effort two stanzas will suffice.

Digitized by Google

the brazen head, that it had learned no better words, and have such a tutor as his master: and in scorne of it sung this song;

*To the tune of 'A Rich Merchant-man.'*

Time was when thou, a kettle,
wert fill'd with better matter;
But Fryer Bacon did thee spoyle
when he thy sides did batter.

Time was when conscience dwellèd
with men of occupation;
Time was when lawyers did not thrive
so well by mens vexation.

Time was when kings and beggars
of one poore stuffe had being;
Time was when office kept no knaves,—
that time it was worth seeing.

Time was a bowle of water
did give the face reflection;
Time was when women knew no paint,
which now they call complexion[1].

'TIME WAS! I know that, brazen-face, without your telling, I know Time was, and I know what things there was when Time was; and if you speake no wiser, no master shall be waked for mee.' Thus Miles talked and sung till another halfe-houre was gone: then the brazen head spake again these words, TIME IS PAST; and therewith fell downe, and presently followed a terrible noyse, with strange flashes of fire, so that Miles was halfe dead with feare. At this noyse the two Fryers awaked, and wondred to see the whole roome so full of smoake; but that being vanished, they might perceive the brazen head broken and lying on the ground. At this sight they grieved, and called Miles to know how this came. Miles, halfe dead with feare, said that it fell downe of itselfe, and that with the noyse and fire that followed he was almost frighted out of his wits. Fryer Bacon asked him if hee did not speake? 'Yes,' quoth Miles, 'it spake, but to

[1] Compare Terilo's satire, *A Piece of Friar Bacons Brazen-heads Prophesie*, noticed above, p. xxviii.

Digitized by Google

no purpose: Ile have a parrot speake better in that time that you have been teaching this brazen head.' 'Out on thee, villaine!' said Fryer Bacon; 'thou hast undone us both: hadst thou but called us when it did speake, all England had been walled round about with brasse, to its glory and our eternal fames. What were the words it spake?' 'Very few,' said Miles, 'and those were none of the wisest that I have heard neither: first he said, TIME IS.' 'Hadst thou call'd us then,' said Fryer Bacon, 'we had been made for ever.' 'Then,' said Miles, 'half an hour after it spake againe and said, TIME WAS.' 'And wouldst thou not call us then?' said Bungey. 'Alas,' said Miles, 'I thought he would have told me some long tale, and then I purposed to have called you: then half an houre after he cried, TIME IS PAST, and made such a noyse that hee hath waked you himselfe, mee thinkes.' At this Fryer Bacon was in such a rage that hee would have beaten his man, but he was restrained by Bungey: but neverthelesse, for his punishment, he with his art struck him dumbe for one whole months space. Thus the greate worke of these learned fryers was overthrown, to their great griefes, by this simple fellow.

CHAPTER VI. *How Fryer Bacon, by his Art, took a towne when the King had lyen before it three months without doing any hurt,* [contains a long account given to the King by the Friar of the wonderful inventions of his Art, in which he describes how by] 'the figuration of Art there may be made instruments of navigation, without men to rowe in them, as great ships to brooke the sea, only with one man to steere them, and they shall sayle far more swiftly than if they were full of men; also chariots that shall move with an unspeakable force, without any living creature to stirre them'; [flying-engines; and an instrument] 'of three fingers high, and three fingers broad,' [by which] 'a man may rid himself and others from all imprisonment; yea, such an instrument may be easily made, whereby a man may violently draw unto him a thousand men, will they nill they, or any other thing. By Art also an instrument may bee made, where with men may walke in the bottom of the sea or rivers without bodily

Digitized by Google

danger; this Alexander the Great used (as the Ethnick philosopher reporteth), to the end he might behold the secrets of the seas. But physicall figurations are farre more strange: for by that may be framed perspects and looking-glasses, that one thing shall appeare to be many, as one man shall appeare to be an whole army, and one sunne or moone shall seem divers. Also perspects may be so framed that things farre off shall seem most nigh unto us: with one of these did Iulius Caesar from the sea coasts in France marke and observe the situation of the castles in England. Bodies may also be so framed that the greatest thinges shall appeare to be the least, the highest lowest, the most secret to bee the most manifest, and in such like sort the contrary. Thus did Socrates perceive, that the dragon which did destroy the citie and countrey adioyning, with his noisome breath, and contagious influence, did lurke in the dens between the mountains: and thus may all things that are done in cities or armies be discovered by the enemies. Againe, in such wise may bodies be framed, that venomous and infectious influences may be brought whither a man will: in this did Aristotle instruct Alexander; through which instruction the poyson of a basiliske, being lift up upon the wall of a Citie, the poison was convayed into the Citie, to the destruction thereof: also perspects may be made to deceive the sight, as to make a man beleeve that he seeth great store of riches, when that there is not any. But it appertaineth to a higher power of figuration, that beams should be brought and assembled by divers flexions and reflexions in any distance that we will, to burne any thing that is opposite unto it, as it is witnessed by those perspects or glasses that burne before and behinde; but the greatest and chiefest of all figurations and things figured, is to describe the heavenly bodies, according to their length and breadth in a corporall figure, wherein they may corporally move with a daily motion. These things are worth a kingdom to a wise man. These may suffise, my royall lord, to show what Art can do: and these, with many things more as strange, I am able by Art to performe.'

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER VII [contains the narrative of] *How Fryer Bacon over-came the German coniurer Vandermast, and made a spirit of his owne carry him into Germany*, [on which sc. ix of our play is founded; and which runs as follows:] Presently after the King of France sent an Ambassadour to the King of England for to intreat a peace betweene them. This Ambassadour being come to the King, he feasted him (as it is the manner of princes to doe) and with the best sports as he had then, welcomed him. The Ambassadour seeing the King of England so free in his love, desired likewise to give him some taste of his good liking, and to that intent sent for one of his fellowes (being a Germane, and named Vandermast) a famous Coniurer, who being come, hee told the King, that since his Grace had been so bountiful in his love to him, he would shew him (by a servant of his) such wonderfull things that his Grace had never seene the like before. The King demaunded of him of what nature those things were that hee would doe; the Ambassadour answered that they were things done by the Art of Magicke. The King hearing of this, sent straight for Fryer Bacon, who presently came, and brought Fryer Bungey with him.

When the banquet was done, Vandermast did aske the King, if he desired to see the spirit of any man deceased: and if that hee did, hee would raise him in such manner and fashion as he was in when that he lived. The King told him, that above all men he desired to see Pompey the Great, who could abide no equall. Vandermast by his Art raised him, armed in such a manner as hee was when he was slaine at the battell of Pharsalia; at this they were all highly contented. Fryer Bacon presently raised the Ghost of Julius Caesar, who could abide no superiour, and had slaine this Pompey at the battell of Pharsalia: and the sight of him they were all amazed, but the King who sent for Bacon; and Vandermast said, there was some man of Art in that presence, whom he desired to see. Fryer Bacon then shewed himselfe, saying, It was I, Vandermast, that raised Caesar, partly to give content to this royall presence, but chiefely for to conquer thy Pompey, as he did once before, at that great battell of

Digitized by Google

Pharsalia, which he now againe shall doe. Then presently began a fight between Caesar and Pompey, which continued a good space, to the content of all, except Vandermast. At last Pompey was overcome and slaine by Caesar: then vanished they both away.

'My Lord Ambassadour, (said the King), me thinks that my Englishman hath put down your German: hath he no better coming than this?' 'Yes,' answered Vandermast, 'your Grace shall see me put downe your Englishman ere that you goe from hence: and therefore Fryer prepare thy selfe with thy best of Art to withstand me.' 'Alas,' said Fryer Bacon, 'it is a little thing will serve to resist thee in this kind. I have here one that is my inferior, (shewing him Fryer Bungey), try thy Art with him; and if thou doe put him to the worst, then will I deale with thee, and not till then.'

Fryer Bungey then began to shew his Art: and after some turning and looking in his booke, he brought up among them the Hysperian Tree, which did beare golden apples; these apples were kept by a waking Dragon that lay under the tree. He having done this, bid Vandermast finde one that durst gather the fruit. Then Vandermast did raise the ghost of Hercules in his habit that he wore when he was living, and with his club on his shoulder: 'Here is one,' said Vandermast, 'that shall gather fruit from this tree: this is Hercules, that in his life time gathered of this fruit, and made the Dragon crouch: and now againe shall hee gather it in spight of all opposition.' As Hercules was going to plucke the fruit, Fryer Bacon held up his wand, at which Hercules stayed and seemed fearful. Vandermast bid him for to gather of the fruit, or else he would torment him. Hercules was more fearfule, and said, 'I cannot, nor I dare not: for great Bacon stands, whose charms are farre more powerful than thine, I must obey him Vandermast.' Hereat Vandermast cursed Hercules, and threatned him: But Fryer Bacon laughed, and bid him not to chafe himself ere that his journey was ended: 'for seeing (said he) that Hercules will doe nothing at your command, I will have him doe you some service at mine:' with that he bid Hercules carry him home into Germany.

Digitized by Google

The Devill obeyed him, and took Vandermast on his backe, and went away with him in all their sights. 'Hold Fryer,' cried the Ambassadour, 'I will not lose Vandermast for half my land.' 'Content yourself my Lord,' answered Fryer Bacon, 'I have but sent him home to see his wife, and ere long he may returne.' The King of England thanked Fryer Bacon, and forced some gifts on him for his service that he had done for him: for Fryer Bacon did so little respect money, that he never would take any of the King.

[In other chapters Miles and Vandermast reappear; but the incidents of these have not been borrowed by Greene, though the scene of Miles' conjuring (sc. xv) was probably suggested by chapters xii, in which Miles 'coniures for Meat,' and xv, in which he 'one day finding his Master's study open, stole out of it one of his coniuring-bookes; with this booke would Miles needs coniure for some money'; but in the story the Fiend proves the stronger, and Miles is so frightened by the fire hurled about by his visitor, that he is made to 'leape from off the leades' and break his leg. The twofold use of the 'glass prospective,' in scenes vi and xiii, is however borrowed from chapter xiii, *How Fryer Bacon did helpe a Young Man to his Sweet-heart, which Fryer Bungye would have married to another*, etc., and from chapter xvi. In the former, the following is the passage in question:]

Fryer Bacon (knowing him for a vertuous Gentleman) pittyed him; and to give his griefes some release, shewed him a glasse, wherein any one might see any thing done (within fifty miles space) that they desired: so soone as he looked in the glasse, hee saw his love Millisant with her father, and the Knight, ready to be married by Fryer Bungye; at the sight of this hee cryed out that he was undone, for now should he lose his life in losing of his love. Fryer Bacon bids him take comfort, for he would prevent the marriage; so taking this gentleman in his armes, he set himselfe downe in an enchanted chaire, and suddenly they were carried through the ayre to the chappell. Just as they came in, Fryer Bungye was ioyning their hands to marry them: but Fryer Bacon spoyled his speech, for he strucke him dumbe

Digitized by Google

so that he could not speake a worde. Then raised he a myst in the chappell, so that neither the father could see his daughter, nor the daughter her father, nor the Knight either of them. Then tooke he Millisant by the hand, and led her to the man she most desired: they both wept for ioy, that they so happily once more had met, and kindly thanked Fryer Bacon.

[Chapter XVI, as will be seen, contains the story from which Greene took the plot of the hatred (in the play a rivalry in love) between Lambert and Serlsby and of its fatal results to them and to their sons (sc. xiii), and the suggestion of the catastrophe having caused the Friar's repentance. With this and the following (and last) chapter of the story-book, which suggested to Greene the one serious speech given to Friar Bacon in the play (xiii. 86 seqq.), I conclude my extracts:]

CHAPTER XVI. (*How two young Gentlemen that came to Fryer Bacon to know how their Father did, killed one another; and how Fryer Bacon for griefe, did breake his rare Glasse, wherein he could see any thing that was done within fifty miles about him.*) It is spoken of before now, that Fryer Bacon had a glasse, which was of that excellent nature, that any man might behold any thing that he desired to see within the compasse of fifty miles round about him: with this glasse he had pleasured divers kinds of people: for fathers did oftentimes desire to see (thereby) how their children did, and children how their parents did; one friend how another did; and one enemy (sometimes) how his enemy did: so that from far they would come to see this wonderfull glasse. It happened one day, that there came to him two young gentlemen (that were countrey men, and neighbors children) for to know of him by his glasse, how their fathers did: Hee being no niggard of his cunning, let them see his glasse, wherein they straight beheld their wishes, which they (through their owne follies) bought at their lives losse, as you shall heare.

The fathers of these two gentlemen (in their sonnes absence) were become great foes: his hatred betweene them was growne to that height, that wheresoever they met, they



Digitized by Google

had not only wordes, but blowes. Just at that time, as it should seeme, that their sonnes were looking to see how they were in health, they were met, and had drawne, and were together by the eares. Their sonnes seeing this, and having been alwayes great friends, knew not what to say to one another, but beheld each other with angry lookes. At last, one of the fathers, as they might perceive in the Glasse, had a fall, and the other, taking advantage, stood over him ready to strike him. The sonne of him that was downe, could then containe himselfe no longer, but told the other young man, that his father had received wrong. He answered againe, that it was faire. At laste there grew such foule words betweene them, and their bloods were so heated, that they presently stabbed one the other with their daggers, and so fell downe dead.

Fryer Bacon seeing them fall, ranne to them, but it was too late, for they were breathlesse ere he came. This made him to grieve exceedingly: he iudging that they had received the cause of their deaths by this Glasse, tooke the Glasse in his hand, and uttered words to this effect:

'Wretched Bacon, wretched in thy knowledge, in thy understanding wretched; for thy Art hath beene the ruine of these two Gentlemen. Had I been busied in those holy things, the which mine Order tyes me to, I had not had that time that made this wicked Glasse: wicked I may well call it, that is the causer of so vile an act: would it were sensible, then should it feele my wrath; but being as it is, Ile ruin it for ruining of them:' and with that he broke his rare and wonderfull Glasse, the like of it the whole world had not. In this grief of his, came there newes to him of the deaths of Vandermast and Fryer Bungey: This did increase his griefe, and made him sorrowfull, that in three days he would not eat any thing, but kept his Chamber.

CHAPTER XVII. *How Fryer Bacon burnt his books of Magick, and gave himself to the study of Divinity only; and how he turned Anchorite.* In the time that Fryer Bacon kept his Chamber, hee fell into divers meditations: sometimes into the vanity of Arts and Sciences: then would hee condemne

Digitized by Google

himselfe for studying of those things that were so contrary to his Order and soules health; and would say, That magicke made a man a Devill: sometimes would hee meditate on divinity; then would he cry out upon himselfe, for neglecting the study of it, and for studying magick: sometime would he meditate on the shortnesse of mans life, then would he condemne himselfe for spending a time so short, so ill as he had done his: so would he goe from one thing to another and in all condemne his former studies.

And that the world should know how truly he did repent his wicked life, he caused to be made a great fire; and sending for many of his friends, schollers, and others, he spake to them after this manner: 'My good friends and fellow students, it is not unknowne to you, how that through my Art I have attained to that credit, that few men living ever had: of the wonders that I have done, all England can speak, both King and Commons: I have unlocked the secrets of Art and Nature, and let the world see those things, that have layen hid since the death of Hermes, that rare and profound philosopher: my studies have found the secrets of the Starres; the bookes that I have made of them, doe serve for presidents to our greatest Doctors, so excellent hath my judgment beene therein. I likewise have found out the secrets of Trees, Plants and Stones, with their several uses; yet all this knowledge of mine I esteeme so lightly, that I wish that I were ignorant, and knew nothing: for the knowledge of these things, (as I have truly found,) serveth not to better a man in goodnesse, but onely to make him proude and thinke too well of himselfe. What hath all my knowledge of Natures secrets gained me? Onely this, the losse of a better knowledge, the losse of Divine Studies, which makes the immortall part of man (his soule) blessed. I have found, that my knowledge has beene a heavy burden, and has kept downe my good thoughts: but I will remove the cause, which are these Bookes: which I doe purpose here before you all to burne.' They all intreated him to spare the bookes, because in them there were those things that after-ages might receive great benefit by. He would not hearken unto them, but threw



Digitized by Google

them all into the fire, and in that flame burnt the greatest learning in the world. Then did he dispose of all his goods; some part he gave to poor schollers, and some he gave to other poore folkes: nothing left he for himselfe: then caused he to be made in the Church-Wall a Cell, where he locked himselfe in, and there remained till his Death. His time hee spent in prayer, meditation, and such divine exercises, and did seeke by all means to perswade men from the study of magicke. Thus lived he some two yeeres space in that Cell, never comming forth: his meat and drink he received in at a window, and at that window he had discourse with those that came to him; his grave he digged with his owne nayles, and was there layed when he dyed. Thus was the Life and Death of this famous Fryer, who lived most part of his life a Magician, and dyed a true Penitent Sinner and an Anchorite.

Similarities between Greene's *Friar Bacon* and other Elizabethan plays.

Mr. Collier observes[1] that Greene's *Friar Bacon* was one of the last instances in which a devil appeared on the English stage. But he certainly played a part in the strange drama, founded on the story of Friar Rush, which Dekker took the trouble to name, *If this be not a good Play, the Divill is in it* (1612)[2]. In Jonson's *The Devil is an Ass* (1616) both 'the great' and 'the less' representatives of the lower regions are characters; and after the Restoration, John Wilson, in his *Belphegor, or The Marriage of the Devil*, a revival of an old theme (that of Grim the collier of Croydon, apparently first founded on Machiavelli's novel), brought 'Belzebub and Puggs' on the stage once more. Grim the

[1] *History of English Dramatic Poetry*, iii. 91.

[2] See an account of this in C. H. Herford, *u. s.*, pp. 309–17. The first scene of this play is reproduced in at least two of the later German popular plays on the story of Faust, and thus came to be used by Goethe for the earliest prologue, subsequently discarded, to his tragedy. See *Goethe-Jahrbuch*, ix. (1888) 339; and Bielschowsky, in *Vierteljahrschrift, u. s.*, 206 seqq. The latter writer, however, inclines to the belief that the German plays did not owe the idea of the Parliament of Devils to Dekker, but followed early native precedents.

Digitized by Google

collier of Croydon had moreover been already reintroduced to the stage by William Haughton in a play called *The Devil and his Dame*, for which Henslowe paid an earnest to the author in 1600[1]. But the days of the *naïf* devil of the Mysteries were certainly on the wane[2].

Anthony Munday's comedy, *John a Kent and John a Cumber* (1595)[3], so-called from the two rival magicians who intervene in the action, bears some resemblance to our play in general conception. Henslowe's *Diary* has several notices, under the year 1601, of a play treating the same theme as Dekker's oddly-named drama cited above. Its full title seems to have been *Friar Rush and the Proud Woman of Antwerp*, by Haughton and Day; but the famous legend of Friar Rush essentially differs from that of Friar Bacon, since in the former the Fiend takes service as under-cook in a monastery, and there plays his pranks as Friar Rush—

> 'Quis non legit
> Quae Frater Rauschius egit?'

'Friar Fox,' 'Friar Francis,' and 'Friar Spendleton' or 'Pendleton' likewise occur in Henslowe's *Diary* as the eponymous heroes of contemporary dramas; but some of these personages may possibly have been of the 'Friar Tuck' type, with which we have no concern here.

Greene's *Friar Bacon* on the German

Whether Greene's *Friar Bacon* ever made its way with the English comedians to the Continent, I cannot say; but it is not impossible, as in a recent paper on the performances of these players at Cologne[5], where they appeared first in 1592,

[1] See Henslowe's *Diary*, p. 169; and cf. Halliwell's *Dictionary of Old English Plays*, pp. 73, 112. (Cf. note to *Doctor Faustus* vi. 97.)

[2] Among 'revivals' of the Devil on the English stage may be noticed that in Foote's comedy of *The Devil upon Two Sticks* (1768).

[3] Edited by Collier for the (old) Shakespeare Society, 1851.

[4] See Thoms, *Early Prose Romances*, vol. ii, where the English story-book of 1620 is reprinted; and compare for the German and Danish versions of this famous legend, Scheible's *Kloster*, xi. 1070–1118. An excellent account of its developments is given by Dr. Herford, *u. s.*, pp. 293 seqq.

[5] The first of a series of articles on *Englische Schauspieler in*

Digitized by Google

and again in 1600 and in later years, I find the conjecture that among the *comaediae* presented by them were the favourite plays of Greene. The history of the play on the later English stage seems to be exhausted by the mention of a pantomime, *Friar Bacon, or Harlequin's Adventures in Lilliput, Brobdingnag, etc.*, by the popular Irish dramatist O'Keefe, said to have been produced in 1783, but never printed [1].

and later English stage.

I know of no translation of *Friar Bacon* into a foreign tongue besides one by Tieck, who, in his Introduction, dwells upon the charming harmoniousness of Greene's play as a quality to which neither Marlowe nor, in his earlier works, Shakespeare himself attained [2].

Translation by Tieck.

Thus the great historic memory of Friar Bacon is only through a degrading legend associated with one masterpiece of our early comic drama; while the name of Doctor Faustus, in history a miserable charlatan, has, partly with the aid of an English tragedy of genius, obtained a place second to no other in the poetic literature of the world.

Conclusion.

*Köln*, by Dr. Ennen, in the *Stadt-Anzeiger der Kölnischen Zeitung*, No. 320, November 17, 1877.

[1] *Biographia Dramatica* (1812), ii. 251.

[2] *Die wunderbare Sage vom Pater Baco* forms vol. i of the series edited by Tieck under the title of *Shakespeare's Vorschule* (Leipzig, 1823-9). I regret that the long analysis of Greene's *Friar Bacon and Friar Bungay*, in the article *Robert Greene als Dramatiker*, contributed by H. Conrad to the *Shakespeare-Jahrbuch*, vols. xxix and xxx (1894), should be accompanied by a carping commentary on its aesthetical and ethical shortcomings. The artificiality of Greene's poetic style—in which he took so passionate a pride—obscures in the eyes of this critic the gifts of a genius which, though not essentially dramatic, has secured to none of its creations a more lasting place in our dramatic literature than to this *Honourable History*.

Digitized by Google

# APPENDIX A

## On the Date and Authorship of 'Doctor Faustus'

In this case, as often happens, it is most convenient to begin at the latest date of positive information and work back as regards chronology. The additions of Nov. 22, 1602, are certainly those contained in the 1616 edition. They could not be those of the earlier imprint, since that was entered, S. R., on Jan. 7, 1600–1, and no doubt issued at that time, although no earlier imprint than that of 1604 has come down to us. The absence of any entry of transfer of copyright before Sept. 13, 1610, when it was made over by T. Bushell to J. Wright (see the tables in my *Life of Shakespeare*, p. 352), is conclusive on this point. All editions previous to this transfer are of the 1604 edition type, all after it of that of the 1616 edition. The separation of the work of the author of these 'additions' is not difficult, but has no interest for the reader of an edition which (rightly in my opinion) discards them altogether. Taking then the 1604 edition into consideration, the first question is, who was the author of the portions that are manifestly not written by Marlowe? To this I unhesitatingly answer, that the forger of the 1597 entry in Henslowe's *Diary*, which entry has been shown by Mr. Warner to be a modern fabrication, was right in his conjecture, and that the author was Thomas Dekker. The style and metre are Dekker's; the tone of thought is Dekker's; nor are minor indications of his handiwork wanting: such as 'baw-waw,' the introduction of fireworks, &c. But here we meet at once with a serious difficulty. Some part of the additions, such as sc. iv, are Dekker at his very worst; others, such as the Deadly Sins part in sc. vi, are Dekker at his best. It is scarcely possible that these should

Digitized by Google

be of the same date, nor will any such crude hypothesis as that of the forged entry of additions made in 1597 suffice for explanation. At this point the external evidence comes in to our aid. I have shown in my article on Dekker in *Shakespeariana* for July, 1885, that Dekker's birth must be placed *circa* 1567, about six years anterior to the received date, and that his career commenced much earlier than is usually supposed. This enables me to suggest a hypothesis that meets the difficulty. If the play were originally written by Dekker and Marlowe, and received subsequent additions at Dekker's hands as occasion required, the inequality in his work would be fully accounted for. It remains to see whether this hypothesis is consistent with the known facts of the career of Marlowe and Dekker. One point, evident on the most casual inspection of the play, strongly confirms it. The Marlowe portion is evidently insufficient to form a play by itself; and it is in the highest degree unlikely that work of his, if he ever did write a complete play on the subject, should have been cut out to make room for such very inferior work as is generally supposed to have replaced some of his scenes. We know from the instances of *Orlando* and *The Massacre of Paris* how mercilessly the Admiral's company treated plays by way of excision; but such replacement by inferior writing is a phenomenon unknown until the time of Charles I. I turn, then, to the external evidence.

The play belonged to the Admiral's company, and was written, as far as Marlowe is concerned, for them after *Tamberlaine*, 1587, and before Marlowe left them for the Queen's company, 1588. (See my article on Marlowe in *Shakespeariana*, June, 1885.) But the entry of the ballad, Feb. 28, 1588–9, is almost positive proof that the play had then been quite recently put on the stage. It is, indeed, more likely that when Marlowe left the Admiral's men he allowed the play to remain unfinished in their hands, and that Dekker finished it for them, than that he and Dekker worked on it in conjunction. Many scenes bear evidence of minor insertions, which militate against the supposition of joint work. Now, this company of the Admiral's left Eng-

Digitized by Google

land in 1591 and returned in 1594, when they again acted in London; this time under Alleyn at the Rose theatre, not at the Curtain, as they did in Marlowe's time. If, then, my theory be correct, we may expect to trace the play in Germany and at the Rose. Accordingly, in a list of plays given by Cohn (*Shakespeare in Germany*, p. cxv) acted by the Revels' company in 1626, yet not consisting of Revels' plays, but of old ones taken over by the Admiral's men in 1591 (see my *Life of Shakespeare*, p. 308), we find *Dr. Faust* and *Barrabbas, the Jew of Malta*, along with the following plays by Dekker: *The Martyr Dorothea* (afterwards altered by Massinger and called *The Virgin Martyr*), *Fortunatus* (the first part only, not the complete history as we have it) and *Joseph, the Jew of Venice* (on the same story as Shakespeare's play). When the Admiral's men acted in London, we find among the old plays revived by them *Dioclesian*[1] (*The Virgin Martyr*), *Fortunatus* (the first part), and *Dr. Faustus*; and among their new plays a Venetian comedy (perhaps a new version by Dekker of *The Jew of Venice*). These plays could not appear in any 1592 or 1593 entries in this *Diary*, because during those years the Rose theatre was occupied by other companies, and the Admiral's men were on the Continent. In fact, all the old plays revived by this last-named company must have been written before 1592, and all of them that are even conjecturably traceable point to an authorship by Dekker, Peele, or Marlowe. Thus *Tamberlaine* is of course Marlowe's; *Philippo and Hippolito* and *Antony and Valia* are two plays afterwards

[1] When my *Life of Shakespeare* was printed I had not tracked this play so far, and it was mentioned as an exception. It reappears in Germany in 1652 (Cohn, p. cxviii) as 'a comedy of the emperor Diocletian, with Maximinus and the shoemaker.' Hirtius is a shoemaker in *The Virgin Martyr*, and Diocletian and Maximus are principal characters in the same play. Dekker's original play seems to have been called *Diocletian*, or *Dorothea*, and the play, as revised by Massinger, *The Virgin Martyr*. Both versions were acted in Germany in 1656 (Cohn, p. cxix). Any reader who may care to track these continental companies of English actors in my *Life of Shakespeare* should correct an unfortunate slip in p. 312, where for *Pembroke's* read *Derby's* (*bis*).

Digitized by Google

altered and revised by Massinger, like *The Virgin Martyr*, and suggest similarity of origin; the very title of *The French Doctor* recalls many of Dekker's plays; *Time's Triumph* is, in all probability, the original 1589 form of Dekker's *Whore of Babylon*; *Mahomet* is most likely the play by Greene (*Alphonso*) called *Mahomet's pow*, by Peele; *The Love of a Grecian Lady* may be Peele's *Mahomet and Hiren the Fair Greek*; and *Osric* is *The Knack to Know a Knave*, retained by Henslowe, like *The Jew of Malta*, *The Ranger's Comedy*, and *The Guise*, from companies which acted at the Rose in 1592–3. Of *Cutlack*, *Warlam Chester*, *The Welshman*, and *The Witch of Islington*[1] nothing is at present known, but *Velya for* (the only one not yet enumerated), which has puzzled critics so much, is merely another spelling of *Valia*, 'for' being the commencement of 'for[ty shillings],' afterwards written xl*s*. I may also add that the black line drawn between the June 11 and June 18 entries shows the termination of the acting of the Chamberlain's and Admiral's men at Newington, the subsequent entries relating to the acting of the Admiral's men at the Rose.

This discussion of Henslowe's entries is, though somewhat long, absolutely indispensable in promulgating a hypothesis so new and revolutionary as that of the anteriority of Dekker to Shakespeare as a stage writer. I think, however, that the facts adduced will bear me out; if not, I have others in reserve, too lengthy to be adduced here.

Having thus cleared the way for the consideration of the authorship of the play, I will point out what I believe to be unquestionably Marlowe's share; the remainder consisting of Dekker's original contribution in 1588, and of subsequent additions by him ranging in date from 1594 to 1597. Had any been made later than 1597, they would of course have appeared in Henslowe's *Diary*, for he gives full details from that time onward.

[1] The *Siege of London*, which I once included with these unknown plays, was 1 *Edward IV* by Heywood, and *Henges* (Hengist) is merely another name for *Vortiger*, a new play on Dec. 4, 1596.

Digitized by Google

The 'fields of Thrasimene' in the chorus refers to some lost play; certainly not to the Hannibal plays of 1598 and 1601, which are later in date than any of these additions. Sc. i is by Marlowe; so is sc. iii; and so is sc. v, except ll. 134–8 ('But'—&c.), 141–8 ('How'—'on her'); 163–end ('yet fain'—'deceived'), which are palpably additions. In sc. vi, ll. 4–10 ('why, F.'—'for me'); l. 33–end ('come, M.'—'come, M.') are not by Marlowe, except ll. 80, 83: l. 80 stood, I think, originally as l. 4, and l. 83 must have been l. 17, as an antiphone to the succeeding line by E. Ang. The repetitions in ll. 80, 87 as they stand are certainly not Marlowe's. The next chorus has been altered, and only ll. 1–49 of sc. vii (omitting ll. 23–8, and reading thus: 'Faustus, I have; and that thou mayst perceive,' and in l. 47 'mountains [bridges]') are unadulterated Marlowe. In the next chorus, ll. 1–11 is Marlowe; possibly sc. xi, 1–9 (omitting 'sweet M.') is his; certainly ll. 39–44, sc. xiii, ll. 18–end of play (omitting ll. 36–9, 'ah, Doctor'—'rest'). Wherever 'Doctor' is used as a title to Faustus in addressing him, it indicates addition or alteration later than Dekker's original work. In the play as acted in 1588–9, I believe this title did not occur. Repetitions such as that in sc. xiii, l. 14 and l. 21, distinctly show difference of authorship; and in my judgement the likeness of iv. 2, &c., to the passage in *The Taming of a Shrew* is conclusive as to the anteriority of some of Dekker's part to 1589, when that play was produced. For it abounds in imitations or plagiarisms from plays recently produced by the Admiral's men, and was distinctly satirized on that account by Nash and Greene in *Menaphon* in that year. It is highly improbable that the copying should have been on the side of the author of additions to *Faustus* after the issue of that book.

F. G. FLEAY.

Digitized by Google

# APPENDIX B

## ON THE DATE OF 'FRIAR BACON AND FRIAR BUNGAY'

I LONG ago pointed out that the date of *Friar Bacon* could be approximately fixed by inductive evidence as subsequent to *Orlando* and *Alphonsus*, and as anterior to *James IV*, by the use of the motto *Omne tulit punctum qui miscuit utile dulci*. This form of motto was only used by Greene until he issued his *Menaphon*, which was entered S. R. Aug. 23, 1589; and then the shorter form *Omne tulit punctum* appears for the first time. I am now able to give a still stronger reason for the date 1589 (before August) thus conjecturally obtained. In the play itself St. James' Day, July 25, is referred to (sc. i) as coming on a Friday. I have repeatedly shown that in such cases dramatic authors used the almanac for the current year, and not one instance has yet been adduced to the contrary. But of the years in which this day came on a Friday, 1578, 1589, 1595, the first is too early, and the last too late, for adoption. We are, then, limited to 1589 (about June or July), which agrees with all the indications derivable from allusions to or from other plays, and with other circumstances in Greene's career, which I hope to treat elsewhere hereafter.

It may be desirable in concluding this excursus to sum up the history of the subsequent fortunes of these two plays. *Faustus* was produced for the Admiral's company at the Curtain theatre; taken on the Continent by them in 1591, where it was acted till 1626; brought back, and acted by the same company at the Rose, in 1594 and onwards, with additions by Dekker from time to time as occasion required: the later version with alterations by Bird and Rowley superseded the older version on the stage in 1602, and continued

Digitized by Google

to be acted at intervals till the closing of the theatre in 1642. Occasionally, we can trace interpolations by actors besides the authorised changes of version, e. g. the words 'and of his dam [read dame = wife] too' in sc. vi are not Dekker's, but 'gag' introduced *circa* May, 1600, when *The Devil and his Dame*, by Haughton, was on the stage. *Friar Bacon* was produced in 1589 by the Queen's men at 'The Theater'; sold by them to Lord Strange's company in the winter of 1591–2; acted by Strange's men at the Rose, 1592; retained by Henslowe when Strange's men went into the country in the plague year, 1593; acted again at his theatre, the Rose, by the Queen's and Sussex' men together in 1594; still retained by him and acted at Court by the Admiral's men, with Prologue and Epilogue by Middleton, in the winter of 1602; and certainly revived occasionally in the reigns of James I and Charles I. Transfers of its copyright occur in S. R., one June 29, 1624, from Mrs. White to E. Aldee; one April 22, 1640, from Mrs. Aldee to Oulton (see the Table in my *Life of Shakespeare*).

F. G. FLEAY.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE TRAGICAL HISTORY OF

# DOCTOR FAUSTUS

THE HONOURABLE HISTORY OF

# FRIAR BACON AND FRIAR BUNGAY

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

## THE TRAGICAL HISTORY OF

# DOCTOR FAUSTUS.

DRAMATIS PERSONÆ.

THE POPE.
CARDINAL OF LORRAIN.
THE EMPEROR OF GERMANY.
DUKE OF VANHOLT.
FAUSTUS.
VALDES, } friends to FAUSTUS.
CORNELIUS, }
WAGNER, servant to FAUSTUS.
Clown.
ROBIN.
RALPH.
Vintner.
Horse-courser.
A Knight.
An Old Man.
Scholars, Friars, and Attendants.
DUCHESS OF VANHOLT.
LUCIFER.
BELZEBUB.
MEPHISTOPHILIS.
Good Angel.
Evil Angel.
The Seven Deadly Sins.
Devils.
Spirits in the shapes of ALEXANDER THE GREAT, of his Paramour, and of HELEN.
Chorus.

*Enter* Chorus.

*Chorus.* NOT marching now in fields of Thrasimene,
Where Mars did mate the Carthaginians;
Nor sporting in the dalliance of love;
In courts of kings where state is overturn'd;
Nor in the pomp of proud audacious deeds,
Intends our Muse to vaunt his heavenly verse:
Only this, gentlemen,—we must perform
The form of Faustus' fortunes, good or bad:
To patient judgments we appeal our plaud,
And speak for Faustus in his infancy.
Now is he born, his parents base of stock,
In Germany, within a town call'd Rhodes:
Of riper years, to Wittenberg he went,
Whereas his kinsmen chiefly brought him up.
So soon he profits in divinity,
The fruitful plot of scholarism grac'd,
That shortly he was grac'd with doctor's name,
Excelling all whose sweet delight disputes



Digitized by Google

In heavenly matters of theology;
Till swoln with cunning, of a self-conceit,
His waxen wings did mount above his reach,
And, melting, heavens conspir'd his overthrow;
For, falling to a devilish exercise,
And glutted now with learning's golden gifts,
He surfeits upon cursèd necromancy;
Nothing so sweet as magic is to him,
Which he prefers before his chiefest bliss:
And this the man that in his study sits. [*Exit.*

SCENE I. *Faustus's study.*

FAUSTUS *discovered.*

*Faust.* Settle thy studies, Faustus, and begin
To sound the depth of that thou wilt profess:
Having commenc'd, be a divine in show,
Yet level at the end of every art,
And live and die in Aristotle's works.
Sweet Analytics, 'tis thou hast ravish'd me!
*Bene disserere est finis logices.*
Is, to dispute well, logic's chiefest end?
Affords this art no greater miracle?
Then read no more; thou hast attain'd that end.
A greater subject fitteth Faustus' wit:
Bid Economy farewell, and Galen come,
Seeing, *Ubi desinit philosophus, ibi incipit medicus:*
Be a physician, Faustus; heap up gold,
And be etèrniz'd for some wondrous cure!
*Summum bonum medicinae sanitas:*
The end of physic is our body's health.
Why, Faustus, hast thou not attain'd that end?
Is not thy common talk found aphorisms?
Are not thy bills hung up as monuments,
Whereby whole cities have escap'd the plague,
And thousand desp'rate maladies been eas'd?
Yet art thou still but Faustus, and a man.
Couldst thou make men to live eternally,

Digitized by Google

Or, being dead, raise them to life again,
Then this profession were to be esteem'd.
Physic, farewell! Where is Justinian? [*Reads.*
*Si una eademque res legatur duobus, alter rem, alter valorem rei, etc.*
A pretty case of paltry legacies! [*Reads.*
*Exhaereditare filium non potest pater, nisi, etc.*
Such is the subject of the institute,
And universal body of the law:
His study fits a mercenary drudge,
Who aims at nothing but external trash;
Too servile and illiberal for me.
When all is done, divinity is best:
Jerome's Bible, Faustus; view it well. [*Reads.*
*Stipendium peccati mors est.* Ha! *Stipendium, etc.* —
The reward of sin is death: that 's hard. [*Reads.*
*Si peccasse negamus, fallimur, et nulla est in nobis veritas:*
If we say that we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and there 's no truth in us.
Why, then, belike we must sin, and so consequently die:
Ay, we must die an everlasting death.
What doctrine call you this, *Che sera, sera:*
What will be, shall be? Divinity, adieu!
These metaphysics of magicians,
And necromantic books are heavenly;
Lines, circles, scenes, letters, and characters;
Ay, these are those that Faustus most desires.
O, what a world of profit and delight,
Of power, of honour, of omnipotence,
Is promis'd to the studious artizan!
All things that move between the quiet poles
Shall be at my command: emperors and kings
Are but obeyèd in their several provinces,
Nor can they raise the wind, or rend the clouds;
But his dominion that exceeds in this,
Stretcheth as far as doth the mind of man;
A sound magician is a mighty god:
Here, Faustus, tire thy brains to gain a deity!



Digitized by Google

*Enter* WAGNER.

Wagner, commend me to my dearest friends,
The German Valdes and Cornelius;
Request them earnestly to visit me.

*Wag.* I will, sir. [*Exit.*

*Faust.* Their conference will be a greater help to me
Than all my labours, plod I ne'er so fast.

*Enter* Good Angel *and* Evil Angel.

*G. Ang.* O, Faustus, lay that damnèd book aside,
And gaze not on it, lest it tempt thy soul,
And heap God's heavy wrath upon thy head!
Read, read the Scriptures:—that is blasphemy.

*E. Ang.* Go forward, Faustus, in that famous art
Wherein all Nature's treasure is contain'd:
Be thou on earth as Jove is in the sky,
Lord and commander of these elements. [*Exeunt* Angels.

*Faust.* How am I glutted with conceit of this!
Shall I make spirits fetch me what I please,
Resolve me of all ambiguities,
Perform what desperate enterprise I will?
I'll have them fly to India for gold,
Ransack the ocean for orient pearl,
And search all corners of the new-found world
For pleasant fruits and princely delicates;
I'll have them read me strange philosophy,
And tell the secrets of all foreign kings;
I'll have them wall all Germany with brass,
And make swift Rhine circle fair Wittenberg;
I'll have them fill the public schools with silk,
Wherewith the students shall be bravely clad;
I'll levy soldiers with the coin they bring,
And chase the Prince of Parma from our land,
And reign sole king of all our provinces;
Yea, stranger engines for the brunt of war,
Than was the fiery keel at Antwerp's bridge,
I'll make my servile spirits to invent.

Digitized by Google

*Enter* VALDES *and* CORNELIUS.

Come, German Valdes, and Cornelius,
And make me blest with your sage conference!
Valdes, sweet Valdes, and Cornelius,
Know that your words have won me at the last
To practise magic and concealèd arts:
Yet not your words only, but mine own fantasy,
That will receive no object; for my head
But ruminates on necromantic skill.
Philosophy is odious and obscure;
Both law and physic are for petty wits;
Divinity is basest of the three,
Unpleasant, harsh, contemptible, and vile:
'Tis magic, magic, that hath ravish'd me.
Then, gentle friends, aid me in this attempt;
And I, that have with concise syllogisms
Gravell'd the pastors of the German church,
And made the flowering pride of Wittenberg
Swarm to my problems, as the infernal spirits
On sweet Musaeus when he came to hell,
Will be as cunning as Agrippa was,
Whose shadows made all Europe honour him.

*Vald.* Faustus, these books, thy wit, and our experience,
Shall make all nations to canonize us.
As Indian Moors obey their Spanish lords,
So shall the subjects of every element
Be always serviceable to us three;
Like lions shall they guard us when we please;
Like Almain rutters with their horsemen's staves,
Or Lapland giants, trotting by our sides;
Sometimes like women, or unwedded maids,
Shadowing more beauty in their airy brows
Than have the white breasts of the queen of love:
From Venice shall they drag huge argosies,
And from America the golden fleece
That yearly stuffs old Philip's treasury;
If learnèd Faustus will be resolute.

Digitized by Google

*Faust.* Valdes, as resolute am I in this
As thou to live: therefore object it not.

*Corn.* The miracles that magic will perform
Will make thee vow to study nothing else.
He that is grounded in astrology,
Enrich'd with tongues, well seen in minerals,
Hath all the principles magic doth require:
Then doubt not, Faustus, but to be renowm'd,
And more frequented for this mystery
Than heretofore the Delphian oracle.
The spirits tell me they can dry the sea,
And fetch the treasure of all foreign wrecks,
Ay, all the wealth that our forefathers hid
Within the massy entrails of the earth:
Then tell me, Faustus, what shall we three want?

*Faust.* Nothing, Cornelius. O, this cheers my soul!
Come, shew me some demonstrations magical,
That I may conjure in some lusty grove,
And have these joys in full possession.

*Vald.* Then haste thee to some solitary grove,
And bear wise Bacon's and Albanus' works,
The Hebrew Psalter, and New Testament;
And whatsoever else is requisite
We will inform thee ere our conference cease.

*Corn.* Valdes, first let him know the words of art;
And then, all other ceremonies learn'd,
Faustus may try his cunning by himself.

*Vald.* First I'll instruct thee in the rudiments,
And then wilt thou be perfecter than I.

*Faust.* Then come and dine with me, and, after meat,
We'll canvass every quiddity thereof;
For, ere I sleep, I'll try what I can do:
This night I'll conjure, though I die therefore. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE II. *Before Faustus's house.*

*Enter* Two Scholars.

*First Schol.* I wonder what 's become of Faustus, that was wont to make our schools ring with *sic probo.*

*Sec. Schol.* That shall we know; for see, here comes his boy.

*Enter* WAGNER.

*First Schol.* How now, sirrah! where 's thy master?

*Wag.* God in heaven knows.

*Sec. Schol.* Why, dost not thou know?

*Wag.* Yes, I know; but that follows not.

*First Schol.* Go to, sirrah! leave your jesting, and tell us where he is.

*Wag.* That follows not necessary by force of argument, that you, being licentiate, should stand upon 't: therefore acknowledge your error, and be attentive.

*Sec. Schol.* Why, didst thou not say thou knewest?

*Wag.* Have you any witness on 't?

*First Schol.* Yes, sirrah, I heard you.

*Wag.* Ask my fellow if I be a thief.

*Sec. Schol.* Well, you will not tell us?

*Wag.* Yes, sir, I will tell you: yet, if you were not dunces, you would never ask me such a question; for is not he *corpus naturale*? and is not that *mobile*? then wherefore should you ask me such a question? But that I am by nature phlegmatic, slow to wrath, it were not for you to come within forty foot of the place of execution, although I do not doubt to see you both hanged the next sessions. Thus having triumphed over you, I will set my countenance like a precisian, and begin to speak thus:—Truly, my dear brethren, my master is within at dinner, with Valdes and Cornelius, as this wine, if it could speak, it would inform your worships: and so, the Lord bless you, preserve you, and keep you, my dear brethren, my dear brethren! [*Exit.*

Digitized by Google

*First Schol.* Nay, then, I fear he is fallen into that damned art for which they two are infamous through the world.

*Sec. Schol.* Were he a stranger, and not allied to me, yet should I grieve for him. But, come, let us go and inform the Rector, and see if he by his grave counsel can reclaim him.

*First Schol.* O, but I fear me nothing can reclaim him!

*Sec. Schol.* Yet let us try what we can do. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE III. *A grove.*

*Enter* FAUSTUS *to conjure.*

*Faust.* Now that the gloomy shadow of the earth,
Longing to view Orion's drizzling look,
Leaps from th' antarctic world unto the sky,
And dims the welkin with her pitchy breath,
Faustus, begin thine incantations,
And try if devils will obey thy hest,
Seeing thou hast pray'd and sacrific'd to them.
Within this circle is Jehovah's name,
Forward and backward anagrammatiz'd,
The breviated names of holy saints,
Figures of every adjunct to the heavens,
And characters of signs and erring stars,
By which the spirits are enforc'd to rise:
Then fear not, Faustus, but be resolute,
And try the uttermost magic can perform.—

*Sint mihi dei Acherontis propitii! Valeat numen triplex Jehovae! Ignei, aerii, aquatani spiritus, salvete! Orientis princeps Belzebub, inferni ardentis monarcha, et Demogorgon, propitiamus vos, ut appareat et surgat Mephistophilis, quod tumeraris: per Jehovam, Gehennam, et consecratam aquam quam nunc spargo, signumque crucis quod nunc facio, et per vota nostra, ipse nunc surgat nobis dicatus Mephistophilis!*

Digitized by Google

*Enter* MEPHISTOPHILIS.

I charge thee to return, and change thy shape;
Thou art too ugly to attend on me:
Go, and return an old Franciscan friar;
That holy shape becomes a devil best. [*Exit* MEPHISTOPHILIS.
I see there 's virtue in my heavenly words:
Who would not be proficient in this art?
How pliant is this Mephistophilis,
Full of obedience and humility!
Such is the force of magic and my spells:
No, Faustus, thou art conjuror laureat,
That canst command great Mephistophilis:
*Quin regis Mephistophilis fratris imagine.*

*Re-enter* MEPHISTOPHILIS *like a Franciscan friar.*

*Meph.* Now, Faustus, what wouldst thou have me do?

*Faust.* I charge thee wait upon me whilst I live,
To do whatever Faustus shall command,
Be it to make the moon drop from her sphere,
Or th' ocean to overwhelm the world.

*Meph.* I am a servant to great Lucifer,
And may not follow thee without his leave:
No more than he commands must we perform.

*Faust.* Did not he charge thee to appear to me?

*Meph.* No, I came hither of mine own accord.

*Faust.* Did not my conjuring speeches raise thee? speak.

*Meph.* That was the cause, but yet *per accidens*;
For, when we hear one rack the name of God,
Abjure the Scriptures and his Saviour Christ,
We fly, in hope to get his glorious soul;
Nor will we come, unless he use such means
Whereby he is in danger to be damn'd.
Therefore the shortest cut for conjuring
Is stoutly to abjure the Trinity,
And pray devoutly to the prince of hell.

*Faust.* So Faustus hath
Already done; and holds this principle,

Digitized by Google

There is no chief but only Belzebub;
To whom Faustus doth dedicate himself.
This word 'damnation' terrifies not him,
For he confounds hell in Elysium:
His ghost be with the old philosophers!
But, leaving these vain trifles of men's souls,
Tell me what is that Lucifer thy lord?

*Meph.* Arch-regent and commander of all spirits.

*Faust.* Was not that Lucifer an angel once?

*Meph.* Yes, Faustus, and most dearly lov'd of God.

*Faust.* How comes it, then, that he is prince of devils?

*Meph.* O, by aspiring pride and insolence;
For which God threw him from the face of heaven.

*Faust.* And what are you that live with Lucifer?

*Meph.* Unhappy spirits that fell with Lucifer,
Conspir'd against our God with Lucifer,
And are for ever damn'd with Lucifer.

*Faust.* Where are you damn'd?

*Meph.* In hell.

*Faust.* How comes it, then, that thou art out of hell?

*Meph.* Why, this is hell, nor am I out of it:
Think'st thou that I, who saw the face of God,
And tasted the eternal joys of heaven,
Am not tormented with ten thousand hells,
In being depriv'd of everlasting bliss?
O, Faustus, leave these frivolous demands,
Which strike a terror to my fainting soul!

*Faust.* What, is great Mephistophilis so passionate
For being deprivèd of the joys of heaven?
Learn thou of Faustus manly fortitude,
And scorn those joys thou never shalt possess.
Go bear these tidings to great Lucifer:
Seeing Faustus hath incurr'd eternal death
By desp'rate thoughts against Jove's deity,
Say, he surrenders up to him his soul,
So he will spare him four and twenty years,

Digitized by Google

Letting him live in all voluptuousness;
Having thee ever to attend on me,
To give me whatsoever I shall ask,
To tell me whatsoever I demand,
To slay mine enemies, and aid my friends,
And always be obedient to my will.
Go and return to mighty Lucifer,
And meet me in my study at midnight,
And then resolve me of thy master's mind.

*Meph.* I will, Faustus. [*Exit.*

*Faust.* Had I as many souls as there be stars,
I'd give them all for Mephistophilis.
By him I'll be great emp'ror of the world,
And make a bridge thorough the moving air,
To pass the ocean with a band of men;
I'll join the hills that bind the Afric shore,
And make that country continent to Spain,
And both contributory to my crown:
The Emp'ror shall not live but by my leave,
Nor any potentate of Germany.
Now that I have obtain'd what I desir'd,
I'll live in speculation of this art,
Till Mephistophilis return again.

SCENE IV. *A street.*

*Enter* WAGNER *and* Clown.

*Wag.* Sirrah boy, come hither.

*Clown.* How, boy! swowns, boy! I hope you have seen many boys with such pickadevaunts as I have: boy, quotha!

*Wag.* Tell me, sirrah, hast thou any comings in?

*Clown.* Ay, and goings out too. You may see else.

*Wag.* Alas, poor slave! see how poverty jesteth in his nakedness! the villain is bare and out of service, and so hungry, that I know he would give his soul to the devil for a shoulder of mutton, though it were blood-raw.

Digitized by Google

*Clown.* How! my soul to the devil for a shoulder of mutton, though 'twere blood-raw! not so, good friend: by'r lady, I had need have it well roasted, and good sauce to it, if I pay so dear.

*Wag.* Well, wilt thou serve me, and I'll make thee go like *Qui mihi discipulus?*

*Clown.* How, in verse?

*Wag.* No, sirrah; in beaten silk and staves-acre.

*Clown.* How, how, knaves-acre! ay, I thought that was all the land his father left him. Do ye hear? I would be sorry to rob you of your living.

*Wag.* Sirrah, I say in staves-acre.

*Clown.* Oho, oho, staves-acre! why, then, belike, if I were your man, I should be full of vermin.

*Wag.* So thou shalt, whether thou beest with me or no. But, sirrah, leave your jesting, and bind yourself presently unto me for seven years, or I'll turn all the lice about thee into familiars, and they shall tear thee in pieces.

*Clown.* Do you hear, sir? you may save that labour; they are too familiar with me already: swowns, they are as bold with my flesh as if they had paid for my meat and drink.

*Wag.* Well, do you hear, sirrah? hold, take these guilders. [*Gives money.*

*Clown.* Gridirons, what be they?

*Wag.* Why, French crowns.

*Clown.* Mass, but for the name of French crowns, a man were as good have as many English counters. And what should I do with these?

*Wag.* Why, now, sirrah, thou art at an hour's warning, whensoever or wheresoever the devil shall fetch thee.

*Clown.* No, no; here, take your gridirons again.

*Wag.* Truly, I'll none of them.

*Clown.* Truly, but you shall.

*Wag.* Bear witness I gave them him.

*Clown.* Bear witness I give them you again.

Digitized by Google

*Wag.* Well, I will cause two devils presently to fetch thee away.—Baliol and Belcher!

*Clown.* Let your Balio and your Belcher come here, and I'll knock them, they were never so knocked since they were devils: say I should kill one of them, what would folks say? 'Do ye see yonder tall fellow in the round slop? he has killed the devil.' So I should be called Kill-devil all the parish over.

*Enter two* Devils; *and the* Clown *runs up and down crying.*

*Wag.* Baliol and Belcher,—spirits, away! [*Exeunt* Devils.

*Clown.* What, are they gone? a vengeance on them! they have vile long nails. There was a he-devil and a she-devil: I'll tell you how you shall know them; all he-devils has horns, and all she-devils has cloven feet.

*Wag.* Well, sirrah, follow me.

*Clown.* But, do you hear? if I should serve you, would you teach me to raise up Banios and Belcheos?

*Wag.* I will teach thee to turn thyself to any thing, to a dog, or a cat, or a mouse, or a rat, or any thing.

*Clown.* How! a Christian fellow to a dog, or a cat, a mouse, or a rat! no, no, sir; if you turn me into any thing, let it be in the likeness of a little pretty frisking flea, that I may be here and there and everywhere.

*Wag.* Well, sirrah, come.

*Clown.* But, do you hear, Wagner?

*Wag.* How!—Baliol and Belcher!

*Clown.* O Lord, I pray, sir, let Banio and Belcher go sleep.

*Wag.* Villain, call me Master Wagner, and let thy left eye be diametarily fixed upon my right heel, with *quasi vestigias nostras insistere.* [*Exit.*

*Clown.* God forgive me, he speaks Dutch fustian. Well, I'll follow him; I'll serve him, that 's flat. [*Exit.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE V. *Faustus's study.*

FAUSTUS *discovered.*

*Faust.* Now, Faustus, must
Thou needs be damn'd, and canst thou not be sav'd:
What boots it, then, to think of God or heaven?
Away with such vain fancies, and despair;
Despair in God, and trust in Belzebub:
Now go not backward; no, Faustus, be resolute:
Why waver'st thou? O, something soundeth in mine ears,
'Abjure this magic, turn to God again!'
Ay, and Faustus will turn to God again.
To God? he loves thee not;
The god thou serv'st is thine own appetite,
Wherein is fix'd the love of Belzebub:
To him I'll build an altar and a church,
And offer lukewarm blood of new-born babes.

*Enter* Good Angel *and* Evil Angel.

*G. Ang.* Sweet Faustus, leave that execrable art.

*Faust.* Contrition, prayer, repentance—what of them?

*G. Ang.* O, they are means to bring thee unto heaven!

*E. Ang.* Rather illusions, fruits of lunacy,
That makes men foolish that do trust them most.

*G. Ang.* Sweet Faustus, think of heaven and heavenly things.

*E. Ang.* No, Faustus; think of honour and of wealth.

[*Exeunt* Angels.

*Faust.* Of wealth!
Why, the signiory of Emden shall be mine.
When Mephistophilis shall stand by me,
What god can hurt thee, Faustus? thou art safe:
Cast no more doubts.—Come, Mephistophilis,
And bring glad tidings from great Lucifer;—
Is 't not midnight?—come, Mephistophilis,
*Veni, veni, Mephistophile!*

Digitized by Google

*Enter* MEPHISTOPHILIS.

Now tell me what says Lucifer, thy lord?

*Meph.* That I shall wait on Faustus while he lives,
So he will buy my service with his soul.

*Faust.* Already Faustus hath hazarded that for thee.

*Meph.* But, Faustus, thou must bequeath it solemnly,
And write a deed of gift with thine own blood;
For that security craves great Lucifer.
If thou deny it, I will back to hell.

*Faust.* Stay, Mephistophilis, and tell me, what good
Will my soul do thy lord?

*Meph.* Enlarge his kingdom.

*Faust.* Is that the reason why he tempts us thus?

*Meph.* *Solamen miseris socios habuisse doloris.*

*Faust.* Why, have you any pain that torture others?

*Meph.* As great as have the human souls of men.
But tell me, Faustus, shall I have thy soul?
And I will be thy slave, and wait on thee,
And give thee more than thou hast wit to ask.

*Faust.* Ay, Mephistophilis, I give it thee.

*Meph.* Then, Faustus, stab thine arm courageously,
And bind thy soul, that at some certain day
Great Lucifer may claim it as his own;
And then be thou as great as Lucifer.

*Faust.* [*Stabbing his arm*] Lo, Mephistophilis, for love of thee,
I cut mine arm, and with my proper blood
Assure my soul to be great Lucifer's,
Chief lord and regent of perpetual night!
View here the blood that trickles from mine arm,
And let it be propitious for my wish.

*Meph.* But, Faustus, thou must
Write it in manner of a deed of gift.

*Faust.* Ay, so I will [*Writes*]. But, Mephistophilis,
My blood congeals, and I can write no more.

Digitized by Google

*Meph.* I'll fetch thee fire to dissolve it straight. [*Exit.*

*Faust.* What might the staying of my blood portend?
Is it unwilling I should write this bill?
Why streams it not, that I may write afresh?
*Faustus gives to thee his soul:* ah, there it stay'd!
Why shouldst thou not? is not thy soul thine own?
Then write again, *Faustus gives to thee his soul.*

*Re-enter* MEPHISTOPHILIS *with a chafer of coals.*

*Meph.* Here 's fire; come, Faustus, set it on.

*Faust.* So, now the blood begins to clear again;
Now will I make an end immediately. [*Writes.*

*Meph.* O, what will not I do to obtain his soul? [*Aside.*

*Faust.* *Consummatum est*; this bill is ended,
And Faustus hath bequeath'd his soul to Lucifer.
But what is this inscription on mine arm?
*Homo, fuge*: whither should I fly?
If unto God, he'll throw me down to hell.
My senses are deceiv'd; here 's nothing writ:—
I see it plain; here in this place is writ,
*Homo, fuge:* yet shall not Faustus fly.

*Meph.* I'll fetch him somewhat to delight his mind.
[*Aside, and then exit.*

*Re-enter* MEPHISTOPHILIS *with* Devils, *who give crowns and rich apparel to* FAUSTUS, *dance, and then depart.*

*Faust.* Speak, Mephistophilis, what means this show?

*Meph.* Nothing, Faustus, but to delight thy mind withal,
And to shew thee what magic can perform.

*Faust.* But may I raise up spirits when I please?

*Meph.* Ay, Faustus, and do greater things than these.

*Faust.* Then there 's enough for a thousand souls.
Here, Mephistophilis, receive this scroll,
A deed of gift of body and of soul:
But yet conditionally that thou perform
All articles prescrib'd between us both.

*Meph.* Faustus, I swear by hell and Lucifer
To effect all promises between us made!

Digitized by Google

*Faust.* Then hear me read them. [*Reads*]

*On these conditions following. First, that Faustus may be a spirit in form and substance. Secondly, that Mephistophilis shall be his servant, and at his command. Thirdly, that Mephistophilis shall do for him, and bring him whatsoever* [*he desires*]. *Fourthly, that he shall be in his chamber or house invisible. Lastly, that he shall appear to the said John Faustus, at all times, in what form or shape soever he please. I, John Faustus, of Wittenberg, Doctor, by these presents, do give both body and soul to Lucifer prince of the east, and his minister Mephistophilis; and furthermore grant unto them that, twenty-four years being expired, the articles above written inviolate, full power to fetch or carry the said John Faustus, body and soul, flesh, blood, or goods, into their habitation wheresoever. By me,* JOHN FAUSTUS.

*Meph.* Speak, Faustus, do you deliver this as your deed?

*Faust.* Ay, take it, and the devil give thee good on 't!

*Meph.* Now, Faustus, ask what thou wilt.

*Faust.* First will I question with thee about hell.
Tell me, where is the place that men call hell?

*Meph.* Under the heavens.

*Faust.* Ay, but whereabout?

*Meph.* Within the bowels of these elements,
Where we are tortur'd and remain for ever:
Hell hath no limits, nor is circumscrib'd
In one self place; for where we are is hell,
And where hell is, there must we ever be:
And, to conclude, when all the world dissolves,
And every creature shall be purified,
All places shall be hell that are not heaven.

*Faust.* Come, I think hell 's a fable.

*Meph.* Ay, think so still, till experience change thy mind.

*Faust.* Why, think'st thou, then, that Faustus shall be damn'd?

*Meph.* Ay, of necessity, for here 's the scroll
Wherein thou hast given thy soul to Lucifer.



Digitized by Google

*Faust.* Ay, and body too: but what of that? 130
Think'st thou that Faustus is so fond to imagine
That, after this life, there is any pain?
Tush, these are trifles and mere old wives' tales.

*Meph.* But, Faustus, I am an instance to prove the contrary;
For I am damnèd, and am now in hell. 135

*Faust.* How! now in hell!
Nay, an this be hell, I'll willingly be damn'd here:
What! walking, disputing, etc.
But, leaving off this, let me have a wife,
The fairest maid in Germany. 140

*Meph.* How! a wife!
I prithee, Faustus, talk not of a wife.

*Faust.* Nay, sweet Mephistophilis, fetch me one; for I will have one.

*Meph.* Well, thou wilt have one? Sit there till I come:
I'll fetch thee a wife in the devil's name. [*Exit.*

*Re-enter* MEPHISTOPHILIS *with a* Devil *drest like a* Woman, *with fire-works.*

*Meph.* Tell me, Faustus, how dost thou like thy wife?

*Faust.* A plague on her!

*Meph.* Tut, Faustus,
Marriage is but a ceremonial toy; 150
If thou lovest me, think no more of it.
She whom thine eye shall like, thy heart shall have,
Be she as chaste as was Penelope,
As wise as Saba, or as beautiful
As was bright Lucifer before his fall. 155
Hold, take this book, peruse it thoroughly: [*Gives book.*
The iterating of these lines brings gold;
The framing of this circle on the ground
Brings whirlwinds, tempests, thunder, and lightning;
Pronounce this thrice devoutly to thyself, 160
And men in armour shall appear to thee,
Ready to execute what thou desir'st.

Digitized by Google

*Faust.* Thanks, Mephistophilis; yet fain would I have a book wherein I might behold all spells and incantations, that I might raise up spirits when I please.

*Meph.* Here they are in this book. [*Turns to them.*

*Faust.* Now would I have a book where I might see all characters and planets of the heavens, that I might know their motions and dispositions.

*Meph.* Here they are too. [*Turns to them.*

*Faust.* Nay, let me have one book more,—and then I have done,—wherein I might see all plants, herbs, and trees, that grow upon the earth.

*Meph.* Here they be.

*Faust.* O, thou art deceived.

*Meph.* Tut, I warrant thee. [*Turns to them.*

SCENE VI. *In the house of Faustus.*

*Faust.* When I behold the heavens, then I repent,
And curse thee, wicked Mephistophilis,
Because thou hast depriv'd me of those joys.

*Meph.* Why, Faustus,
Thinkest thou heaven is such a glorious thing?
I tell thee, 'tis not half so fair as thou,
Or any man that breathes on earth.

*Faust.* How prov'st thou that?

*Meph.* 'Twas made for man, therefore is man more excellent.

*Faust.* If it were made for man, 'twas made for me:
I will renounce this magic and repent.

*Enter* Good Angel *and* Evil Angel.

*G. Ang.* Faustus, repent; yet God will pity thee.

*E. Ang.* Thou art a spirit; God cannot pity thee.

*Faust.* Who buzzeth in mine ears I am a spirit?
Be I a devil, yet God may pity me;
Ay, God will pity me, if I repent.



Digitized by Google

*E. Ang.* Ay, but Faustus never shall repent.

[*Exeunt* Angels.

*Faust.* My heart's so harden'd, I cannot repent:
Scarce can I name salvation, faith, or heaven,
But fearful echoes thunder in mine ears,
'Faustus, thou art damn'd!' Then swords, and knives,
Poison, guns, halters, and envenom'd steel
Are laid before me to despatch myself;
And long ere this I should have slain myself,
Had not sweet pleasure conquer'd deep despair.
Have not I made blind Homer sing to me
Of Alexander's love and Oenon's death?
And hath not he, that built the walls of Thebes
With ravishing sound of his melodious harp,
Made music with my Mephistophilis?
Why should I die, then, or basely despair?
I am resolv'd; Faustus shall ne'er repent.—
Come, Mephistophilis, let us dispute again,
And argue of divine astrology.
Tell me, are there many heavens above the moon?
Are all celestial bodies but one globe,
As is the substance of this centric earth?

*Meph.* As are the elements, such are the spheres,
Mutually folded in each other's orb,
And, Faustus,
All jointly move upon one axletree,
Whose terminine is term'd the world's wide pole;
Nor are the names of Saturn, Mars, or Jupiter
Feign'd, but are erring stars.

*Faust.* But, tell me, have they all one motion, both *situ et tempore*?

*Meph.* All jointly move from east to west in twenty-four hours upon the poles of the world; but differ in their motion upon the poles of the zodiac.

*Faust.* Tush,
These slender trifles Wagner can decide:
Hath Mephistophilis no greater skill?

Digitized by Google

Who knows not the double motion of the planets?
The first is finish'd in a natural day;
The second thus: as Saturn in thirty years; Jupiter in twelve; Mars in four; the Sun, Venus, and Mercury in a year; the Moon in twenty-eight days. Tush, these are freshmen's suppositions. But, tell me, hath every sphere a dominion or *intelligentia*?

*Meph.* Ay.

*Faust.* How many heavens or spheres are there?

*Meph.* Nine; the seven planets, the firmament, and the empyreal heaven.

*Faust.* Well, resolve me in this question: why have we not conjunctions, oppositions, aspects, eclipses, all at one time, but in some years we have more, in some less?

*Meph.* *Per inaequalem motum respectu totius.*

*Faust.* Well, I am answered. Tell me who made the world?

*Meph.* I will not.

*Faust.* Sweet Mephistophilis, tell me.

*Meph.* Move me not, for I will not tell thee.

*Faust.* Villain, have I not bound thee to tell me any thing?

*Meph.* Ay, that is not against our kingdom; but this is. Think thou on hell, Faustus, for thou art damned.

*Re-enter* Good Angel *and* Evil Angel.

*G. Ang.* Think, Faustus, upon God that made the world.

*Meph.* Remember this. [*Exit.*

*Faust.* Ay, go, accursèd spirit, to ugly hell!
'Tis thou hast damn'd distressèd Faustus' soul.
Is 't not too late?

*E. Ang.* Too late.

*G. Ang.* Never too late, if Faustus can repent.

*E. Ang.* If thou repent, devils shall tear thee in pieces.

*G. Ang.* Repent, and they shall never raze thy skin.

[*Exeunt* Angels.

Digitized by Google

*Faust.* Ay, Christ, my Saviour,
Seek to save distressèd Faustus' soul!

*Enter* LUCIFER, BELZEBUB, *and* MEPHISTOPHILIS.

*Luc.* Christ cannot save thy soul, for he is just:
There's none but I have int'rest in the same.

*Faust.* O, who art thou that look'st so terrible?

*Luc.* I am Lucifer,
And this is my companion-prince in hell.

*Faust.* O, Faustus, they are come to fetch away thy soul!

*Luc.* We come to tell thee thou dost injure us;
Thou talk'st of Christ, contrary to thy promise:
Thou shouldst not think of God; think of the devil,
And of his dam too.

*Faust.* Nor will I henceforth: pardon me in this,
And Faustus vows never to look to heaven,
Never to name God, or to pray to him,
To burn his Scriptures, slay his ministers,
And make my spirits pull his churches down.

*Luc.* Do so, and we will highly gratify thee.
Faustus, we are come from hell to shew thee some pastime: sit down, and thou shalt see all the Seven Deadly Sins appear in their proper shapes.

*Faust.* That sight will be as pleasing unto me,
As Paradise was to Adam, the first day
Of his creation.

*Luc.* Talk not of Paradise nor creation; but mark this show: talk of the devil, and nothing else.—Come away!

*Enter the* Seven Deadly Sins.

Now, Faustus, examine them of their several names and dispositions.

*Faust.* What art thou, the first?

*Pride.* I am Pride. I disdain to have any parents. I am like Ovid's flea; I can creep into every corner; some-

Digitized by Google

times, like a periwig, I sit upon a wench's brow; or, like a fan of feathers, I kiss her lips. But, fie, what a scent is here! I'll not speak another word, except the ground were perfumed, and covered with cloth of arras.

*Faust.* What art thou, the second?

*Covet.* I am Covetousness; and, might I have my wish, I would desire that this house and all the people in it were turned to gold, that I might lock you up in my good chest, O my sweet gold!

*Faust.* What art thou, the third?

*Wrath.* I am Wrath. I had neither father nor mother: I leapt out of a lion's mouth when I was scarce half-an-hour old; and ever since I have run up and down the world with this case of rapiers, wounding myself when I had nobody to fight withal. I was born in hell; and look to it, for some of you shall be my father.

*Faust.* What art thou, the fourth?

*Envy.* I am Envy, born of a chimney-sweeper and an oyster-wife. I cannot read, and therefore wish all books were burnt. I am lean with seeing others eat. O, that there would come a famine through all the world, that all might die, and I live alone! then thou shouldst see how fat I would be. But must thou sit, and I stand? come down, with a vengeance!

*Faust.* Away, envious rascal!—What art thou, the fifth?

*Glut.* Who I, sir? I am Gluttony. My parents are all dead, and the devil a penny they have left me, but a bare pension, and that is thirty meals a-day and ten bevers,—a small trifle to suffice nature. O, I come of a royal parentage! my grandfather was a Gammon of Bacon, my grandmother a Hogshead of Claret-wine; my godfathers were these, Peter Pickle-herring and Martin Martlemas-beef; O, but my godmother, she was a jolly gentlewoman, and well beloved in every good town and city; her name was Mistress Margery March-beer. Now, Faustus, thou hast heard all my progeny; wilt thou bid me to supper?

Digitized by Google

*Faust.* No, I'll see thee hanged; thou wilt eat up all my victuals.

*Glut.* Then the devil choke thee!

*Faust.* Choke thyself, glutton!—What art thou, the sixth?

*Sloth.* I am Sloth. I was born on a sunny bank, where I have lain ever since; and you have done me great injury to bring me from thence: let me be carried thither again by Gluttony and Lechery. I'll not speak another word for a king's ransom.

*Faust.* What are you, Mistress Minx, the seventh and last?

*Lechery.* Who, I, sir? The first letter of my name begins with Lechery.

*Luc.* Away, to hell, to hell! [*Exeunt the* Sins.] Now, Faustus, how dost thou like this?

*Faust.* O, this feeds my soul!

*Luc.* Tut, Faustus, in hell is all manner of delight.

*Faust.* O, might I see hell, and return again,
How happy were I then!

*Luc.* Thou shalt; I will send for thee at midnight.
In meantime take this book; peruse it throughly,
And thou shalt turn thyself into what shape thou wilt.

*Faust.* Great thanks, mighty Lucifer!
This will I keep as chary as my life.

*Luc.* Farewell, Faustus, and think on the devil.

*Faust.* Farewell, great Lucifer. Come, Mephistophilis.

[*Exeunt omnes.*

*Enter* Chorus.

*Chor.* Learnèd Faustus,
To know the secrets of astronomy
Graven in the book of Jove's high firmament,
Did mount himself to scale Olympus' top,
Being seated in a chariot burning bright,
Drawn by the strength of yoky dragons' necks.
He now is gone to prove cosmography,
And, as I guess, will first arrive at Rome,

Digitized by Google

To see the Pope and manner of his court,
And take some part of holy Peter's feast,
That to this day is highly solemniz'd. [*Exit.*

SCENE VII. *The Pope's privy-chamber.*

*Enter* FAUSTUS *and* MEPHISTOPHILIS.

*Faust.* Having now, my good Mephistophilis,
Pass'd with delight the stately town of Trier,
Environ'd round with airy mountain-tops,
With walls of flint, and deep-entrenchèd lakes,
Not to be won by any conquering prince;
From Paris next, coasting the realm of France,
We saw the river Maine fall into Rhine,
Whose banks are set with groves of fruitful vines;
Then up to Naples, rich Campania,
Whose buildings fair and gorgeous to the eye,
The streets straight forth, and pav'd with finest brick,
Quarter the town in four equivalents;
There saw we learnèd Maro's golden tomb,
The way he cut, an English mile in length,
Thorough a rock of stone, in one night's space;
From thence to Venice, Padua, and the rest,
In one of which a sumptuous temple stands,
That threats the stars with her aspiring top.
Thus hitherto hath Faustus spent his time:
But tell me now what resting-place is this?
Hast thou, as erst I did command,
Conducted me within the walls of Rome?

*Meph.* Faustus, I have; and, because we will not be unprovided, I have taken up his Holiness' privy-chamber for our use.

*Faust.* I hope his Holiness will bid us welcome.

*Meph.* Tut, 'tis no matter, man; we'll be bold with his good cheer.
And now, my Faustus, that thou may'st perceive

Digitized by Google

What Rome containeth to delight thee with,
Know that this city stands upon seven hills
That underprop the groundwork of the same:
Just through the midst runs flowing Tiber's stream,
With winding banks that cut it in two parts;
Over the which four stately bridges lean,
That make safe passage to each part of Rome:
Upon the bridge call'd Ponte Angelo
Erected is a castle passing strong,
Within whose walls such store of ordnance are,
And double cannons fram'd of carvèd brass,
As match the days within one cómplete year;
Besides the gates, and high pyramides,
Which Julius Caesar brought from Africa.

*Faust.* Now, by the kingdoms of infernal rule,
Of Styx, of Acheron, and the fiery lake
Of ever-burning Phlegethon, I swear
That I do long to see the monuments
And situation of bright-splendent Rome:
Come, therefore, let's away.

*Meph.* Nay, Faustus, stay: I know you'd fain see the Pope,
And take some part of holy Peter's feast,
Where thou shalt see a troop of bald-pate friars,
Whose *summum bonum* is in belly-cheer.

*Faust.* Well, I'm content to compass then some sport;
And by their folly make us merriment.
Then charm me, that I
May be invisible, to do what I please,
Unseen of any whilst I stay in Rome.

[MEPHISTOPHILIS *charms him.*

*Meph.* So, Faustus; now
Do what thou wilt, thou shalt not be discern'd.

*Sound a Sonnet. Enter the* POPE *and the* CARDINAL OF LORRAINE *to the banquet, with* Friars *attending.*

*Pope.* My Lord of Lorraine, will't please you draw near?

Digitized by Google

*Faust.* Fall to, and the devil choke you, an you spare!

*Pope.* How now! who 's that which spake?—Friars, look about.

*First Friar.* Here 's nobody, if it like your Holiness.

*Pope.* My lord, here is a dainty dish was sent me from the Bishop of Milan.

*Faust.* I thank you, sir. [*Snatches the dish.*

*Pope.* How now! who 's that which snatched the meat from me? will no man look?—My lord, this dish was sent me from the Cardinal of Florence.

*Faust.* You say true; I 'll ha 't. [*Snatches the dish.*

*Pope.* What, again?—My lord, I'll drink to your grace.

*Faust.* I'll pledge your grace. [*Snatches the cup.*

*C. of Lor.* My lord, it may be some ghost, newly crept out of Purgatory, come to beg a pardon of your Holiness.

*Pope.* It may be so.—Friars, prepare a dirge to lay the fury of this ghost.—Once again, my lord, fall to.

[*The* POPE *crosses himself.*

*Faust.* What, are you crossing of yourself?
Well, use that trick no more, I would advise you.
[*The* POPE *crosses himself again.*
Well, there 's the second time. Aware the third;
I give you fair warning.

[*The* POPE *crosses himself again, and* FAUSTUS *hits him a box of the ear; and they all run away.*

Come on, Mephistophilis; what shall we do?

*Meph.* Nay, I know not: we shall be cursed with bell, book, and candle.

*Faust.* How! bell, book, and candle,—candle, book, and bell,—
Forward and backward, to curse Faustus to hell!
Anon you shall hear a hog grunt, a calf bleat, and an ass bray,
Because it is Saint Peter's holiday.

Digitized by Google

*Re-enter all the* Friars *to sing the Dirge.*

*First Friar.* Come, brethren, let 's about our business with good devotion.

*They sing.*

*Cursed be he that stole away his Holiness' meat from the table!* maledicat Dominus!

*Cursed be he that struck his Holiness a blow on the face!* maledicat Dominus!

*Cursed be he that took Friar Sandelo a blow on the pate!* maledicat Dominus!

*Cursed be he that disturbeth our holy dirge!* maledicat Dominus!

*Cursed be he that took away his Holiness' wine!* maledicat Dominus!

Et omnes Sancti! Amen!

[MEPHISTOPHILIS *and* FAUSTUS *beat the* Friars, *and fling fire-works among them; and so exeunt.*

*Enter* Chorus.

*Chor.* When Faustus had with pleasure ta'en the view
Of rarest things, and royal courts of kings,
He stay'd his course, and so returnèd home;
Where such as bear his absence but with grief,
I mean his friends and near'st companions,
Did gratulate his safety with kind words,
And in their conference of what befell,
Touching his journey through the world and air,
They put forth questions of astrology,
Which Faustus answer'd with such learnèd skill
As they admir'd and wonder'd at his wit.
Now is his fame spread forth in every land:
Amongst the rest the Emperor is one,
Carolus the Fifth, at whose palace now
Faustus is feasted 'mongst his noblemen.
What there he did, in trial of his art,
I leave untold; your eyes shall see['t] perform'd. [*Exit.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE VIII. *Near an inn.*

*Enter* ROBIN *the Ostler, with a book in his hand.*

*Robin.* O, this is admirable! here I ha' stolen one of Doctor Faustus' conjuring-books, and, i'faith, I mean to search some circles for my own use.

*Enter* RALPH, *calling* ROBIN.

*Ralph.* Robin, prithee, come away; there's a gentleman tarries to have his horse, and he would have his things rubbed and made clean: he keeps such a chafing with my mistress about it; and she has sent me to look thee out; prithee, come away.

*Robin.* Keep out, keep out, or else you are blown up, you are dismembered, Ralph: keep out, for I am about a roaring piece of work.

*Ralph.* Come, what doest thou with that same book? thou canst not read?

*Robin.* Yes, my master and mistress shall find that I can read.

*Ralph.* Why, Robin, what book is that?

*Robin.* What book! why, the most intolerable book for conjuring that e'er was invented by any brimstone devil.

*Ralph.* Canst thou conjure with it?

*Robin.* I can do all these things easily with it; first, I can make thee drunk with ippocras at any tavern in Europe for nothing; that's one of my conjuring works.

*Ralph.* Our Master Parson says that 's nothing.

*Robin.* True, Ralph: and more, Ralph, if thou hast any mind to Nan Spit, our kitchenmaid,—

*Ralph.* O, brave, Robin! shall I have Nan Spit? On that condition I'll feed thy devil with horse-bread as long as he lives, of free cost.

*Robin.* No more, sweet Ralph; let 's go and make clean our boots, which lie foul upon our hands, and then to our conjuring in the devil's name. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE IX. *The same.*

*Enter* ROBIN *and* RALPH *with a silver goblet.*

*Robin.* Come, Ralph: did not I tell thee, we were for ever made by this Doctor Faustus' book? *Ecce, signum!* here's a simple purchase for horse-keepers: our horses shall eat no hay as long as this lasts.

*Ralph.* But, Robin, here comes the Vintner.

*Robin.* Hush! I'll gull him supernaturally.

*Enter* Vintner.

Drawer, I hope all is paid; God be with you!—Come, Ralph.

*Vint.* Soft, sir; a word with you. I must yet have a goblet paid from you, ere you go.

*Robin.* I a goblet, Ralph, I a goblet!—I scorn you; and you are but a, etc. I a goblet! search me.

*Vint.* I mean so, sir, with your favour. [*Searches* ROBIN.

*Robin.* How say you now?

*Vint.* I must say somewhat to your fellow.—You, sir!

*Ralph.* Me, sir! me, sir! search your fill. [Vintner *searches him.*] Now, sir, you may be ashamed to burden honest men with a matter of truth.

*Vint.* Well, tone of you hath this goblet about you.

*Ralph.* You lie, drawer, 'tis afore me [*Aside*].—Sirrah you, I'll teach you to impeach honest men;—stand by;—I'll scour you for a goblet;—stand aside you had best, I charge you in the name of Belzebub.—Look to the goblet, Ralph [*Aside to* RALPH].

*Vint.* What mean you, sirrah?

*Robin.* I'll tell you what I mean. [*Reads from a book*] *Sanctobulorum Periphrasticon*—nay, I'll tickle you, Vintner.—Look to the goblet, Ralph [*Aside to* RALPH].—[*Reads*] *Polypragmos Belseborams framanto pacostiphos tostu, Mephistophilis, etc.*

Digitized by Google

*Enter* MEPHISTOPHILIS, *sets squibs at their backs, and then exit. They run about.*

*Vint.* O, *nomine Domine!* what meanest thou, Robin? thou hast no goblet.

*Ralph.* *Peccatum peccatorum!*—Here's thy goblet, good Vintner. [*Gives the goblet to* Vintner, *who exit.*

*Robin.* *Misericordia pro nobis!* what shall I do? Good devil, forgive me now, and I'll never rob thy library more.

*Re-enter* MEPHISTOPHILIS.

*Meph.* Monarch of hell, under whose black survey
Great potentates do kneel with awful fear,
Upon whose altars thousand souls do lie,
How am I vexèd with these villains' charms!
From Constantinople am I hither come,
Only for pleasure of these damnèd slaves.

*Robin.* How, from Constantinople! you have had a great journey: will you take sixpence in your purse to pay for your supper, and be gone?

*Meph.* Well, villains, for your presumption, I transform thee into an ape, and thee into a dog; and so be gone. [*Exit.*

*Robin.* How, into an ape! that's brave: I'll have fine sport with the boys; I'll get nuts and apples enow.

*Ralph.* And I must be a dog.

*Robin.* I' faith, thy head will never be out of the pottage-pot. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE X. *The Emperor's Court at Innsbruck.*

*Enter* EMPEROR, FAUSTUS, *and a* Knight, *with* Attendants, *among whom* MEPHISTOPHILIS.

*Emp.* Master Doctor Faustus, I have heard strange report of thy knowledge in the black art, how that none in my empire nor in the whole world can compare with thee for the rare effects of magic: they say thou hast a familiar spirit, by whom thou canst accomplish what thou list. This, therefore, is my request, that thou let me see some proof

Digitized by Google

of thy skill, that mine eyes may be witnesses to confirm what mine ears have heard reported: and here I swear to thee, by the honour of mine imperial crown, that, whatever thou doest, thou shalt be no ways prejudiced or endamaged.

*Knight.* I' faith, he looks much like a conjurer. [*Aside.*

*Faust.* My gracious sovereign, though I must confess myself far inferior to the report men have published, and nothing answerable to the honour of your imperial majesty, yet, for that love and duty binds me thereunto, I am content to do whatsoever your majesty shall command me.

*Emp.* Then, Doctor Faustus, mark what I shall say.
As I was sometime solitary set
Within my closet, sundry thoughts arose
About the honour of mine ancestors,
How they had won by prowess such exploits,
Got such riches, subdued so many kingdoms,
As we that do succeed, or they that shall
Hereafter possess our throne, shall
(I fear me) ne'er attain to that degree
Of high renown and great authority:
Amongst which kings is Alexander the Great,
Chief spectacle of the world's pre-eminence,
The bright shining of whose glorious acts
Lightens the world with his reflecting beams,
As when I hear but motion made of him,
It grieves my soul I never saw the man:
If, therefore, thou, by cunning of thine art,
Canst raise this man from hollow vaults below,
Where lies entomb'd this famous conqueror,
And bring with him his beauteous paramour,
Both in their right shapes, gesture, and attire
They us'd to wear during their time of life,
Thou shalt both satisfy my just desire,
And give me cause to praise thee whilst I live.

*Faust.* My gracious lord, I am ready to accomplish your request, so far forth as by art and power of my spirit I am able to perform.

Digitized by Google

*Knight.* I' faith, that 's just nothing at all. [*Aside.*

*Faust.* But, if it like your grace, it is not in my ability to present before your eyes the true substantial bodies of those deceased princes, which long since are consumed to dust.

*Knight.* Ay, marry, Master Doctor, now there 's a sign of grace in you, when you will confess the truth. [*Aside.*

*Faust.* But such spirits as can lively resemble Alexander and his paramour shall appear before your grace, in that manner that they both lived in, in their most flourishing estate; which I doubt not shall sufficiently content your imperial majesty.

*Emp.* Go to, Master Doctor; let me see them presently.

*Knight.* Do you hear, Master Doctor? you bring Alexander and his paramour before the Emperor!

*Faust.* How then, sir?

*Knight.* I' faith, that 's as true as Diana turned me to a stag.

*Faust.* No, sir; but, when Actaeon died, he left the horns for you.—Mephistophilis, be gone. [*Exit* MEPHISTOPHILIS.

*Knight.* Nay, an you go to conjuring, I'll be gone. [*Exit.*

*Faust.* I'll meet with you anon for interrupting me so.—Here they are, my gracious lord.

*Re-enter* MEPHISTOPHILIS *with* Spirits *in the shapes of* ALEXANDER *and his* Paramour.

*Emp.* Master Doctor, I heard this lady, while she lived, had a wart or mole in her neck: how shall I know whether it be so or no?

*Faust.* Your highness may boldly go and see.

*Emp.* Sure, these are no spirits, but the true substantial bodies of those two deceased princes. [*Exeunt* Spirits.

*Faust.* Will 't please your highness now to send for the knight that was so pleasant with me here of late?

*Emp.* One of you call him forth. [*Exit* Attendant.



Digitized by Google

*Re-enter the* Knight *with a pair of horns on his head.*

How now, sir knight! Feel on thy head.

*Knight.* Thou damnèd wretch and execrable dog,
Bred in the concave of some monstrous rock,
How dar'st thou thus abuse a gentleman?
Villain, I say, undo what thou hast done!

*Faust.* O, not so fast, sir! there 's no haste: but, good, are you remembered how you crossed me in my conference with the Emperor? I think I have met with you for it.

*Emp.* Good Master Doctor, at my entreaty release him: he hath done penance sufficient.

*Faust.* My gracious lord, not so much for the injury he offered me here in your presence, as to delight you with some mirth, hath Faustus worthily requited this injurious knight; which being all I desire, I am content to release him of his horns:—and, sir knight, hereafter speak well of scholars.—Mephistophilis, transform him straight. [MEPHISTOPHILIS *removes the horns.*]—Now, my good lord, having done my duty, I humbly take my leave.

*Emp.* Farewell, Master Doctor: yet, ere you go,
Expect from me a bounteous reward.

[*Exeunt* EMPEROR, Knight, *and* Attendants.

SCENE XI. *A green; afterwards the house of Faustus.*

*Faust.* Now, Mephistophilis, the restless course
That time doth run with calm and silent foot,
Short'ning my days and thread of vital life,
Calls for the payment of my latest years:
Therefore, sweet Mephistophilis, let us
Make haste to Wittenberg.

*Meph.* What, will you go on horse-back or on foot?

*Faust.* Nay, till I'm past this fair and pleasant green, I'll walk on foot.

*Enter a* Horse-courser.

*Horse-c.* I have been all this day seeking one Master Fustian: mass, see where he is!—God save you, Master Doctor!

Digitized by Google

*Faust.* What, horse-courser! you are well met.

*Horse-c.* Do you hear, sir? I have brought you forty dollars for your horse.

*Faust.* I cannot sell him so. If thou likest him for fifty, take him.

*Horse-c.* Alas, sir, I have no more!—I pray you speak for me.

*Meph.* I pray you, let him have him: he is an honest fellow, and he has a great charge, neither wife nor child.

*Faust.* Well, come, give me your money [Horse-courser *gives* FAUSTUS *the money*]: my boy will deliver him to you. But I must tell you one thing before you have him; ride him not into the water, at any hand.

*Horse-c.* Why, sir, will he not drink of all waters?

*Faust.* O, yes, he will drink of all waters; but ride him not into the water: ride him over hedge or ditch, or where thou wilt, but not into the water.

*Horse-c.* Well, sir.—Now am I made man for ever: I'll not leave my horse for forty: if he had but the quality of hey-ding-ding, hey-ding-ding, I'd make a brave living on him: he has a buttock as slick as an eel [*Aside*].—Well, God b'wi'ye sir: your boy will deliver him me: but, hark ye, sir; if my horse be sick or ill at ease, you'll tell me what it is?

*Faust.* Away, you villain! what, dost think I am a horse-doctor? [*Exit* Horse-courser.

What art thou, Faustus, but a man condemn'd to die?
Thy fatal time doth draw to final end;
Despair doth drive distrust unto my thoughts:
Confound these passions with a quiet sleep:
Tush, Christ did call the thief upon the Cross;
Then rest thee, Faustus, quiet in conceit.

[*Sleeps in his chair.*

*Re-enter* Horse-courser, *all wet, crying.*

*Horse-c.* Alas, alas! Doctor Fustian, quotha? mass, Doctor Lopus was never such a doctor: has given me a



Digitized by Google

purgation, has purged me of forty dollars; I shall never see them more. But yet, like an ass as I was, I would not be ruled by him, for he bade me I should ride him into no water: now I, thinking my horse had had some rare quality that he would not have had me known of, I, like a venturous youth, rid him into the deep pond at the town's end. I was no sooner in the middle of the pond, but my horse vanished away, and I sat upon a bottle of hay, never so near drowning in my life. But I'll seek out my doctor, and have my forty dollars again, or I'll make it the dearest horse!—O, yonder is his snipper-snapper.—Do you hear? you, heypass, where 's your master?

*Meph.* Why, sir, what would you? you cannot speak with him.

*Horse-c.* But I will speak with him.

*Meph.* Why, he 's fast asleep: come some other time.

*Horse-c.* I'll speak with him now, or I'll break his glass-windows about his ears.

*Meph.* I tell thee, he has not slept this eight nights.

*Horse-c.* An he have not slept this eight weeks, I'll speak with him.

*Meph.* See, where he is, fast asleep.

*Horse-c.* Ay, this is he.—God save ye, Master Doctor, Master Doctor, Master Doctor Fustian! forty dollars, forty dollars for a bottle of hay!

*Meph.* Why, thou seest he hears thee not.

*Horse-c.* So-ho, ho! so-ho, ho! [*Holla's in his ear.*] No, will you not wake? I'll make you wake ere I go. [*Pulls* FAUSTUS *by the leg, and pulls it away.*] Alas, I am undone! what shall I do?

*Faust.* O, my leg, my leg!—Help, Mephistophilis! call the officers!—My leg, my leg!

*Meph.* Come, villain, to the constable.

*Horse-c.* O Lord, sir, let me go, and I'll give you forty dollars more!

*Meph.* Where be they?

Digitized by Google

*Horse-c.* I have none about me: come to my ostry, and I'll give them you.

*Meph.* Be gone quickly. [Horse-courser *runs away.*

*Faust.* What, is he gone? farewell he! Faustus has his leg again, and the Horse-courser, I take it, a bottle of hay for his labour: well, this trick shall cost him forty dollars more.

*Enter* WAGNER.

How now, Wagner! what 's the news with thee?

*Wag.* Sir, the Duke of Vanholt doth earnestly entreat your company.

*Faust.* The Duke of Vanholt! an honourable gentleman, to whom I must be no niggard of my cunning.—Come, Mephistophilis, let 's away to him. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE XII. *The court of the Duke of Vanholt.*

*Enter the* DUKE OF VANHOLT, *the* DUCHESS, *and* FAUSTUS.

*Duke.* Believe me, Master Doctor, this merriment hath much pleased me.

*Faust.* My gracious lord, I am glad it contents you so well.—But it may be, madam, you take no delight in this. I have heard that women do long for some dainties or other: what is it, madam? tell me and you shall have it.

*Duchess.* Thanks, good Master Doctor: and, for I see your courteous intent to pleasure me, I will not hide from you the thing my heart desires; and, were it now summer, as it is January and the dead time of the winter, I would desire no better meat than a dish of ripe grapes.

*Faust.* Alas, madam, that 's nothing!—Mephistophilis, be gone. [*Exit* MEPHISTOPHILIS.] Were it a greater thing than this, so it would content you, you should have it.

*Re-enter* MEPHISTOPHILIS *with grapes.*

Here they be, madam: will 't please you taste on them?

Digitized by Google

*Duke.* Believe me, Master Doctor, this makes me wonder above the rest, that being in the dead time of winter and in the month of January, how you should come by these grapes.

*Faust.* If it like your grace, the year is divided into two circles over the whole world, that, when it is here winter with us, in the contrary circle it is summer with them, as in India, Saba, and farther countries in the east; and by means of a swift spirit that I have, I had them brought hither, as ye see.—How do you like them, madam? be they good?

*Duchess.* Believe me, Master Doctor, they be the best grapes that e'er I tasted in my life before.

*Faust.* I am glad they content you so, madam.

*Duke.* Come, madam, let us in, where you must well reward this learned man for the great kindness he hath shewed to you.

*Duchess.* And so I will, my lord; and, whilst I live, rest beholding for this courtesy.

*Faust.* I humbly thank your grace.

*Duke.* Come, Master Doctor, follow us, and receive your reward. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE XIII. *A room in the house of Faustus.*

*Enter* WAGNER.

*Wag.* I think my master means to die shortly,
For he hath given to me all his goods:
And yet, methinketh, if that death were near,
He would not banquet, and carouse, and swill
Amongst the students, as even now he doth,
Who are at supper with such belly-cheer
As Wagner ne'er beheld in all his life.
See, where they come! belike the feast is ended.

*Enter* FAUSTUS *with two or three* Scholars, *and* MEPHISTOPHILIS.

*First Schol.* Master Doctor Faustus, since our conference.

Digitized by Google

about fair ladies, which was the beautiful'st in all the world, we have determined with ourselves that Helen of Greece was the admirablest lady that ever lived: therefore, Master Doctor, if you will do us that favour, as to let us see that peerless dame of Greece, whom all the world admires for majesty, we should think ourselves much beholding unto you.

*Faust.* Gentlemen,
For that I know your friendship is unfeign'd,
And Faustus' custom is not to deny
The just requests of those that wish him well,
You shall behold that peerless dame of Greece,
No otherways for pomp and majesty
Than when Sir Paris cross'd the seas with her,
And brought the spoils to rich Dardania.
Be silent, then, for danger is in words.

[*Music sounds, and* HELEN *passeth over the stage.*

*Sec. Schol.* Too simple is my wit to tell her praise,
Whom all the world admires for majesty.

*Third Schol.* No marvel though the angry Greeks pursu'd
With ten years' war the rape of such a queen,
Whose heavenly beauty passeth all compare.

*First Schol.* Since we have seen the pride of Nature's works,
And only paragon of excellence,
Let us depart; and for this glorious deed
Happy and blest be Faustus evermore!

*Faust.* Gentlemen, farewell: the same I wish to you.

[*Exeunt* Scholars and Wagner.

*Enter an* Old Man.

*Old Man.* Ah, Doctor Faustus, that I might prevail
To guide thy steps unto the way of life,
By which sweet path thou may'st attain the goal
That shall conduct thee to celestial rest!
Break heart, drop blood, and mingle it with tears,
Tears falling from repentant heaviness
Of thy most vile and loathsome filthiness,

Digitized by Google

The stench whereof corrupts the inward soul
With such flagitious crimes of heinous sins
As no commiseration may expel,
But mercy, Faustus, of thy Saviour sweet,
Whose blood alone must wash away thy guilt.

*Faust.* Where art thou, Faustus? wretch, what hast thou done?
Damn'd art thou, Faustus, damn'd; despair and die!
Hell calls for right, and with a roaring voice
Says, 'Faustus, come; thine hour is almost come;'
And Faustus now will come to do thee right.

[MEPHISTOPHILIS *gives him a dagger.*

*Old Man.* Ah, stay, good Faustus, stay thy desperate steps!
I see an angel hovers o'er thy head,
And, with a vial full of precious grace,
Offers to pour the same into thy soul:
Then call for mercy, and avoid despair.

*Faust.* Ah, my sweet friend, I feel
Thy words to comfort my distressèd soul!
Leave me a while to ponder on my sins.

*Old Man.* I go, sweet Faustus; but with heavy cheer,
Fearing the ruin of thy hopeless soul. [*Exit.*

*Faust.* Accursèd Faustus, where is mercy now?
I do repent; and yet I do despair:
Hell strives with grace for conquest in my breast:
What shall I do to shun the snares of death?

*Meph.* Thou traitor, Faustus, I arrest thy soul
For disobedience to my sovereign lord:
Revolt, or I'll in piece-meal tear thy flesh.

*Faust.* Sweet Mephistophilis, entreat thy lord
To pardon my unjust presumption,
And with my blood again I will confirm
My former vow I made to Lucifer.

*Meph.* Do it, then, quickly, with unfeignèd heart,
Lest greater danger do attend thy drift.

[FAUSTUS *stabs his arm, and writes on a paper with his blood.*

Digitized by Google

*Faust.* Torment, sweet friend, that base and crooked age,
That durst dissuade me from thy Lucifer,
With greatest torments that our hell affords.

*Meph.* His faith is great; I cannot touch his soul:
But what I may afflict his body with
I will attempt, which is but little worth.

*Faust.* One thing, good servant, let me crave of thee,
To glut the longing of my heart's desire,—
That I might have unto my paramour
That heavenly Helen which I saw of late,
Whose sweet embracings may extinguish clean
These thoughts that do dissuade me from my vow,
And keep mine oath I made to Lucifer.

*Meph.* Faustus, this, or what else thou shalt desire,
Shall be perform'd in twinkling of an eye.

*Re-enter* HELEN.

*Faust.* Was this the face that launch'd a thousand ships,
And burnt the topless towers of Ilium?—
Sweet Helen, make me immortal with a kiss.— [*Kisses her.*
Her lips suck forth my soul: see where it flees!—
Come, Helen, come, give me my soul again.
Here will I dwell, for heaven is in these lips,
And all is dross that is not Helena.
I will be Paris, and for love of thee,
Instead of Troy, shall Wittenberg be sack'd;
And I will combat with weak Menelaus,
And wear thy colours on my plumèd crest;
Yes, I will wound Achilles in the heel,
And then return to Helen for a kiss.
O, thou art fairer than the evening air
Clad in the beauty of a thousand stars;
Brighter art thou than flaming Jupiter
When he appear'd to hapless Semele;
More lovely than the monarch of the sky
In wanton Arethusa's azur'd arms;
And none but thou shalt be my paramour! [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

*Enter the* Old Man.

*Old Man.* Accursèd Faustus, miserable man,
That from thy soul exclud'st the grace of heaven,
And fly'st the throne of his tribunal-seat!

*Enter* Devils.

Satan begins to sift me with his pride:
As in this furnace God shall try my faith,
My faith, vile hell, shall triumph over thee.
Ambitious fiends, see how the heavens smile
At your repulse, and laugh your state to scorn!
Hence, hell! for hence I fly unto my God.

[*Exeunt,—on one side* Devils, *on the other* Old Man.

## SCENE XIV. *The same.*

*Enter* FAUSTUS, *with* Scholars.

*Faust.* Ah, gentlemen!

*First Schol.* What ails Faustus?

*Faust.* Ah, my sweet chamber-fellow, had I lived with thee, then had I lived still! but now I die eternally. Look, comes he not? comes he not?

*Sec. Schol.* What means Faustus?

*Third Schol.* Belike he is grown into some sickness by being over-solitary.

*First Schol.* If it be so, we'll have physicians to cure him.—'Tis but a surfeit; never fear, man.

*Faust.* A surfeit of deadly sin, that hath damned both body and soul.

*Sec. Schol.* Yet, Faustus, look up to heaven; remember God's mercies are infinite.

*Faust.* But Faustus' offence can ne'er be pardoned: the serpent that tempted Eve may be saved, but not Faustus. Ah, gentlemen, hear me with patience, and tremble not at my speeches! Though my heart pants and quivers to remember that I have been a student here these thirty years, O, would

Digitized by Google

I had never seen Wittenberg, never read book! and what wonders I have done, all Germany can witness, yea, all the world; for which Faustus hath lost both Germany and the world, yea, heaven itself, heaven, the seat of God, the throne of the blessed, the kingdom of joy; and must remain in hell for ever,—hell, ah, hell, for ever! Sweet friends, what shall become of Faustus, being in hell for ever?

*Third Schol.* Yet, Faustus, call on God.

*Faust.* On God, whom Faustus hath abjured! on God, whom Faustus hath blasphemed! Ah, my God, I would weep! but the devil draws in my tears. Gush forth blood, instead of tears! yea, life and soul—O, he stays my tongue! I would lift up my hands; but see, they hold them, they hold them!

*All.* Who, Faustus?

*Faust.* Lucifer and Mephistophilis. Ah, gentlemen, I gave them my soul for my cunning!

*All.* God forbid!

*Faust.* God forbade it, indeed; but Faustus hath done it: for vain pleasure of twenty-four years hath Faustus lost eternal joy and felicity. I writ them a bill with mine own blood: the date is expired; the time will come, and he will fetch me.

*First Schol.* Why did not Faustus tell us of this before, that divines might have prayed for thee?

*Faust.* Oft have I thought to have done so; but the devil threatened to tear me in pieces, if I named God, to fetch both body and soul, if I once gave ear to divinity: and now 'tis too late. Gentlemen, away, lest you perish with me.

*Sec. Schol.* O, what shall we do to save Faustus?

*Faust.* Talk not of me, but save yourselves, and depart.

*Third Schol.* God will strengthen me; I will stay with Faustus.

*First Schol.* Tempt not God, sweet friend; but let us into the next room, and there pray for him.

Digitized by Google

*Faust.* Ay, pray for me, pray for me; and what noise soever ye hear, come not unto me, for nothing can rescue me.

*Sec. Schol.* Pray thou, and we will pray that God may have mercy upon thee.

*Faust.* Gentlemen, farewell: if I live till morning, I'll visit you; if not, Faustus is gone to hell.

*All.* Faustus, farewell.

[*Exeunt* Scholars.—*The clock strikes eleven.*

*Faust.* Ah, Faustus,
Now hast thou but one bare hour to live,
And then thou must be damn'd perpetually!
Stand still, you ever-moving spheres of heaven,
That time may cease, and midnight never come;
Fair Nature's eye, rise, rise again, and make
Perpetual day; or let this hour be but
A year, a month, a week, a natural day,
That Faustus may repent and save his soul!
*O lente, lente currite, noctis equi!*
The stars move still, time runs, the clock will strike,
The devil will come, and Faustus must be damn'd.
O, I'll leap up to my God!—Who pulls me down?—
See, see, where Christ's blood streams in the firmament!
One drop would save my soul, half a drop: ah, my Christ!—
Ah, rend not my heart for naming of my Christ!
Yet will I call on him: O, spare me, Lucifer!—
Where is it now? 'tis gone: and see, where God
Stretcheth out his arm, and bends his ireful brows!
Mountains and hills, come, come, and fall on me,
And hide me from the heavy wrath of God!
No, no!
Then will I headlong run into the earth:
Earth, gape! O, no, it will not harbour me!
You stars that reign'd at my nativity,
Whose influence hath allotted death and hell,
Now draw up Faustus, like a foggy mist,
Into the entrails of yon lab'ring clouds,
That, when you vomit forth into the air,

Digitized by Google

My limbs may issue from your smoky mouths,
So that my soul may but ascend to heaven!
[*The clock strikes the half-hour.*
Ah, half the hour is past! 'twill all be past anon.
O God,
If thou wilt not have mercy on my soul,
Yet for Christ's sake, whose blood hath ransom'd me,
Impose some end to my incessant pain;
Let Faustus live in hell a thousand years,
A hundred thousand, and at last be sav'd!
O, no end is limited to damnèd souls!
Why wert thou not a creature wanting soul?
Or why is this immortal that thou hast?
Ah, Pythagoras' metempsychosis, were that true,
This soul should fly from me, and I be chang'd
Unto some brutish beast! all beasts are happy,
For, when they die,
Their souls are soon dissolv'd in elements;
But mine must live still to be plagu'd in hell.
Curs'd be the parents that engender'd me!
No, Faustus, curse thyself, curse Lucifer
That hath depriv'd thee of the joys of heaven.
[*The clock strikes twelve.*
O, it strikes, it strikes! Now, body, turn to air,
Or Lucifer will bear thee quick to hell!
[*Thunder and lightning.*
O soul, be chang'd into little water-drops,
And fall into the ocean, ne'er be found!

*Enter* Devils.

My God, my God, look not so fierce on me!
Adders and serpents, let me breathe a while!
Ugly hell, gape not! come not, Lucifer!
I'll burn my books!—Ah, Mephistophilis!
[*Exeunt* Devils *with* FAUSTUS.

Digitized by Google

*Enter* Chorus.

*Chor.* Cut is the branch that might have grown full straight,
And burnèd is Apollo's laurel-bough,
That sometime grew within this learnèd man.
Faustus is gone: regard his hellish fall,
Whose fiendful fortune may exhort the wise,
Only to wonder at unlawful things,
Whose deepness doth entice such forward wits
To practise more than heavenly power permits. [*Exit.*

*Terminat hora diem; terminat auctor opus.*

Digitized by Google

# THE HONOURABLE HISTORY OF

# FRIAR BACON AND FRIAR BUNGAY.

DRAMATIS PERSONÆ.

KING HENRY THE THIRD.
EDWARD, Prince of Wales, his son.
EMPEROR OF GERMANY.
KING OF CASTILE.
LACY, Earl of Lincoln.
WARREN, Earl of Sussex.
ERMSBY, a gentleman.
RALPH SIMNELL, the King's Fool.
FRIAR BACON.
MILES, Friar Bacon's poor scholar.
FRIAR BUNGAY.
JAQUES VANDERMAST.
BURDEN, MASON, CLEMENT, } Doctors of Oxford.
LAMBERT, SERLSBY, } gentlemen.

Two Scholars, their sons.
Keeper.
THOMAS, RICHARD, } clowns.
Constable.
A Post.

Lords, Clowns, &c.

ELINOR, daughter to the King of Castile.
MARGARET, the Keeper's daughter, the Fair Maid of Fressingfield.
JOAN, a country wench.
Hostess of the Bell at Henley.

A DEVIL.
Spirit in the shape of HERCULES.

## SCENE I. *Near Framlingham.*

*Enter* PRINCE EDWARD *malcontented, with* LACY, WARREN, ERMSBY, *and* RALPH SIMNELL.

*Lacy.* Why looks my lord like to a troubled sky
When heaven's bright shine is shadow'd with a fog?
Alate we ran the deer, and through the lawnds
Stripp'd with our nags the lofty frolic bucks
That scudded 'fore the teasers like the wind:
Ne'er was the deer of merry Fressingfield
So lustily pull'd down by jolly mates,
Nor shared the farmers such fat venison,
So frankly dealt, this hundred years before;
Nor have
I seen my lord more frolic in the chase,
And now chang'd to a melancholy dump.

Digitized by Google

*War.* After the prince got to the Keeper's lodge,
And had been jocund in the house awhile,
Tossing off ale and milk in country cans,
Whether it was the country's sweet content,
Or else the bonny damsel fill'd us drink,
That seem'd so stately in her stammel red,
Or that a qualm did cross his stomach then,
But straight he fell into his passions.

*Erms.* Sirrah Ralph, what say you to your master,
Shall he thus all amort live malcontent?

*Ralph.* Hearest thou, Ned?—Nay, look if he will speak to me!

*P. Edw.* What say'st thou to me, fool?

*Ralph.* I prithee, tell me, Ned, art thou in love with the Keeper's daughter?

*P. Edw.* How if I be, what then?

*Ralph.* Why, then, sirrah, I'll teach thee how to deceive Love.

*P. Edw.* How, Ralph?

*Ralph.* Marry, Sirrah Ned, thou shalt put on my cap and my coat and my dagger, and I will put on thy clothes and thy sword: and so thou shalt be my fool.

*P. Edw.* And what of this?

*Ralph.* Why, so thou shalt beguile Love; for Love is such a proud scab, that he will never meddle with fools nor children. Is not Ralph's counsel good, Ned?

*P. Edw.* Tell me, Ned Lacy, didst thou mark the maid,
How lovely in her country-weeds she look'd?
A bonnier wench all Suffolk cannot yield:—
All Suffolk! nay, all England holds none such.

*Ralph.* Sirrah Will Ermsby, Ned is deceived.

*Erms.* Why, Ralph?

*Ralph.* He says all England hath no such, and I say, and I'll stand to it, there is one better in Warwickshire.

*War.* How provest thou that, Ralph?

*Ralph.* Why, is not the abbot a learned man, and hath

Digitized by Google

read many books, and thinkest thou he hath not more learning than thou to choose a bonny wench? yes, warrant I thee, by his whole grammar.

*Erms.* A good reason, Ralph.

*P. Edw.* I tell thee, Lacy, that her sparkling eyes
Do lighten forth sweet love's alluring fire;
And in her tresses she doth fold the looks
Of such as gaze upon her golden hair;
Her bashful white, mix'd with the morning's red,
Luna doth boast upon her lovely cheeks;
Her front is beauty's table, where she paints
The glories of her gorgeous excellence;
Her teeth are shelves of precious margarites,
Richly enclos'd with ruddy coral cleeves.
Tush, Lacy, she is beauty's over-match,
If thou survey'st her curious imagery.

*Lacy.* I grant, my lord, the damsel is as fair
As simple Suffolk's homely towns can yield;
But in the court be quainter dames than she,
Whose faces are enrich'd with honour's taint,
Whose beauties stand upon the stage of fame,
And vaunt their trophies in the courts of love.

*P. Edw.* Ah, Ned, but hadst thou watch'd her as myself,
And seen the secret beauties of the maid,
Their courtly coyness were but foolery.

*Erms.* Why, how watch'd you her, my lord?

*P. Edw.* Whenas she swept like Venus through the house,
And in her shape fast folded up my thoughts,
Into the milk-house went I with the maid,
And there amongst the cream-bowls she did shine
As Pallas 'mongst her princely huswifery:
She turn'd her smock over her lily arms,
And div'd them into milk to run her cheese;
But, whiter than the milk, her crystal skin,
Checkèd with lines of azure, made her blush
That art or nature durst bring for compare.
Ermsby,



Digitized by Google

If thou hadst seen, as I did note it well,
How beauty play'd the huswife, how this girl,
Like Lucrece, laid her fingers to the work,
Thou wouldst, with Tarquin, hazard Rome and all
To win the lovely maid of Fressingfield.

*Ralph.* Sirrah Ned, wouldst fain have her?

*P. Edw.* Ay, Ralph.

*Ralph.* Why, Ned, I have laid the plot in my head; thou shalt have her already.

*P. Edw.* I'll give thee a new coat, an learn me that.

*Ralph.* Why, sirrah Ned, we'll ride to Oxford to Friar Bacon: O, he is a brave scholar, sirrah; they say he is a brave necromancer, that he can make women of devils, and he can juggle cats into costermongers.

*P. Edw.* And how then, Ralph?

*Ralph.* Marry, sirrah, thou shalt go to him: and because thy father Harry shall not miss thee, he shall turn me into thee; and I'll to the court, and I'll prince it out; and he shall make thee either a silken purse full of gold, or else a fine wrought smock.

*P. Edw.* But how shall I have the maid?

*Ralph.* Marry, sirrah, if thou be'st a silken purse full of gold, then on Sundays she 'll hang thee by her side, and you must not say a word. Now, sir, when she comes into a great prease of people, for fear of the cutpurse, on a sudden she 'll swap thee into her plackerd; then, sirrah, being there, you may plead for yourself.

*Erms.* Excellent policy!

*P. Edw.* But how if I be a wrought smock?

*Ralph.* Then she'll put thee into her chest and lay thee into lavender, and upon some good day she 'll put thee on.

*Lacy.* Wonderfully wisely counselled, Ralph.

*P. Edw.* Ralph shall have a new coat.

*Ralph.* God thank you when I have it on my back, Ned.

*P. Edw.* Lacy, the fool hath laid a perfect plot;
For why our country Marg'ret is so coy,

Digitized by Google

And stands so much upon her honest points,
That marriage or no market with the maid.
Ermsby, it must be necromantic spells
And charms of art that must enchain her love,
Or else shall Edward never win the girl.
Therefore, my wags, we'll horse us in the morn,
And post to Oxford to this jolly friar:
Bacon shall by his magic do this deed.

*War.* Content, my lord; and that's a speedy way
To wean these headstrong puppies from the teat.

*P. Edw.* I am unknown, not taken for the prince;
They only deem us frolic courtiers,
That revel thus among our liege's game:
Therefore I have devis'd a policy.
Lacy, thou know'st next Friday is Saint James',
And then the country flocks to Harleston fair:
Then will the Keeper's daughter frolic there,
And over-shine the troop of all the maids
That come to see and to be seen that day.
Haunt thee disguis'd among the country-swains,
Feign thou'rt a farmer's son, not far from thence,
Espy her loves, and who she liketh best;
Cote him, and court her to control the clown;
Say that the courtier 'tirèd all in green,
That help'd her handsomely to run her cheese,
And fill'd her father's lodge with venison,
Commends him, and sends fairings to herself.
Buy something worthy of her parentage,
Not worth her beauty; for, Lacy, then the fair
Affords no jewel fitting for the maid:
And when thou talk'st of me, note if she blush:
O, then she loves; but if her cheeks wax pale,
Disdain it is. Lacy, send how she fares,
And spare no time nor cost to win her loves.

*Lacy.* I will, my lord, so execute this charge
As if that Lacy were in love with her.

*P. Edw.* Send letters speedily to Oxford of the news.



Digitized by Google

*Ralph.* And, Sirrah Lacy, buy me a thousand thousand million of fine bells.

*Lacy.* What wilt thou do with them, Ralph?

*Ralph.* Marry, every time that Ned sighs for the Keeper's daughter, I'll tie a bell about him: and so within three or four days I will send word to his father Harry, that his son, and my master Ned, is become Love's morris-dance[r].

*P. Edw.* Well, Lacy, look with care unto thy charge,
And I will haste to Oxford to the friar,
That he by art and thou by secret gifts
Mayst make me lord of merry Fressingfield.

*Lacy.* God send your honour your heart's desire.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE II. *Friar Bacon's cell at Brasenose.*

*Enter* FRIAR BACON, *and* MILES *with books under his arm;* BURDEN, MASON, *and* CLEMENT.

*Bacon.* Miles, where are you?

*Miles. Hic sum, doctissime et reverendissime doctor.*

*Bacon. Attulisti nostros libros meos de necromantia?*

*Miles. Ecce quam bonum et quam jucundum habitare libros in unum!*

*Bacon.* Now, masters of our academic state,
That rule in Oxford, viceroys in your place,
Whose heads contain maps of the liberal arts,
Spending your time in depths of learnèd skill,
Why flock you thus to Bacon's secret cell,
A friar newly stall'd in Brazen-nose?
Say what's your mind, that I may make reply.

*Burd.* Bacon, we hear that long we have suspect,
That thou art read in magic's mystery;
In pyromancy, to divine by flames:
To tell, by hydromancy, ebbs and tides;
By aeromancy to discover doubts,
To plain out questions, as Apollo did.

*Bacon.* Well, Master Burden, what of all this?

Digitized by Google

*Miles.* Marry, sir, he doth but fulfil, by rehearsing of these names, the fable of the Fox and the Grapes: that which is above us pertains nothing to us.

*Burd.* I tell thee, Bacon, Oxford makes report,
Nay, England, and the court of Henry says,
Thou'rt making of a brazen head by art,
Which shall unfold strange doubts and aphorisms,
And read a lecture in philosophy;
And, by the help of devils and ghastly fiends,
Thou mean'st, ere many years or days be past,
To compass England with a wall of brass.

*Bacon.* And what of this?

*Miles.* What of this, master! why, he doth speak mystically; for he knows, if your skill fail to make a brazen head, yet Mother Waters' strong ale will fit his turn to make him have a copper nose.

*Clem.* Bacon, we come not grieving at thy skill,
But joying that our académy yields
A man suppos'd the wonder of the world;
For if thy cunning work these miracles,
England and Europe shall admire thy fame,
And Oxford shall in characters of brass,
And statues, such as were built up in Rome,
Etérnize Friar Bacon for his art.

*Mason.* Then, gentle friar, tell us thy intent.

*Bacon.* Seeing you come as friends unto the friar,
Resolve you, doctors, Bacon can by books
Make storming Boreas thunder from his cave,
And dim fair Luna to a dark eclipse.
The great arch-ruler, potentate of hell,
Trembles when Bacon bids him, or his fiends,
Bow to the force of his pentageron.
What art can work, the frolic friar knows;
And therefore will I turn my magic books,
And strain out necromancy to the deep.
I have contriv'd and fram'd a head of brass
(I made Belcephon hammer out the stuff),

Digitized by Google

And that by art shall read philosophy:
And I will strengthen England by my skill,
That if ten Cæsars liv'd and reign'd in Rome,
With all the legions Europe doth contain,
They should not touch a grass of English ground:
The work that Ninus rear'd at Babylon,
The brazen walls fram'd by Semiramis,
Carv'd out like to the portal of the sun,
Shall not be such as rings the English strand
From Dover to the market-place of Rye.

*Burd.* Is this possible?

*Miles.* I'll bring ye two or three witnesses.

*Burd.* What be those?

*Miles.* Marry, sir, three or four as honest devils and good companions as any be in hell.

*Mason.* No doubt but magic may do much in this;
For he that reads but mathematic rules
Shall find conclusions that avail to work
Wonders that pass the common sense of men.

*Burd.* But Bacon roves a bow beyond his reach,
And tells of more than magic can perform,
Thinking to get a fame by fooleries.
Have I not pass'd as far in state of schools,
And read of many secrets? yet to think
That heads of brass can utter any voice,
Or more, to tell of deep philosophy,
This is a fable Æsop had forgot.

*Bacon.* Burden, thou wrong'st me in detracting thus;
Bacon loves not to stuff himself with lies.
But tell me 'fore these doctors, if thou dare,
Of certain questions I shall move to thee.

*Burd.* I will: ask what thou can.

*Miles.* Marry, sir, he'll straight be on your pick-pack, to know whether the feminine or the masculine gender be most worthy.

*Bacon.* Were you not yesterday, Master Burden, at Henley upon the Thames?

Digitized by Google

*Burd.* I was: what then?

*Bacon.* What book studied you thereon all night?

*Burd.* I! none at all; I read not there a line.

*Bacon.* Then, doctors, Friar Bacon's art knows naught.

*Clem.* What say you to this, Master Burden? doth he not touch you.

*Burd.* I pass not of his frivolous speeches.

*Miles.* Nay, Master Burden, my master, ere he hath done with you, will turn you from a doctor to a dunce, and shake you so small, that he will leave no more learning in you than is in Balaam's ass.

*Bacon.* Masters, for that learn'd Burden's skill is deep,
And sore he doubts of Bacon's cabalism.
I'll show you why he haunts to Henley oft:
Not, doctors, for to taste the fragrant air,
But there to spend the night in alchemy,
To multiply with secret spells of art;
Thus private steals he learning from us all.
To prove my sayings true, I'll show you straight
The book he keeps at Henley for himself.

*Miles.* Nay, now my master goes to conjuration, take heed.

*Bacon.* Masters,
Stand still, fear not, I'll show you but his book. [*Conjures. Per omnes deos infernales, Belcephon!*

*Enter* Hostess *with a shoulder of mutton on a spit, and a* Devil.

*Miles.* O, master, cease your conjuration, or you spoil all; for here's a she-devil come with a shoulder of mutton on a spit: you have marred the devil's supper; but no doubt he thinks our college fare is slender, and so hath sent you his cook with a shoulder of mutton, to make it exceed.

*Hostess.* O, where am I, or what's become of me?

*Bacon.* What art thou?

Digitized by Google

*Hostess.* Hostess at Henley, mistress of the Bell.

*Bacon.* How cam'st thou here?

*Hostess.* As I was in the kitchen 'mongst the maids,
Spitting the meat 'gainst supper for my guess,
A motion mov'd me to look forth of door:
No sooner had I pried into the yard,
But straight a whirlwind hoisted me from thence,
And mounted me aloft unto the clouds.
As in a trance I thought nor fearèd naught,
Nor know I where or whither I was ta'en,
Nor where I am nor what these persons be.

*Bacon.* No? know you not Master Burden?

*Hostess.* O yes, good sir, he is my daily guest.—
What, Master Burden! 'twas but yesternight
That you and I at Henley play'd at cards.

*Burd.* I know not what we did.—A plague of all conjuring friars!

*Clem.* Now, jolly friar, tell us, is this the book
That Burden is so careful to look on?

*Bacon.* It is.—But, Burden, tell me now,
Think'st thou that Bacon's necromantic skill
Cannot perform his head and wall of brass,
When he can fetch thine hostess in such post?

*Miles.* I'll warrant you, master, if Master Burden could conjure as well as you, he would have his book every night from Henley to study on at Oxford.

*Mason.* Burden,
What, are you mated by this frolic friar?—
Look how he droops; his guilty conscience
Drives him to 'bash, and makes his hostess blush.

*Bacon.* Well, mistress, for I will not have you miss'd,
You shall to Henley to cheer up your guests
'Fore supper 'gin.—Burden, bid her adieu;
Say farewell to your hostess 'fore she goes.—
Sirrah, away, and set her safe at home.

*Hostess.* Master Burden, when shall we see you at Henley?

Digitized by Google

*Burd.* The devil take thee and Henley too.
[*Exeunt* Hostess *and* Devil.

*Miles.* Master, shall I make a good motion?

*Bacon* What's that?

*Miles.* Marry, sir, now that my hostess is gone to provide supper, conjure up another spirit, and send Doctor Burden flying after.

*Bacon.* Thus, rulers of our academic state,
You have seen the friar frame his art by proof;
And as the college calléd Brazen-nose
Is under him, and he the Master there,
So surely shall this head of brass be fram'd,
And yield forth strange and uncouth aphorisms;
And hell and Hecate shall fail the friar,
But I will circle England round with brass.

*Miles.* So be it *et nunc et semper*; amen. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE III. *Harleston Fair.*

*Enter* MARGARET *and* JOAN; THOMAS, RICHARD, *and other* Clowns; *and* LACY *disguised in country apparel.*

*Thom.* By my troth, Margaret, if this weather hold, we shall have hay good cheap, and butter and cheese at Harleston will bear no price.

*Mar.* Thomas, maids when they come to see the fair
Count not to make a cope for dearth of hay:
When we have turn'd our butter to the salt,
And set our cheese safely upon the racks,
Then let our fathers prize it as they please.
We country sluts of merry Fressingfield
Come to buy needless naughts to make us fine,
And look that young men should be frank this day,
And court us with such fairings as they can.
Phoebus is blithe, and frolic looks from heaven,
As when he courted lovely Semele,
Swearing the pedlers shall have empty packs,
If that fair weather may make chapmen buy.

Digitized by Google

*Lacy.* But, lovely Peggy, Semele is dead,
And therefore Phoebus from his palace pries,
And, seeing such a sweet and seemly saint,
Shows all his glories for to court yourself.

*Mar.* This is a fairing, gentle sir, indeed,
To soothe me up with such smooth flattery;
But learn of me, your scoff's too broad before.—
Well, Joan, our duties must abide their jests;
We serve the turn in jolly Fressingfield.

*Joan.* Marg'ret,
A farmer's daughter for a farmer's son:
I warrant you, the meanest of us both
Shall have a mate to lead us from the church.
[LACY *whispers* MARGARET *in the ear.*
But, Thomas, what's the news? what, in a dump?
Give me your hand, we are near a pedler's shop;
Out with your purse, we must have fairings now.

*Thom.* Faith, Joan, and shall: I'll bestow a fairing on you, and then we will to the tavern, and snap off a pint of wine or two.

*Mar.* Whence are you, sir? of Suffolk? for your terms
Are finer than the common sort of men.

*Lacy.* Faith, lovely girl, I am of Beccles by,
Your neighbour, not above six miles from hence,
A farmer's son, that never was so quaint
But that he could do courtesy to such dames.
But trust me, Marg'ret, I am sent in charge
From him that revell'd in your father's house,
And fill'd his lodge with cheer and venison,
'Tirèd in green: he sent you this rich purse,
His token that he help'd you run your cheese,
And in the milkhouse chatted with yourself.

*Mar.* To me?

*Lacy.* You forget yourself:
Women are often weak in memory.

*Mar.* O, pardon, sir, I call to mind the man:
'Twere little manners to refuse his gift,

Digitized by Google

And yet I hope he sends it not for love;
For we have little leisure to debate of that.

*Joan.* What, Marg'ret! blush not: maids must have their loves.

*Thom.* Nay, by the mass, she looks pale as if she were angry.

*Rich.* Sirrah, are you of Beccles? I pray, how doth Goodman Cob? my father bought a horse of him.—I'll tell you, Margaret, 'a were good to be a gentleman's jade, for of all things the foul hilding could not abide a dung-cart.

*Mar.* [*aside.*] How different is this farmer from the rest
That erst as yet hath pleas'd my wandering sight!
His words are witty, quickened with a smile,
His courtesy gentle, smelling of the court;
Facile and debonair in all his deeds;
Proportion'd as was Paris, when, in grey,
He courted Œnon in the vale by Troy.
Great lords have come and pleaded for my love:
Who but the Keeper's lass of Fressingfield?
And yet methinks this farmer's jolly son
Passeth the proudest that hath pleas'd mine eye.
But, Peg, disclose not that thou art in love,
And show as yet no sign of love to him,
Although thou well wouldst wish him for thy love;
Keep that to thee till time doth serve thy turn,
To show the grief wherein thy heart doth burn.—
Come, Joan and Thomas, shall we to the fair?—
You, Beccles man, will not forsake us now?

*Lacy.* Not whilst I may have such quaint girls as you.

*Mar.* Well, if you chance to come by Fressingfield,
Make but a step into the Keeper's lodge,
And such poor fare as woodmen can afford,
Butter and cheese, cream and fat venison,
You shall have store, and welcome therewithal.

*Lacy.* Gramercies, Peggy; look for me ere long.

[*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE IV. *The Court at Hampton-House.*

*Enter* KING HENRY THE THIRD, *the* EMPEROR, *the* KING OF CASTILE, ELINOR, *and* VANDERMAST.

*K. Hen.* Great men of Europe, monarchs of the west,
Ring'd with the walls of old Oceanus,
Whose lofty surge is like the battlements
That compass'd high-built Babel in with towers,
Welcome, my lords, welcome, brave western kings,
To England's shore, whose promontory-cleeves
Show Albion is another little world;
Welcome says English Henry to you all;
Chiefly unto the lovely Elinor,
Who dar'd for Edward's sake cut through the seas,
And venture as Agenor's damsel through the deep,
To get the love of Henry's wanton son.

*K. of. Cast.* England's rich monarch, brave Plantagenet.
The Pyren Mounts swelling above the clouds,
That ward the wealthy Castile in with walls,
Could not detain the beauteous Elinor;
But hearing of the fame of Edward's youth,
She dar'd to brook Neptunus' haughty pride,
And bide the brunt of froward Æolus:
Then may fair England welcome her the more.

*Elin.* After that English Henry by his lords
Had sent Prince Edward's lovely counterfeit,
A present to the Castile Elinor,
The comely portrait of so brave a man,
The virtuous fame discoursèd of his deeds,
Edward's courageous resolution,
Done at the Holy Land 'fore Damas' walls,
Led both mine eye and thoughts in equal links,
To like so of the English monarch's son,
That I attempted perils for his sake.

*Emp.* Where is the prince, my lord?

*K. Hen.* He posted down, not long since, from the court,

Digitized by Google

To Suffolk side, to merry Framlingham,
To sport himself amongst my fallow deer:
From thence, by packets sent to Hampton-house,
We hear the prince is ridden, with his lords,
To Oxford, in the académy there
To hear dispute amongst the learnèd men.
But we will send forth letters for my son,
To will him come from Oxford to the court.

*Emp.* Nay, rather, Henry, let us, as we be,
Ride for to visit Oxford with our train.
Fain would I see your universities,
And what learn'd men your académy yields.
From Hapsburg have I brought a learnèd clerk
To hold dispute with English orators:
This doctor, surnam'd Jaques Vandermast,
A German born, pass'd into Padua,
To Florence and to fair Bologna,
To Paris, Rheims, and stately Orleans,
And, talking there with men of art, put down
The chiefest of them all in aphorisms,
In magic, and the mathematic rules:
Now let us, Henry, try him in your schools.

*K. Hen.* He shall, my lord; this motion likes me well.
We'll prógress straight to Oxford with our trains,
And see what men our académy brings.—
And, wonder Vandermast, welcome to me:
In Oxford shalt thou find a jolly friar,
Call'd Friar Bacon, England's only flower:
Set him but nonplus in his magic spells,
And make him yield in mathematic rules,
And for thy glory I will bind thy brows,
Not with a poet's garland made of bays,
But with a coronet of choicest gold.
Whilst then we set to Oxford with our troops,
Let 's in and banquet at our English court. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

SCENE V. *Oxford.*

*Enter* RALPH SIMNELL *in* PRINCE EDWARD'S *apparel; and* PRINCE EDWARD, WARREN, *and* ERMSBY, *disguised.*

*Ralph.* Where be these vagabond knaves, that they attend no better on their master?

*P. Edw.* If it please your honour, we are all ready at an inch.

*Ralph.* Sirrah Ned, I'll have no more post-horse' to ride on: I'll have another fetch.

*Erms.* I pray you, how is that, my lord?

*Ralph.* Marry, sir, I'll send to the Isle of Ely for four or five dozen geese, and I'll have them tied six and six together with whip-cord: now upon their backs will I have a fair field-bed with a canopy; and so, when it is my pleasure, I'll flee into what place I please. This will be easy.

*War.* Your honour hath said well: but shall we to Brazen-nose College before we pull off our boots?

*Erms.* Warren, well motion'd; we will to the friar
Before we revel it within the town.—
Ralph, see you keep your countenance like a prince.

*Ralph.* Wherefore have I such a company of cutting knaves to wait upon me, but to keep and defend my countenance against all mine enemies? have you not good swords and bucklers?

*Erms.* Stay, who comes here?

*War.* Some scholar; and we'll ask him where Friar Bacon is.

*Enter* FRIAR BACON *and* MILES.

*Bacon.* Why, thou arrant dunce, shall I never make thee a good scholar? doth not all the town cry out and say, Friar Bacon's subsizer is the greatest blockhead in all Oxford? why, thou canst not speak one word of true Latin.

Digitized by Google

*Miles.* No, sir? yet, what is this else? *Ego sum tuus homo*, 'I am your man'; I warrant you, sir, as good Tully's phrase as any is in Oxford.

*Bacon.* Come on, sirrah; what part of speech is *Ego*?

*Miles.* *Ego*, that is 'I'; marry, *nomen substantivo.*

*Bacon.* How prove you that?

*Miles.* Why, sir, let him prove himself an 'a will; I can be heard, felt, and understood.

*Bacon.* O gross dunce! [*Beats him.*

*P. Edw.* Come, let us break off this dispute between these two.—Sirrah, where is Brazen-nose College?

*Miles.* Not far from Coppersmith's Hall.

*P. Edw.* What, dost thou mock me?

*Miles.* Not I, sir: but what would you at Brazen-nose?

*Erms.* Marry, we would speak with Friar Bacon.

*Miles.* Whose men be you?

*Erms.* Marry, scholar, here's our master.

*Ralph.* Sirrah, I am the master of these good fellows; mayst thou not know me to be a lord by my reparrel?

*Miles.* Then here's good game for the hawk; for here's the master-fool and a covey of coxcombs: one wise man, I think, would spring you all.

*P. Edw.* Gog's wounds! Warren, kill him.

*War.* Why, Ned, I think the devil be in my sheath; I cannot get out my dagger.

*Erms.* Nor I mine: swones, Ned, I think I am bewitched.

*Miles.* A company of scabs! the proudest of you all draw your weapon if he can.—[*Aside.*] See how boldly I speak, now my master is by.

*P. Edw.* I strive in vain; but if my sword be shut
And conjur'd fast by magic in my sheath,
Villain, here is my fist. [*Strikes* MILES *a box on the ear.*

*Miles.* O, I beseech you conjure his hands too, that he may not lift his arms to his head, for he is light-fingered!

Digitized by Google

*Ralph.* Ned, strike him; I'll warrant thee by mine honour.

*Bacon.* What means the English prince to wrong my man?

*P. Edw.* To whom speak'st thou?

*Bacon.* To thee.

*P. Edw.* Who art thou?

*Bacon.* Could you not judge when all your swords grew fast,
That Friar Bacon was not far from hence?
Edward, King Henry's son and Prince of Wales,
Thy fool disguise cannot conceal thyself:
I know both Ermsby and the Sussex Earl,
Else Friar Bacon had but little skill.
Thou com'st in post from merry Fressingfield,
Fast-fancied to the Keeper's bonny lass,
To crave some succour of the jolly friar:
And Lacy, Earl of Lincoln, hast thou left
To treat fair Marg'ret to allow thy loves;
But friends are men, and love can baffle lords;
The earl both woos and courts her for himself.

*War.* Ned, this is strange; the friar knoweth all.

*Erms.* Apollo could not utter more than this.

*P. Edw.* I stand amaz'd to hear this jolly friar
Tell even the very secrets of my thoughts.—
But, learnèd Bacon, since thou know'st the cause
Why I did post so fast from Fressingfield,
Help, friar, at a pinch, that I may have
The love of lovely Marg'ret to myself,
And, as I am true Prince of Wales, I'll give
Living and lands to strength thy college-state.

*War.* Good friar, help the prince in this.

*Ralph.* Why, servant Ned, will not the friar do it?
Were not my sword glued to my scabbard by conjuration,
I would cut off his head, and make him do it by force.

*Miles.* In faith, my lord, your manhood and your sword is all alike; they are so fast conjured that we shall never see them.

Digitized by Google

*Erms.* What, doctor, in a dump! tush, help the prince,
And thou shalt see how liberal he will prove.

*Bacon.* Crave not such actions greater dumps than these?
I will, my lord, strain out my magic spells;
For this day comes the earl to Fressingfield,
And 'fore that night shuts in the day with dark,
They'll be betrothèd each to other fast.
But come with me; we'll to my study straight,
And in a glass prospective I will show
What's done this day in merry Fressingfield.

*P. Edw.* Gramercies, Bacon; I will quite thy pain.

*Bacon.* But send your train, my lord, into the town:
My scholar shall go bring them to their inn;
Meanwhile we'll see the knavery of the earl.

*P. Edw.* Warren, leave me:—and, Ermsby, take the fool;
Let him be master, and go revel it,
Till I and Friar Bacon talk awhile.

*War.* We will, my lord.

*Ralph.* Faith, Ned, and I'll lord it out till thou comest: I'll be Prince of Wales over all the blackpots in Oxford.

[*Exeunt* WARREN, ERMSBY, RALPH SIMNELL, *and* MILES.

## SCENE VI. *Friar Bacon's cell.*

*Enter* FRIAR BACON *and* PRINCE EDWARD.

*Bacon.* Now, frolic Edward, welcome to my cell;
Here tempers Friar Bacon many toys,
And holds this place his consistory-court,
Wherein the devils plead homage to his words.
Within this glass prospective thou shalt see
This day what's done in merry Fressingfield
'Twixt lovely Peggy and the Lincoln Earl.

*P. Edw.* Friar, thou glad'st me: now shall Edward try
How Lacy meaneth to his sovereign lord.

*Bacon.* Stand there and look directly in the glass.



Digitized by Google

*Enter* MARGARET *and* FRIAR BUNGAY.

What sees my lord?

*P. Edw.* I see the Keeper's lovely lass appear,
As brightsome as the paramour of Mars,
Only attended by a jolly friar.

*Bacon.* Sit still, and keep the crystal in your eye.

*Mar.* But tell me, Friar Bungay, is it true
That this fair courteous country swain,
Who says his father is a farmer nigh,
Can be Lord Lacy, Earl of Lincolnshire?

*Bun.* Peggy, 'tis true, 'tis Lacy for my life,
Or else mine art and cunning both do fail,
Left by Prince Edward to procure his loves;
For he in green, that holp you run your cheese,
Is son to Henry, and the Prince of Wales.

*Mar.* Be what he will, his lure is but for lust:
But did Lord Lacy like poor Margaret,
Or would he deign to wed a country lass,
Friar, I would his humble handmaid be,
And for great wealth quite him with courtesy.

*Bun.* Why, Marg'ret, dost thou love him?

*Mar.* His personage, like the pride of vaunting Troy,
Might well avouch to shadow Helen's rape:
His wit is quick and ready in conceit,
As Greece afforded in her chiefest prime:
Courteous, ah friar, full of pleasing smiles!
Trust me, I love too much to tell thee more;
Suffice to me he's England's paramour.

*Bun.* Hath not each eye that view'd thy pleasing face
Surnamèd thee Fair Maid of Fressingfield?

*Mar.* Yes, Bungay; and would God the lovely earl
Had that in *esse* that so many sought.

*Bun.* Fear not, the friar will not be behind
To show his cunning to entangle love.

*P. Edw.* I think the friar courts the bonny wench:
Bacon, methinks he is a lusty churl.

Digitized by Google

*Bacon.* Now look, my lord.

*Enter* LACY *disguised as before.*

*P. Edw.* Gog's wounds, Bacon, here comes Lacy!

*Bacon.* Sit still, my lord, and mark the comedy.

*Bun.* Here's Lacy, Marg'ret; step aside awhile.

[*Retires with* MARGARET.

*Lacy.* Daphne, the damsel that caught Phoebus fast,
And lock'd him in the brightness of her looks,
Was not so beauteous in Apollo's eyes
As is fair Marg'ret to the Lincoln Earl.
Recant thee, Lacy, thou art put in trust:
Edward, thy sovereign's son, hath chosen thee,
A secret friend, to court her for himself,
And dar'st thou wrong thy prince with treachery?
Lacy, love makes no exception of a friend,
Nor deems it of a prince but as a man.
Honour bids thee control him in his lust;
His wooing is not for to wed the girl,
But to entrap her and beguile the lass.
Lacy, thou lov'st, then brook not such abuse,
But wed her, and abide thy prince's frown;
For better die than see her live disgrac'd.

*Mar.* Come, friar, I will shake him from his dumps.—

[*Comes forward.*

How cheer you, sir? a penny for your thought;
You're early up, pray God it be the near.
What, come from Beccles in a morn so soon?

*Lacy.* Thus watchful are such men as live in love,
Whose eyes brook broken slumbers for their sleep.
I tell thee, Peggy, since last Harleston fair
My mind hath felt a heap of passions.

*Mar.* A trusty man, that court it for your friend:
Woo you still for the courtier all in green?
I marvel that he sues not for himself.

*Lacy.* Peggy,
I pleaded first to get your grace for him;



Digitized by Google

But when mine eyes survey'd your beauteous looks,
Love, like a wag, straight div'd into my heart,
And there did shrine the idea of yourself.
Pity me, though I be a farmer's son,
And measure not my riches, but my love.

*Mar.* You are very hasty; for to garden well,
Seeds must have time to sprout before they spring:
Love ought to creep as doth the dial's shade,
For timely ripe is rotten too-too soon.

*Bun.* [*coming forward.*] *Deus hic*; room for a merry friar!
What, youth of Beccles, with the Keeper's lass?
'Tis well; but tell me, hear you any news?

*Lacy.* No, friar: what news?

*Bun.* Hear you not how the pursuivants do post
With proclamations through each country-town?

*Lacy.* For what, gentle friar? tell the news.

*Bun.* Dwell'st thou in Beccles, and hear'st not of these news?
Lacy, the Earl of Lincoln, is late fled
From Windsor court, disguisèd like a swain,
And lurks about the country here unknown.
Henry suspects him of some treachery,
And therefore doth proclaim in every way,
That who can take the Lincoln Earl shall have,
Paid in the Exchequer, twenty thousand crowns.

*Lacy.* The Earl of Lincoln! Friar, thou art mad:
It was some other; thou mistak'st the man.
The Earl of Lincoln! why, it cannot be.

*Mar.* Yes, very well, my lord, for you are he:
The Keeper's daughter took you prisoner.
Lord Lacy, yield, I'll be your gaoler once.

*P. Edw.* How familiar they be, Bacon!

*Bacon.* Sit still, and mark the sequel of their loves.

*Lacy.* Then am I double prisoner to thyself:
Peggy, I yield. But are these news in jest?

*Mar.* In jest with you, but earnest unto me;

Digitized by Google

For why these wrongs do wring me at the heart.
Ah, how these earls and noblemen of birth
Flatter and feign to forge poor women's ill!

*Lacy.* Believe me, lass, I am the Lincoln Earl:
I not deny but, 'tirèd thus in rags,
I liv'd disguis'd to win fair Peggy's love.

*Mar.* What love is there where wedding ends not love?

*Lacy.* I mean, fair girl, to make thee Lacy's wife.

*Mar.* I little think that earls will stoop so low.

*Lacy.* Say shall I make thee countess ere I sleep?

*Mar.* Handmaid unto the earl, so please himself:
A wife in name, but servant in obedience.

*Lacy.* The Lincoln Countess, for it shall be so:
I'll plight the bands, and seal it with a kiss.

*P. Edw.* Gog's wounds, Bacon, they kiss! I'll stab them.

*Bacon.* O, hold your hands, my lord, it is the glass!

*P. Edw.* Choler to see the traitors gree so well
Made me [to] think the shadows substances.

*Bacon.* 'Twere a long poniard, my lord, to reach between
Oxford and Fressingfield; but sit still and see more.

*Bun.* Well, Lord of Lincoln, if your loves be knit,
And that your tongues and thoughts do both agree,
To avoid ensuing jars, I'll hamper up the match.
I'll take my portace forth and wed you here.

*Lacy.* Friar, content.—Peggy, how like you this?

*Mar.* What likes my lord is pleasing unto me.

*Bun.* Then hand-fast hand, and I will to my book.

*Bacon.* What sees my lord now?

*P. Edw.* Bacon, I see the lovers hand in hand,
The friar ready with his portace there
To wed them both: then am I quite undone.
Bacon, help now, if e'er thy magic serv'd;
Help, Bacon; stop the marriage now,
If devils or necromancy may suffice,
And I will give thee forty thousand crowns.

Digitized by Google

*Bacon.* Fear not, my lord, I'll stop the jolly friar
From mumbling up his orisons this day.

*Lacy.* Why speak'st not, Bungay? Friar, to thy book.
[BUNGAY *is mute, crying,* 'Hud, hud.'

*Mar.* How look'st thou, friar, as a man distraught?
Reft of thy senses, Bungay? show by signs,
If thou be dumb, what passions holdeth thee.

*Lacy.* He 's dumb indeed. Bacon hath with his devils
Enchanted him, or else some strange disease
Or apoplexy hath possess'd his lungs:
But, Peggy, what he cannot with his book,
We'll 'twixt us both unite it up in heart.

*Mar.* Else let me die, my lord, a miscreant.

*P. Edw.* Why stands Friar Bungay so amaz'd?

*Bacon.* I have struck him dumb, my lord; and, if your honour please,
I'll fetch this Bungay straight from Fressingfield,
And he shall dine with us in Oxford here.

*P. Edw.* Bacon, do that, and thou contentest me.

*Lacy.* Of courtesy, Marg'ret, let us lead the friar
Unto thy father's lodge, to comfort him
With broths, to bring him from this hapless trance.

*Mar.* Or else, my lord, we were passing unkind
To leave the friar so in his distress.

*Enter a* Devil, *who carries off* BUNGAY *on his back.*

O, help, my lord! a devil, a devil, my lord!
Look how he carries Bungay on his back!
Let 's hence, for Bacon's spirits be abroad.
[*Exit with* LACY.

*P. Edw.* Bacon, I laugh to see the jolly friar
Mounted upon the devil, and how the earl
Flees with his bonny lass for fear.
As soon as Bungay is at Brazen-nose,
And I have chatted with the merry friar,
I will in post hie me to Fressingfield,
And quite these wrongs on Lacy ere 't be long.

Digitized by Google

*Bacon.* So be it, my lord: but let us to our dinner;
For ere we have taken our repast awhile,
We shall have Bungay brought to Brazen-nose. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE VII. *The Regent-house at Oxford.*

*Enter* BURDEN, MASON, *and* CLEMENT.

*Mason.* Now that we are gather'd in the Regent-house,
It fits us talk about the king's repair;
For he, troopèd with all the western kings,
That lie alongst the Dantzic seas by east,
North by the clime of frosty Germany,
The Almain monarch, and the Saxon duke,
Castile and lovely Elinor with him,
Have in their jests resolv'd for Oxford town.

*Burd.* We must lay plots of stately tragedies,
Strange comic shows, such as proud Roscius
Vaunted before the Roman emperors,
To welcome all the western potentates.

*Clem.* But more; the king by letters hath foretold
That Frederick, the Almain emperor,
Hath brought with him a German of esteem,
Whose surname is Don Jaques Vandermast,
Skilful in magic and those secret arts.

*Mason.* Then must we all make suit unto the friar,
To Friar Bacon, that he vouch this task,
And undertake to countervail in skill
The German; else there 's none in Oxford can
Match and dispute with learnèd Vandermast.

*Burd.* Bacon, if he will hold the German play,
Will teach him what an English friar can do:
The devil, I think, dare not dispute with him.

*Clem.* Indeed, Mas doctor, he [dis]pleasur'd you,
In that he brought your hostess with her spit,
From Henley, posting unto Brazen-nose.

Digitized by Google

*Burd.* A vengeance on the friar for his pains!
But leaving that, let 's hie to Bacon straight,
To see if he will take this task in hand.

*Clem.* Stay, what rumour is this? The town is up in a mutiny: what hurly-burly is this?

*Enter a* Constable, *with* RALPH SIMNELL, WARREN, ERMSBY, *all three disguised as before, and* MILES.

*Cons.* Nay, masters, if you were ne'er so good, you shall before the doctors to answer your misdemeanour.

*Burd.* What 's the matter, fellow?

*Cons.* Marry, sir, here 's a company of rufflers, that, drinking in the tavern, have made a great brawl, and almost killed the vintner.

*Miles.* *Salve*, Doctor Burden!
This lubberly lurden,
Ill-shap'd and ill-fac'd,
Disdain'd and disgrac'd,
What he tells unto *vobis*
*Mentitur de nobis.*

*Burd.* Who is the master and chief of this crew?

*Miles.* *Ecce asinum mundi*
*Figura rotundi,*
Neat and fine,
As brisk as a cup of wine.

*Burd.* What are you?

*Ralph.* I am, father doctor, as a man would say, the bell-wether of this company: these are my lords, and I the Prince of Wales.

*Clem.* Are you Edward, the king's son?

*Ralph.* Sirrah Miles, bring hither the tapster that drew the wine, and, I warrant, when they see how soundly I have broke his head, they'll say 'twas done by no less man than a prince.

*Mason.* I cannot believe that this is the Prince of Wales.

Digitized by Google

*War.* And why so, sir?

*Mason.* For they say the prince is a brave and a wise gentleman.

*War.* Why, and think'st thou, doctor, that he is not so? Dar'st thou detract and derogate from him,
Being so lovely and so brave a youth?

*Erms.* Whose face, shining with many a sugar'd smile, Bewrays that he is bred of princely race.

*Miles.* And yet, master doctor,
To speak like a proctor,
And tell unto you
What is veriment and true;
To cease of this quarrel,
Look but on his apparel;
Then mark but my talis,
He is great Prince of Walis,
The chief of our *gregis*,
And *filius regis*:
Then 'ware what is done,
For he is Henry's white son.

*Ralph.* Doctors, whose doting night-caps are not capable of my ingenious dignity, know that I am Edward Plantagenet, whom if you displease, [I] will make a ship that shall hold all your colleges, and so carry away the niniversity with a fair wind to the Bankside in Southwark.—How sayest thou, Ned Warren, shall I not do it?

*War.* Yes, my good lord; and, if it please your lordship, I will gather up all your old pantofles, and with the cork make you a pinnace of five-hundred ton, that shall serve the turn marvellous well, my lord.

*Erms.* And I, my lord, will have pioners to undermine the town, that the very gardens and orchards be carried away for your summer-walks.

*Miles.* And I, with *scientia*
And great *diligentia*,
Will conjure and charm,
To keep you from harm;

Digitized by Google

That *utrum horum mavis*,
Your very great *navis*,
Like Barclay's ship,
From Oxford do skip
With colleges and schools,
Full-loaden with fools.
*Quid dicis ad hoc*,
Worshipful *Domine* Dawcock?

*Clem.* Why, hare-brain'd courtiers, are you drunk or mad,
To taunt us up with such scurrility?
Deem you us men of base and light esteem,
To bring us such a fop for Henry's son?—
Call out the beadles and convey them hence
Straight to Bocardo: let the roisters lie
Close clapt in bolts, until their wits be tame.

*Erms.* Why, shall we to prison, my lord?

*Ralph.* What sayest, Miles, shall I honour the prison with my presence?

*Miles.* No, no: out with your blades,
And hamper these jades;
Have a flurt and a crash,
Now play revel-dash,
And teach these sacerdos
That the Bocardos,
Like peasants and elves,
Are meet for themselves.

*Mason.* To the prison with them, constable.

*War.* Well, doctors, seeing I have sported me
With laughing at these mad and merry wags,
Know that Prince Edward is at Brazen-nose,
And this, attirèd like the Prince of Wales,
Is Ralph, King Henry's only lovèd fool;
I, Earl of Sussex, and this Ermsby,
One of the privy-chamber to the king;
Who, while the prince with Friar Bacon stays,
Have revell'd it in Oxford as you see.

Digitized by Google

*Mason.* My lord, pardon us, we knew not what you were:
But courtiers may make greater scapes than these.
Will't please your honour dine with me to-day?

*War.* I will, Master doctor, and satisfy the vintner for his hurt; only I must desire you to imagine him [*pointing to Ralph*] all this forenoon the Prince of Wales.

*Mason.* I will, sir.

*Ralph.* And upon that I will lead the way; only I will have Miles go before me, because I have heard Henry say that wisdom must go before majesty. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE VIII. *Fressingfield.*

*Enter* PRINCE EDWARD *with his poniard in his hand,* LACY, *and* MARGARET.

*P. Edw.* Lacy, thou canst not shroud thy traitorous thoughts,
Nor cover, as did Cassius, all thy wiles;
For Edward hath an eye that looks as far
As Lynceus from the shores of Graecia.
Did not I sit in Oxford by the friar,
And see thee court the maid of Fressingfield,
Sealing thy flattering fancies with a kiss?
Did not proud Bungay draw his portace forth,
And joining hand in hand had married you,
If Friar Bacon had not struck him dumb,
And mounted him upon a spirit's back,
That we might chat at Oxford with the friar?
Traitor, what answer'st? is not all this true?

*Lacy.* Truth all, my lord; and thus I make reply.
At Harleston fair, there courting for your grace,
Whenas mine eye survey'd her curious shape,
And drew the beauteous glory of her looks
To dive into the centre of my heart,
Love taught me that your honour did but jest,

Digitized by Google

That princes were in fancy but as men;
How that the lovely maid of Fressingfield
Was fitter to be Lacy's wedded wife
Than concubine unto the Prince of Wales.
*P. Edw.* Injurious Lacy, did I love thee more
Than Alexander his Hephæstion?
Did I unfold the passions of my love,
And lock them in the closet of thy thoughts?
Wert thou to Edward second to himself,
Sole friend, and partner of his secret loves?
And could a glance of fading beauty break
Th' enchainèd fetters of such private friends?
Base coward, false, and too effeminate
To be corrival with a prince in thoughts!
From Oxford have I posted since I din'd,
To quite a traitor 'fore that Edward sleep.
*Mar.* 'Twas I, my lord, not Lacy stept awry:
For oft he su'd and courted for yourself,
And still woo'd for the courtier all in green;
But I, whom fancy made but over-fond,
Pleaded myself with looks as if I lov'd;
I fed mine eye with gazing on his face,
And still bewitch'd lov'd Lacy with my looks;
My heart with sighs, mine eyes pleaded with tears,
My face held pity and content at once,
And more I could not cipher out by signs,
But that I lov'd Lord Lacy with my heart.
Then, worthy Edward, measure with thy mind
If women's favours will not force men fall,
If beauty, and if darts of piercing love,
Are not of force to bury thoughts of friends.
*P. Edw.* I tell thee, Peggy, I will have thy loves:
Edward or none shall conquer Margaret.
In frigates bottom'd with rich Sethin planks,
Topt with the lofty firs of Lebanon,
Stemm'd and incas'd with burnish'd ivory,
And over-laid with plates of Persian wealth,
Like Thetis shalt thou wanton on the waves,

Digitized by Google

And draw the dolphins to thy lovely eyes,
To dance lavoltas in the purple streams;
Sirens, with harps and silver psalteries,
Shall wait with music at thy frigate's stem,
And entertain fair Marg'ret with their lays.
England and England's wealth shall wait on thee;
Britain shall bend unto her prince's love,
And do due homage to thine excellence,
If thou wilt be but Edward's Margaret.

*Mar.* Pardon, my lord: if Jove's great royalty
Sent me such presents as to Danaë;
If Phoebus, 'tirèd in Latona's webs,
Came courting from the beauty of his lodge;
The dulcet tunes of frolic Mercury,
Nor all the wealth heaven's treasury affords,
Should make me leave Lord Lacy or his love.

*P. Edw.* I have learn'd at Oxford, then, this point of schools,—
*Ablata causa, tollitur effectus*:
Lacy, the cause that Marg'ret cannot love
Nor fix her liking on the English prince,
Take him away, and then th' effects will fail.
Villain, prepare thyself; for I will bathe
My poniard in the bosom of an earl.

*Lacy.* Rather than live, and miss fair Marg'ret's love,
Prince Edward, stop not at the fatal doom,
But stab it home: end both my loves and life.

*Mar.* Brave Prince of Wales, honour'd for royal deeds,
'Twere sin to stain fair Venus' courts with blood;
Love's conquest ends, my lord, in courtesy:
Spare Lacy, gentle Edward; let me die,
For so both you and he do cease your loves.

*P. Edw.* Lacy shall die as traitor to his lord.

*Lacy.* I have deserv'd it, Edward; act it well.

*Mar.* What hopes the prince to gain by Lacy's death?

*P. Edw.* To end the loves 'twixt him and Margaret.

Digitized by Google

*Mar.* Why, thinks King Henry's son that Marg'ret's love
Hangs in th' uncertain balance of proud time?
That death shall make a discord of our thoughts?
No, stab the earl, and, 'fore the morning sun
Shall vaunt him thrice over the lofty east,
Margaret will meet her Lacy in the heavens.

*Lacy.* If aught betides to lovely Margaret
That wrongs or wrings her honour from content,
Europe's rich wealth nor England's monarchy
Should not allure Lacy to over-live.
Then, Edward, short my life, and end her loves.

*Mar.* Rid me, and keep a friend worth many loves.

*Lacy.* Nay, Edward, keep a love worth many friends.

*Mar.* An if thy mind be such as fame hath blaz'd,
Then, princely Edward, let us both abide
The fatal resolution of thy rage:
Banish thou fancy, and embrace revenge,
And in one tomb knit both our carcases,
Whose hearts were linkèd in one perfect love.

*P. Edw.* [*aside.*] Edward, art thou that famous Prince of Wales,
Who at Damasco beat the Saracens,
And brought'st home triumph on thy lance's point?
And shall thy plumes be pull'd by Venus down?
Is't princely to dissever lovers' leagues,
To part such friends as glory in their loves?
Leave, Ned, and make a virtue of this fault,
And further Peg and Lacy in their loves:
So in subduing fancy's passion,
Conquering thyself, thou gett'st the richest spoil.—
Lacy, rise up. Fair Peggy, here's my hand:
The Prince of Wales hath conquer'd all his thoughts,
And all his loves he yields unto the earl.
Lacy, enjoy the maid of Fressingfield;
Make her thy Lincoln Countess at the church,
And Ned, as he is true Plantagenet,
Will give her to thee frankly for thy wife.

Digitized by Google

*Lacy.* Humbly I take her of my sovereign,
As if that Edward gave me England's right,
And rich'd me with the Albion diadem.

*Mar.* And doth the English prince mean true?
Will he vouchsafe to cease his former loves,
And yield the title of a country maid
Unto Lord Lacy?

*P. Edw.* I will, fair Peggy, as I am true lord.

*Mar.* Then, lordly sir, whose conquest is as great,
In conquering love, as Cæsar's victories,
Marg'ret, as mild and humble in her thoughts
As was Aspasia unto Cyrus self,
Yields thanks, and, next Lord Lacy, doth enshrine
Edward the second secret in her heart.

*P. Edw.* Gramercy, Peggy:—now that vows are past,
And that your loves are not to be revolt,
Once, Lacy, friends again. Come, we will post
To Oxford; for this day the king is there,
And brings for Edward Castile Elinor.
Peggy, I must go see and view my wife:
I pray God I like her as I lov'd thee.
Beside, Lord Lincoln, we shall hear dispute
'Twixt Friar Bacon and learn'd Vandermast.
Peggy, we'll leave you for a week or two.

*Mar.* As it please Lord Lacy: but love's foolish looks
Think footsteps miles and minutes to be hours.

*Lacy.* I'll hasten, Peggy, to make short return.—
But please your honour go unto the lodge,
We shall have butter, cheese, and venison;
And yesterday I brought for Margaret
A lusty bottle of neat claret-wine:
Thus can we feast and entertain your grace.

*P. Edw.* 'Tis cheer, Lord Lacy, for an emperor,
If he respect the person and the place.
Come, let us in; for I will all this night
Ride post until I come to Bacon's cell. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

## Scene IX. *Oxford.*

*Enter* King Henry, *the* Emperor, *the* King of Castile, Elinor, Vandermast, *and* Bungay.

*Emp.* Trust me, Plantagenet, these Oxford schools
Are richly seated near the river-side:
The mountains full of fat and fallow deer,
The battling pastures lade with kine and flocks,
The town gorgeous with high-built colleges,
And scholars seemly in their grave attire,
Learnèd in searching principles of art.—
What is thy judgment, Jaques Vandermast?

*Van.* That lordly are the buildings of the town,
Spacious the rooms, and full of pleasant walks;
But for the doctors, how that they be learnèd,
It may be meanly, for aught I can hear.

*Bun.* I tell thee, German, Hapsburg holds none such,
None read so deep as Oxenford contains:
There are within our academic state
Men that may lecture it in Germany
To all the doctors of your Belgic schools.

*K. Hen.* Stand to him, Bungay, charm this Vandermast,
And I will use thee as a royal king.

*Van.* Wherein dar'st thou dispute with me?

*Bun.* In what a doctor and a friar can.

*Van.* Before rich Europe's worthies put thou forth
The doubtful question unto Vandermast.

*Bun.* Let it be this,—Whether the spirits of pyromancy or geomancy be most predominant in magic?

*Van.* I say, of pyromancy.

*Bun.* And I, of geomancy.

*Van.* The cabalists that write of magic spells,
As Hermes, Melchie, and Pythagoras,
Affirm that, 'mongst the quadruplicity
Of elemental essence, *terra* is but thought

Digitized by Google

To be a *punctum* squarèd to the rest;
And that the compass of ascending elements
Exceed in bigness as they do in height;
Judging the concave circle of the sun
To hold the rest in his circumference.
If, then, as Hermes says, the fire be greatest,
Purest, and only giveth shape to spirits,
Then must these dæmones that haunt that place
Be every way superior to the rest.
*Bun.* I reason not of elemental shapes,
Nor tell I of the concave latitudes,
Noting their essence nor their quality,
But of the spirits that pyromancy calls,
And of the vigour of the geomantic fiends.
I tell thee, German, magic haunts the ground,
And those strange necromantic spells,
That work such shows and wondering in the world,
Are acted by those geomantic spirits
That Hermes calleth *terræ filii.*
The fiery spirits are but transparent shades,
That lightly pass as heralds to bear news;
But earthly fiends, clos'd in the lowest deep,
Dissever mountains, if they be but charg'd,
Being more gross and massy in their power.
*Van.* Rather these earthly geomantic spirits
Are dull and like the place where they remain;
For when proud Lucifer fell from the heavens,
The spirits and angels that did sin with him,
Retain'd their local essence as their faults,
All subject under Luna's continent:
They which offended less hung in the fire,
And second faults did rest within the air;
But Lucifer and his proud-hearted fiends
Were thrown into the centre of the earth,
Having less understanding than the rest,
As having greater sin and lesser grace.
Therefore such gross and earthly spirits do serve
For jugglers, witches, and vile sorcerers;



Digitized by Google

Whereas the pyromantic genii
Are mighty, swift, and of far-reaching power.
But grant that geomancy hath most force;
Bungay, to please these mighty potentates,
Prove by some instance what thy art can do.

*Bun.* I will.

*Emp.* Now, English Harry, here begins the game;
We shall see sport between these learnèd men.

*Van.* What wilt thou do?

*Bun.* Show thee the tree, leav'd with refinèd gold,
Whereon the fearful dragon held his seat,
That watch'd the garden call'd Hesperides,
Subdu'd and won by conquering Hercules.

*Here* BUNGAY *conjures, and the tree appears with the dragon shooting fire.*

*Van.* Well done!

*K. Hen.* What say you, royal lordings, to my friar?
Hath he not done a point of cunning skill?

*Van.* Each scholar in the necromantic spells
Can do as much as Bungay hath perform'd.
But as Alcmena's bastard raz'd this tree,
So will I raise him up as when he liv'd,
And cause him pull the dragon from his seat,
And tear the branches piecemeal from the root.—
Hercules! *Prodi, prodi,* Hercules!

HERCULES *appears in his lion's skin.*

*Her. Quis me vult?*

*Van.* Jove's bastard son, thou Libyan Hercules,
Pull off the sprigs from off th' Hesperian tree,
As once thou didst to win the golden fruit.

*Her. Fiat.* [*Begins to break the branches.*

*Van.* Now, Bungay, if thou canst by magic charm
The fiend, appearing like great Hercules,
From pulling down the branches of the tree,
Then art thou worthy to be counted learnèd.

Digitized by Google

*Bun.* I cannot.

*Van.* Cease, Hercules, until I give thee charge.—
Mighty commander of this English isle,
Henry, come from the stout Plantagenets,
Bungay is learn'd enough to be a friar;
But to compare with Jaques Vandermast,
Oxford and Cambridge must go seek their cells
To find a man to match him in his art.
I have given non-plus to the Paduans,
To them of Sien, Florence, and Bologna,
Rheims, Louvain, and fair Rotterdam,
Frankfort, Lutetia, and Orleans:
And now must Henry, if he do me right,
Crown me with laurel, as they all have done.

*Enter* BACON.

*Bacon.* All hail to this royal company,
That sit to hear and see this strange dispute!—
Bungay, how stand'st thou as a man amaz'd?
What, hath the German acted more than thou?

*Van.* What art thou that question'st thus?

*Bacon.* Men call me Bacon.

*Van.* Lordly thou look'st, as if that thou wert learn'd;
Thy countenance as if science held her seat
Between the circled arches of thy brows.

*K. Hen.* Now, monarchs, hath the German found his match.

*Emp.* Bestir thee, Jaques, take not now the foil,
Lest thou dost lose what foretime thou didst gain.

*Van.* Bacon, wilt thou dispute?

*Bacon.* No,
Unless he were more learn'd than Vandermast:
For yet, tell me, what hast thou done?

*Van.* Rais'd Hercules to ruinate that tree
That Bungay mounted by his magic spells.

*Bacon.* Set Hercules to work.



Digitized by Google

*Van.* Now, Hercules, I charge thee to thy task;
Pull off the golden branches from the root.

*Her.* I dare not. See'st thou not great Bacon here,
Whose frown doth act more than thy magic can?

*Van.* By all the thrones, and dominations,
Virtues, powers, and mighty hierarchies,
I charge thee to obey to Vandermast.

*Her.* Bacon, that bridles headstrong Belcephon,
And rules Asmenoth, guider of the north,
Binds me from yielding unto Vandermast.

*K. Hen.* How now, Vandermast! have you met with your match?

*Van.* Never before was't known to Vandermast
That men held devils in such obedient awe.
Bacon doth more than art, or else I fail.

*Emp.* Why, Vandermast, art thou overcome?—
Bacon, dispute with him, and try his skill.

*Bacon.* I came not, monarchs, for to hold dispute
With such a novice as is Vandermast;
I came to have your royalties to dine
With Friar Bacon here in Brazen-nose;
And, for this German troubles but the place,
And holds this audience with a long suspence,
I'll send him to his academy hence.—
Thou Hercules, whom Vandermast did raise,
Transport the German unto Hapsburg straight,
That he may learn by travail, 'gainst the spring,
More secret dooms and aphorisms of art.
Vanish the tree, and thou away with him!

[*Exit* HERCULES *with* VANDERMAST *and the tree.*

*Emp.* Why, Bacon, whither dost thou send him?

*Bacon.* To Hapsburg: there your highness at return
Shall find the German in his study safe.

*K. Hen.* Bacon, thou hast honour'd England with thy skill,
And made fair Oxford famous by thine art:

Digitized by Google

I will be English Henry to thyself.
But tell me, shall we dine with thee to-day?

*Bacon.* With me, my lord; and while I fit my cheer,
See where Prince Edward comes to welcome you,
Gracious as is the morning-star of heaven. [*Exit.*

*Enter* PRINCE EDWARD, LACY, WARREN, ERMSBY.

*Emp.* Is this Prince Edward, Henry's royal son?
How martial is the figure of his face!
Yet lovely and beset with amorets.

*K. Hen.* Ned, where hast thou been?

*P. Edw.* At Framlingham, my lord, to try your bucks
If they could scape the teasers or the toil.
But hearing of these lordly potentates
Landed, and progress'd up to Oxford town,
I posted to give entertain to them:
Chief to the Almain monarch; next to him,
And joint with him, Castile and Saxony
Are welcome as they may be to the English court.
Thus for the men: but see, Venus appears,
Or one
That overmatcheth Venus in her shape!
Sweet Elinor, beauty's high-swelling pride,
Rich nature's glory and her wealth at once,
Fair of all fairs, welcome to Albion;
Welcome to me, and welcome to thine own,
If that thou deign'st the welcome from myself.

*Elin.* Martial Plantagenet, Henry's high-minded son,
The mark that Elinor did count her aim,
I lik'd thee 'fore I saw thee: now I love,
And so as in so short a time I may;
Yet so as time shall never break that so,
And therefore so accept of Elinor.

*K. of Cast.* Fear not, my lord, this couple will agree,
If love may creep into their wanton eyes:——
And therefore, Edward, I accept thee here,
Without suspence, as my adopted son.

Digitized by Google

*K. Hen.* Let me that joy in these consorting greets,
And glory in these honours done to Ned,
Yield thanks for all these favours to my son,
And rest a true Plantagenet to all.

*Enter* MILES *with a cloth and trenchers and salt.*

*Miles.* *Salvete, omnes reges,*
That govern your *greges*
In Saxony and Spain,
In England and in Almain!
For all this frolic rabble
Must I cover the table
With trenchers, salt, and cloth;
And then look for your broth.

*Emp.* What pleasant fellow is this?

*K. Hen.* 'Tis, my lord, Doctor Bacon's poor scholar.

*Miles* [*aside*]. My master hath made me sewer of these great lords; and, God knows, I am as serviceable at a table as a sow is under an apple-tree: 'tis no matter; their cheer shall not be great, and therefore what skills where the salt stand, before or behind? [*Exit.*

*K. of Cast.* These scholars know more skill in axioms,
How to use quips and sleights of sophistry,
Than for to cover courtly for a king.

*Re-enter* MILES *with a mess of pottage and broth; and, after him,* BACON.

*Miles.* Spill, sir? why, do you think I never carried two-penny chop before in my life?——
By your leave, *nobile decus,*
For here comes Doctor Bacon's *pecus,*
Being in his full age
To carry a mess of pottáge.

*Bacon.* Lordings, admire not if your cheer be this,
For we must keep our academic fare;
No riot where philosophy doth reign:
And therefore, Henry, place these potentates,
And bid them fall unto their frugal cates.

Digitized by Google

*Emp.* Presumptuous friar! what, scoff'st thou at a king?
What, dost thou taunt us with thy peasants' fare,
And give us cates fit for country swains?——
Henry, proceeds this jest of thy consent,
To twit us with such pittance of such price?
Tell me, and Frederick will not grieve thee long.

*K. Hen.* By Henry's honour, and the royal faith
The English monarch beareth to his friend,
I knew not of the friar's feeble fare,
Nor am I pleas'd he entertains you thus.

*Bacon.* Content thee, Frederick, for I show'd these cates,
To let thee see how scholars use to feed;
How little meat refines our English wits.——
Miles, take away, and let it be thy dinner.

*Miles.* Marry, sir, I will.
This day shall be a festival-day with me;
For I shall exceed in the highest degree. [*Exit.*

*Bacon.* I tell thee, monarch, all the German peers
Could not afford thy entertainment such,
So royal and so full of majesty,
As Bacon will present to Frederick.
The basest waiter that attends thy cups
Shall be in honours greater than thyself;
And for thy cates, rich Alexandria drugs,
Fetch'd by carvels from Ægypt's richest streights,
Found in the wealthy strand of Africa,
Shall royalize the table of my king;
Wines richer than th' Ægyptian courtesan
Quaff'd to Augustus' kingly countermatch,
Shall be carous'd in English Henry's feast;
Candy shall yield the richest of her canes;
Persia, down her Volga by canoes,
Send down the secrets of her spicery;
The Afric dates, mirabolans of Spain,
Conserves and suckets from Tiberias,
Cates from Judæa, choicer than the lamp

Digitized by Google

That firèd Rome with sparks of gluttony,
Shall beautify the board of Frederick:
And therefore grudge not at a friar's feast. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE X. *Fressingfield.*

*Enter* LAMBERT *and* SERLSBY *with the* Keeper.

*Lam.* Come, frolic Keeper of our liege's game,
Whose table spread hath ever venison
And jacks of wine to welcome passengers,
Know I'm in love with jolly Margaret,
That overshines our damsels as the moon
Darkeneth the brighest sparkles of the night.
In Laxfield here my land and living lies:
I'll make thy daughter jointer of it all,
So thou consent to give her to my wife;
And I can spend five hundred marks a-year.

*Ser.* I am the lands-lord, Keeper, of thy holds,
By copy all thy living lies in me;
Laxfield did never see me raise my due:
I will enfeoff fair Margaret in all,
So she will take her to a lusty squire.

*Keep.* Now, courteous gentles, if the Keeper's girl
Hath pleas'd the liking fancy of you both,
And with her beauty hath subdu'd your thoughts,
'Tis doubtful to decide the question.
It joys me that such men of great esteem
Should lay their liking on this base estate,
And that her state should grow so fortunate
To be a wife to meaner men than you:
But sith such squires will stoop to keeper's fee,
I will, to avoid displeasure of you both,
Call Marg'ret forth, and she shall make her choice.

*Lam.* Content, Keeper; send her unto us.
[*Exit* Keeper.
Why, Serlsby, is thy wife so lately dead,

Digitized by Google

Are all thy loves so lightly passèd over,
As thou canst wed before the year is out?

*Serl.* I live not, Lambert, to content the dead,
Nor was I wedded but for life to her:
The grave ends and begins a married state.

*Enter* MARGARET.

*Lam.* Peggy, the lovely flower of all towns,
Suffolk's fair Helen, and rich England's star,
Whose beauty, temper'd with her huswifery,
Makes England talk of merry Fressingfield!

*Ser.* I cannot trick it up with poesies,
Nor paint my passions with comparisons,
Nor tell a tale of Phœbus and his loves:
But this believe me,—Laxfield here is mine,
Of ancient rent seven-hundred pounds a-year,
And if thou canst but love a country squire,
I will enfeoff thee, Margaret, in all:
I cannot flatter; try me, if thou please.

*Mar.* Brave neighbouring squires, the stay of Suffolk's clime,
A keeper's daughter is too base in gree
To match with men accounted of such worth:
But might I not displease, I would reply.

*Lam.* Say, Peggy; naught shall make us discontent.

*Mar.* Then, gentles, note that love hath little stay,
Nor can the flames that Venus sets on fire
Be kindled but by fancy's motion:
Then pardon, gentles, if a maid's reply
Be doubtful, while I have debated with myself,
Who, or of whom, love shall constrain me like.

*Ser.* Let it be me; and trust me, Margaret,
The meads environ'd with the silver streams,
Whose battling pastures fatteth all my flocks,
Yielding forth fleeces stapled with such wool
As Lemnster cannot yield more finer stuff,
And forty kine with fair and burnish'd heads,

Digitized by Google

With strouting dugs that paggle to the ground,
Shall serve thy dairy, if thou wed with me.

*Lam.* Let pass the country wealth, as flocks and kine,
And lands that wave with Ceres' golden sheaves,
Filling my barns with plenty of the fields;
But, Peggy, if thou wed thyself to me,
Thou shalt have garments of embroider'd silk,
Lawns, and rich net-works for thy head-attire:
Costly shall be thy fair habiliments,
If thou wilt be but Lambert's loving wife.

*Mar.* Content you, gentles, you have proffer'd fair,
And more than fits a country maid's degree:
But give me leave to counsel me a time,
For fancy blooms not at the first assault;
Give me but ten days' respite, and I will reply,
Which or to whom myself affectionates.

*Ser.* Lambert, I tell thee, thou'rt importunate;
Such beauty fits not such a base esquire:
It is for Serlsby to have Margaret.

*Lam.* Think'st thou with wealth to overreach me?
Serlsby, I scorn to brook thy country braves:
I dare thee, coward, to maintain this wrong,
At dint of rapier, single in the field.

*Ser.* I'll answer, Lambert, what I have avouch'd.—
Margaret, farewell; another time shall serve. [*Exit.*

*Lam.* I'll follow.—Peggy, farewell to thyself;
Listen how well I'll answer for thy love. [*Exit.*

*Mar.* How fortune tempers lucky haps with frowns,
And wrongs me with the sweets of my delight!
Love is my bliss, and love is now my bale.
Shall I be Helen in my froward fates,
As I am Helen in my matchless hue,
And set rich Suffolk with my face afire?
If lovely Lacy were but with his Peggy,
The cloudy darkness of his bitter frown
Would check the pride of those aspiring squires.
Before the term of ten days be expir'd,

Digitized by Google

Whenas they look for answer of their loves,
My lord will come to merry Fressingfield,
And end their fancies and their follies both:
Till when, Peggy, be blithe and of good cheer.

*Enter a* Post *with a letter and a bag of gold.*

*Post.* Fair lovely damsel, which way leads this path?
How might I post me unto Fressingfield?
Which footpath leadeth to the Keeper's lodge?

*Mar.* Your way is ready, and this path is right:
Myself do dwell hereby in Fressingfield;
And if the Keeper be the man you seek,
I am his daughter: may I know the cause?

*Post.* Lovely, and once belovèd of my lord,—
No marvel if his eye was lodg'd so low,
When brighter beauty is not in the heavens,—
The Lincoln Earl hath sent you letters here,
And, with them, just an hundred pounds in gold.
[*Gives letter and bag.*
Sweet, bonny wench, read them, and make reply.

*Mar.* The scrolls that Jove sent Danaë,
Wrapt in rich closures of fine burnish'd gold,
Were not more welcome than these lines to me.
Tell me, whilst that I do unrip the seals,
Lives Lacy well? how fares my lovely lord?

*Post.* Well, if that wealth may make men to live well.

*Mar.* [*Reads.*] *The blooms of the almond-tree grow in a night, and vanish in a morn; the flies haemerae, fair Peggy, take life with the sun, and die with the dew; fancy that slippeth in with a gaze, goeth out with a wink; and too timely loves have ever the shortest length. I write this as thy grief, and my folly, who at Fressingfield loved that which time hath taught me to be but mean dainties: eyes are dissemblers, and fancy is but queasy; therefore know, Margaret, I have chosen a Spanish lady to be my wife, chief waiting-woman to the Princess Elinor; a lady fair, and no less fair than thyself, honourable and wealthy. In that I forsake thee, I leave thee to thine own liking; and*

Digitized by Google

*for thy dowry I have sent thee an hundred pounds; and ever assure thee of my favour, which shall avail thee and thine much. Farewell.*

*Not thine, nor his own,*
*EDWARD LACY.*

Fond Atè, doomer of bad-boding fates,
That wrapp'st proud fortune in thy snaky locks,
Didst thou enchant my birth-day with such stars
As lighten'd mischief from their infancy?
If heavens had vow'd, if stars had made decree,
To show on me their froward influence,
If Lacy had but lov'd, heavens, hell, and all,
Could not have wrong'd the patience of my mind.

*Post.* It grieves me, damsel; but the earl is forc'd
To love the lady by the king's command.

*Mar.* The wealth combin'd within the English shelves,
Europe's commander, nor the English king,
Should not have mov'd the love of Peggy from her lord.

*Post.* What answer shall I return to my lord?

*Mar.* First, for thou cam'st from Lacy whom I lov'd,—
Ah, give me leave to sigh at very thought!—
Take thou, my friend, the hundred pounds he sent;
For Marg'ret's resolution craves no dower:
The world shall be to her as vanity;
Wealth, trash; love, hate; pleasure, despair:
For I will straight to stately Framlingham,
And in the abbey there be shorn a nun,
And yield my loves and liberty to God.
Fellow, I give thee this, not for the news,
For those be hateful unto Margaret,
But for thou'rt Lacy's man, once Marg'ret's love.

*Post.* What I have heard, what passions I have seen,
I'll make report of them unto the earl.

*Mar.* Say that she joys his fancies be at rest,
And prays that his misfortune may be hers. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

## SCENE XI. *Friar Bacon's cell.*

FRIAR BACON *is discovered lying on a bed, with a white stick in one hand, a book in the other, and a lamp lighted beside him; and the* Brazen Head, *and* MILES *with weapons by him.*

*Bacon.* Miles, where are you?

*Miles.* Here, sir.

*Bacon.* How chance you tarry so long?

*Miles.* Think you that the watching of the Brazen Head craves no furniture? I warrant you, sir, I have so armed myself that if all your devils come, I will not fear them an inch.

*Bacon.* Miles,
Thou know'st that I have divèd into hell,
And sought the darkest palaces of fiends;
That with my magic spells great Belcephon
Hath left his lodge and kneelèd at my cell;
The rafters of the earth rent from the poles,
And three-form'd Luna hid her silver looks,
Trembling upon her concave continent,
When Bacon read upon his magic book.
With seven years' tossing necromantic charms,
Poring upon dark Hecat's principles,
I have fram'd out a monstrous head of brass,
That, by the enchanting forces of the devil,
Shall tell out strange and uncouth aphorisms,
And girt fair England with a wall of brass.
Bungay and I have watch'd these threescore days,
And now our vital spirits crave some rest:
If Argus liv'd, and had his hundred eyes,
They could not over-watch Phobetor's night.
Now, Miles, in thee rests Friar Bacon's weal:
The honour and renown of all his life
Hangs in the watching of this Brazen Head;
Therefore I charge thee by the immortal God,
That holds the souls of men within his fist,

Digitized by Google

This night thou watch; for ere the morning-star
Sends out his glorious glister on the north,
The head will speak: then, Miles, upon thy life,
Wake me; for then by magic art I'll work
To end my seven years' task with excellence.
If that a wink but shut thy watchful eye,
Then farewell Bacon's glory and his fame!
Draw close the curtains, Miles: now, for thy life,
Be watchful, and— [*Falls asleep.*

*Miles.* So; I thought you would talk yourself asleep anon; and 'tis no marvel, for Bungay on the days, and he on the nights, have watched just these ten and fifty days: now this is the night, and 'tis my task, and no more. Now, Jesus bless me, what a goodly head it is! and a nose! you talk of *nos autem glorificare*; but here 's a nose that I warrant may be called *nos autem populare* for the people of the parish. Well, I am furnished with weapons: now, sir, I will set me down by a post, and make it as good as a watchman to wake me, if I chance to slumber. I thought, Goodman Head, I would call you out of your *memento*. Passion o' God, I have almost broke my pate! [*A great noise.*] Up, Miles, to your task; take your brown-bill in your hand; here 's some of your master's hobgoblins abroad.

*The Brazen Head.* Time is.

*Miles.* Time is! Why, Master Brazen-head, you have such a capital nose, and answer you with syllables, 'Time is'? Is this my master's cunning, to spend seven years' study about 'Time is'? Well, sir, it may be we shall have some better orations of it anon: well, I'll watch you as narrowly as ever you were watched, and I'll play with you as the nightingale with the slow-worm; I'll set a prick against my breast. Now rest there, Miles. Lord have mercy upon me, I have almost killed myself. [*A great noise.*] Up, Miles; list how they rumble.

*The Brazen Head.* Time was.

*Miles.* Well, Friar Bacon, you have spent your seven-years' study well, that can make your head speak but two

Digitized by Google

words at once, 'Time was.' Yea, marry, time was when my master was a wise man, but that was before he began to make the Brazen Head. You shall lie while you ache, an your head speak no better. Well, I will watch, and walk up and down, and be a peripatetian and a philosopher of Aristotle's stamp. [*A great noise.*] What, a fresh noise? Take thy pistols in hand, Miles.

*The Brazen Head.* Time is past.

[*A lightning flashes forth, and a hand appears that breaks down the* Head *with a hammer.*

*Miles.* Master, master, up! hell's broken loose; your head speaks; and there's such a thunder and lightning, that I warrant all Oxford is up in arms. Out of your bed, and take a brown-bill in your hand; the latter day is come.

*Bacon.* Miles, I come. [*Rises and comes forward.*] O, passing warily watch'd!
Bacon will make thee next himself in love.
When spake the head?

*Miles.* When spake the head! did not you say that he should tell strange principles of philosophy? Why, sir, it speaks but two words at a time.

*Bacon.* Why, villain, hath it spoken oft?

*Miles.* Oft! ay, marry, hath it, thrice; but in all those three times it hath uttered but seven words.

*Bacon.* As how?

*Miles.* Marry, sir, the first time he said 'Time is,' as if Fabius Cumentator should have pronounced a sentence; [the second time] he said, 'Time was'; and the third time, with thunder and lightning, as in great choler, he said, 'Time is past.'

*Bacon.* 'Tis past indeed. Ah, villain! time is past:
My life, my fame, my glory, are all past.—
Bacon,
The turrets of thy hope are ruin'd down,
Thy seven years' study lieth in the dust:
Thy Brazen Head lies broken through a slave,

Digitized by Google

That watch'd, and would not when the head did will.—
What said the head first?

*Miles.* Even, sir, 'Time is.'

*Bacon.* Villain, if thou had'st called to Bacon then,
If thou hadst watch'd, and wak'd the sleepy friar,
The Brazen Head had utter'd aphorisms,
And England had been circled round with brass:
But proud Asmenoth, ruler of the north,
And Demogorgon, master of the fates,
Grudge that a mortal man should work so much.
Hell trembled at my deep-commanding spells,
Fiends frown'd to see a man their over-match;
Bacon might boast more than a man might boast;
But now the braves of Bacon have an end,
Europe's conceit of Bacon hath an end,
His seven years' practice sorteth to ill end:
And, villain, sith my glory hath an end,
I will appoint thee to some fatal end.
Villain, avoid! get thee from Bacon's sight!
Vagrant, go roam and range about the world,
And perish as a vagabond on earth!

*Miles.* Why, then, sir, you forbid me your service?

*Bacon.* My service, villain, with a fatal curse,
That direful plagues and mischief fall on thee.

*Miles.* 'Tis no matter, I am against you with the old proverb,—The more the fox is cursed, the better he fares. God be with you, sir: I'll take but a book in my hand, a wide-sleeved gown on my back, and a crowned cap on my head, and see if I can want promotion.

*Bacon.* Some fiend or ghost haunt on thy weary steps,
Until they do transport thee quick to hell:
For Bacon shall have never merry day,
To lose the fame and honour of his head. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

## SCENE XII. *At Court.*

*Enter the* EMPEROR, *the* KING OF CASTILE, KING HENRY, ELINOR, PRINCE EDWARD, LACY, *and* RALPH SIMNELL.

*Emp.* Now, lovely prince, the prime of Albion's wealth,
How fare the Lady Elinor and you?
What, have you courted and found Castile fit
To answer England in equivalence?
Will't be a match 'twixt bonny Nell and thee?

*P. Edw.* Should Paris enter in the courts of Greece,
And not lie fetter'd in fair Helen's looks?
Or Phœbus scape those piercing amorets
That Daphne glancèd at his deity?
Can Edward, then, sit by a flame and freeze,
Whose heat puts Helen and fair Daphne down?
Now, monarchs, ask the lady if we gree.

*K. Hen.* What, madam, hath my son found grace or no?

*Elin.* Seeing, my lord, his lovely counterfeit,
And hearing how his mind and shape agreed,
I came not, troop'd with all this warlike train,
Doubting of love, but so affectionate,
As Edward hath in England what he won in Spain.

*K. of Cast.* A match, my lord; these wantons needs must love:
Men must have wives, and women will be wed:
Let's haste the day to honour up the rites.

*Ralph.* Sirrah Harry, shall Ned marry Nell?

*K. Hen.* Ay, Ralph; how then?

*Ralph.* Marry, Harry, follow my counsel: send for Friar Bacon to marry them, for he'll so conjure him and her with his necromancy, that they shall love together like pig and lamb whilst they live.

*K. of Cast.* But hearest thou, Ralph, art thou content to have Elinor to thy lady?

*Ralph.* Ay, so she will promise me two things.



Digitized by Google

*K. of Cast.* What 's that, Ralph?

*Ralph.* That she will never scold with Ned, nor fight with me.—Sirrah Harry, I have put her down with a thing unpossible.

*K. Hen.* What 's that, Ralph?

*Ralph.* Why, Harry, didst thou ever see that a woman could both hold her tongue and her hands? No: but when egg-pies grow on apple-trees, then will thy grey mare prove a bag-piper.

*Emp.* What says the Lord of Castile and the Earl of Lincoln, that they are in such earnest and secret talk?

*K. of Cast.* I stand, my lord, amazèd at his talk,
How he discourseth of the constancy
Of one surnam'd, for beauty's excellence,
The Fair Maid of merry Fressingfield.

*K. Hen.* 'Tis true, my lord, 'tis wondrous for to hear;
Her beauty passing Mars's paramour,
Her virgin right as rich as Vesta's was.
Lacy and Ned hath told me miracles.

*K. of Cast.* What says Lord Lacy? shall she be his wife?

*Lacy.* Or else Lord Lacy is unfit to live.—
May it please your highness give me leave to post
To Fressingfield, I'll fetch the bonny girl,
And prove, in true appearance at the court,
What I have vouchèd often with my tongue.

*K. Hen.* Lacy, go to the 'querry of my stable,
And take such coursers as shall fit thy turn;
Hie thee to Fressingfield, and bring home the lass;
And, for her fame flies through the English coast,
If it may please the Lady Elinor,
One day shall match your excellence and her.

*Elin.* We Castile ladies are not very coy;
Your highness may command a greater boon:
And glad were I to grace the Lincoln Earl
With being partner of his marriage-day.

*P. Edw.* Gramercy, Nell, for I do love the lord,
As he that 's second to thyself in love.

Digitized by Google

*Ralph.* You love her?—Madam Nell, never believe him you, though he swears he loves you.

*Elin.* Why, Ralph?

*Ralph.* Why, his love is like unto a tapster's glass that is broken with every touch; for he loved the fair maid of Fressingfield once out of all ho.—Nay, Ned, never wink upon me; I care not, I.

*K. Hen.* Ralph tells all; you shall have a good secretary of him.—
But, Lacy, haste thee post to Fressingfield;
For ere thou hast fitted all things for her state,
The solemn marriage-day will be at hand.

*Lacy.* I go, my Lord. [*Exit.*

*Emp.* How shall we pass this day, my Lord?

*K. Hen.* To horse, my lord; the day is passing fair,
We 'll fly the partridge, or go rouse the deer.
Follow, my lords; you shall not want for sport. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE XIII. *Friar Bacon's cell.*

*Enter to* FRIAR BACON, FRIAR BUNGAY.

*Bun.* What means the friar that frolick'd it of late,
To sit as melancholy in his cell
As if he had neither lost nor won to-day?

*Bacon.* Ah, Bungay, ah, my Brazen Head is spoil'd,
My glory gone, my seven years' study lost!
The fame of Bacon, bruited through the world,
Shall end and perish with this deep disgrace.

*Bun.* Bacon hath built foundation of his fame
So surely on the wings of true report,
With acting strange and uncouth miracles,
As this cannot infringe what he deserves.

*Bacon.* Bungay, sit down, for by prospective skill
I find this day shall fall out ominous:



Digitized by Google

Some deadly act shall 'tide me ere I sleep;
But what and wherein little can I guess.
My mind is heavy, whatsoe'er shall hap.
[*Knocking within.*
Who's that knocks?

*Bun.* Two scholars that desire to speak with you.

*Bacon.* Bid them come in.

*Enter two* Scholars.

Now, my youths, what would you have?

*First Schol.* Sir, we are Suffolk-men and neighbouring friends;
Our fathers in their countries lusty squires;
Their lands adjoin: in Cratfield mine doth dwell,
And his in Laxfield. We are college-mates,
Sworn brothers, as our fathers live as friends.

*Bacon.* To what end is all this?

*Second Schol.* Hearing your worship kept within your cell
A glass prospective, wherein men might see
Whatso their thoughts or hearts' desire could wish,
We come to know how that our fathers fare.

*Bacon.* My glass is free for every honest man.
Sit down, and you shall see ere long, how
Or in what state your friendly fathers live.
Meanwhile, tell me your names.

*First Schol.* Mine Lambert.

*Second Schol.* And mine Serlsby.

*Bacon.* Bungay, I smell there will be a tragedy.

*Enter* LAMBERT *and* SERLSBY *with rapiers and daggers.*

*Lam.* Serlsby, thou hast kept thine hour like a man:
Thou'rt worthy of the title of a squire,
That durst, for proof of thy affection
And for thy mistress' favour, prize thy blood.
Thou know'st what words did pass at Fressingfield,
Such shameless braves as manhood cannot brook:
Ay, for I scorn to bear such piercing taunts,
Prepare thee, Serlsby; one of us will die.

Digitized by Google

*Ser.* Thou see'st I single [meet] thee [in] the field,
And what I spake, I'll máintain with my sword:
Stand on thy guard, I cannot scold it out.
An if thou kill me, think I have a son,
That lives in Oxford in the Broadgates-hall,
Who will revenge his father's blood with blood.

*Lam.* And, Serlsby, I have there a lusty boy,
That dares at weapon buckle with thy son,
And lives in Broadgates too, as well as thine:
But draw thy rapier, for we'll have a bout.

*Bacon.* Now, lusty younkers, look within the glass,
And tell me if you can discern your sires.

*First Schol.* Serlsby, 'tis hard; thy father offers wrong,
To combat with my father in the field.

*Second Schol.* Lambert, thou liest, my father's is th' abuse,
And thou shalt find it, if my father have harm.

*Bun.* How goes it, sirs?

*First Schol.* Our fathers are in combat hard by Fressing-field.

*Bacon.* Sit still, my friends, and see the event.

*Lam.* Why stand'st thou, Serlsby? doubt'st thou of thy life?
A veney, man! fair Marg'ret craves so much.

*Ser.* Then this for her.

*First Schol.* Ah, well thrust!

*Second Schol.* But mark the ward.

[LAMBERT *and* SERLSBY *stab each other.*

*Lam.* O, I am slain! [*Dies.*

*Ser.* And I,—Lord have mercy on me! [*Dies.*

*First Schol.* My father slain!—Serlsby, ward that.

*Second Schol.* And so is mine!—Lambert, I'll quite thee well. [*The two* Scholars *stab each other, and die.*

*Bun.* O strange stratagem!

*Bacon.* See, friar, where the fathers both lie dead!—
Bacon, thy magic doth effect this massacre:

Digitized by Google

This glass prospective worketh many woes;
And therefore seeing these brave lusty Brutes,
These friendly youths, did perish by thine art,
End all thy magic and thine art at once.
The poniard that did end their fatal lives,
Shall break the cause efficient of their woes.
So fade the glass, and end with it the shows
That necromancy did infuse the crystal with.
[*Breaks the glass.*

*Bun.* What means learn'd Bacon thus to break his glass?

*Bacon.* I tell thee, Bungay, it repents me sore
That ever Bacon meddled in this art.
The hours I have spent in pyromantic spells,
The fearful tossing in the latest night
Of papers full of necromantic charms,
Conjuring and adjuring devils and fiends,
With stole and alb and strong pentageron;
The wresting of the holy name of God,
As Sother, Eloim, and Adonai,
Alpha, Manoth, and Tetragrammaton,
With praying to the five-fold powers of heaven,
Are instances that Bacon must be damn'd
For using devils to countervail his God.—
Yet, Bacon, cheer thee, drown not in despair:
Sins have their salves, repentance can do much:
Think Mercy sits where Justice holds her seat,
And from those wounds those bloody Jews did pierce,
Which by thy magic oft did bleed afresh,
From thence for thee the dew of mercy drops,
To wash the wrath of high Jehovah's ire,
And make thee as a new-born babe from sin.—
Bungay, I'll spend the remnant of my life
In pure devotion, praying to my God
That he would save what Bacon vainly lost. [*Exeunt.*

Digitized by Google

## SCENE XIV. *Fressingfield.*

*Enter* MARGARET *in nun's apparel, the* Keeper, *and their* Friend.

*Keeper.* Marg'ret, be not so headstrong in these vows:
O, bury not such beauty in a cell,
That England hath held famous for the hue!
Thy father's hair, like to the silver blooms
That beautify the shrubs of Africa,
Shall fall before the dated time of death,
Thus to forego his lovely Margaret.

*Mar.* Ah, father, when the harmony of heaven
Soundeth the measures of a lively faith,
The vain illusions of this flattering world
Seem odious to the thoughts of Margaret.
I lovèd once,—Lord Lacy was my love;
And now I hate myself for that I lov'd,
And doted more on him than on my God,—
For this I scourge myself with sharp repents.
But now the touch of such aspiring sins
Tells me all love is lust but love of heavens;
That beauty us'd for love is vanity:
The world contains naught but alluring baits,
Pride, flattery, and inconstant thoughts.
To shun the pricks of death, I leave the world,
And vow to meditate on heavenly bliss,
To live in Framlingham a holy nun,
Holy and pure in conscience and in deed;
And for to wish all maids to learn of me
To seek heaven's joy before earth's vanity.

*Friend.* And will you, then, Marg'ret, be shorn a nun, and so leave us all?

*Mar.* Now farewell world, the engine of all woe!
Farewell to friends and father! Welcome Christ!
Adieu to dainty robes! this base attire

Digitized by Google

Better befits an humble mind to God
Than all the show of rich habiliments.
Farewell, O love! and, with fond love, farewell
Sweet Lacy, whom I lovèd once so dear!
Ever be well, but never in my thoughts,
Lest I offend to think on Lacy's love:
But even to that, as to the rest, farewell.

*Enter* LACY, WARREN, *and* ERMSBY, *booted and spurred.*

*Lacy.* Come on, my wags, we're near the Keeper's lodge.
Here have I oft walk'd in the watery meads,
And chatted with my lovely Margaret.

*War.* Sirrah Ned, is not this the Keeper?

*Lacy.* 'Tis the same.
Keeper, how far'st thou? holla, man, what cheer?
How doth Peggy, thy daughter and my love?

*Keeper.* Ah, good my lord! O, woe is me for Peggy!
See where she stands clad in her nun's attire,
Ready for to be shorn in Framlingham:
She leaves the world because she left your love.
O, good my lord, persuade her if you can!

*Lacy.* Why, how now, Marg'ret! what, a malcontent?
A nun? what holy father taught you this,
To task yourself to such a tedious life
As die a maid? 'twere injury to me,
To smother up such beauty in a cell.

*Mar.* Lord Lacy, thinking of my former 'miss,
How fond the prime of wanton years were spent
In love (O, fie upon that fond conceit,
Whose hap and essence hangeth in the eye!),
I leave both love and love's content at once,
Betaking me to him that is true love,
And leaving all the world for love of him.

*Lacy.* Whence, Peggy, comes this metamorphosis?
What, shorn a nun, and I have from the court
Posted with coursers to convey thee hence
To Windsor, where our marriage shall be kept!

Digitized by Google

Thy wedding-robes are in the tailor's hands.
Come, Peggy, leave these peremptory vows.

*Mar.* Did not my lord resign his interest,
And make divorce 'twixt Margaret and him?

*Lacy.* 'Twas but to try sweet Peggy's constancy.
But will fair Marg'ret leave her love and lord?

*Mar.* Is not heaven's joy before earth's fading bliss,
And life above sweeter than life in love?

*Lacy.* Why, then, Marg'ret will be shorn a nun?

*Mar.* Marg'ret
Hath made a vow which may not be revok'd.

*War.* We cannot stay, my lord; an if she be so strict,
Our leisure grants us not to woo afresh.

*Erms.* Choose you, fair damsel,—yet the choice is yours,—
Either a solemn nunnery or the court,
God or Lord Lacy: which contents you best,
To be a nun or else Lord Lacy's wife?

*Lacy.* A good motion.—Peggy, your answer must be short.

*Mar.* The flesh is frail: my lord doth know it well,
That when he comes with his enchanting face,
Whate'er betide, I cannot say him nay.
Off goes the habit of a maiden's heart,
And, seeing fortune will, fair Framlingham,
And all the show of holy nuns, farewell!
Lacy for me, if he will be my lord.

*Lacy.* Peggy, thy lord, thy love, thy husband.
Trust me, by truth of knighthood, that the king
Stays for to marry matchless Elinor,
Until I bring thee richly to the court,
That one day may both marry her and thee.—
How say'st thou, Keeper? art thou glad of this?

*Keep.* As if the English king had given
The park and deer of Fressingfield to me.

*Erm.* I pray thee, my Lord of Sussex, why art thou in a brown study?

Digitized by Google

*War.* To see the nature of women; that be they never so near God, yet they love to die in a man's arms.

*Lacy.* What have you fit for breakfast? We have hied
And posted all this night to Fressingfield.

*Mar.* Butter and cheese, and umbles of a deer,
Such as poor keepers have within their lodge.

*Lacy.* And not a bottle of wine?

*Mar.* We'll find one for my lord.

*Lacy.* Come, Sussex, let us in: we shall have more,
For she speaks least, to hold her promise sure. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE XV. *Friar Bacon's cell.*

*Enter a* Devil.

*Devil.* How restless are the ghosts of hellish sprites,
When every charmer with his magic spells
Calls us from nine-fold-trenchèd Phlegethon,
To scud and over-scour the earth in post
Upon the speedy wings of swiftest winds!
Now Bacon hath rais'd me from the darkest deep,
To search about the world for Miles his man,
For Miles, and to torment his lazy bones
For careless watching of his Brazen Head.
See where he comes: O, he is mine.

*Enter* MILES *in a gown and a corner-cap.*

*Miles.* A scholar, quoth you! marry, sir, I would I had been made a bottle-maker when I was made a scholar; for I can get neither to be a deacon, reader, nor schoolmaster, no, not the clerk of a parish. Some call me dunce; another saith, my head is as full of Latin as an egg 's full of oatmeal: thus I am tormented, that the devil and Friar Bacon haunt me.—Good Lord, here 's one of my master's devils! I'll go speak to him.—What, Master Plutus, how cheer you?

*Dev.* Dost thou know me?

Digitized by Google

*Miles.* Know you, sir! why, are not you one of my master's devils, that were wont to come to my master, Doctor Bacon, at Brazen-nose?

*Dev.* Yes, marry, am I.

*Miles.* Good Lord, Master Plutus, I have seen you a thousand times at my master's, and yet I had never the manners to make you drink. But, sir, I am glad to see how conformable you are to the statute.—I warrant you, he's as yeomanly a man as you shall see: mark you, masters, here's a plain honest man, without welt or guard.—But I pray you, sir, do you come lately from hell?

*Dev.* Ay, marry: how then?

*Miles.* Faith, 'tis a place I have desired long to see: have you not good tippling-houses there? may not a man have a lusty fire there, a pot of good ale, a pair of cards, a swinging piece of chalk, and a brown toast that will clap a white waistcoat on a cup of good drink?

*Dev.* All this you may have there.

*Miles.* You are for me, friend, and I am for you. But I pray you, may I not have an office there?

*Dev.* Yes, a thousand: what wouldst thou be?

*Miles.* By my troth, sir, in a place where I may profit myself. I know hell is a hot place, and men are marvellous dry, and much drink is spent there; I would be a tapster.

*Dev.* Thou shalt.

*Miles.* There's nothing lets me from going with you, but that 'tis a long journey, and I have never a horse.

*Dev.* Thou shalt ride on my back.

*Miles.* Now surely here's a courteous devil, that, for to pleasure his friend, will not stick to make a jade of himself.—But I pray you, goodman friend, let me move a question to you.

*Dev.* What's that?

*Miles.* I pray you, whether is your pace a trot or an amble?

*Dev.* An amble.

Digitized by Google

*Miles.* 'Tis well; but take heed it be not a trot: but 'tis no matter, I'll prevent it. [*Puts on spurs.*

*Dev.* What dost?

*Miles.* Marry, friend, I put on my spurs; for if I find your pace either a trot or else uneasy, I'll put you to a false gallop; I'll make you feel the benefit of my spurs.

*Dev.* Get up upon my back.

[MILES *mounts on the* Devil's *back.*

*Miles.* O Lord, here's even a goodly marvel, when a man rides to hell on the devil's back! [*Exeunt, the* Devil *roaring.*

## SCENE XVI. *At Court.*

*Enter the* EMPEROR *with a pointless sword; next the* KING OF CASTILE *carrying a sword with a point;* LACY *carrying the globe;* PRINCE EDWARD; WARREN *carrying a rod of gold with a dove on it;* ERMSBY *with a crown and sceptre;* PRINCESS ELINOR *with* MARGARET *Countess of Lincoln on her left hand;* KING HENRY; BACON; *and* Lords *attending.*

*P. Edw.* Great potentates, earth's miracles for state,
Think that Prince Edward humbles at your feet,
And, for these favours, on his martial sword
He vows perpetual homage to yourselves,
Yielding these honours unto Elinor.

*K. Hen.* Gramercies, lordings; old Plantagenet,
That rules and sways the Albion diadem,
With tears discovers these conceivèd joys,
And vows requital, if his men-at-arms,
The wealth of England, or due honours done
To Elinor, may quite his favourites.
But all this while what say you to the dames
That shine like to the crystal lamps of heaven?

*Emp.* If but a third were added to these two,
They did surpass those gorgeous images
That gloried Ida with rich beauty's wealth.

Digitized by Google

*Mar.* 'Tis I, my lords, who humbly on my knee
Must yield her orisons to mighty Jove
For lifting up his handmaid to this state;
Brought from her homely cottage to the court,
And grac'd with kings, princes, and emperors,
To whom (next to the noble Lincoln Earl)
I vow obedience, and such humble love
As may a handmaid to such mighty men.

*P. Elin.* Thou martial man that wears the Almain crown,
And you the western potentates of might,
The Albion princess, English Edward's wife,
Proud that the lovely star of Fressingfield,
Fair Marg'ret, Countess to the Lincoln Earl,
Attends on Elinor,—gramercies, lord, for her,—
'Tis I give thanks for Marg'ret, to you all,
And rest for her due bounden to yourselves.

*K. Hen.* Seeing the marriage is solémnizèd,
Let's march in triumph to the royal feast.—
But why stands Friar Bacon here so mute?

*Bacon.* Repentant for the follies of my youth,
That magic's secret mysteries misled,
And joyful that this royal marriage
Portends such bliss unto this matchless realm.

*K. Hen.* Why, Bacon,
What strange event shall happen to this land?
Or what shall grow from Edward and his queen?

*Bacon.* I find by deep prescience of mine art,
Which once I temper'd in my secret cell,
That here where Brute did build his Troynovant,
From forth the royal garden of a king
Shall flourish out so rich and fair a bud,
Whose brightness shall deface proud Phœbus' flower,
And over-shadow Albion with her leaves.
Till then Mars shall be master of the field,
But then the stormy threats of war shall cease:
The horse shall stamp as careless of the pike,
Drums shall be turn'd to timbrels of delight;

Digitized by Google

With wealthy favours plenty shall enrich
The strand that gladded wandering Brute to see,
And peace from heaven shall harbour in these leaves
That gorgeous beautify this matchless flower:
Apollo's heliotropion then shall stoop,
And Venus' hyacinth shall vail her top;
Juno shall shut her gillyflowers up,
And Pallas' bay shall 'bash her brightest green;
Ceres' carnation, in consórt with those,
Shall stoop and wonder at Diana's rose.

*K. Hen.* This prophecy is mystical.—
But, glorious commanders of Europa's love,
That make fair England like that wealthy isle
Circled with Gihon and swift Eúphrates,
In royalizing Henry's Albion
With presence of your princely mightiness,—
Let's march: the tables all are spread,
And viands, such as England's wealth affords,
Are ready set to furnish out the boards.
You shall have welcome, mighty potentates:
It rests to furnish up this royal feast,
Only your hearts be frolic; for the time
Craves that we taste of naught but jouissance.
Thus glories England over all the west. [*Exeunt omnes.*

*Omne tulit punctum qui miscuit utile dulci.*

Digitized by Google

# NOTES

## THE TRAGICAL HISTORY

OF

# DOCTOR FAUSTUS

### *Dramatis Personae.*

**The Pope.** In the quartos of 1604 and 1609 'the Pope' is not identified with any particular historical Pontiff, but in the scene inserted in the quarto of 1616 he is addressed as 'Pope Adrian,' and is introduced as having overcome the attempt of a rival, 'Saxon Bruno,' who had been 'elected' Pope by the Emperor, and as having in this victory apparently enjoyed the aid of 'lord Raymond, King of Hungary.' All this, of which there is nothing in the old Faustbuch, is without any foundation in fact, whether as referring to the pontificate of Adrian VI (1522–1523), or to any other. The historical 'Saxon Bruno,' a kinsman of the Emperor Otto III, held the Papacy as Gregory V from 996–999, and is therefore out of the question. It is hardly possible that there can be any allusion, as Notter suggests, to Giordano Bruno, who was burnt for heresy at Rome in 1600 (Faustus in the edition of 1616 proposes that Bruno shall suffer the same fate for the same reason); or, as is likewise suggested by Notter, that there should be a reference to Bruno Bishop of Toul, a relation of the Emperor Henry III (who was not a 'Saxon'), and elevated to the Papacy in 1049 as Leo IX. This last Bruno appears to have reconciled the Emperor with the King of Hungary; but that King's name was Andrew I, nor was there ever, so far as I am aware, a 'Raymond King of Hungary.'

**Cardinal of Lorraine.** The reason why this name is given to the Cardinal is simply that the Cardinals of Lorraine—members of the

Digitized by Google

house of Guise—had played so prominent a part in the history of the sixteenth century that the conjunction had a familiar sound for English ears. The first of these Cardinals, John (the brother of Duke Claude), who would in point of time suit best for the 'Cardinal of Lorraine' of the play, died in 1550; the second, Charles (the brother of Duke Francis), whom by reason of his celebrity in connexion with the French Reformation and with the Council of Trent Marlowe was more likely to have in his mind, died in 1574; of the third, Lewis (the brother of Duke Henry), the assassination, in 1588, is introduced into Marlowe's Massacre at Paris.

**The Emperor of Germany.** Charles V (see Chorus before sc. viii, l. 14), Emperor from 1519–1556. In the Faustbuch the corresponding episode is laid at Innsbruck, whence Charles V had to take flight on the sudden hostile approach of Maurice of Saxony in May 1552.

**The Duke of Vanholt.** This mis-spelling of the name Anhalt admits of explanation (see Introduction, p. lxxii, note 1), but it is the more curious, as the name of the princes of Anhalt ought to have been well known in London from the year 1596, when Lewis Prince of Anhalt and his brother Hans Ernst were in London, and visited the theatres. (See Cohn, Shakespeare in Germany, pp. xiv–xvi.) According to the Faustbuch (see Introduction, p. xciii) Faustus's host was 'the Count of Anhalt, [of the house] who are nowadays princes.' This does not agree with history; for the first of the Counts of Anhalt who called himself Prince was Henry, who succeeded in 1212. The various possessions of the house were temporarily united in the middle of the sixteenth century; and from a passage in this episode in the Faustbuch, mentioning a hill near the town, on which the magic of Faustus had built a castle, it has been conjectured that the place may be Aschersleben, near which lay an old ruined castle Ascharien, or Ballenstätt, where there was likewise an ancestral castle of the princes of Anhalt-Zerbst. A little town and a castle are likewise mentioned in the Volksbuch of Eulenspiegel (Owl-glass), in a passage relating how that popular personage took service with the Count of Anhalt; and this, as Kühne conjectures, may be the origin of the introduction of the name of Anhalt into the story of Faustus.—The late Cologne broadsheet-poem on Doctor Faustus (ante, p. lxxvi, note 2) states that Faustus was 'born of Anhalt.'

**Faustus.** See Introduction, pp. liv–lxxi.

**Valdes.** Whether or not, as has been thought probable, 'German' Valdes (i. 63 and 96) be a mere misrepresentation of the name of 'Hermann'—for why should Faustus distinguish Valdes as a German, when he was himself of that nation; and why should he thus imply that Cornelius (Agrippa), undoubtedly a German, was not such?—it remains unknown whom Marlowe intended by this personage. It is impossible

Digitized by Google

to accept Düntzer's former fancy, that he was thinking of Peter Waldus, 'the founder' (?) of the sect of the Waldenses, who as heretics were likewise accused of a compact with the Evil One; Waldus was born at Lyons in France, and died rather more than three centuries before the birth of Cornelius Agrippa, with whom he is here coupled. Subsequently Düntzer (see Anglia, i. 53) with some hesitation conjectured 'Grimoaldus' for German Valdes, reading in l. 98 'Sweet Grimoaldus.' (As to the poet Nicholas Grimoald, who was imprisoned for heresy in Mary's reign, but recanted, and as to his poem on the death of the Egyptian astronomer Zoroas, see Warton's History of English Poetry, W. C. Hazlitt's ed., i. 49–55. No other 'Grimoaldus,' s. Grimaldi, seems to suit the position.) This conjecture deserves a cold reception, and I cannot anticipate a much better fate for the supposition that there may be a reference to Juan de Valdès, the brother of Charles V's secretary, Alfonso de Valdès. Juan, who went to Naples as secretary of the Viceroy, was, like his brother, a man of humanistic learning, but, having become estranged from the way of thinking of Catholic Spain, held views on Justification which were afterwards condemned by the Inquisition. See Ranke, Die Römischen Päpste (6th ed.), i. 91. He has accordingly come to be reckoned among the Protestants of the sixteenth century. He is said to have been accused of Socinianism; and it may be noticed that a 'Faustus Socinus' (apparently the nephew of Lælius Socinus and a resident in Poland 1579–1604; see Masson's Life of Milton, iv. 42) is mentioned as having been confounded with the real Doctor Faust.

**Cornelius.** Although, oddly enough, in i. 115–116 'Agrippa' appears to be spoken of as deceased, while 'Cornelius' is on the scene, there can be no doubt but that both are intended for the same historical personage, the famous Henry Cornelius Agrippa von Nettesheim, of whom Delrio states Faust to have been a friend and companion. Agrippa was at and after the time of his death accounted a magician, and his fame at an early date reached England, where a translation, by James Sandford, of one of Agrippa's most celebrated works appeared in 1569 under the title 'Of the Vanitie and Uncertaintie of Artes and Sciences,' and was several times reprinted. He is frequently mentioned in R. Scot's Discovery of Witchcraft (1584). The following lines from bk. ix of Thomas Heywood's Hierarchy of the Blessed Angels (1637) are worth citing, as illustrating the traditional connexion between Faust and Cornelius Agrippa:

> 'Of Faustus and Agrippa it is told
> That in their travels they bare seeming gold
> Which would abide the touch; and by the way
> In all their Hostries they would freely pay;



Digitized by Google

But, parted thence, myne Host thinking to finde
Those glorious Pieces they had left behinde
Safe in his bag, sees nothing, saue together
Round scutes of horne and pieces of old leather.
Of such I could cite many . . .'

The life of Cornelius Agrippa, of which an account, together with a summary of the contents of his two most famous works, will be found in Henry Morley's biography (2 vols. 1856), is one of the most curious and interesting pictures of the labours and struggles of the Humanists of the Renascence. More recently his life has been rewritten, apparently with much judiciousness, by A. Prost, in his Corneille Agrippa, sa vie et ses œuvres. 'Agrippa,' says Morley, 'began his life by mastering nearly the whole circle of the sciences and arts as far as books described it, and ended by declaring the uncertainty and vanity' of both. Born at Cologne in 1486, he served the Emperor Maximilian I both as secretary and soldier, and obtained the honour of knighthood in recognition of his gallantry. He was at the same time an eager student, and at the early age of 22 had already composed the three books De Occultâ Philosophiâ which, when published many years later (1531), brought upon his name the infamy long attached to it by monastic and popular superstition. This work was a treatise on Cabbalism, inspired by Reuchlin's Hebrew-Christian method of interpreting the mystic lore of the Jews. Meanwhile the life of Agrippa had been that of a wanderer, divided between military and diplomatic service, university lectures and authorship, and controversy with the monks. Employed in a prominent way at the Council of Pisa, he drew upon himself the excommunication of Pope Julius II, which was removed by the next Pope, Leo X. In 1518 he accepted the post of Advocate and Orator to the Free City of Metz, but two years later was driven from the town as a successful opponent of Dominican intolerance. He then practised medicine in Switzerland, where he came into closer contact with the Reformation movement, without however seceding from the Church of Rome. He was a correspondent of Erasmus. (It may be remembered that in Nash's Unfortunate Traveller (1594) Surrey and the author meet 'that abundant Scholler *Cornelius Agrippa* at Wittenberg.' See Nash's Works, ed. Grosart, v. 75.) In 1524 he took service at Lyons as court physician to Louisa of Savoy, and here wrote his work De Incertitudine et Vanitate Scientiarum et Artium, a satirical review of their existing condition. In this book he recanted whatever errors there might be in his juvenile work, and, without denying the existence of the Cabbala, discouraged the search for it. But the attacks made in this later work upon the Court and courtiers brought upon him the wrath of the Emperor Charles V, when the book was published in 1531. Three years previously Agrippa

Digitized by Google

had removed to Antwerp, where he had been appointed Councillor of the Archives and Historiographer. Thus, having been involved in difficulties and in a quarrel with the monks of the University of Louvain, he had to fly from the Empire, and died as a homeless wanderer at Grenoble in 1535 on his way to Lyons, where the completest extant edition of his works was published about the year 1550. Superstition and intolerance busied themselves with his mysterious habits of life, and more especially converted a favourite black dog, by which he was attended in his closing days, into a familiar spirit. This legend, which has many parallels (as for instance that of the dog of Doctor Faustus, and that of Friar Bungay; cf. also Ben Jonson's Every Man out of His Humour, iv. 4), was commemorated in a brutally intolerant inscription over his grave, and was discussed *pro* and *con.* by pious writers who, like Bodinus and Lercheimer (1585), believed in the diabolical agency, and by a faithful and intelligent follower, Weier (Wierus) (1515–1588), who in vain endeavoured to give a rational explanation of the relation between the man and the dog. Weier did further service to Agrippa's memory by protesting against the ascription to him, twenty-seven years after his death, of a foolish compilation called the fourth book of the work De Occultâ Philosophiâ (reprinted by Scheible, Kloster, iii. 564 seqq.).

**Wagner,** servant to Faustus. The name of Faustus's *famulus* (the usual term for students employed as assistants by German professors) is spelt 'Wagner' and 'Wagener' in the Faustbuch, where his Christian name is given as 'Christoph.' Widmann spells the name 'Waiger,' and gives 'Johan' as the Christian name. Goethe used the form 'Wagner,' and the curious circumstance is mentioned by Hayward, that one of Goethe's early friends—Heinrich Leopold Wagner—bore that name, who signalized himself by stealing from Faust (which had been confidentially communicated to him before publication) the idea of the tragic portion relating to Margaret, and making it the subject of a tragedy called The Infanticide. But it is clear from Goethe's Autobiography that he did not choose the name by way of revenge.—For the references to Wagner in the Faustbuch see Introduction, pp. cv, cxxiii, cxxix. It is noteworthy that Widmann makes Wagner the son of a Catholic priest (at Wasserburg in Bavaria). The requisite data as to the Wagnerbuch, and its English version, have been given in the Introduction, pp. lviii, lxii, lxxiv. In Wagner's adventures a Spirit called 'Auerhan' (woodcock, or 'Attercocke' in the Second Report; and Akercock, Belphegor's man, in Grim the Collier of Croyden, or The Devil and his Dame; compare 'Urian' as a name for the Devil) plays a part corresponding to that of Mephistophiles, and in the Second Report Wagner has a 'boy' in his service called 'Arthur Harmarvan'; just as in our play (ii. 4) one of the scholars calls Wagner Faustus's 'boy,' i.e. servant.



Digitized by Google

**Clown.** To this 'Clown' the 'Hans Wurst' (Jack Pudding) of the German puppet-plays on the story of Doctor Faustus (see Introduction, p. lxxvii) corresponds. In some of these Hans Wurst takes the still surviving name of 'Caspar' or 'Casperle.' Douce, in his Essay on the Clowns and Fools of Shakespeare (Illustrations of Shakespeare, vol. ii), shows that, while the term 'clown' was used as synonymous with 'fool' by our old writers, the former signified a character of much greater variety. The clown was occasionally the general domestic fool, but also a mere country booby (like Thomas and Richard in Friar Bacon), or a witty rustic, or a shrewd and witty servant. Thus he constituted an indispensable personage in the old English plays; and it is precisely the full licence to 'gag' allowed to the favourite performers of the character which renders it impossible to say how much, or how little, of the farcical business and dialogue in such a play as ours was 'written down' for him by the author. The English drama was rescued from the supremacy of the Clown at a relatively early period in its history, but in Germany Hans Wurst ruled the stage for the better part of a couple of centuries.

**Robin.** The familiar abbreviation for Robert, which even Queen Elizabeth did not disdain to apply to her favourite Leicester, and by which, according to Thomas Heywood, Robert Greene was invariably called. 'Rubin' is a favourite figure in the byplay of German mysteries. See Hase, Miracle Plays and Sacred Dramas (Engl. Tr.), p. 44 and notes.

**Ralph.** In the quarto of 1604 this name is invariably printed Rafe, according to pronunciation.

**Vintner,** i.e. wine-seller; improperly addressed as 'Drawer,' ix. 7, if there be not some confusion in the passage, which is different in the quarto of 1616.

**Horse-courser,** i.e. horse-dealer or horse-changer. To 'scorse, scorce or scourse' is an old word of doubtful origin, frequently used in the sense of 'to exchange.' So in the passage quoted in Nares from Harington's Orlando Furioso, xx. 78:

> 'This done, she makes the stately dame to light
> And with the aged woman cloths to scorse';

and in its special reference to horses: 'Will you scourse with him? you are in Smithfield, you may fit yourself with a fine easy-going street-nag,' etc. See Jonson's Bartholomew Fair (iii. 1), in which play one of the characters is 'Dan Jordan Knockem, a horse-courser and a ranger of Turnbull' (Turnmill-street); and cf. Bubulcus' graceless assumption of the same character in Shirley's Love-Tricks (iii. 5). One of the German translators humorously renders the word, which is also that of the English History, by 'Pferdephilister'; the French more literally by 'maquignon.' The Faustbuch has 'Rossteuscher.' When a sorcerer

Digitized by Google

meets a horse-dealer, Greek is meeting Greek. O. Francke, *u. s.* p. 38, cites from a burlesque, Mock-Thyestes (1674), a kind of proverb: 'Devils may learn of a Horse-courser.'

**A Knight.** Of this unfortunate personage the Faustbuch politely states that the author was desirous not to mention the name, inasmuch as he was a knight and a born baron; but the margin is less generous, adding 'Erat Baro ab Hardeck.' See Introduction, p. xcii.

**An Old Man.** The 'Old Man' of the Faustbuch is 'a Christian pious god-fearing physician' (see Introduction, p. cxxi, note 3); in the English History and Lercheimer his profession is not mentioned. He is called 'a pious pastor' in a late version of the legend; and may be identifiable with the historical Dr. Kling. See Introduction, p. li and note. In a late version of the story Faust has a final interview with his old father. According to A. Bielschowsky (Vierteljahrschrift für Litteraturgeschichte, iv. 215 note) the character of the 'warning old man' is not rare in the early German drama. It must be distinguished from that of the hortatory old man pure and simple of Euphues and the Euphuistic school (cf. C. H. Herford, A Few Suggestions on Greene and Shakspere in New Shakspere Society's Transactions, 1891, pp. 184–6).

**Scholars,** i.e. students.

**Lucifer.** The morning- and evening-star was known in ancient Italy under the name, among others, of 'Lucifer,' which was possibly a translation of the ordinary Greek name for the morning-star, Ἑωσφόρος or Φωσφόρος. The name was applied by Isaiah, xiv. 12, to Nebuchadnezzar King of Babylon, and transferred by Eusebius and subsequent authors to the chief of the angels expelled as rebels from heaven. In the systems of infernal government constructed by later writers, Lucifer was either placed at the head of all the devils, or reckoned as one of the seven chief infernal potentates ('electors') under the supremacy of Belial. In Marlowe's play he holds the supreme position (see iii. 67), though the term 'Prince of the East,' which was probably suggested by his name as the morning-star, and which is used of him v. 104, is in its Latin form applied to Belzebub, iii. 17. According to the Faustbuch (ch. xiii) it is Lucifer who rules 'in *Orient*,' hence he is called 'prince of the east' in our play (v. 104); while 'Beelzebub,' to whom the title 'Orientis princeps' is given in the conjuration of Faustus (iii. 17), rules 'in *Septentrions*.' In Friar Bacon, ix. 144 and xi. 109, the titles of 'guider' and 'ruler of the north' are given to Asmenoth. According to the teaching of dæmonology, a division of the quarters of the world among four angels existed before the Fall, and it was the 'Prince of the East' who rebelled, and to whom half of the universe was henceforth closed, so that he became the 'prince of this world,' as in Luther's hymn *Ein' feste Burg*. The beauty of Lucifer is extolled

Digitized by Google

by Dante in the Inferno, c. xxxiv, and in the Purgatorio, c. xii, where he is described as one 'who was counted fairer than any other creature, falling from one side of heaven like a flash of lightning.' Cf. Paradise Lost, vii. 131–134. Compare, as to the fall of Lucifer, note to iii. 63; and see Cædmon, 246 seqq., and Cursor Mundi, i. 33 seqq. According to the belief of the Franciscans and others, since the year 1000 A.D. the Devil, after his millenary captivity (Revelation, xx. 2), had been let loose from hell to 'deceive the nations.' See T. Arnold's note, Select English Works of Wyclif, i. 133.

**Belsebub.** The name Belzebub ('Baal-zebub') signifies 'the god of flies'; 'Baal' ('Lord') being a general name for 'god' among the Semitic nations, which 'designated their different Baals or gods by names compounded of this word and others indicating localities or signifying qualities. . . . This particular deity was worshipped at Ekron in Palestine (2 Kings, i. 2, 3), where the plague of flies or insects which afflicts hot countries seems to have been particularly felt; and that he was an important deity of Palestine may be gathered from his being referred to afterwards (St. Matthew, xii. 24) as "Beelzebub, the prince of the devils."' From Masson's note on Milton's Paradise Lost, i. 80, 81.—'With such gentlemen as you,' says Goethe's Faust (Hayward), 'one may generally learn the essence from the name, since it appears but too plainly, if your name be fly-god, destroyer, liar.' Compare the passage in The Faerie Queene, i. 1. 38, where Archimago summons spirits like flies.—In the Faustbuch (ch. xxiii) 'Beelzebub' appears as one of the seven principal spirits introduced to Faustus by their chief Belial, and is thus described: 'He had hair of flesh-colour, and an ox's head, with two terrible ears, was also quite covered with bristles and hair, and had two large wings, as sharp as the thistles in the field, half green and yellow, only that over the wings flew streams of fire; he had a cow's tail.'—The spellings of the name in the quarto of 1604 are 'Belsabub,' 'Belzabub,' and 'Belsibub,' but both the English History in the edition of 1592 and the German Faustbuch use the spelling 'Beelzebub.'

**Mephistophilis.** Of this name the etymology is very doubtful. It is usually spelt in the quarto of 1604 'Mephastophilis,' also 'Mephastophilus'—hence a vocative in 'e,' v. 29—and twice 'Mephostophilis'; compare the form 'Mephostophilus' used by Pistol in The Merry Wives, i. 1. 132, and by Flavia, disguised as a witch, in Shirley's The Young Admiral, iv. 1. The German Faustbuch and the English History have 'Mephostophiles'; and, by way of metathesis, J. V. Andreæ (cf. Introduction, p. lxxvii, note 1) has 'Mephistopholes.' The form 'Mephistophiles,' adopted by Goethe, is said (by Engel, *u.s.*, 34) first to occur in an old German popular play, Johann Faust, which was printed at Munich in 1775. The form 'Mephistophiel' is used in the Praxis

Digitized by Google

Cabulae nigrae Doctoris Johannis Fausti, etc. (1612). Widmann calls it a Persian name; a Hebrew derivation, according to which the name would mean 'a ruiner by falsehood,' has also been attempted. The original form 'Megastophiles' ('Megistophiles?') is a feeble guess, founded on Dürr's conjecture (1676), 'Megastophilus,' i.e. a lover of greatness and pre-eminence. The conjectured derivations from 'mephitis' with φίλος or ἀφελεῖν, and Düntzer's from 'Mephotophiles,' who does not love the light, are more ingenious than probable. (See, however, Herman Grimm's mention, *u.s.* p. 447, of the species of dæmons distinguished as those 'qui lucem oderint.' He refers to Marsilio Ficino as his authority.) A. Rudolf, in Goethe-Jahrbuch I (1880), 385, viewed the name as a corruption of Hephaistophilos, Hephaistos being a mediæval name of the devil, like Lucifer or Pluto, and Hephaistophilos being thus the opposite of Theophilos, the original of Faust (cf. ib. iv. (1883), 433.) With even superior audacity, Unger has suggested that the last of these derivations was mixed with another —'Mefaustophiles'—'no friend to Faust.' See Scheible's Kloster, xi. 349–350, and v. 135–6 and notes, where the various names taken by the Devils or Familiar Spirits are enumerated. In the systems of the infernal hierarchy constructed by the writers on magic in the seventeenth century this Spirit figures either as one of the seven 'Electors,' or as one of the seven 'Grand-dukes' who hold the next rank to the six chiefs; elsewhere he is described as the vicegerent of Lucifer over all Spirits. In the Dutch legend the attendant Spirit of Faustus bears the name of Jost. The Middle-High German poets called the Devil 'Valant,' 'Foland' or 'Volland' (Goethe's 'Junker,' i.e. squire, 'Voland'), who is identical with the lame god Loki of German mythology; Loki had seven-league-boots, as Mephistophiles can travel with speed whither he likes. More to our purpose is the self-identification of Goethe's Mephistophiles (2 Faust, act ii) with the 'Old Iniquity' (whence 'Old Nick') of the old stage-plays. Compare Loeper, Goethe's Faust, i. 127, ii. 176, 179. Hence the occasional playfulness of this Spirit even in Marlowe. Our poet treats Mephistophiles as the servant of Lucifer (iii. 40; v. 30; ix. 37–39); but as a not ignoble Spirit (xiii. 79–81); this however, as it seems to me, by no means amounts to a decisive proof of the spuriousness of all the ignoble passages in which he is made to play a part. Of the irony of Mephistophiles, which Thirlwall referring to Goethe's character describes as the darker, and truly diabolical, kind of irony, and of which there are examples in the Faustbuch, few or no traces are perceptible in Marlowe, whose vein was hardly humorous enough for the development of this feature, and whose conception of his theme was tragic—though he may have been willing to introduce comic scenes for the benefit of the groundlings.

Digitized by Google

**Good Angel. Evil Angel.** These characters are not introduced in the Faustbuch or the English History, where the only direct supernatural warning received by Faustus is that of the inscription on his arm (Introduction, p. civ; cf. v. 76); in the German puppet-play their interposition is far less strongly marked than in Marlowe's tragedy. (The Good Angel appears in the late German Ballad; referred to in Introduction, p. lxxvi, note 2.) A 'Bonus' and a 'Malus Angelus' appear in the morality of the Castle of Perseverance (cf. A. Pollard, English Moral-Plays, Introduction, p. xcvi). In the passion-play at Thiersee in the Bavarian Tyrol (1865) a 'good spirit' attempted to dissuade Judas from his design, abandoning him for ever when rejected (F. Gregorovius, Kleine Schriften, 1865, iii. 195 seqq.). The belief in the protecting care through life of the Good Angel, of which it is unnecessary to recall the Biblical origin, is attested by many mediaeval legends. It is made use of by other dramatists. In Lodge and Greene's A Looking-Glass for London and England an 'Angel' directs the proceedings of 'Jonas,' while an 'Evil Angel' tempts the Usurer to suicide (compare xiii. 52). In Massinger's The Virgin Martyr, which, as Hallam observes, followed the model of the Spanish 'autos,' Theophilus is followed by an evil spirit called Harpax, in the shape of a secretary (as in the old miracle-play he is attended by the Devil himself), and Dorothea by a good spirit called Angelo, in the shape of a page. The angel Amariel, who in Dryden's Tyrannic Love, iv. 1, protects the sleeping St. Catharine against the evil spirits, is of a more orthodox type. (See also the curious observations by Dryden on the 'machines of the Christian religion' in A Discourse concerning the Original and Progress of Satire, and Prof. W. P. Ker's note in Essays of John Dryden (1900) ii. 279.) Goethe has introduced an 'Evil Spirit' (who is *not* Mephistophiles, albeit they have been confounded by modern stage-managers) in Margaret's cathedral-scene, and at the close of the First Part of the tragedy a 'voice from above' proclaims her salvation. The warning of 'a Voice' is effectively introduced in the juvenile endeavour of Alfred de Musset to produce a species of Faust-drama (La Coupe et les Lèvres, i. 3).

**The Seven Deadly Sins.** The Seven Deadly Sins do not appear in the Faustbuch (see note on vi. 112). The notion, which is held to have been suggested by a passage in the Book of Proverbs (vi. 16–19), is very familiar to the later middle ages, and to the Reformation period. See Wiclif's tract on the Seven Deadly Sins in his English Works, edited by T. Arnold, iii. 119 seqq. The Sins enumerated are Pride, Envie, Accidie or Slouthe, Avarice or Coveitise, Glotonie and Lecherie; which are discussed at length in The Persone's Tale, the sermon or tractate on penitence translated by Chaucer from a French religious

Digitized by Google

manual, likewise known to him in the English version, The Ayenbite of Inwyt. See also the Vision concerning Piers the Plowman, Passus v. 63 seqq., and Skeat's note *ad loc.* The Seven Deadly Sins also make their appearance in the old English miracle of Mary Magdalene and in the morality of The Castle of Perseverance. See also Dunbar's poem The Dance of the Sevin Deidly Synnis, Laing's note on which in his edition (ii. 257) is worth quoting: 'It perhaps was not unusual in the early pageants to represent such personations; although I cannot refer to any instance of a very ancient date. Hawkins expresses his surprise that the people of Italy should still be fond of seeing the Seven Deadly Sins dance a saraband with the Evil Spirit. And in the strange mixture of characters at Heidelberg, who formed a procession in the entertainments of Frederick Count Palatine and the Princess Elizabeth, in 1613, we are informed "after all these came in the Seaven Deadly Sinnes, all of them chained, and driven forward by a dragon, who continually spet fire." (Nichols' Progresses of King James I, ii. 618.) Such an exhibition may have been suggested by Spenser's Procession of the Deadly Sins (The Faerie Queene, Bk. i. canto 4, stanzas 18–36);' though it is of course unnecessary to suppose any inspiration so lofty. The famous clown Tarleton contrived an extemporal play called The Seven Deadlie Sins, Part ii. of which, a 'platt' (or skeleton sketch fixed on a pasteboard for consultation by the performers), acted as early as 1592, is extant, and reprinted by Collier in his History of English Dramatic Poetry, new edition, iii. 198 seqq.; cf. Fleay's Life of Shakespeare, p. 23. See Introduction, p. xcii. The names here correspond to those in our text; of three Sins the effects are severally illustrated by examples (such as Sardanapalus or Sloth), as doubtless the effects of the remaining four were in the First Part of the play. The performance is supposed to take place before King Henry VI, and 'Lidgate' acts as a kind of Chorus. Dekker's The Seven Deadly Sinnes of London (1606, recently reprinted by Prof. Arber) is a tractate directed against some of the favourite vices and malpractices of London life. The scheme of the pamphlet is cleverly assimilated to that of a series of 'triumphs' or processions; 'the names of the actors in this old Enterlude of Iniquitie,' which 'seuen may easily play, but not without a Diuell,' being Politike Bankrumptise, Lying, Candlelight, Slothe, Apishnesse, Shauing, and Crueltie. O. Francke, *u. s.*, p. xxxviii, note, cites from a rather earlier tract, Wits Theatre of the little World (1599), the following passage concluding the section 'of the Devill': 'Leviathan tempteth with pride, Mammon attempteth by avarice, Asmodeus seduceth by treachery, Beelzebub inciteth to envy, Baall Berith provoketh to hire, Belphegor moneth to gluttony, Astorath perswadeth to cloth' (query sloth?). It may be added that seven is for many reasons

Digitized by Google

a favourite classifying number with writers on cabbalism and magic; but the Seven Deadly Sins, together with the Seven Cardinal Virtues and the Seven Spiritual Works of Mercy, reappear in a work of a different kind, Cosin's Book of Devotions, as late as 1627 (see Gardiner's Personal Government of Charles I, i. 23). Cyril Tourneur, in his poem The Transformed Metamorphosis, makes a familiar controversial use of the number of the Deadly Sins, in allusion to the seven hills of Rome:

'On sinne's full number (loe) she is erect;
For why? Great Pluto was her architect.'

In John Day's curious allegory, Peregrinatio Scholastica, the Seven Deadly Sins appear as the sons of Poneria (Wickedness). Nash, in his Unfortunate Traveller (Works, ed. Grosart, v. 87), wittily introduces 'the Seven Liberal deadly Sciences.'

Spirits in the shapes of **Alexander the Great**; of his Paramour;—The word 'paramour' corresponds to the '*Gemälin*' (consort) of the Faustbuch (see Introduction, p. cxv). The term was formerly used without any disreputable meaning, see for instance Spenser, The Shepheards Kalendar, April, 139. More ambiguously, Helen in Greene's Menaphon (Works, ed. Grosart, vi. 66) is spoken of as Paris' 'Greekish paramour.' The origin of the word is a French (and Italian) idiom, of which Tyrwhitt (in a note to the passage in The Knightes Tale, 1157, where Arcite says of Emelia 'par amour I loved hire') quotes the following apposite example from Froissart: 'Il aima adonc par amours, et depuis espousa, Madame Ysabelle de Juillers.'—Van der Velde considers that if Marlowe intended the wife of Alexander he is guilty of an anachronism, inasmuch as the marriage of Alexander with Roxane did not take place till after his final victory over Darius (whose overthrow is represented in the dumbshow in the quarto of 1616, cited in note before x. 67), and that he may therefore possibly after all have had Thais in his mind. But in the dumbshow in question the paramour does not enter till after the fall of Darius.

and of **Helen.** See Introduction, pp. cxix *seqq.* The various treatments by Greek and other poets of the story of Helen in its different phases and versions it is impossible to enumerate here; hers is one of the most prominent figures of Classical legend and literature, and from these she passed into those of the Middle Ages, finding a place even in the Third of those 'Sibylline Books' which connected mediaeval beliefs with the traditions of antiquity, as 'a beautiful Fury sprung from Sparta, an undying theme of song, but a fruitful germ of evil to Asia and Europe.' There is nothing improbable in the assumption that the story of Helena, the companion of Simon Magus, helps to account for the introduction of the figure of Helen of Troy into the Faust-legend. Simon

Digitized by Google

Magus, it was said, was accompanied in his journeys by a Tyrian courtesan named Helen, whom he raised to the position of his ἔννοια, or divine intelligence. (See art. *Simon Magus* in Smith's Dictionary of the Bible, and, for a fuller discussion of the subject, Baur, Die Christliche Gnosis, pp. 305 seqq., and especially the note to p. 306 concerning the relation of the tradition of Helen to lunar cults.) It should, however, be noticed, in connexion with her introduction as a shade into the story of Faustus, that already in Greek legend her figure is associated with similar traditions. Stesichorus in his Palinodia told how 'the Helen who had been seen in Troy was a mere shadow (φάσμα, εἴδωλον); while the true Helen had never embarked from Greece. In Laconia there were popular legends of Helen having appeared as a shade long after her death, like her brothers Castor and Pollux. Others supposed that the marine demigod Proteus formed a false Helen, with whom he deceived Paris; and the Egyptians, having converted Proteus into a king of Egypt, said that he took her from Paris, who carried a mere phantasm to Troy, and kept her there for Menelaus. This was the story Herodotus (ii. 112) heard in Egypt. Euripides adapted this legend to his Helena, in which tragedy the gods form a false Helen whom Paris takes to Troy, the true Helen being carried by Hermes to the Egyptian king Proteus.' (From Müller's History of Greek Literature, Engl. Trans. i. 267 and note.) According to yet another legend, Achilles after his death quitted the Lower World to rejoin Helen, whom he had loved in life, in the island of Leuce (not in Pherae, as Goethe's Faust says, Part ii. act ii) in the Black Sea. From their union sprang Euphorion. (Pausanias, iii. 19. 11, quoted by Kühne and Loeper.) Already in the Cypria of Stasimus, Aphrodite and Thetis bring about a meeting between Achilles and Helen, the former having desired to see the fairest of all women. (See Welcker, Die Griechischen Tragödien mit Rücksicht auf den epischen Cyclus geordnet, i. 159, to which work the student may be referred for other passages on the treatment of the story and figure of Helen in Greek poetry.) The familiarity of the later Middle Ages with the story of Troy in mediaeval literary versions is well known. It should be added that Marlowe translated a late Greek poem by Coluthus (fl. A.D. 500), The Rape of Helen (Ἑλένης ἁρπαγή), which had been paraphrased by Thomas Watson in Latin verse (1586). Marlowe's translation (1587) is lost; a later English translation, by Fawkes, is printed in vol. xx. of Chalmers' English Poets. Peele in the delightful concluding lines of his Fall of Troy seems half-inclined to excuse Helen, as Chaucer was to excuse Cressid. In J. J. Beckhen's drama, Der Schauplatz des Gewissens (1666), the fair Helena appears to the hero, called Cosmophilus in contrast to Theophilus. (Cf. Erich Schmidt, Zur Faustsage, *u. s.*, 98.) The Helena of the Second Part

Digitized by Google

of Goethe's Faust is a subject for separate study, for which full materials will be found in Loeper's admirable edition of Goethe's work (1870). In Boito's Mefistofele 'Elena' is Faust's last word.

**Chorus.** The 'Chorus,' in the language of the Elizabethan stage, is the actor who speaks the prologue and the passages interspersed in the play to aid its progress by narrative or comment. So in Henry V the First Folio has 'Enter Prologue' for the opening speech, and 'Enter Chorus' for the speeches before the later acts and at the close. Already to the old miracle-plays it was usual to prefix a species of general prologue spoken by a herald; while at times an 'expositor' moralizes upon the course of the action. Doctor Faustus is the only play by Marlowe which has a Chorus by that name; Tamburlaine and The Jew of Malta have prologues, that to the latter play being spoken by Machiavel.

---

### *Chorus.*

1. *fields of Thrasimene* (quarto of 1604 'Thracimene'), the battle of the lacus Trasumennus (now Lago di Perugia), in which Hannibal completely defeated the Romans under G. Flaminius (217 B.C.), and which Livy, xxii. 4, calls one of the most noted routs of the Roman people. For Mr. Fleay's supposition that 'the fields of Thrasimene' refers to some lost play, see Appendix A, *ante*. Unfortunately there is no play early enough either by Marlowe himself or by any other hand to suit the special allusion in l. 1; Tamburlaine would of course well meet the general description.

2. *mate*, match, pit himself against. Compare Henry VIII, iii. 2. 2-4:

> 'That in the way of royalty and truth
> Toward the King, my ever royal master,
> Dare mate a sounder man than Surrey can be.'

Dyce explains 'confound, defeat'—a common use of the word; compare 1 Tamburlaine, i. 1:

> 'How now, my lord! what, mated and amaz'd
> To hear the King thus threaten like himself?'

and Friar Bacon, ii. 154. Van der Velde translates 'allied himself with'; F. V. Hugo 'espoused warlike Carthage,' and Cunningham adopts the same explanation (mate = marry). I agree with Mr. Bullen that so paradoxical a use of the word is extremely doubtful, and that it is safer to suppose the poet's memory to have been at fault.

4. *In courts of kings.* 'Neither' or 'nor' should be supplied before these words.

*Ib. state*, majesty, power. Compare xiii. 118, and Friar Bacon, xvi. 1. Marlowe alludes either to a lost play on the subject of Hannibal, or more generally to such plays as The Misfortunes of Arthur (1587), The

Digitized by Google

Famous Victories of Henry V (before 1588), and his own Tamburlaine, the prologue to which last promises to lead the audience 'to the stately tents of war.' Compare the closing lines of the prologue to Ford's Chronicle Historie of Perkin Warbeck.

6. *vaunt*, the reading of the later quartos for 'daunt.' Compare Friar Bacon, vii. 11.

*Ib. his.* It is unnecessary to reject this reading of all the quartos, and substitute 'her.' Compare, for the use of the word 'Muse' as equivalent to 'poet,' Shakespeare's Sonnet, xxi. 1–2:

'So is it not with me, as with that Muse
Stirr'd by a painted beauty to his verse';

and Milton's Lycidas, 19–21:

'So may some gentle Muse
With lucky words favour my destined urn;
And, as he passes, turn.'

In Dryden's Absalom and Achitophel, Part I, the Earl of Mulgrave (Buckinghamshire) is introduced as

'Sharp-judging Adriel, the muses' friend,
Himself a muse.'

*Ib. heavenly*, supremely powerful or beautiful. Compare iii. 27 and xiii. 85.

7, 8. *perform The form.* Show forth the outline. Marlowe was fond of this kind of jingle of sounds. Compare sc. vi. 42, and 2 Tamburlaine, iv. 4:

'But presently be prest to conquer it';

ib. v. 3:

'Plead in vain unpleasing sovereignty';

and in the same scene of the same play:

'Hell and darkness pitch their pitchy tents';

and The Jew of Malta, i. 1:

'Haply some hapless man hath conscience.'

9. *appeal our plaud*, appeal for our applause. Compare for the general meaning the address, prefatory to Greene's Menaphon, to the Gentlemen Students of both Universities (Works, ed. Grosart, vi. 8): 'To you he appeales that knew him ab extrema pueritia, whose placet he accounts the plaudite of his paines'; in allusion to the 'Plaudite' at the end of Roman Comedies. The phrase is, however, harsh; though it seems unnecessary to substitute 'appeal for plause,' with Breymann, who compares, for the suppression of the 'a,' bove, bout, larum, noyance, &c. The quarto of 1616 reads for this line:

'And now to patient judgments we appeal.'

11. *his parents base of stock.* For examples of this nom. abs. construction, with an adjective in the place of a participle, see Abbott, § 380.

Digitized by Google

12. *Rhodes.* See Introduction, p. xciv.

13. *Wittenberg;* quarto of 1604 here and throughout Wertenberg or Wertenberge; see Introduction, p. xcvi.

14. *Whereas*, where. See Abbott, § 135. Compare Dido Queen of Carthage, i. 2:

> 'When suddenly gloomy Orion rose,
> And led our ships into the shallow sands,
> Whereas the southern winds with brackish breath
> Dispers'd them all among the wreckful rocks.'

15. *profits*, makes progress. Compare The Merry Wives, iv. 1. 16, 'My husband says my son profits nothing in the world at his book.'

16. *The fruitful plot of scholarism grac'd*, the fruitful garden of scholarship being adorned by him. Bullen recalls Greene's use of the word 'scholarism' in the passage cited Introduction, p. iii. Breymann's explanation of 'grac'd' as a mere variation in spelling for 'graz'd' is inadmissible. There is a sort of pun with the 'grac'd' of the next line, referring to the grace of the University Senate, which made Faustus a Doctor.

17. *That*, so that. See Abbott, § 283. The antithesis in these two lines is however very feeble, and l. 16 is omitted in the quarto of 1616.

18. *whose sweet delight disputes*, whose sweet delight it is to dispute. Dr. Koeppel's emendation, 'whose sweet disputes,' i. e. disputations, 'delight,' is however very seductive.

19. *In.* Modern English would here demand 'on'; but the interchanges between Elizabethan and modern usage with regard to the employment of these prepositions are numerous. Compare note to Friar Bacon, ii. 95.

20. *cunning*, knowledge (from *cunnan*, to be able, to know.) The word is repeatedly used in this sense in our play, and in Friar Bacon. The adjective 'cunning' is used in the same sense in our play, i. 115. Trench, in Select Glossary, quotes a striking instance of this use of the word from Foxe's Book of Martyrs: 'I believe that all these three Persons [in the Godhead] are even in power and in cunning and in might.' Compare also Psalm cxxxvii. 5; and for the adjective 1 Sam. vi. 18. The substantive 'craft' and the adjectives 'crafty' and 'artful' may be noticed as examples of a similar degradation of meaning in ordinary usages.

20. *of*, out of. See Abbott, § 169. Compare Friar Bacon, vi. 166; and The Jew of Malta, i. 1:

> 'Tell not me 'twas done of policy.'

21. *waxen wings.* Icarus, when accompanying his father Daedalus on his flight through the air to escape from the wrath of Minos, approached too near to the sun, which melted the wax by which his

Digitized by Google

wings were attached to his body. He fell into the sea (hence called the Icarian) and was buried on an island (Icarus or Icaria) by Heracles. Logeman compares in the old Taming of a Shrew:

'Should thou assay to scale the seat of Jove,
Mounting the subtle aery regions,
Or be snatched up as erst was Ganymed,
Love should give wings unto my swift desires,
And prime my thoughts that I would follow thee,
Or fall and perish as did Icarus.'

(P. 190 in the Six Old Plays' edition, 1779.)

The myth of Icarus is thrice alluded to in Henry VI (Part I, iv. 6. 54; ib. iv. 7. 17; and Part III, v. 6. 21). Wagner compares the expression in the Faustbuch (see Introduction, p. xcviii): 'He took to himself the wings of an eagle; and thought to study all secrets in heaven and earth.' Herman Grimm, *u. s.*, p. 456, cites a letter written in 1499 by Erasmus to Faustus Andrelinus at Paris, in which he suggests that Faustus should, like Daedalus, fly to him across the Channel; and notes that Faustus Andrelinus in his Amores takes occasion to compare himself to Icarus.

22. *melting*, i. e. they (the wings) melting. As to this absolute use of the participle without a noun, see Abbott, § 378. Compare i. 25: 'Or, being dead' for 'Or, they being dead'; and 2 Tamburlaine, i. 3:

'Where Amazonians met me in the field,
With whom, being women [i. e. they being women], I vouchsafed a league.'

Breymann points out that the early quartos interpunctuate 'and melting heavens'; and that 'melting' may be construed as a transitive.

24. *glutted*, filled. Cf. infra, v. 76. Francke compares 1 Henry IV, iii. 2. 84:

'Being with his presence glutted, gorged, and full.'

25. *necromancy* (quarto of 1604 'Negromancy'). Necromancy (*νεκρομαντεία*) is defined by the evil spirit Auerhan in the Wagnerbuch (Scheible, Kloster, iii. 115 seqq.) as the art which 'awakeneth the dead, proceedeth to the tombs, useth the ceremonies thereto appertaining, and thus conjureth the spirit of the deceased, that it shall come forth and appear to them, as thou readest of the witch at Endor, who awakened Samuel.' He proceeds to distinguish two sorts of necromancy, viz. necyomancy (*νεκυομαντεία*, the art of which Faustus desires to possess the power, i. 25), 'when one makes the dead bodies alive again, then one of us hath to slip into the corpse, and bring it on its feet again, so that it can walk and stand,' and scyomancy (properly sciomancy, *σκιομαντεία*), 'when one merely reproduces the shadow of a deceased, as Aeneas did in Virgilio,' as Auerhan at Wagner's request proceeds to do with the shade of Achilles, and as Faustus does with those of

Digitized by Google

Alexander and his paramour in sc. x. of our play. As to the necyomancy of the ancients, see Maury, La Magie et l'Astrologie dans l'Antiquité et au Moyen Age, 59–60. 'This word *Necromancie*,' says King James I in his Daemonologie, Bk. I. ch. iii, 'is a Greeke worde compounded of Νέκρος and *μαντεία*, which is it to say, the prophesie by the dead. This last name is given to this blacke and vnlawfull sinne by the figure *Synecdoche*, because it is a principal part of that art, to serue themselues with dead carcages in their diuinations.' The form 'nigromancy' or 'negromancy' (which is that of the quarto of 1604) was derived from the Latin mediaeval writers, and was translated into the popular English term 'the Black Art' (compare our play, x. 2). 'The Latin mediæval writers, whose Greek was either little or none, spelt the word "nigromantia," while at the same time getting round to the original meaning, though by a wrong process, they understood the dead by these "nigri" or blacks, whom they had brought into the word. Thus in a Vocabulary, 1475: Nigromansia dicitur divinatio facta *per nigros*.' (Trench, English Past and Present, p. 306.) Ariosto wrote a comedy, Il Negromante, and Skelton a morality, The Nigramansir. Compare note on Friar Bacon, i. 98.

27. *prefers before*. A common construction; compare Othello, i. 3. 187:

'Preferring you before her father.'

28. *this*, for 'this is.' Compare King Lear, iv. 6. 187: 'This' a good block'; and other instances of this kind and similar contractions cited by Abbott, § 461. Compare note on Friar Bacon, ix. 34.

## *Scene I.*

FAUSTUS *discovered in his study*—or, as the quarto here and at sc. v. has it, *Enter Faustus in his study*. 'Most probably the Chorus, before going out, drew a curtain, and discovered Faustus sitting.' (Dyce.) This scene or situation, of which the beginning of sc. xi. of Friar Bacon forms a kind of parody, is 'the only part in which the Faustus of Marlowe bears any similarity to that of Goethe.' (Hayward, Goethe's Faust, p. 159, and see W. Scherer's analysis of the opening soliloquy of Goethe's play in Goethe-Jahrbuch, vi. (1885), 245–261; where it is suggested that Goethe, though in his earlier years unacquainted with Marlowe, may in his original version of the soliloquy have followed him indirectly through the puppet-play, and perhaps here and there by accident. See also Introduction, p. lx.) Byron reproduced the situation in his Manfred. (Hayward, p. 162.) This opening situation, however, springs so naturally from the subject, that it repeats itself in most of the German puppet-plays on the Faust-story, and that in the extant project of a Doctor Faust by Lessing the first scene was to be of

Digitized by Google

a similar kind. Cf. an excellent article on the genesis of Goethe's Faust, by the late Julian Schmidt, in Preussische Jahrbücher, vol. liii (June, 1884). In the first scene of the most famous of Chinese dramas, Pi-Pa-Ki, or the Story of the Lute, the hero, a Senior Wrangler in the state examinations, is discovered uttering the following reflections: 'What is this world? I have studied everything; the books which I have read would make not less than ten thousand volumes.' The situation in which Faustus is here found, contemplating the apparitions in his magical circle, is that in which he is depicted in a famous etching by Rembrandt.

1. *Settle thy studies*, arrive at a definite choice among thy subjects of study. (The Act of Settlement is that which establishes the succession to the Crown in a particular line.) With regard to the whole of the following passage (which is only in a very general way based on the first chapter of the Faustbuch or on its English translation) Professor Adamson writes as follows: 'I have no doubt that Marlowe is here, though confusedly, recalling a division of the Liberal Arts current in the sixteenth century. Logic, which he appears to rank with Philosophy, was excluded therefrom, as being, with Grammar, Rhetoric, etc. instrumental. The Arts or *Disciplinæ* were then divided into Philosophy, Medicine, Jurisprudence, and Theology, and ranked very much in the order in which they are here taken up (see vv. 104–7). According to one view, these disciplines were called *objectivæ*, because they treated *objecta intellectionis, res ipsas*.' Possibly this may explain the obscure 'that will receive no object' in v. 102.

2. *profess*, adopt as the subject of public teaching, be a 'professor' of.

3. *Having commenc'd*, being a doctor of theology. 'Inception' is the process originally necessary to the taking of a master's degree in any faculty; nor was there any difference between a 'master' and a 'doctor' according to old Oxford terminology. (Anstey, Munimenta Academica, Introduction, p. xciv.) The annual opening solemnity of the Faculties is still called the 'Commencement' at Cambridge (the 'Act' at Oxford), though the term 'commencing' is only used in reference to the inferior or bachelor's degree.

4. *level*, aim. Compare Edward II, iii. 3:

> 'That's it these barons and the subtle queen
> Long levell'd at';

and Greene's Orlando Furioso:

> 'This happy prize
> At which you long have levell'd all your thoughts.'

*Ib. the end of every art*, viz. metaphysics: see below, 47.

5. *Aristotle's works*. In Lessing's Fragment Faust remembers how a scholar was said to have summoned the devil, while studying the *en-*



Digitized by Google

*telechy* (the real state of action and being) of Aristotle. The schoolman referred to, Dr. Adamson informs me, was Hermolaus Barbarus (of Venice; d. 1495). 'Whence, a number that fetch the articles of their beliefe out of Aristotle, and thinke of heaven and hell as the heathen philosophers, take occasion to deride our ecclesiasticall state, and all ceremonies of divine worship, as bug-beares and scar-crows.' (Nash, Pierce Penilesse his Supplication.) Marlowe elsewhere bears testimony to the supremacy of Aristotle in academical education; Ramus says, in The Massacre at Paris, i. 8:

'And this for Aristotle will I say,
That he that despiseth him can never
Be good in logic or philosophy.'

Compare also Edward II, iv. 6:

'Thy philosophy
That in our famous nurseries of arts
Thou suck'dst from Plato and from Aristotle.'

In Calderon's El Magico Prodigioso, Cyprian is studying Pliny.

6. *Analytics* (quarto of 1604 'Analitikes'). Aristotle's term for the logical researches, the resolution of reasoning into its elements and general powers. The 'Prior Analytics' of Aristotle were appropriately described in their old title 'On the Syllogism,' and treat of reasoning in general, whether the result is Opinion or Science; the 'Posterior Analytics' are entitled 'On Demonstration,' and treat of reasoning the result of which is Science, Inductive or Deductive. (Cf. Donaldson, History of the Literature of Ancient Greece, ii. 287.) 'But this art [of Judgement] hath two several methods of doctrine, the one by way of direction, the other by way of caution: the former frameth and setteth down a true form of consequence, by the variations and deflections from which errors and inconsequences may be exactly judged. Toward the composition and structure of which form, it is incident to handle the parts thereof, which are propositions, and the parts of propositions, which are simple words: and this is that part of Logic which is comprehended in the Analytics.' (Bacon, Advancement of Learning, ii. 198, ed. Kitchin.) The form 'Analytics' correctly renders the Greek neuter plural (*τὰ ἀναλυτικά*); but the word is here treated as a singular, as if it were analogous to the forms 'mathematics' and 'poetics,' though these are secondary forms of feminine singular adjectives (*ἡ ποιητικὴ τέχνη*, etc.).

7. *Bene . . . logices* (quarto of 1604: 'logicis'). 'To argue well is the end of logic.' Although this is introduced in connexion with Aristotle, it seems to be taken from one of the anti-Aristotelian works on logic. Ramus defines logic as 'Ars s. Virtus disserendi'; and in his *Dialectica*, p. 30 (Frankfort, 1580; it was first published in 1543), he

Digitized by Google

writes: 'Omnium artium est aliquod summum bonum et finis extremus; ut Grammaticae, bene loqui; Rhetoricae, bene dicere; Logicae, bene disserere.' Professor Adamson notes that 'Marlowe's residence at Cambridge fell within the period of the first conflict there between Aristotelianism and the new Ramist logic. Everard Digby's *Theoria Analytica*, a combination of peripatetic philosophy with the vague theosophy of the Kabbalists, from which Marlowe probably derived many hints used in this play (e.g. iii. 8, 9; vi. 59), appeared in 1579. In 1580, William Temple, one of the early English Ramists, a friend and secretary of Sidney, Davison and the Earl of Essex, attacked Digby in a tract *de unica P. Rami methodo*. Replies and counter-replies followed in the ensuing years. In 1584 Temple's edition of Ramus' *Dialectica* was published at Cambridge, with notes and a dedication to Sir Philip Sidney. The quotation in Marlowe's Massacre of Paris, i. 8, "argumentum testimonii est inartificiale," is from the *Dialectica*, p. 84 (2nd edition, 1591). In The Pilgrimage to Parnassus, ii. 2, Madido has no sooner arrived in the island of *Dialectica*, than he begins 'to reade Ramus his mapp, *Dialectica* est, etc.'

12. *Economy* (quarto of 1604 'Oncaymæon': the word seems to have been too much for the old printers; in Skelton's Garlande of Laurell, 328, 'Esiodus' is the 'Icononucar'). Both Xenophon and Aristotle use the term 'œconomics' in its proper sense of the science of domestic management ('economique' is rightly defined in this sense in Gower's Confessio Amantis, bk. vii); nor is there any instance of the general meaning of 'philosophy' being attached to the word 'economy,' as here (where Müller properly translates in accordance with the general sense of the passage 'Farewell, Philosophy'). It is just possible, as Dr. Adamson suggests, that Marlowe, if he really wrote 'economy,' had in his mind a passage in the Politics (p. 1258, b, 28) where a few lines after a definition of the end of medicine almost identical with that in v. 16 of the scene he declares that medicine forms no part of economy. It is also possible, on the same supposition, that Marlowe was contented with the remembrance that Aristotle was reputed to have written two books Οἰκονομικῶν, besides having treated the subject in bk. i. of his Politics. But both the more and the less creditable explanation may be waived, if Mr. Bullen's brilliant conjecture be accepted that 'Oncaymæon' is simply a corruption of the Aristotelian *ὂν καὶ μὴ ὄν*, i.e. being and not being.

*Ib. and Galen.* 'And' is not found in the earlier quartos. Claudius Galenus, the famous physician and prolific writer on medical and other subjects, was born at Pergamum in Mysia 130 A.D. His essay 'On the Art of Medicine' was 'the text-book and chief subject of examination for medical students in the Middle Ages, when it was known in barbarous



Digitized by Google

Latin as the Tegnum or Microtegnum (Microtechnum) of Galen.' In Dekker's The Seven Deadly Sinnes of London the term 'Gallenist' is used as equivalent to physician.

13. *Ubi . . . medicus.* Where the philosopher leaves off, there the physician begins. This, Dr. Adamson informs me, is the commonly recognised translation or adaptation of a sentence in Aristotle, De sensu et sensibili, p. 436, a, 21. The 'philosophus' generalised by Marlowe is the philosophus naturalis or physicus.

15. *etérnis'd*, made eternal in fame. This verb, formed from the adjective 'eterne,' which is used by Shakespeare, recurs in 1 Tamburlaine, i. 2; 2 Tamburlaine, v. 1 and v. 2; also in Friar Bacon, ii. 43, and towards the beginning of Greene's Orlando Furioso. Similar formations are 'royalize,' i. e. made royal, in 1 Tamburlaine, ii. 3; Friar Bacon, ix. 264, and xvi. 68; and Peele's Edward I, sc. i. 12; 'enthrónize,' in Edward II, v. 1, and Peele's Edward I, sc. i. 250; 'scandalize,' i. e. turn into dishonour, in Lodge and Greene's A Looking-Glass for London and England; besides 'canónize,' in our scene, 118, and 'solémnize,' in Peele's Edward I, i. 250. A large collection of similar forms, including 'echoize' and 'chaoize,' is to be found in Cyril Tourneur's poem, The Transformed Metamorphosis. An odd instance is 'neutrize' (preserve a neutral attitude) in Thomas Heywood's The Rape of Lucrece, ii. 3. In the Epistle to the Reader prefixed to the 1594 edition of his Christs Teares ouer Jerusalem, Nash (Works, ed. Grosart, iv. 6) mentions among the objections taken to his style 'the often coyning of Italianate verbes which end all in Ize, as mummianize, tympanize, tirannize,' and defends his practice on the ground that 'no speech or wordes of any power or force to confute or perswade but must bee swelling and boystrous.' Cf. also Phineas Fletcher, Sicelides (written 1614), iii. 4: '*Conchylio.* First you must anagrammatize her name, then sympathize your own. *Cancrone.* Tize, zize, thize; I shall ne'er hit that.'

16. *Summum . . . sanitas.* The supreme good of medicine is health. This again, writes Dr. Adamson, is the exact reading of Aristotle's sentence, Eth. Nic. 1094, a, 8. Almost the same recurs in Polit. 1258, a (see note to v. 16 *ante*).

19. *found aphorisms* (quartos of 1604 and 1609 'sound,' a reading which, with all deference to Wagner, Breymann and Logeman, who compares l. 60 infra, I cannot think possible). The term 'aphorisms,' as specially applied to medical science, was derived from the title of a work by the famous physician Hippocrates (b. 406 B.C.), which 'contains more than four hundred short sentences of a practical nature, either culled by Hippocrates himself at a later period of his life from his other works and from the memoranda of his medical practice, or formed by some writer of his school soon after his death,' and in which

Digitized by Google

are to be found 'the germs of all his doctrine.' Donaldson, *u. s.*, ii. 408 (Düntzer notes that the first of the 'aphorisms' of Hippocrates, 'Life is short and art is long,' is put by Goethe into the mouth of Faust's famulus Wagner). The term, employed in the same sense by Galen, is used by Dante to designate the medical as distinct from other sciences. See the curious passage in the Paradiso, canto xi. 4–5. It then came to be applied generally to pithy, pregnant sentences containing the gist of a subject, and is so used and abused to this day. It was in due course applied to the teachings of the science of magic, and repeatedly occurs in this sense in Friar Bacon. This special use long continued; thus the book Arbatel de Magia Veterum, published in Germany in 1686, comprises 49 'aphorismi' furnishing 'a brief instruction in *Magiam*.' But, from a passage in Have with you to Saffron Walden (Nash's Works, ed. Grosart, iii. 63–4), 'aphorisms' appears to have been in a special or a general way a favourite word with Greene: 'for while hee liu'd he had no goods nor chattles in commoner use.'

20. *bills*. The word 'bill' (from Mid. Lat. 'billa,' cf. French 'billet,' properly a small paper with the 'bulla' or documentary seal attached) seems to have been used (as it is now) of formal documents of one kind or another (but the parliamentary term 'bill' has a different derivation). So in the well-known passage in Much Ado about Nothing, i. 1. 32: 'He set up his bills here in Messina and challenged Cupid at the flight.' Thus below, v. 65 and xiv. 40, the deed by which Faustus pledges his soul to Mephistophilis is called a 'bill.' Faustus probably here refers to the advertisements by which, as a migratory physician, he had been in the habit of announcing his advent, and perhaps the system of cures applied by him (cf. Introduction, p. xcviii), and which were now 'hung up as monuments' *in perpetuum*. Such a proceeding would be quite in harmony with the proceedings of physicians *in partibus* of all times. Compare the expression 'tooth-drawers' bills' (advertisements, placards) in Fletcher's Wit without Money, iv. 5. Nothing as to his having practised as a physician is narrated of either the historical or the legendary Faust; the typical magician-physician was Theophrastus Paracelsus (see Introduction, p. xlvii), who in 1527 burnt the medical books of his times, declaring that they contained nothing of use except the formulae of the witches. See the very striking section, Les Pratiques des Sorcières, in F. Funck-Brentano, Le Drame des Poisons (Paris, 1900). Possibly, as Düntzer suggests, Goethe took a hint from the statement that Nostradamus as a young man visited Provence during the plague which broke out there in 1525, and by his peculiar remedies saved many villagers' lives.

24. *men*. Quartos of 1604 and 1609: 'man'.

25. *being dead*. See opening Chorus, 22. This power was ascribed

Digitized by Google

to Asclepius (Aesculapius), the mythical father of medicine, whom Zeus struck with lightning for having revived the dead. See Pind. Pyth. iii. 46 seqq.; and compare the Faery Queene, i. 5. 36.

27. *Justinian.* 'Under his reign' (527–565) 'and by his care, the civil jurisprudence was digested in the immortal works of the CODE, the PANDECTS, and the INSTITUTES; the public reason of the Romans has been silently or studiously transfused into the domestic institutions of Europe, and the laws of Justinian still command the respect or obedience of independent nations.' Gibbon, Decline and Fall, c. xliv.

28. *Si una . . . rei, etc.* If one and the same thing is left by will to two persons, one shall [take] the thing, and the other the value of the thing, etc. What the *Institutes* (lib. ii. tit. xx.) say is, that 'si eadem res duobus legata sit,' it is divided between them, in case both take the legacy. But, according to a quotation in the *Digest* (lib. xxx. p. 418, Mommsen) from Paulus, 'si pluribus eadem res legata fuerit,' if this has been done 'separatim,' and if there is no evidence of priority, 'tunc uni pretium, alii ipsa res adsignatur,' the right of choice belonging to the first claimant of the legacy. See also Gaius, lib. ii. § 205.

29. *pretty*; quarto of 1616: 'petty.'

30. *Exhaereditare . . . nisi, etc.* A father cannot disinherit his son except, etc. This again does not seem to be a quotation from the Institutes, but with the addition of the word 'nominatim' ('by name') it would express one of the rules of lib. ii. tit. xiii. ('De exhaeredatione liberorum').

31. *institute.* The 'Institutionum libri iv' of Justinian, chiefly based on the Institutions of Gaius, were by order of the Emperor compiled by three lawyers (among whom was Tribonian), to the end 'ut sint totius legitimae scientiae prima elementa.' The 'institutes' or 'institutions' of law are therefore its principles.

33. *His.* The later quartos have 'this'; but 'his' may be retained as standing for 'its,' a form which only gradually came into use in the Elizabethan age, and is rarely employed by Shakespeare. See Abbott, § 228; and compare x. 30 and also vii. 18, where 'his' and 'her' are used, but where in either case a modern writer would have employed 'its.' In 2 Tamburlaine, v. 3, Marlowe uses 'his' for 'its':

> 'His subject [i. e. body], not of force enough
> To hold the fiery spirit it contains,
> Must part, importing *his* impressions,' etc.

34. *external trash*, the outward recompense of money. 'Trash' or 'dross' is the worthless stuff remaining over when the wheat has been *thrashed* out; hence 'dross-wheat' for refuse-wheat given to swine. Compare xiii. 97:

> 'All is dross that is not Helena.'

Digitized by Google

'Trash' is here used of worthless money, as in Greene's Alphonsus King of Arragon, act iii: 'King Crœsus' trash.' Cassio says, 'Who steals my purse, steals trash': and compare Friar Bacon, x. 158. In the old play No-Body and Some-Body, l. 1950, the word 'trash' is used of counterfeits of all kinds.

35. *servile and illiberal* (quarto of 1604, wildly: 'The devil and illiberal.') These terms correspond to the Greek *βάναυσος*, which is often rendered in English by 'mechanical,' and thus contrasted with 'liberal,' the term applied to those arts which are not pursued as a trade, as in The Tempest, i. 1. 73:

'For the liberal arts
Without a parallel.'

36. *When all is done*, after all.

37. *Jerome's Bible.* The Vulgate, or Latin translation of the Bible attributed to St. Jerome, by whom the greater part of it was written (392–404 A.D.). (Goethe's Faust translates the beginning of the Gospel of St. John from the original.) As F. V. Hugo points out, Faustus must be supposed during the whole of this soliloquy to have before him a heap of folios, which he successively takes up and lays down again after having read a few lines in each.

38. *Stipendium peccati mors est*, 'the wages of sin is death.' Romans vi. 23.

42. *there's no truth in us.* A more accurate translation of 1 Epistle of St. John i. 8 than that in the Authorised Version.

43. *belike*, for 'it may be like,' as is shown by the construction in The Two Gentlemen of Verona, ii. 4. 90:

'Belike that now she hath enfranchised them.'

'May be like' is still a Northamptonshire provincialism.

45. *Che sera, sera.* An older form of the Italian proverb (the motto of the Russell family), 'Che sarà sarà.'

46. *What will be, shall be.* The proper modern English translation of the Italian proverb would be 'What shall be, will be,'—i. e. that which is fixed by fate to happen will happen; or 'what shall be, shall be,'—i. e. that which is fixed by fate to happen will inevitably happen. Heaslowe repeatedly mentions a play That (or What) Will Be Shall Be as performed at the Rose in 1597. But in Edward II, iv. 6, we have: 'Well, that shall be, shall be; part we must;' and in the Proverbs of John Heywood, Part II, ch. i. (Sharman's edition, p. 90): 'That shall be, shall be.' The Elizabethan use of 'shall' and 'will' had by no means fixed itself. See Abbott, §§ 315–321, and compare Friar Bacon, xiii. 45, 'one of us will die,' where we should say 'shall.' Faustus' despairing reference to the difficulties of the doctrine of predestination recalls the passage in Chaucer's Troilus and Creseyde, b. iv, where

Digitized by Google

Troilus repeats the arguments of Boëthius against the freedom of the human will, without reproducing the philosopher's endeavour to solve the problem.

47. *metaphysics of magicians.* Compare the use of 'metaphysical,' in the sense, or almost such, of supernatural, in 2 Tamburlaine, iv. 3, describing an ointment distilled by an alchemist:

> 'In which the essential form of marble stone
> Tempered by science metaphysical
> And spells of magic from the mouths of spirits,' etc.

And in Macbeth, i. 5. 28:

> 'the golden round,
> Which fate and metaphysical aid doth seem
> To have thee crown'd withal.'

49. *Lines ... characters.* These form the ordinary machinery of conjurations, as described in the spurious Fourth Book of the De Occultâ Philosophiâ, of which the first three Books were written by Cornelius Agrippa, and as more briefly enumerated in ch. i. of the Faustbuch. The magicians used to draw round themselves 'lines' and 'circles' for protection against the evil spirits—a notion possibly taken from the enclosures which protected courts of justice. 'Scenes' appears to have no special meaning. Dyce compares Donne's Satire i., ed. of 1633:

> 'And sooner may a gullin weather-spie
> By drawing forth heaven's sceanes tell certainly.'

Later editions of Donne, however, read 'scheme' (Bullen). Dr. Adamson suggests as an emendation 'seals,' and Professor Logeman suggests the substitution of 'schemes' for 'scenes' in the present passage, as the equivalent of the figures (figurae) of the English History and its original (see Introduction, p. xcviii). 'Letters' refers to the magical combinations of letters taken from the several forms of the divine name; see below, sc. iii. 8; 'characters' are here the signs appropriated to good spirits of various kinds, which, according to Pseudo-Agrippa, are used in the formation of '*pentacula*,' the sacred signs which 'are to protect us against evil influence, and tame invidious daemons, and on the other hand to bring beneficent spirits to our aid.'

53. *artizan.* This word, now used only of the handicraftsman or mechanic, was employed as late as the eighteenth century as equivalent to 'artist.'

54. *quiet*, because fixed.

55. *emperors*, a dissyllable.

56. *their several provinces*, the regions of the earth subject to each of them.

Digitized by Google

58. *his dominion that exceeds in this*, the dominion of him who is paramount in this art, who excels in it. For this use of 'exceed' compare Friar Bacon, ii. 124, and Pericles, ii. 3. 16:

> 'In framing an artist, art hath thus decreed,
> To make some good, but others to exceed;
> And you are her labour'd scholar.'

61. *tire*. So the later quartos; quarto of 1604 'trie': hence Wagner reads 'try,' which Breymann approves, comparing i. 158, iii. 15 and other passages in this play.

*Ib. to gain a deity*, to gain the divine character belonging to a magician.

63. *The German* (quarto of 1604 'Germaine') *Valdes and Cornelius*. See notes to Dramatis Personae.

66. *conference*, conversation. Compare Chorus before viii. l. 7, x. 82, and xiii. 9.

71. *that*, i. e. the magical book.

74. *Jove*. Here and in iii. 90, and in the Chorus before vii. l. 3, 'Jove' is the God of Christianity. So in Friar Bacon, xvi. 18, Margaret says that she 'must yield her orisons to mighty Jove'; but she is specially fond of classical phraseology. The use is common in Elizabethan poetry. Compare 2 Tamburlaine, ii. 2, where, to make the confusion complete, it is a Mahometan who says:

> 'Then, if there be a Christ, as Christians say,
> But in their deeds deny him for their Christ,
> If he be son to everlasting Jove,' etc.

And see in the Prologus to Peele's David and Bethsabe (of David):

> 'Whose Muse was dipt in that inspiring dew
> Archangels stillèd from the breath of Jove.'

So in one of the sublimest and at the same time most passionate passages of Dante's Purgatorio, canto vi, l. 118, the Second Person of the Trinity is apostrophised 'O sommo Giove.' (Conversely in the Inferno, canto xiv, l. 70, Capaneus is described as one of the Seven against Thebes who had 'Dio in disdegno.' In All's Well that Ends Well, iv. 2. 24-5, the Cambridge editors thought 'Jove's' had probably been substituted for God's in obedience to the statute against profanity. See, however, A. E. Thiselton, Some Textual Notes on All's Well, etc. (1900), p. 22, where it is remarked that, though a passage in Euphues supports this conjecture, 'Jove' was a natural appellation for the Supreme Deity where Diana had been shortly before referred to, and by no means necessarily implied 'the scandalous associations of the old mythology.'

75. *these elements*. As Dyce points out, 'these' is here and below, 117, equivalent to 'the.' 'Not unfrequently in our old writers "these"

Digitized by Google

is little more than redundant,' like the English 'this' formerly, and the French 'ce' still used in the dating of letters and documents, as 'this 27th of March'; compare also the favourite French collocations 'ces dames,' 'ces messieurs.' 'Those' is similarly used in Friar Bacon, vii. 17.

76. *glutted with conceit of this*, filled with the fancy of attaining to such a power.

78. *Resolve*, satisfy, inform; as again iii. 101 and vi. 64; and Friar Bacon, ii. 46, 'resolve you' = be satisfied or assured. Compare also The Jew of Malta, ii. 2:

'Oh, 'tis the custom, then I am resolved';

and A Pleasant Comedie of Faire Em, iii. 8. 729:

'First, what I am I know you are resolv'd,
For that my friend has let you t' understand,' etc.

81. *orient pearl*, bright, shining pearl. A favourite phrase of both Marlowe (see 2 Tamburlaine, i. 3; The Jew of Malta, i. 1, and iv. 1) and Shakespeare (see A Midsummer Night's Dream, iv. 1. 59, and Antony and Cleopatra, i. 5. 41, and the Passionate Pilgrim, x). In Venus and Adonis, 981, a tear is called 'an orient drop,' and in Hero and Leander, ii. *ad fin.*, from Hero's countenance might be seen

'A kind of twilight break, and through the air,
As from an orient cloud, glimps'd here and there.'

The phrase 'orient pearl' occurs in the old Taming of a Shrew (p. 175).

82. *the new-found world*, America.

83. *delicates*, delicacies; so 'knightly delicates' in Faire Em, ii. 2. 119; and 'a prince's delicates' in 3 Henry VI, ii. 5. 51. The abbreviation 'cates' (1 Tamburlaine, iv. 4, and 1 Henry IV, iii. 1. 163) is still used in this sense; in Friar Bacon it is so used, ix. 261, but also of food which is the reverse of delicate in the same scene, 237 and 248.

86. *I'll have ... brass*, as Friar Bacon designed to wall England. See as to this line Introduction, p. xxi.

87. *And make ... Wittenberg.* To 'circle' is to 'encircle'; so Friar Bacon, xvi. 67; and constantly in Shakespeare, as in Richard III, iv. 4. 382, of the crown:

'The imperial metal, circling now thy brow.'

Wittenberg (see opening Chorus, 13) is on the Elbe; nor need we conclude from this hyperbolical passage that Marlowe thought it lay on the Rhine, which he correctly designates as 'swift.' (Wagner compares 'the cold, swift-running Rhyn' in Alphonsus, Emperor of Germany, act iv. Whether Marlowe and the author of Alphonsus thus described the Rhine from personal observation, must in either case be left an open question; it seems more probable in the latter case than in the former: in the Netherlands, where Marlowe possibly had been, the Rhine is not

Digitized by Google

swift.) If the description of Wittenberg by Luther's friend Myconius, and that of its surroundings by Luther himself, was faithful, few towns can have stood in greater need of 'beautifying.' Luther on one occasion described the Wittenbergers as residing 'in termino civilitatis'—'au bout du monde,' as a modern Frenchman would say. See Köstlin, Martin Luther (3rd edit., 1883), i. 91–2, 780. The power, familiar to modern science, of producing artificial torrents of water, and thus deceiving besieging armies, was claimed by mediaeval magicians; G. v. Loeper, in commenting on a passage in Part ii. of Goethe's Faust, where the notion is made use of, cites a narrative of the siege of Città di Castello in 1474, according to which the commander of the besieged city declined the assistance of the rain-makers as of impious persons. Compare, as to the power of magic over the waters of the earth, l. 142, and iii. 39.

88. *the public schools*, the University class-rooms, as the term is still used at the English Universities. In Friar Bacon, ix. 1, the word 'schools' is applied to the buildings of the University of Oxford in general; and, ib. 17, the 'Belgic schools' are the Universities of the Low Countries.

*Ib. silk*, Dyce's conjecture for 'skill,' the reading of all the quartos. Compare 1 Tamburlaine, iv. 2:

'The townsmen mask in silk and cloth of gold.'

89. *Wherewith . . . bravely clad.* 'Brave' is fine; 'bravery,' fine dress; and 'to brave,' to make fine. See for instance the punning passage in The Taming of the Shrew, iv. 3. 125. Silk was considered a reprehensible luxury, in persons not belonging to the upper or wealthier classes, as late as the reign of Philip and Mary (see the sumptuary law cited by Fairholt, Costume in England, p. 200); and in the Debate between Pride and Lowliness (cited ib. p. 211) these abstractions are typified under the forms, the latter of a pair of cloth breeches 'withouten pride and stitche,' the former of a pair

'of velvet very fine,
The neather stockes of pure Granada silk,
Such as came never upon legges of myne.'

For students to 'brave it' in silk was particularly heinous. Simplicity of apparel was enjoined in both the English and German Universities; and as for academical dress, the gowns even of fellow-commoners must at Oxford at this day, according to a University statute, be 'ex quovis panno nigro *non serico* confectae.'

91. *chase the Prince of Parma from our land*, i.e. the Empire, of which the Netherlands nominally formed part till the Peace of Westphalia in 1648. Alexander Farnese, Prince (from 1586 Duke) of Parma, arrived in the Netherlands as governor-general in 1579, and remained

Digitized by Google

there (with the exception of a campaign in France) till his death in 1592. To him was due the re-establishment of the power of Spain in Flanders and in the whole of what afterwards remained the Spanish Netherlands.

92. *our*; the later quartos have 'the'; but the term is not necessarily here used technically of the Provinces of the Netherlands. Compare above, 56.

93. *the brunt of war*, the heat of war. 'Brunt' is from the same root as 'burn'; compare German *brennen*, *brunst*. The word is only now used in the phrase 'to bear' or 'bide the brunt,' i.e. the heat of the fight. The latter form of the phrase occurs in Friar Bacon, iv. 19; 1 Tamburlaine, i. 2; and twice in Sir Clyomon and Sir Clamydes. In the Promptorium Parvulorum 'brunt' translates 'impetus'; and the word is used in the sense of a blow in the Early English Alliterative Poems edited by Morris (A. 174):

'Baysment gef myn hert a brunt.'

94. *the fiery keel at Antwerp's bridge*, the 'demon fire-ship,' as it was called by the Spaniards, which effected a breach in Parma's famous bridge across the Scheldt during the siege of Antwerp (July 1584–August 1585), by which exploit, but for the incompetency of the Dutch admiral and the prompt energy of Parma, the great work of the latter might have been annihilated. For a full account of Gianibelli's famous 'floating marine volcanos,' and of the course and result of the enterprise, see Motley's History of the United Netherlands, i. 189–203. 'The image of the Antwerp devil-ships,' says Motley, 'imprinted itself indelibly upon the Spanish mind, as of something preternatural, with which human valour could only contend at a disadvantage; and a day was not very far distant—one of the memorable days of the world's history, big with the fate of England, Spain, Holland, and all Christendom—when the sight of a half-dozen blazing vessels, and the cry of "the Antwerp fire-ships" was to decide the issue of a most momentous enterprise.' (As to the indignation excited by the treatment of Antwerp after its reduction, see The Faerie Queene, v. 10. 25 seqq.; the play called A Larum for London, or The Seige of Antwerp, in which, according to a MS. note in Mr. Collier's copy, 'our famous Marloe had a hand,' treats of the 'Spanish Fury' of 1576.)

95. *to invent*. For the insertion of 'to' see Abbott, § 349; and compare xiii. 59.

*Ib.* Faustus' design to perform great military achievements by the aid of spirits is in accordance with mediæval, and even later legends. The victory of Charles V at Pavia was said to have been brought about by a conjuror; the Thirty Years' War has many such stories; Oliver Cromwell (according to the title of a tract of 1720) concluded a 'Compact

Digitized by Google

with the Devil for seven years, on the Day in which he gain'd the Battle of Worcester'; and the victories under Lewis XIV of the Duke of Luxemburg were similarly accounted for. 'Dialogues of the Dead' between the last-named and Doctor John Faust were published at Leipzig in 1733.

F. Notter, in a note of extreme length on the whole of this passage, inclines to consider the reference to Parma and the Spanish war in the Netherlands an insertion made at a later date, possibly towards the close of 1597. In the October preceding, Queen Elizabeth had asked subsidies from Parliament to enable her to ward off Philip II of Spain's designs against the religion, liberty, and independence of England. This view Notter supports by the following arguments among others:—In the rest of the play there is no mention of the war, upon influencing the course of which Faustus here shows himself so specially intent. Again, l. 86 is clearly borrowed from Friar Bacon, xi. 22, which was certainly produced *after* Dr. Faustus. And the English History (see Introduction, p. cix) contains a passage, likewise to be found in the Faustbuch (c. xxvi), narrating how Faustus travelled on Mephistophiles, changed into a winged horse, from Wittenberg to various countries, including Holland, Zealand, Brabant, and Flanders—so that the writer whom Marlowe had before him was well aware of the fact that Wittenberg was not, as the present passage seems to imply, in the Netherlands.—Though it may be questioned whether so much is actually implied by our text, the juxtaposition is certainly at least suggestive. Wittenberg, as Notter points out, was taken by the Spaniards in the Smalcaldic War (1547); and in an addition to the Faustbuch (in the second edition of 1587; Scheible, Kloster, ii. 1041) it is related that Doctor Faustus distinguished himself as an artilleryman when in a castle 'besieged by the Emperor Charles's Spanish soldiery.' Düntzer's view, that the 'Prince of Parma' is not meant for Alexander Farnese, but for the Duke who was reigning at the time when the passage was written, is an unnecessary piece of correctness. Both Notter and Düntzer dwell, rather superfluously, on the contradiction between this and a subsequent (v. 130) reference to Philip II and his times, and the appearance in sc. x of the Emperor Charles V. But the latter is not called by that name.

*Enter* Valdes *and* Cornelius. In the quarto of 1604 this stage-direction follows v. 97.

96. *German Valdes.* Cf. VALDES in Dramatis Personae.

101. *only . . . fantasy.* Dyce conjectures 'alone' for 'only.'

102. *That will receive no object; for my head.* This is clearly the correct interpunctuation, and not that of the quarto of 1604: 'That will receive no object for my head.' The meaning seems to be, 'that will

Digitized by Google

not receive anything offered in the ordinary (academic) way'; cf. note to v. 1, *ante*. Professor Logeman's interpretation, 'that will brook no objection,' though deriving a certain plausibility from l. 133 below, 'therefore object it not,' cannot be accepted *simpliciter*. Both this and the preceding line are probably corrupt, and are omitted, with that which follows, in the quarto of 1616.

107. This line is also omitted in the later quartos.

*Ib. vile*, spelt 'vild' in the old editions, which have the same spelling iv. 56; xiii. 42, and Friar Bacon, ix. 70. According to Dyce, in the first folio of Shakespeare we sometimes find 'vild,' and sometimes 'vile.' 'Vild' also occurs in Spenser.

111. *Gravell'd*, puzzled, brought to a stop. Compare As You Like It, iv. 1. 74, and Andromana, or The Merchant's Wife, i. 3, where it clearly means 'stuck fast': 'Yet the prince is so far gravell'd in her affection.'

112. *the flowering pride*, the *flos juventutis* of the students.

113. *problems*, my mathematical and logical lectures.

114. *sweet Musaeus when he came to hell*. According to F. V. Hugo, 'Marlowe's classical reminiscences deceive him. It is not Musaeus who descended to the infernal regions, but Orpheus. The error is curious on the part of the translator of Hero and Leander' (of which poem Musaeus, or rather a Pseudo-Musaeus, was the author). It is, however, the translator who is at fault. Marlowe, who, as Miss Lee says, 'knew his Virgil from cover to cover,' had in his mind the passage in the Aeneid, vi. 666, where the Sibyl addresses the crowd in the 'happy fields' of the lower regions:

> 'Musaeum ante omnis: medium nam plurima turba
> Hunc habet, atque humeris exstantem suspicit altis.'

Musaeus was as a poet closely associated with the Eleusinian Mysteries, of which several poems ascribed to him treat; he was sometimes called the son or scholar of Orpheus, with whom he was jointly celebrated by later poets. The relation between Marlowe and Musaeus is finely touched upon in Nashes Lenten Staffe (Nash's Works, ed. Grosart, v. 262): 'Let me see, hath any bodie in Yarmouth heard of Leander and Hero, of whom diuine *Musaeus* sung, and a diuiner Muse then him, *Kit Marlow*!'

115. *Agrippa*. See CORNELIUS in Dramatis Personae.

116. *shadows* (unnecessarily altered to 'shadow' in the 1616 and later quartos), the shadows raised by Agrippa. In Bk. i. of his work De Occultâ Philosophiâ, Agrippa gives directions for the operations of sciomancy (see note to opening Chorus, 25).

119. *Indian Moors*. In unconscious accordance with the probable etymology of the word, the term 'Moors' (properly applicable to the

Digitized by Google

Saracens of Africa, whence they conquered Spain) was used generally of members of dark-coloured races, and so survives in the popular word 'blackamoor.' Shakespeare makes no distinction between 'moor' and 'negro.' Here the term refers to the dark-coloured races of the New World.

120. *the subjects of every element.* The later quartos read 'spirits' for 'subjects,' which term appears to signify the bodily forms taken by the spirits belonging to the several elements (those belonging to the elements of fire and earth are discussed in Friar Bacon, ix. 45 seqq.). Marlowe uses the word 'subject' to signify 'bodily form' or 'body' in 2 Tamburlaine, v. 3:

'Your soul gives essence to our wretched subjects';

and again in the same scene:

'This subject, not of force enough
To hold the fiery spirit it contains.'

122. *Like lions.* Spirits occasionally made their appearance in the shape of wild animals; compare Burton's Anatomy of Melancholy, I. ii. 1. 2, 'Digression of Spirits,' where reference is made to the text in 1 Epistle of St. Peter v. 8. So the shape assumed by Belial in the Faustbuch (ch. xxiii) is that of 'a hairy and quite coalblack bear,' while the inferior spirits appear 'in the same shape as unreasoning animals,' including bears, wolves, and buffaloes. 'Tregetoures,' according to Chaucer's The Frankeleine's Tale, 11458, could among other apparitions make 'a grim leoun' 'seme come.' On the other hand, 'lions' is the name given in one of the magical books (Commentary of Psellus on the Magic Oracles of Zoroaster, Scheible, Kloster, iii. 399) to apparitions in the 'circle of Hecate,' connected with the sign of the Lion in the Zodiac.

123. *Like Almain rutters with their horsemen's staves.* Compare the line, occurring twice in 2 Tamburlaine, i. 1:

'Sclavonians, Almains, Rutters, Muffs and Danes.'

'Almain' (Allemand) is a common Elizabethan equivalent for 'German'; so in Friar Bacon, vii. 6 and 14, the German Emperor is called 'the Almain monarch' and 'the Almain emperor'; and compare Othello, ii. 3. 86. 'Almain rutters' are German horsemen (Reuter, Reiter, a word which the French corrupted into reître or rêtre). The lance, the distinctive weapon of the 'hommes d'armes' and of the chivalry of the Middle Ages in general, fell into disrepute towards the close of the sixteenth century, and was only partially adopted by the German cavalry-regiments formed already under Charles V on the model of the 'Landsknechte' of Maximilian I—the

'stout lanciers of Germany,
The strength and sinews of the Imperial host,'

Digitized by Google

mentioned in 2 Tamburlaine, i. 1. The German horsemen, and afterwards the French cuirassiers or 'reîtres,' soon exchanged their staves for pistols. In England, as we learn from Harrison's Description, ii. 16, travellers sometimes carried 'long staves of 12 or 13 feet with a pike of 12 inches at the end,' but 'a case of dags or pistols' was also found to be desirable. Hence the 'staves' in our passage may be lances, or pikes.

124. *Lapland giants.* Compare 2 Tamburlaine, i. 1:

'From the shortest northern parallel
Vast Grantland [Greenland], compassed with the Frozen Sea,
(Inhabited with tall and sturdy men,
Giants as big as hugy Polypheme).'

Lapland is mentioned as a home of monsters in Jonson's Underwoods, xvi; and Burton, in the chapter cited above, speaks of Lapland as the familiar abode of Witches. Cf. Thomas Heywood and Brome's The Witches of Lancashire, act v: 'Ile out of the Country, and as soone live in *Lapland* as *Lancashire* hereafter.' Cf. 'Lapland witches' in Paradise Lost, ii. 665; in Oldham's Satires upon the Jesuits, iii (and iv: Lapland Saints), and in Bishop Ken's Poems, ii. 10; see also Shirley's The Young Admiral, iv. 1, where a pretended witch is addressed as 'great lady of the Laplanders'; and Dryden's An Evening's Love, or The Mock Astrologer, ii. 1, where Wildblood says to the pretended astrologer: 'Thou shalt have all the trade of Lapland within a month.' The notion long survived in England; cf. Congreve's Love for Love, act iii. sc. 7; Byrom's Remains, ii. 236 (February 19th, 1739). — A 'Finnkona' is equivalent to a witch in Norse tales.

In the Life and Death of Christoph Wagner (c. xxxiii) it is related how he was by the spirit Auerhan conducted into Lapland, a country of which the inhabitants 'are like the Devil himself,' but in which he does not appear to have met with any giants.

126. *Shadowing.* If this was really what Marlowe wrote, it must mean 'shadowing or imaging forth.' Compare 'shadowing passion,' Othello, iv. 1. 42, in the sense of a passion full of shapes and images.

*Ib. airy.* This either means lofty (cf. vii. 3: 'airy mountain-tops'), or more probably unreal (cf. 'airy nothing' in A Midsummer Night's Dream, v. 1. 16).

127. *Than have the.* This is the reading of the quarto of 1616; the earlier quartos have 'than in their,' for which Wagner conjectures 'than's in the.'

128. *argosies.* This favourite Elizabethan word was usually supposed to be derived, through the M. Lat. 'argis,' a vessel of heavy burden, from the name of the famous mythical ship Argo. But the real

Digitized by Google

derivation (see Murray's English Dictionary, *s. v.*) is from the Italian Ragusea, sc. nave s. caracca, a vessel of Ragusa. Of this the earliest English form is ragusye, which by transposition became argosea, etc. (Hakluyt, 'arguzes of Venice'). This transposition is connected with the fact that the name Ragusa itself (in Venetian Ragusi) appears in sixteenth-century English in the forms Aragouse and Arragosa.

129, 130. *And from America . . . . old Philip's treasury.* The reference is to the annual plate-fleet upon which English patriots so long cast covetous eyes, which nearly fell into the hands of Ralegh and his companions after the raid upon Cadiz in 1596 (see the lines concerning this expedition to 'th' Iberian city' upon which 'golden-finger'd India had bestowed such wealth' in Chapman's Third Sestiad of Hero and Leander), and which at a later date (1628) it was the good fortune of a Dutch mariner actually to capture. Elsewhere, in 2 Tamburlaine, i. 2, Marlowe speaks of

'Armados from the coasts of Spain
Fraughted with gold of rich America'—

and it is well known how vast an income Spain derived from her American possessions during the reign of Philip II, although the close of that reign left her in a condition of national bankruptcy.—The allusions to the 'golden fleece' which Iason brought from Colchos are frequent in our early literature, in which the story had been told by Chaucer, Gower and Lydgate, before Caxton printed his 'boke of the hoole lyf of Jason,' translated from the French of Raoul le Fevre; Marlowe alludes to it in 1 Tamburlaine, iv. 4, and in The Jew of Malta, iv. 4. In his brilliant essay on the Republic of the United Netherlands (Historische und Politische Aufsätze, ii. 540) H. von Treitschke instances—perhaps however without intending to cite accurately—the epitaph of the naval hero Piet Hein, 'the new Argonaut who fetched across from the New World the golden fleece of the King of Spain—the plate-fleet.'—Philip II is called 'old Philip' with no special reference to his age, but because his name was so familiar to English ears; compare 'old Nick.' In D. Jones' Secret History of Whitehall (1697) I find Lewis XIV, under the supposed date of 1688, spoken of as 'old Lewis.'

133. *object it not,* do not suggest the objection 'if I will be resolute.'

137. *Enrich'd with tongues.* 'The Latin tongue was, in the Middle Ages, accounted the language of spirits and ghosts. A certain degree of preliminary instruction was indispensable for intercourse with the spiritual world; accordingly in Hamlet (i. 1. 42), when the Ghost appears, Marcellus says to Horatio

"Thou art a scholar; speak to it, Horatio."



Digitized by Google

Compare also Fletcher and Shirley's The Night-Walker (ii. 2), where on beholding a supposed apparition, Toby proposes to

"call the butler up, for he speaks Latin,
And that will daunt the devil."

Thus it is in Latin that Faustus summons Mephistophilis.' (From a note by F. V. Hugo.)

137. *well seen in minerals*, well versed in the knowledge of minerals (for chemical purposes). The 'Opus naturarum' of Albertus Magnus contains books on minerals, a subject not treated by Aristotle, of the commentaries on whom the work forms part.—'Seen' or 'well seen' (compare Introduction, p. xcvii: 'divers that were seen in those devilish acts'; also The Taming of the Shrew, i. 2. 135: 'a schoolmaster well seen in music'; and Nash's Unfortunate Traveller, Works, ed. Grosart, v. 87: 'he was seene in all the seuen liberall deadly sciences, not a sinne but he was as absolute in as sathan himselfe') have the same meaning as the Latin 'spectatus,'—of proved capacity, of a high reputation.

138. *principles*, rudiments ('principia'), that which lies at the root of magic. Compare 'principles of art,' Friar Bacon, ix. 7. Not here used in the technical sense in which the word was employed in 'Zoroastrian' magic.

139. *renown'd* (Fr. renommé). The word is frequently thus spelt in the old editions of Marlowe's Tamburlaine, and also in other old plays.

140. *the Delphian oracle*, also referred to in Friar Bacon, ii. 18.

142. *they can dry the sea*. The redemption of a large tract of land from the sea is the great work the coming results of which Goethe's Faust (Part ii. act v) contemplates with joyful pride at the moment when his end is approaching.

143. *the treasure of all foreign wrecks*. Wagner points out that 'in those days Venetian, Portuguese and Spanish ships used to carry greater treasures and freights of higher value than the English.'

144. *all the wealth*. The power of discovering treasures hidden in the earth was naturally ascribed to magicians (see Dousterswivel in The Antiquary); and in the Faustbuch (ch. lix) it is related how Faustus found in an ancient ruined chapel near Wittenberg (which has been identified with a chapel pulled down by the Elector John Frederick the Magnanimous in 1542), 'guarded by an ugly big worm,' a heap of coals which in his house turned to silver and gold, 'valued at some thousand florins.' Teutonic mythology abounds in legends of treasures guarded by serpents and dragons; hence gold was poetically called 'Wurmbett' (worm- or snake's-bed) or 'Wurmbettsfeuer' (fire). Compare the A. S. 'wyrmhord' for 'treasure.'

145. *massy*. Shakespeare uses this word of metals; hence it is here used of the metal-bearing earth. This is a favourite adjective of Marlowe's; compare 1 Tamburlaine, ii. 7; 2 Tamburlaine, i. 1; iv. 3; v. 3; it also

Digitized by Google

occurs in Friar Bacon, ix. 56. For similar formations from nouns with the suffix *y* see Abbott, § 450. In our play we have 'pitchy,' iii. 4, which also occurs in 2 Tamburlaine, v. 3; and 'yoky,' Chorus before sc. vii. l. 6. The old play of Edward III, ii. 2, has 'helly.' From adjectives, Marlowe has the formations 'steepy' in 'The Passionate Shepherd to his Love,' 'hugy' 1 Tamburlaine, iii. 3; from a verb, 'jetty' 1 Tamburlaine, iv. 1.

149. *lusty*. This epithet, which means 'pleasant,' is exchanged in the quarto of 1609 for 'little,' and in that of 1616 for 'bushy.' Wagner unnecessarily conjectures 'hidden.'

150. *possession* should be pronounced as a word of four syllables, like 'companions' in Chorus before viii. line 5. Compare 'exhalátiòns,' 1 Tamburlaine, i. 2; 'satisfáctiòn,' ib. ii. 3.

152. *wise Bacon*. See Introduction, pp. xxxv. seqq.

*Ib. Albanus*. So all the quartos; but, following the correction of 'I. M.' in the Gentleman's Magazine for Jan. 1841, Dyce and all subsequent editors, including Bullen, read 'Albertus.' It is at the same time open to question whether Marlowe did not, as Düntzer suggests, refer to Pietro d'Abano (Petrus de Apono), an Italian physician and alchemist who narrowly escaped burning by the Inquisition. He was born about 1250 and died about 1316, and wrote a work called Conciliator Differentiarum Philosophorum et Medicorum. Of a 'Heptameron, or Elements of Magic' ascribed to him a translation is printed in Scheible's Kloster, iii. 591 seqq. 'Bachon et Apponus' are coupled together more than once in Agrippa's *De Incertitudine*, etc.

If, on the other hand, Marlowe wrote or meant 'Albertus,' the conjunction of this name with that of Bacon may have suggested itself from the circumstance that both Albertus Magnus and Roger Bacon were credited with the invention of brazen heads which could speak. (See Introduction, pp. xlii seqq.) 'Albertus Magnus' (Albrecht von Bollstädt) was born in 1193 of knightly parents at Lauingen in Suabia. After studying for several years at Padua, he entered the Dominican Order, in whose service he taught monastic schools at Cologne (where Thomas Aquinas was his pupil) and in other German towns. His reputation as a teacher however reached its greatest height at Paris, whence he afterwards returned to Germany. After being elected Provincial of his Order for Germany in 1254 he for a time held the see of Ratisbon: and after an active life as a teacher, writer, and ecclesiastical politician died at Cologne in 1280. Two years before his death he had ceased to teach, his memory having failed him; and from this circumstance arose the legend that the Blessed Virgin had promised shortly before his death to take from him all secular learning, so that his last hour might find him restored to childlike faith. He was afterwards



Digitized by Google

canonised, and remains a special saint of the Dominicans. His works, which in the Lyons edition fill 21 folios, comprise voluminous commentaries on Aristotle and on the Old and New Testament; he was equally eminent as a theologian and as a scientific enquirer, in which latter capacity he acquired the title of 'doctor universalis.' The fame of his genuine works was however far surpassed by that of the writings falsely ascribed to him in subsequent centuries, such as the 'Liber aggregationis s. liber secretorum Alberti Magni de virtutibus herbarum lapidum et animalium quorundam,' and the treatise 'de mirabilibus mundi.' It was on the basis of these that the popular notion of Albertus Magnus in the later Middle Ages was built up. (Abridged from v. Hertling.)

153. *the Hebrew Psalter.* 'To cite Bealphares (proved the noblest carrier that ever did serve any man upon earth) you must read the 22. and 51. Psalms all over; or else rehearse them by heart; for these are accounted necessary,' &c. Scot's Discovery of Witchcraft, bk. xv. ch. 14. Conjuration by the use of the Psalms of David was one of the mysteries, upon which whole volumes were written, of the Hebrew Cabbalah. See H. Morley, Life of Cornelius Agrippa, i. 80.

*Ib. and New Testament.* The use of the first verses of the Gospel of St. John in conjurations is constantly recommended in the handbooks of magic; in the Life of Wagner, c. xxv, the spirit Auerhan complains that in conjurations for molesting such spirits as himself, for finding treasures, and for expelling spirits, the Gospel of St. John and the Psalms are wont to be 'misused.' Goethe's Faust translates the opening verses of St. John's Gospel in the presence of Mephistophiles, transformed into a poodle, who finds their recital more than he can bear.

154. *whatsoever else.* Loose construction for 'of whatsoever else.' For similar omissions of prepositions see Abbott, § 200.

156. *the words of art,* with which to conjure.

157. *all . . . learn'd,* nominative absolute; see Abbott, § 376.

160. *perfecter.* This comparative occurs in Coriolanus, ii. 1. 90, and the superlative 'perfectest' in Macbeth, I. 5. 2. For other examples of the use of these inflexions where we now generally use 'more' and 'most' see Abbott, §§ 7 and 9. Compare 'beautifulest,' 'admirablest,' xiii. 10 and 12.

161. *after meat.* 'Meat' is used in the sense of dinner or food generally (compare vii. 69, xii. 11); as in the common phrase 'grace before meat.'

162. *canvass.* 'To canvass a matter is a metaphor taken from sifting a substance through canvas' (Fr. canevas, Lat. cannabis, cannabus, hemp), 'and the verb "sift" itself is used in like manner for examining a matter thoroughly to the very grounds.' Wedgwood. Cf. O. F. cana-

Digitized by Google

basser, 'to canvass or curiously to examine, search or sift out the depth of a matter.' Cotgrave *ap.* Skeat.

162. *quiddity*, a scholastic term like quantity, quality. It was used for the predicables (genus and species) which answer to the question 'quid est'; and was equivalent to 'essentia,' a translation of the Aristotelian τὸ τί ἦν εἶναι. Compare The Massacre at Paris, i. 8:

'Excepting against doctors' actions
And *ipse dixi* with this quiddity:
*Argumentum testimonii est inartificiale*';

and Greene's Menaphon (Works, ed. Grosart, vi. 35): 'Democles commanded by proclamation that no man should prie into the quiddities of Apollo's answere.' Shakespeare uses both the forms *quiddities* and *quiddits*, the latter of which is also applied to lawyers' quibbles in Dekker's The Seven Deadly Sinnes of London. The passage in Hudibras, Part i. canto i, is well known:

'He could reduce all things to acts,
And knew their natures and abstracts,
Where entity and quiddity
The ghost of defunct bodies fly.'

164. *therefore*, for it. So in A Midsummer Night's Dream, iii. 2. 78:
'An if I could, what should I get therefore?'

## *Scene II.*

2. *sic probo*, an expression usual in scholastic disputations. Cf. Prince Edward's chopping of logic in S. Rowley's When you See Me you Know Me, and the amusing burlesque argumentation between Tim and his tutor in Middleton's A Chaste Maid in Cheapside (1630), iv. 1; and, for later comic uses of the notion, Dryden's Amphitryon, ii. 1. See also The Spanish Friar, iv. 1.

4. *his boy*, servant; compare Morris, English Accidence, 84. See WAGNER in Dramatis Personae.

5. *sirrah*. As to the derivation of this form see Abbott, § 378. 'The *er final* seems to have been sometimes pronounced with a kind of "burr," which produced the effect of an additional syllable; just as "sirrah" is another and more vehement form of "sir."' Another derivation of the form has been suggested from a compound 'sir-ha!' or 'sir-ho!' and a third (and extremely improbable one) from the Irish sirreach (poor, sorry, lean). The question is complicated by the 'feminine' use of the word, as to which Logeman has a good note, p. 27; but he has mistaken the passage quoted by him in S. Rowley's above-mentioned play, which runs: 'How dost thou, Jane? Sirra Harry, she looks,' &c.

Digitized by Google

8. *that follows not*, as a logical consequence or conclusion; see l. 11 below. Compare The Jew of Malta, ii. 2: 'This follows well'; and Richard III, i. 1. 59:

'And, for my name of George begins with G,
It follows in his thought that I am he.'

12. *licentiate.* 'The Degree of a Licentiate is not in use in either of our two Universities, so called from the word *Licentia*, which is given to a person of this degree to ascend to a Doctor's or Master's at his pleasure; wherefore a very strict and rigorous examination is requir'd for the same, since the highest Degree in Learning follows thereupon.' Ayliffe, The Antient and Present State of the University of Oxford (1723), ii. 195; cf. Thurot, De l'Enseignement, p. 49. The grade of 'lic. theol.' is, I believe, still granted in Germany.

*Ib. stand upon't*, insist upon it. This is the reading of the quartos of 1604 and 1609; but Dyce, Bullen, and Logeman are probably right in preferring 'stand upon,' the reading of the quarto of 1616, and in construing the second 'that' as a relative pronoun.

15. *on't.* 'On' is frequently used for 'of,' see Abbott, § 181, and compare v. 111; or for 'out of,' compare xi. 32; xii. 15. On the other hand, 'of' is used where we should use 'on' in vi. 34, 112, in the stage-direction after vii. 82, and in the Chorus before sc. viii, ll. 7 and 9; and where we should use 'in,' in the Chorus before sc. vii, l. 10. The free interchange between 'on' and 'of' is well exemplified by the following passage in Faire Em, sc. xvii. (1388-1390):

'*Mount.* And I say *this*: and thereof will I lay a hundred pound.

*Val.* And I say *this*: whereon I'll lay as much.'

17. *Ask my fellow if I be a thief.* His evidence is worthless, for he is no better than I am.

21. *corpus naturale . . . mobile.* 'Corpus naturale seu mobile' is the current scholastic expression for the subject-matter of Physics. It is not an exact translation but an adaptation of Aristotle's expression; see Colleg. Coimbr. Comment. in Arist. Phys., p. 31. 'Mobile' is commonly used as the 'proprium' of 'corpus' in the 'Tree' of Porphyry. (Adamson.)

24. *forty foot.* Some words expressive of quality, mass or weight, are used in the same form in the singular as in the plural. Many of these were originally neuter and flexionless in the plural. See Morris, English Accidence, §§ 81 and 82; and compare, among other examples, The Tempest, i. 2. 396:

'Full fathom five thy father lies';

and *ib.* 53:

'Twelve year since
Thy father was the Duke of Milan.'

Digitized by Google

Compare also the singular use of 'million,' Friar Bacon, i. 160. The German usage corresponds in the case of Fuss.

24. *the place of execution*, viz. the dining-room of Faustus, 'where execution is done upon meat and drink,' the word being immediately afterwards interpreted in its more common sense. (From Wagner's note.)

26. *set my countenance like a precisian.* A 'precisian' is an old term for a Puritan; compare a passage cited by R. Simpson from A Knack to know a Knave, 1592, one of the series of plays against the Puritans which began in the year 1589:

> 'Thus preach we still unto our breth-e-ren,
> Though in our heart we never mean the thing,
> Thus do we blind the world with holiness,
> And so by that are termed pure Precisians.'

In The Jew of Malta, i. 2, Barabas, when sending his daughter into a nunnery, bids her be

> 'So precise
> As they may think it done of holiness.'

Compare 1 Henry VI, v. 4. 67:

> 'Is all your strict preciseness come to this?'

The term was afterwards in constant use; see the passages in Nares, and especially the passage in Sir Thomas Overbury's 'character' of 'a Precisian' there referred to; compare also a passage cited in the New Shakspere Society's Transactions, 1875–6, p. 458, from R. Bernard's 'Terence in English,' ed. 1607 (first edition 1598): '*P. dignus es cum tua religione odio; nodum in scirpo quaeris.* You are well worthie to be hated for your peevish preciseness: you make a doubt, where all is as plaine as a pike staffe, you seeke a knot in a bulrush, in which is never any at all'; and Field's Amends for Ladies, iii. 3: 'Precise and learned Princox, dost not thou go to Blackfriars?' Marlowe speaks of 'a bashful Puritan' in Edward II, v. 4, and the French Protestants are called 'Puritans' in The Massacre at Paris, ii. 4 and 6. I see no reason for supposing from this allusion that the present scene is a later 'addition.'

29. *this wine.* Wagner must be supposed to be carrying wine in his hands.

*Ib. it would.* So in the quarto of 1604. As to such insertions of the pronoun (more usual after proper than after common nouns) see Abbott, §§ 242, 243.

31. *my dear brethren, my dear brethren!* The later quartos omit this repetition, which is, however, quite in character.

33. *they two.* This use of the personal pronoun for the demonstrative

Digitized by Google

'those' (compare the vulgarism 'them two') is most common in constructions 'where the relative is omitted between pronominal antecedent and a prepositional phrase, especially where locality is predicated,' as 'they in France,' 'he at the gate.' Abbott, § 245; compare also St. Matthew's Gospel, xix. 5 and xxi. 31, for the phrases 'they twain' and 'them twain'; and 'hie þry' (they three) in the A.S. version of Daniel, 361.

35. *allied to me*, connected with me as a friend or acquaintance. So Hen. VIII, i. 1. 61:

'Neither allied
To eminent assistants.'

37. *the Rector*, of the University: the title still used in Germany and elsewhere.

39. *I fear me.* Compare below, x. 25; and so in Friar Bacon, x. 75, 'counsel me' = take counsel with myself. For examples of words, now used intransitively, used reflexively by Shakespeare see Abbott, § 296.

## *Scene III.*

Compare with this scene the extracts from the English History, Introduction, pp. xcviii–cii.—Goethe and Byron may be held to have written the corresponding scenes of their tragedies independently. Ticknor, History of Spanish Literature, ii. 108, considers that a to some extent analogous scene in act ii. of the Numancia of Cervantes surpasses the incantations of Marlowe's Faustus in dignity.

1–4. These lines are repeated verbatim in sc. i. of the 1594 Taming of the Shrew (pp. 161–2).

2. *Orion's drizzling look.* Compare *σθένος δμβριμον Ὠρίωνος*, Hesiod, Op. Di. 619; 'nimbosus O.' Verg. Aen. i. 535; 'aquosus O.' *ib.* iv. 52; see also *ib.* x. 763–766, and Hor. Od. i. 28. 21–22 and *ib.* iii. 27. 17–18. In Dido Queen of Carthage, i. 2, Marlowe speaks of 'gloomy O.'; see also Paradise Lost, i. 305–306. Orion, says Preller, is 'the Wild Huntsman' of the Greek heavens, a conception no doubt suggested by the appearance of this constellation at the beginning of winter, when it rises in the evening and does not set till early morning.

3. *th' antarctic world.* 'Antarctic' (quarto of 1604: 'antartike') means 'opposed to the north,' 'southern.' Compare 1 Tamburlaine, iv. 4:

'We mean to travel to the Antarctick pole';

and 2 Tamburlaine, v. 3:

'From the Antarctic Pole eastward behold
As much more land, which never was described.'

Digitized by Google

See also Paradise Lost, ix. 79. Brazil was called 'Antarctic France' by Protestant emigrants sent out by Coligny to that colony.—In Hom. Od. v. 274 Arctos 'looks at' or 'observes' Orion.

4. *the welkin*, the sky, lit. the clouds (A. S. wolcn, O. E. wolcen, welkin). Compare 1 Tamburlaine, iv. 2:

> 'As when a fiery exhalation,
> Wrapt in the bowels of a freezing cloud,
> Fighting for passage, makes the welkin crack.'

*Ib. pitchy*, dark as pitch. See i. 145.

6. *hest*, behest. A. S. hæs, a command, and hátan, to command, and compare Germ. heissen, Geheiss.

8, 9. *Within this . . . anagrammatis'd* (quarto of 1604: 'and Agramithist'). An 'anagram' is defined by Johnson as 'a conceit arising from the letters of a name transposed.' This exercise of ingenuity, which has long sunk into a harmless amusement ('mild anagram,' as Dryden calls what Ben Jonson termed 'hard trifles'), played a most significant part in the labyrinthine mysteries of the Hebrew Cabbalah, of which the principles but not the details were accepted by Christian scholars such as Reuchlin and Agrippa. Here, 'of all names by which wonders can be wrought, the Mirific Word of Words, the concealed name of God, = the Schem-hammaphorash' or Semiphoras, was the chief. See Morley, *u. s.*, i. 78. This mystic name of seventy-two letters was formed by an 'extracted' collection of seventy-two names of God and the angels, 'springing as branches from a tree' from the name Jehovah, of which the true pronunciation was itself accounted a holy secret concealed from men. Of the seventy-two names we read that 'denotant semper Nomen Dei, sive legantur a principio, fine' [seu fine?] 'vel a dextris aut sinistris, suntque ingentis virtutis.' See tractates and diagrams giving more details on the subject than it is easy to follow in Scheible's Kloster, iii. 289 seqq. Compare Friar Bacon, sc. xiii. 93 seqq., where some of the forms of the Divine Name used in the magic charms are mentioned.

10. *The breviated names of holy saints* (later quartos, 'th' abbreviated,' but the form 'breviated' is quite in Marlowe's fashion). R. Scot, in his Discourse of Divels and Spirits, c. xxiv, has some caustic remarks on the exorcising and other gifts ascribed to the saints of the Roman calendar. The 'elect souls of the blest' formed part of one of the 'hierarchies' of the heavenly system to which appeal was made in magic.

11. *every adjunct to the heavens*, every star joined to, or suspended in, the heavens.

12. *characters of signs and erring stars*, symbols (conventional in magic, astrology, and astronomy) of the signs of the Zodiac and the planets (πλανήτης, from πλανᾶσθαι, to wander). So in Hamlet ghosts

Digitized by Google

are spoken of, i. 1. 154, as 'extravagant and erring' spirits. Compare v. 167 and vi. 44; and Tomkis's Albumazar, i. 1:

> 'Your patron Mercury, in his mysterious character,
> Holds all the marks of the other wanderers.'

Bullen further compares a passage in The Distracted Emperor (a play first printed from MS. in vol. iii. of his *Collection of Old Plays*):

> 'Sir, I was friar and clerk, and all myself;
> None mourned but night, or funeral tapers bore
> But erring stars.'

See R. Scot's Discovery of Witchcraft, bk. xv. ch. 6: 'The names of the Planets, their characters, together with the twelve signs of the Zodiake, their dispositions, aspects, and government,' etc.; and in Arbatel de Magia Veterum (Scheible's Kloster, iii. 232) the characters, with the corresponding magical names, of the twelve 'signa' and of the seven planets, the latter of whom represent the seven angels standing before the throne of God, but likewise appear to correspond to the seven ruling spirits of the firmament (whose names and 'characters' are given *ib.* pp. 243 seqq.).

16–24. *Sint mihi . . . Mephistophilis!* 'May the Gods of Acheron' (the infernal powers) 'be propitious to me! May the threefold deity of Jehovah prevail! Spirits of the fire, the air and the water, hail! Belzebub prince of the East, monarch of burning hell, and Demogorgon, we propitiate ye, that Mephistophilis may appear and arise . . . .: by Jehovah, Gehenna, and the consecrated water which I now pour, and by the sign of the cross which I now make, and by our prayers, may Mephistophilis whom we summon now arise!'

In this passage the words 'quod tumeraris' (an impossible form) are an apparently hopeless corruption. The later quartos have: 'surgat Mephistophilis Dragon, quod tumeraris.' Messrs. Bullen and Fleay (as well as two German writers) have, independently of one another, conjectured 'Quid tu moraris?' as addressed to Mephistophilis; which corresponds to the passage in the English History: 'Then began Dr. Faustus to call for Mephostophiles the Spirit, and to charge him in the name of Beelzebub to appear there personally, without any long stay.' (Introduction, pp. xcviii–ix). Schroër compares the formula in the Praxis Magica Faustiana (Dr. Faust's Höllenzwang), Passau, 1527, ap. Scheible's Kloster, v. 1157: 'cito veni, nec morare velis.' The late Mr. J. Crossley proposed (rejecting the word 'Dragon') to read 'quod tu mandares' (as a clause governing the previous one; but, as Dyce points out, the 'tu' would not agree with the preceding 'vos'); Mitford suggested 'surgat Mephistophilis, per Dragon (or Dagon), quod numen est aëris'; Wagner, 'Mephistophilis qui arbiter est aëris'; Düntzer

Digitized by Google

(I think) 'quod nominaris.' Further on, the two first quartos read 'dicatis,' which Wagner seems not quite willing to consider impossible as joined with 'nobis'; and F. V. Hugo boldly corrects 'nostris dictatis.' 'Dicatus' is the reading of two of the later quartos.

16. *Orientis princeps Belzebub.* See LUCIFER in Dramatis Personae.

18. *Demogorgon.* This evil spirit has an extensive literary reputation. He is thought to be alluded to by Lucan (Pharsal. vi. 744) and by Statius. The first writer who is said to have distinctly named him is Lactantius Placidus, a scholiast of the fifth century. He is stated to be mentioned by Boccaccio, Bojardo, Tasso and Ariosto (?). Marlowe speaks of 'Gorgon prince of hell' in 1 Tamburlaine, iv. 1; Greene of 'Demogorgon, master of the fates,' in Friar Bacon, xi. 110, and of 'Demogorgon, ruler of the fates,' in Orlando Furioso. Spenser, in the Faerie Queene, i. 1. 37, describes Archimago as

> 'A bold bad man! that dar'd to call by name
> Great Gorgon, prince of darkness and dead night,
> At which Cocytus quakes, and Styx is put to flight';

and Milton, Paradise Lost, ii. 964, introduces 'the dreaded name of Demogorgon,' together with 'Orcus and Ades,' by the side of Chaos and Night. See Mr. Masson's note on the passage. Though the name was associated with the myth of the Gorgon's head, fatal of aspect, it is thought to have been originally a corruption of *δημιουργός*, this power being in Arcadian mythology regarded as the evil creator of all things.

*Enter* MEPHISTOPHILIS. The stage-direction in the first and second quartos is here: 'Enter a Diuell,' and v. 28 'Exit Devil.' As to the name MEPHISTOPHILIS, see Dramatis Personae.

25. *an old Franciscan friar.* See Introduction, p. c; the Franciscans (Minorites) were called Grey Friars from their habit.

26. *That . . . best.* This is a sentiment which need not be ascribed to Marlowe himself, although both in our play, vii. 52, and elsewhere (compare The Massacre at Paris, i. 3, and the characters of Jacomo and Bernardino in The Jew of Malta) he gladly seizes an opportunity for a stroke against the monks. Cf., for German proverbs embodying the paradox, L. Fränkel, Das Sprichwörter-Kapitel im ältesten Faustbuch, in Vierteljahrschrift für Litteraturgeschichte, iv. 371 (1891). Already in Gammer Gurton's Needle, iii. 2, it is observed from another point of comparison:

'Look, even what face Friar Rush had, the devil had such another.'

The notion of bringing the devil and the monks into so close a connexion may originally have been suggested by the ancient appellation of the former in German popular legend as Graumann (grey man) or Graumännlein, noted by Jacob Grimm, but it was of course cherished in consequence of the later unpopularity of the monastic orders. For

Digitized by Google

notices of legends in which devils or evil spirits appear as monks see Düntzer, Sage von Faust, 126–129; and cf. a very striking instance of this popular fancy in an essay by A. Thomas on the unhappy enthusiast called the Piper of Niklashausen, put to death in 1476, in Preussische Jahrbücher, vol. lx. (1887). In the famous Tewrdanck (ch. x.) the Devil appears to the hero 'bekleidt wie ein glerter doctor'; and in Beza's Tragedie of Abraham's Sacrifice, translated by Arthur Golding (1577), Satan wears the habit of a monk (Collier, ii. 176). In the Faustbuch the Devil is called *simpliciter* 'D. Fausti Münch.' Luther tells a story of the Evil One taking service in a kitchen of a monastery (compare Introduction, p. xxxii), and the pious Widmann has much to say about evil spirits in the shape of monks, and in his commentary on the apparition in such a shape of the evil spirit of Doctor Faustus dwells on the appropriateness of the assumption. He observes that the Devil, when he appeared to our Lord, very possibly came in the shape of a Pharisee or a monk, but, while inveighing against the 'fratres ignorantiae' who contributed so largely to the darkness of the 'Bapsthumb,' allows that 'D. Fausti Frater ignorantiae' was not one of so simple a sort, but a regular of experience. (See Scheible's Kloster, ii. 345 seqq.) Yet it was a Franciscan who, according to an old chronicle, sought to convert the real Faust at Erfurt. See AN OLD MAN in Dramatis Personae.

27. *virtue*, power. So in As You Like It, v. 4. 108: 'much virtue in If.' For the same use of the word, compare 2 Tamburlaine, v. 3:

> 'Now, eyes, enjoy your latest benefit,
> And when my soul hath virtue of your sight
> Pierce through the coffin,' etc.

Hence the use of 'virtues' as a title of one of the Orders of Angels by Thomas Heywood, Milton, and Bishop Ken. See note to Friar Bacon, ix. 141.—Cf. the common phrase 'by virtue of,' for 'by the force of.'

*Ib. heavenly words*; compare opening Chorus, 6.

32. *No, Faustus.* J. H. Albert conjectures: 'Now, Faustus.'

*Ib. conjuror laureat*, a conjuror of acknowledged distinction, one who has 'taken his degree' as a conjuror. The poet-laureateship was, according to the more ancient use of the term, 'a degree in grammar, including rhetoric and versification, taken at the university, on which occasion the graduate was presented with a wreath of laurel.' Dyce, Introd. to the Poetical Works of Skelton, i. xii. (The Bacca-laureateship is symbolical by its name of a hopeful preliminary stage of academical progress.) Compare notes to Friar Bacon, iv. 64 and ix. 116.

34. *Quin . . . imagine.* 'For indeed thou hast dominion in the image of thy brother Mephistophilis,' a blasphemous allusion to the words of Gen. i. 26. Probably, as Wagner suggests, the word 'frater' specially alludes to the habit of a Franciscan friar in which Mephistophilis appears.

Digitized by Google

*Re-enter . . . friar.* This stage-direction in the quarto of 1604 is merely, 'Enter Mephostophilis.'

36. *I charge thee wait.* As to the continued use of infinitives without 'to,' after the infinitive suffix 'en' had been dropped, see Abbott, § 349. Compare Friar Bacon, iv. 40; vii. 2; viii. 48; x. 56.

38. *to make the moon drop from her sphere.* In the Life of Wagner, c. 15 (Scheible's Kloster, iii. 72), a 'very learned' student, 'who was taken to be Paracelsus,' cites certain passages in point from the ancients on the powers of magicians; viz. the statement of Apuleius (Metam. s. de Asin. Aur. bk. i, where see the commentary of Beroaldus), 'magico susurramine . . . Solem inhiberi, Lunam despumari' (is drawn down with a rush), etc.; Tibullus' (i. 2. 43) description of a sorceress whom he saw 'de coelo ducentem sidera' (compare also i. 8. 21); and Medea's recital of her magical performances, Ov. Metam. vii. 192 seqq., ending with

'Te quoque Luna traho.'

Compare also Verg. Ecl. viii. 69:

'Carmina vel caelo possunt deducere lunam';

Hor. Epod. v. 45–46; xvii. 57–58; and Lucan. Phars. vi. 499–506.— R. Plot, in his Natural History of Oxfordshire (1677), 215, when discussing Bacon's glasses, cites and translates from his Book of Perspective a passage which explains the origin of this supposed effect: 'Greater things are performed if the *vision* be *refracted*, for [by *refraction*] 'tis easily made appear that the *greatest things* may be represented *less*; and *little things* as the *greatest*; and that things *afar off* may be represented *near*. Thus we can make the *Sun*, and *Moon*, and *Stars*, to all appearance, to come down to us here below,' etc. Compare Friar Bacon, ii. 48 and xi. 14–15, where Bacon more modestly ascribes to himself the power to 'dim fair Luna to a dark eclipse,' and to make her 'hide her silver looks.' To relieve, or aid in her struggle, the moon when labouring under an eclipse, it was customary at Rome to make a noise with metal instruments of various kinds; see Liv. xxvi. 5; Tacit. Annal. i. 28; Juvenal, vi. 443. As to similar superstitions among the Indians and other peoples see Jacob Grimm, Deutsche Mythologie (4th edit.), ii. 589.

39. *Or th' ocean.* This word is to be scanned as a trisyllable, as in The Merchant of Venice, i. 1. 8:

'Your mind is tossing on the ocean.'

The power of magical incantations over the water of sea and rivers is asserted in the classical passages referred to in the last note; compare note to i. 87.

46. *per accidens* (earlier quartos, 'accident'), i.e. the effect was not due to your conjuring, but to something it happened to contain. 'The distinction between an efficient cause producing its effect through its own

Digitized by Google

efficiency, and a cause producing its effect not by its own agency but by some external concomitant, is familiar to scholastic metaphysics. "Trita et usitata in Scholis divisio est causae efficientis in eam quae est per se et quae est per accidens." Timpler, *Met. Systema* (1597), p. 309. Cf. Ramus, *Dialect.* i. c. 4: "Per accidens caussa efficit, quae externa facultate efficit, ut in his quae fiunt necessitate vel fortuna . . . Fortuna est caussa per accidens, quando praeter efficientis scopum aliquid accidit."' (Adamson).

47. *rack*, torture. The reference is to the anagrammatising of the Divine name in conjurations. Compare Friar Bacon, xiii. 93:

'The wresting of the holy name of God.'

51. *Whereby*. As to the construction of 'such' and 'so' with 'where' see Abbott, § 279.

53. *to abjure the Trinity*. Quarto of 1616: 'to abjure all godliness.' Cf. Introduction, cxxxvii, note 2. The Trinity was one of the Holy Names of which the irreverent use was prohibited in the Statute.

55, 56, printed as one line in the quarto of 1604.

57. *but only*. For examples of this and similar redundancies compare Abbott, § 130.

60. *For he . . . Elysium*, he makes no distinction between them. R. Simpson (New Shakspere Society's Transactions, 1875–76, p. 168 note) suggests that this passage may be glanced at in Nash's Epistle prefixed to Greene's Menaphon: 'for what can be hoped of them that thrust Elysium into hell,' etc.

61. *His ghost*, spirit (A. S. gast). Compare The Debate of the Body and Soul, 6:

'A body on a bere lay,
* * * * * * *
The gost was oute, and scholde away.'

We still say: 'to give up the ghost.'

*Ib. with the old philosophers*. Hardly, as van der Velde explains, because, as they are in hell (compare Dante's Inferno, c. iv.), it will be an endurable place of sojourn; but because they, according to Faustus, likewise did not believe in states of eternal reward and punishment after death.

Mr. Fleay, however, considers the allusion here to be rather to 1 Tamburlaine v. 2:

'Hell and Elysium swarm with ghosts of men,'

and, earlier in the same scene:

'Where shaking ghosts with ever-howling groans
Hover about the ugly ferryman,
To get a passage to Elysium.'

Dr. Adamson thinks the line may possibly allude to the famous prayer of Averroës (who did not believe in individual immortality):

Digitized by Google

'Moriatur anima mea morte philosophorum,' a parody of Balaam's prayer (Numbers xxiii. 10); see Rénan's *Averroës*, pp. 236, 244.

63. *that Lucifer thy lord.* See Dramatis Personae (LUCIFER) and Introduction, p. ci; and compare Widmann, chapters 18 and 19, and R. Scot's Discourse of Divels and Spirits (1584), chapters 8, 9, and 10, 'on Lucifer and his fall.' The legend of the fall of Lucifer is stated to have been unknown to Jerome, and to have been adopted by Christian writers about the end of the fifth century. (J. Rothschild, Introduction to the Mistère du Vieil Testament, ap. L. Toulmin Smith, Introduction to York Plays (1885), p. xlvii.) It is referred to by Dante (see LUCIFER in Dramatis Personae) and by Gower in the Confessio Amantis, bk. i:

'For Lucifer with hem that felle
Bar pride with him into helle.
There was pride of to grete cost
Whan he for pride hath heven lost.'

It supplied Shakespeare with the magnificent image in Henry VIII, iii. 2. 371, and is referred to in Friar Bacon, ix. 59 seqq.

64. *Arch-regent.* Lucifer is here therefore Satan himself—

'The arch-enemy,
And thence in heaven called Satan.'

Milton, Paradise Lost, i. 81–82. How in this poem Satan is the type of pride, a type which Milton found 'already fixed,' has been admirably shown by Mr. Verity, *u. s.*, pp. 117 seqq.

66. *lov'd of God.* For examples of 'of' placed before an agent (from whom the action is proceeding), where modern usage demands 'by,' see Abbott, § 170. 'Of' is used to express agency in A.S., but 'by' never.

68. *Aspiring*, a favourite word with Marlowe. Compare vii. 18; and also 1 Tamburlaine, ii. 7 (*bis*); Edward II, i. 1; iii. 3; v. 6; The Massacre at Paris, i. 1; i. 2. It is also frequently used by Greene; see Friar Bacon, x. 98; xiv. 16; and James IV, act iv. and act v. Compare Paradise Lost, i. 38, and Pope's Essay on Man, i. 127–128:

'Aspiring to be Gods, if Angels fell,
Aspiring to be Angels, Men rebel.'

76. *Why, this . . . out of it.* The idea recurs below, v. 119, and in two lines, borrowed from Nash's Pierce Pennilesse (1592; Works, ed. Grosart, ii. 10) by the author of A Yorkshire Tragedy (1608), a play in which Shakespeare possibly had a hand:

'Divines and dying men may talk of hell
But in my heart her several torments dwell.'

In Tancred and Gismunda (1568), iv. 2, occur the lines:

'O hell (if other hell there be,
Than that I feel).'

Digitized by Google

Dyce compares Paradise Lost, iv. 75 (in Satan's speech):

'Which way I fly is hell; myself am hell.'

Cf. also Religio Medici, § 51: 'The heart of man is the place the devils dwell in; I feel sometimes a hell within myself; Lucifer keeps his court in my breast; Legion is revived in me. There are as many hells as Anaxagoras conceited worlds. There was more than one hell in Magdalene, when there were seven devils; for every devil is a hell unto himself; he holds enough of torture in his own *ubi*; and needs not the misery of circumstance to afflict him: and thus a distracted conscience here is a shadow or introduction into hell hereafter'; and E. H. B.'s reference to Paradise Lost, i. 254 (in Satan's speech):

'The mind is its own place, and in itself
Can make a heaven of hell, a hell of heaven.'

See also Oldham's Thirteenth Satire of Juvenal Imitated (Works ii. 141), and the same writer's A Sunday-Thought in Sickness (ib. iii. 137). A similar thought occurs in Quevedo's Visions (L'Estrange's translation, 224). Compare also Dante's Inferno, c. xiv. C. E. Turner (Studies in Russian Literature, in Fraser's Magazine for June 1877, p. 700) cites from Sumarokoff's Demetrius the Pretender: 'Flee! but whither? thou bearest thy hell about with thee.' The great mystic, Law (Appeal to All that Doubt, etc., cited by Leslie Stephen, History of English Thought in the Eighteenth Century, ii. 407), raises this fancy to the semblance of a dogma: 'Heaven and hell are states actually dividing all our thoughts and actions, not a mere future palace and prison-house'; and Law's disciple Byrom (*Poems*, 1773, ii. 14) follows with:

'*He* made no *Hell* to place his Angels in;
*They* stirr'd the Fire that burnt them, by their Sin.'

In Lillo's celebrated domestic tragedy, George Barnwell (Act ii. sc. i) compares his own condition to that of 'the grand apostate, when first he lost his purity; like one disconsolate he wandered, and while yet in heaven, bore all his future hell about him.' I add a passage from Dickens, Oliver Twist, ch. xxxviii: '"Cooling yourselves," retorted Marks. "Not all the rain that ever fell, or ever will fall, will put as much of hell's fire out as a man can carry about with him. You won't cool yourselves so easily; don't think it."'

81. Middleton, in The Witch, iv. 2, gives a further turn to this thought:

'What makes the devil so greedy of a soul,
But 'cause 'has lost his own, to all joys lost.'

84. *passionate*, agitated by strong feeling. Compare xi. 42, and note on Friar Bacon, i. 20.

85. *being*. This word, and below, l. 89, 'seeing,' are, as Wagner points out, to be pronounced as monosyllables.

90. *Jove's deity*. See note on i. 74.

Digitized by Google

92. *So*, provided that; compare v. 32; xii. 14; xiv. 94.

*Ib. four and twenty years.* Quarto of 1604: '24 yeeres.'

94. *on me.* Observe the awkward change of pronoun. Compare Introduction, p. xxv, note 2.

100. *midnight*, to be accentuated on the ultimate, as again v. 28. Marlowe uses both accents for this word.

101. *resolve.* See note on i. 78.

106. *thorough*, for 'through,' as again below, vii. 15; and in 1 Tamburlaine, i. 2; ii. 3, and iii. 2. See note to Friar Bacon, vii. 131. On the other hand, below, vi. 172, 'throughly' is used for 'thoroughly.' The two forms are used promiscuously (compare 'burgh' and 'borough'). 'Both' (Laud and Wentworth) 'were advocates of that which in the jargon of their confidential correspondence they called *Thorough*, of the resolute determination of going *through* with it, as it might nowadays be expressed.' Gardiner, Personal Government of Charles I, i. 160.

108. *bind*, surround, enclose. So Shakespeare uses to 'bind in' in Richard II, ii. 1. 61:

'England, bound in with the triumphant sea.'

109. *And make that country continent to*: Breymann points out that the earlier quartos have for 'country' 'land'; but I cannot with him perceive a 'cacophony' in 'country continent.'—'Continent to' here signifies 'adjoining': a confusion between 'continent' and 'contingent,' or 'forming a whole with.'

*Ib. desir'd.* The earlier quartos: 'desire.'

114. *speculation*, study, especially by means of contemplation. Compare C. Tourneur, The Atheist's Tragedie, v. 1:

'Behold, thou ignorant Astronomer,
Whose wand'ring speculation seekes among
The planets for men's fortunes, with amazement
Behold thine errour and be planet strucke.'

In the Faustbuch, c. vi, Faustus declares that he resolved to 'speculate the elements' ('die *elementa* zu speculieren'). 'Specularii' was properly the name of those who enquired into the future with the aid of a magical mirror (speculum). See Maury, La Magie et l'Astrologie, etc., 438; and compare Introduction, p. xcvii.

## *Scene IV.*

This scene, which Dyce thinks most probably plays in a street, while F. V. Hugo heads it 'a room in the house of Faustus,' varies considerably in the quarto of 1616. Both versions may be regarded as in all probability later editions. They correspond, as Wagner has pointed out



Digitized by Google

to the scene in the German popular play in which 'Hans Wurst' is engaged by Wagner (sc. 5 of 'Das Volks-Schauspiel Doctor Johann Faust' in Engel's edition). Wagner likewise notes that the first three lines of the dialogue of our scene recur with little variation in the old Taming of a Shrew (compare the scene between Polidor's Boy and Sander in the old Taming of a Shrew, pp. 184–6; see also Professor Brown, ap. Grosart, Greene's Works, I. xv; and note on l. 41). The likelihood is undeniable 'that such stale jests as we find in this passage belonged to the stock requisites of the acting companies'; but in the present instance, though Marlowe might have resorted to the use of such, it is quite possible that borrowings from a special source were among the earliest 'additions' to his text. (See Mr. Fleay's Appendix A, *ante*, and cf. Introduction, p. cxxxiv.)

2. *swowns*, a vulgar oath (spelt 'sounes' in the old play cited in the previous note) which long survived in the form 'zounds.' These and similar French and German mutilations of the Divine name, combined with attributes of the Passion, may have been originally due to a feeling of reverence forbidding the use of the name in full.

3. *pickadevaunts* (French 'pic à devant,' from pic à point; so a perpendicularly formed mountain is said to be 'coupé à pic'), beards cut to a point, like that of Charles I in Vandyck's portraits. These beards were also called 'stiletto beards.' See Fairholt, Costume in England, 230. Harrison in his Description of England, ii. 7, professes to decline to 'meddle with our varietie of beards, of which some are shauen from the chin like those of Turks, not a few cut short like to the beard of marques Otto, some made round like a rubbing brush, other with a *pique de vant* (O fine fashion!), or now and then suffered to grow long, the barbers being grown to be so cunning in this behalf as the tailors.' The word occurs in the scene in the old Taming of a Shrew cited above, and in Lyly's Midas, v. 2.

*Ib. quotha*, as again below, xi. 45. As to this change of *he* into '*a*, due to the rapidity of Elizabethan pronunciation, see Abbott, § 402. Compare Friar Bacon, iii. 61.

12 *by'r Lady* (quarto of 1604: 'burladie'), by our Lady (the Blessed Virgin).

15. *Qui mihi discipulus*. The first words, according to Dyce, of W. Lily's 'Ad discipulos carmen de moribus':

> 'Qui mihi discipulus, pace, es, cupis atque doceri,
> Huc ades, etc.

In the Pilgrimage to Parnassus, act ii. 231, Madido says that he 'tooke shippinge at *Qui mihi discipulus*, and sailed to *Propria quae maribus*, then came to *As in praesenti*.'—The words, as Müller aptly suggests, may be supposed to be scanned by Wagner's hand or stick on the

Digitized by Google

Clown's back. Hence the phrases 'beaten silk' and 'staves-acre' may be taken as puns.

17. *beaten silk.* Mr. O. W. Tancock informs me that a full account of 'beaten silk' is given in Dr. Rock's Textile Fabrics (one of the South Kensington Handbooks), pp. 91–2. Mr. Fleay compares 'beaten satin' in Dekker's The Spanish Soldier, ii. 1, a play which I have not seen.

*Ib. staves-acre,* 'a species of larkspur (corrupted from the Greek name *σταφὶς ἀγρία*) . . . Coles, in his Dictionary, calls it "herba pedicularis."' Cunningham, and cf. Nares, ii. 835. The use of the plant is illustrated by a passage in Thos. Heywood, The Rape of Lucrece, iv. 2, and referred to in James Howell's Perfect Description of Scotland (1649), reprinted in The North Briton, No. 13: 'The oynments they most frequently use amongst them are brimstone and butter for the scab, and oyl of bays and stavesacre.' The late Charles Keene (Life and Letters, by G. S. Layard, 1892, p. 218) applied this 'lice-bane,' mixed with sand, to a sufferer in whom he was interested—his old carrion crow. Mr. Tancock, however, contends that this explanation is unsatisfactory. 'But,' he writes, 'if the word is construed with "beaten silk" it should mean a sort of fine clothes, and a sort not understood by the Clown. I think it is a rough corruption of a fabric mentioned by Dr. Rock, *u. s.* [see the previous note], p. 36, *stauracin*; and that as the fabric was little used and died out, its name became corrupted into a better-known word.'

18. *knaves-acre.* Knave's Acre (Poultney Street) is described by Strype, vi. 84, quoted in P. Cunningham's Handbook for London, Past and Present, as 'but narrow, and chiefly inhabited by those that deal in old goods and glass bottles.' (It ran into Glasshouse Street.) Professor Logeman, who aptly compares Massinger's A New Way to Pay Old Debts, ii. 3, is, however, no doubt right in saying that the word is here used without any local reference.

25. *bind yourself,* as a servant.

27. *familiars,* attendant-demons. Dyce. Compare 2 Henry VI, iv. 7. 112: 'Away with him! he has a familiar under his tongue; he speaks not o' God's name.'

29. *their.* Quarto of 1604, 'my.'

32. *take these guilders,* as hiring-money. Guilders are Dutch florins. The Clown wilfully misunderstands the name, which, as Douce notes, Shakespeare in the Comedy of Errors, anachronistically, introduces with 'ducats' and 'marks' into the ancient city of Ephesus. 'Guilders' are not mentioned by Harrison in the passage quoted in the next note but one, but he speaks of 'dalders' (Thaler, dollars) 'and such, often times brought over.'

36. *Mass,* by the Mass.

*Ib. French crowns.* 'Of forren coines we have . . . finallie the French



Digitized by Google

and Flemish crownes, onlie currant among vs, so long as they hold weight [. . . the franke makes two shillings, and three franks the French crowne].' Harrison's Description of England, bk. ii. ch. 25. See as to this passage, Introduction, p. cxxxiv, note 1.

41. *Here, take your gridirons again.* So Sander says, in the old Taming of a Shrew, p. 186: 'Here, take your two shillings again.'

47. *Baliol and Belcher.* Doubtless facetiously invented names; 'Baliol' *quasi* a Scotch form of Belial, and 'Belcher' = Spitfire.

52. *the round slop.* 'Slop' or 'slops' is used in early English, as it is in modern sailors' language, of outer clothing generally. In Euphues' Golden Legacie (1592) a countryman's dress is described as comprising 'a large slop barred all across the pocket-holes with three fair guards, stitched on either side with red thread.' 'Round slops' were large trunkhose, worn very short and very wide, a fashion reprobated in Chaucer's The Persone's Tale, and afterwards regarded as boorish, till it again became fashionable in the early part of Elizabeth's reign. As a clown's article of dress, they were worn by the famous Tarleton, as appears from an epigram by Rowland, and a passage from Wright's Passions of the Minde, quoted by Fairholt, Costume in England, p. 217. The clown of the modern pantomime wears, and puts to the purposes of his calling, a similar habiliment.

74. *diametarily*, of course for 'diametrically.'

75. *vestigias nostras.* So all the quartos. Dyce. The editors all read 'vestigiis nostris,' being at the pains to correct Wagner's Latin, though not his English.

76. *God forgive me.* Omitted in the quarto of 1616. (Cf. note to iii. 53.)

*Ib. fustian.* 'Fustian' (cotton cloth used for jackets and doublets) is metaphorically used for high-sounding nonsense, or nonsensical jargon, probably because fustian often sought in vain to imitate velvet. So in Othello, ii. 3. 281: 'squabble! swagger! swear! and discourse fustian with one's own shadow!' and 'fustian Latin' in Webster's The White Devil, iii. 1, cited by Wagner. See also Ford's The Broken Heart, iv. 1:

'Blunt and rough-spoken,
Vouchsafing not the fustian of civility';

and Apollo Shroving (1627), Prologus: 'Heer's linsey-woolsey fustian, where euery English thread is ouer-cast with a thicke woolen woofe of strange words, which haue so deepe a nappe, that the plaine ground cannot be seene.' Dryden, in his Parallel of Poetry and Painting, the preface to his prose translation (1695) of Du Fresnoy's poem on the Art of Painting, dares not promise that some of the poetical expressions employed by him 'are not fustian, or at least highly metaphorical.' Compare the metaphorical use of the term 'bombast.' Below, xi. 11, the word 'fustian' is introduced as a punning misnomer for 'Faustus.'

Digitized by Google

## *Scene V.*

2. These lines are printed as arranged by Dyce. The quarto of 1604 reads:

'Now Faustus must thou needes be damnd,
And canst thou not be saved.'

Mr. J. A. Symonds, Shakspere's Predecessors, p. 641 note, says that, choosing between the texts of quartos 1604 and 1616, he should like to read:

'Now Faustus,
Must thou, needs be, be damned, canst not be saved.'

7. *O, something . . . ears.* Compare the passage in Goethe's Faust, where, as Faust raises the cup of poison to his lips, the sound of the ringing of the bells and of the singing of the Easter hymn draws it irresistibly away.

14. *offer . . . babes.* The immolation of human beings was a charge which, having been brought against the early Christians by the pagans, was afterwards directed against the pagans by the Christian world. It became an ordinary accusation against magicians. In the legend of St. Cyprian the converted magician confesses to having engaged in the practices of his fraternity, which included the massacre of children at the breast. See Maury, *u. s.*, 147. Compare Macbeth, iv. 1. 30. Examples of the loathsome accusation brought against the Jews of drinking the blood of children murdered by them are cited by the credulous Widmann in his commentary (Scheible, Kloster, ii. 339 seqq.). Hondorff, Promptuarium Exemplorum (1572; *ib.* 237), speaks of a similar crime as having been committed by two sorceresses at Berlin in 1553. The belief in the crucifying of children by Jews is alluded to by Marlowe in The Jew of Malta, iii. 5. It was a fixed popular belief, particularly since the spread of the story of the crucifixion of Hugh of Lincoln (dated 1255 by Matthew Paris), to whose prayers Chaucer makes his Prioresse appeal after reciting her Tale in a similar theme. Mr. Lecky (History of England in the Eighteenth Century, i. 264) notes that the story of the crucifixion of Christian children by Jews was revived in the debates on the Jews' Naturalisation Bill in 1753.

15. In the quarto of 1616 the Evil Angel begins the colloquy with

'Go forward, Faustus, with that famous art.'

19. *makes.* For numerous examples in Shakespeare of the third person plural in *s* (which probably arose from the Northern E. E. third person plural in *s*, A. S. *ath*) see Abbott, § 333. Compare iv. 58, though the singular there may be a mere vulgarism; and Friar Bacon,

Digitized by Google

x, 59. In our passage the suffix may possibly be due to the singular noun 'lunacy' in line 18.

23. *the signiory of Embden.* Emden, near the mouth of the Ems, the chief town of the ancient principality of East-Friesland (after many vicissitudes now re-incorporated in Prussia), at the present day, having all but lost its water, retains a mere shadow of its ancient maritime trade. But the dignified buildings which front its quay, above all the stately Rathhaus, erected in 1573 and containing interesting historical memorials, recall the times when under its native East-Frisian lords (created Counts of the Empire in 1454 and Princes in 1654) Emden was a flourishing commercial port. In 1563 Count John of East Friesland concluded a species of treaty of alliance with Queen Elizabeth, which was followed by an attempt to open relations of trade with England. In 1564 Emden was for the first time visited by an English fleet, received by the citizens with great pomp and solemnity. Thus the town was well known to Englishmen of the Elizabethan age. The glories of this once prosperous city, which is remarkable as having been a warm adherent of the Reformation and the real cradle of Anabaptism, were celebrated by the humanist Gnaphaeus in a series of Latin poems including an 'Encomium civitatis Emdanae' (1557), translated and published with a memoir of its author by H. Babucke (Emden, 1875).

25. *What god.* Quarto of 1616, 'What power.' See Introduction, p. cxxxvii, note 2.

26. *Cast no more doubts,* reckon up or consider no more doubts.

29. *Mephistophile.* See Dramatis Personae as to this vocative form.

30. *tell me what says.* Quarto of 1604: 'tell, what sayes.'

38, 39. I follow Wagner in separating these lines, as clearly intended for verse.—Professor Adamson cites Coll. Coimbr. in Aristot. de Caelo, pp. 274–275: 'sicut ordo pulchritudoque universi, et ipsorum corporum inter se commensuratio postulat, ut terra subsit aquae, aqua aëri, aër igni; ita poscit ut orbis Lunae sub orbe Mercurii, orbis Mercurii sub orbe Veneris, atque ita caeteri globi sub aliis superioribus contineantur.'

42. *Solamen . . . doloris.* This line, of unknown origin, is to be found in various forms, and is also quoted in Dekker's Seven Deadly Sinnes of London, in Greene's Menaphon (Works, ed. Grosart, vi. 45), and in a pamphlet of 1609 on the pirates Ward and Danseker. Wagner, who remarks that it is usually cited as ending with the word 'malorum,' suggests that its purport may have been originally derived from Seneca, de Consolatione ad Polybium, xii. 2: 'est autem hoc ipsum solatii loco, inter multos dolorem suum dividere,' and adds that 'Mr. Jerram aptly compares Paradise Regained, i. 398:

> "Envy they say excites me, thus to gain
> Companions of my misery and woe."'

Digitized by Google

Skeat compares Chaucer's Troilus and Criseyde, i. 708:

'Men seyn, to wrecche is consolacioun,
To have an-other felawe in his peyne.'

For a similar idea compare Cædmon, 403 seqq. Cowper, in his last original poem, The Castaway, so touching by its reference to the poet's own misery, has a similar idea:

'Misery still delights to trace
Its semblance in another's case.'

It is remarked by v. Loepell, that in the Faustbuch also Mephistophiles shows a fondness for proverbial phrases. See ch. lvi.: 'How the Evil Spirit vexes the sorrowful Faustus with strange mocking jests and proverbs.'

43. *Why.* This word is not in the first two quartos, but is added in the third.

*Ib. torture.* Quarto of 1604, 'tortures,' which creates an ambiguity. It is, however, preserved by Mr. Bullen, who refers to other passages where a plural subject is joined to a singular verb; cf. note to xiii. 94.

50. *bind thy soul.* The term 'bind' is here used in the same sense as above, iv. 25. The blood with which the bond is signed represents the earnest-money of the future full payment—the soul of the man who signs it. Of such compacts signed with blood the history of magicians has many examples—from Theophilus in the sixth century down to a Paris lawyer, who, as Bodin relates, was hanged in 1571 for having thus signed a bond with the Devil. For the passage in the English History see Introduction, p. civ.

55. *Assure*, pledge, solemnly promise; so in Twelfth Night, iv. 3. 26:

'Plight me the full assurance of your faith.'

59, 60. These two lines, and again 61, 62, are respectively printed as single lines in the quarto of 1604.

63. *fire*, a dissyllable, as is suggested by the reading 'fier' of the quarto of 1604. 'Monosyllables ending in *r* or *re*, preceded by a long vowel or diphthong, are frequently pronounced as dissyllables.' Abbott, § 480. Compare 2 Tamburlaine, ii. 3:

'And kills us süre as it swiftly flies';

and *ib.*:

'Thy words assüre me of kind success.'

So in Friar Bacon, xii. 45:

'The Faïr Maid of merry Fressingfield';

and *ib.* xiii. 38:

'Serlsby, thou hast [pronounce = thou'st] kept thine hoür like a man.'

See note to Friar Bacon, vii. 131.

Digitized by Google

64. *staying*, standing still; see below, 67. So in King John, iii. 1. 78:

'The glorious sun
Stays in his course.'

For a transitive use of the verb 'to stay' see Chorus before sc. viii. l. 3.

*Ib. bill.* See note to i. 20.

*Re-enter* (quarto '*Enter*') MEPHISTOPHILIS *with a chafer of coals.* A 'chafer' (Old Fr. 'chauffier') is a pan or brazier, with coals under it, for heating, from 'chafe' (chauffer), to heat. In Heywood's Mery Play between Johan the Husbonde, &c., the Husband is obliged to 'chafe wax' at the fire; and we still use the phrase 'to chafe the hands.' Hence 'to chafe,' intransitive, is to become heated or angry, as below, viii. 6.

70. *set it on*, viz. the blood-chafer. Cf. the heading of chap. vi. in the English History: 'How *Doctor* Faustus set his blood in a saucer on warm ashes,' &c. (Introduction, p. civ).

74. *Consummatum est*, 'it is finished,' a blasphemous allusion to the last words on the Cross, St. John's Gospel, xix. 30.

76. *this inscription.* See Introduction, p. civ.; and Widmann's version, c. 10 (Scheible, Kloster, ii. 329). In the puppet-play Dr. Johannes Faust, edited by Simrock, ii. 1, Faustus sees the letters 'H. F.,' which he first interprets as the warning 'Homo Fuge!' but, on second thoughts, thinks may mean—'F.' 'Faustus,' and 'H.' 'Herrlichkeit' (lordly prosperity).

77. *whither should I fly?* Doubtless a reminiscence of Psalm cxxxix. 6-9. Compare xiv. 86-87, and Introduction, p. cxxiv.

79. *writ*, written. For other such forms compare Abbott, § 343.

82. *somewhat*, something. Compare Morris, English Accidence, § 217.

83. *show*, pageant, procession, as in the term 'dumb-show' (the gist of the action of a play conveyed by pantomime). Compare vi. 111.

86, 87. Observe the rhyming of these lines, and of 89, 90 below, where the quartos of 1624 and 1631 omit the words 'this scroll.'

86. *may I*, have I power to (A. S. mæg).

96, *seqq.* For the corresponding articles in the contract in the English History and the German original, see Introduction, p. cii. and note, and cf. *ib.* lxxxviii. as to the sequence of the clauses, and its bearing upon the immediate source of Marlowe's play. In the English 'History of Dr. Faustus' (ed. of 1648, cited by Dyce) the 'third Article' stands thus: 'That Mephostophilis should bring him anything, and doe for him whatsoever'—a later edition adding 'he desireth.' As to this also see Introduction, p. lxxxviii, note 1. F. V. Hugo well observes that while 'for Goethe the contract with the Devil is only a symbol, for Marlowe it is a real act. Hence in Marlowe a precision, a logic, a truth which is wanting in Goethe. Hence also with the former a far more telling effect than with

Digitized by Google

the latter. In Marlowe, his very prosaism augments the impression, while Goethe's scepticism diminishes it. This accent of truth, which we find in the English drama, we also find in the old German legend. And why? For the same reason: the legend, like the drama, was written in an epoch of superstitious belief and not in a time of philosophic enquiry.'

103. *these presents.* This term properly means a letter of mandate exhibited *per praesentes.*

106. *the articles . . . inviolate,* to be construed as a nom. abs., with or without the repetition of the participle 'being.'

111. *on't.* Compare note on ii. 15.

113. *question with thee,* put questions to thee. Compare Friar Bacon, ix. 23. Such questionings are those in the A. S. Dialogue of Salomon and Saturn, and in its widespread later developments. (See Ælfric Society's Publications, i, ii, and Kemble's Introduction; and cf. Goethe, Jahrbuch, v. (1884), 313 seqq.) For Faustus' disputation about hell with Mephistophiles compare Introduction, pp. ci, cvii, and see Widmann, c. 24 (Kloster, ii. 432 seqq.).

117. *these elements.* See note on i. 75.

120. *In one self place,* in one and the same place. 'Self' in A. S. was an adjective, agreeing in gender, number and case with the noun or pronoun with which it was joined. This use maintained itself, even after 'self' had begun to be regarded as a noun; compare Richard II, i. 2. 22: 'that self mould.' See Morris, English Accidence, 162–169; and Abbott, § 20. According to Cunningham, among archers at the present day 'a self bow' means a bow made of one piece of wood. And in Lancashire at the present day the expression 'a self colour' means the same colour throughout, as e.g. in a piece of cloth without a pattern.

*Ib. where we are is hell.* Compare iii. 77.

121. *there.* This word is not in the quarto of 1604, but is added in the later quartos.

123. *shall be purified,* shall have been purified; in other words, when purgatory shall have come to an end. For the whole of this passage Marlowe may have had in mind 2 Epistle of St. Peter, iii. 10–14.

124. *that are not.* Quarto of 1604, 'that is not.'

126. *Ay, think so still, till.* Were it certain that this line is intended for verse, Breymann's very plausible suggestion that 'still' is a mere compositor's interpolation might be unhesitatingly adopted.

131, 132. These lines are thus printed in the quarto of 1604:

'Thinkst thou that Faustus is so fond
To imagine, that after this life there is any paine.'

131. *fond,* foolish. Compare King Lear, iv. 7. 60:

'I am a very foolish old man.'

133. *mere old wives' tales.* For this familiar expression compare

Digitized by Google

1 Epistle to Timothy, iv. 7: 'old wives' fables.' So Milton, hardly with reference to either of Peele's plays, in his Animadversions upon the Remonstrants' Defence against Smectymnus (1641), speaks of 'that old wives' tale of a certain Queene of England that sunk at Charing-Crosse, and rose up at Queen-hithe' (see Dyce, Works of R. Greene and G. Peele, p. 342 note). The title of Peele's comedy, The Old Wives' Tale, means a story told to make the night pass; 'so I am content,' says gammer Madge, 'to drive away the time with an old wives' winter's tale.' The term is similarly used in Lyly's Sapho and Phao, ii. 1. Compare the phrase 'a winter's tale' in Dido Queen of Carthage, iii. 3; and in The Jew of Malta, ii. 1:

'Now I remember those old women's words,
Who in my wealth would tell me winter's tales.'

136–142. These lines are printed as prose in the quarto of 1604.

137. *an*, if; as in x. 64 and Friar Bacon, i. 95. 'And,' both in this full form and abbreviated into 'an' (as it often was even in its ordinary sense already in Early English), was used as equivalent to 'if' by Early English as well as by Elizabethan writers. For emphasis, and in the sense of 'even if' or of 'if indeed,' the latter employed the combination 'and if' or 'an if'; compare Friar Bacon, xiv. 78. See Abbott, §§ 101–105.

138. *What I walking, disputing*, &c. The quarto of 1616 reads: 'What, sleeping, eating, walking, and disputing.' (Bullen.)

139. *let me have a wife*. See Introduction, p. cv; and Widmann, c. 25 (Kloster, ii. 636 seqq.). In Widmann's version of the legend, one of the articles of the compact provides that Faustus is not to marry, which gives rise to a long commentary from the Lutheran moralist.

147. *me*, omitted in the quarto of 1604.

148, 149. These lines are printed as prose in the quarto of 1604.

150. *Marriage is but a ceremonial toy*. Herman Grimm, *u. s*, 453, thinks this alludes to the objections taken to marriage by the Manichaeans, and cites Augustin. Opp., ed. Par. 1586, i. 342, 6, D.

151. *no*, omitted in the quarto of 1604.

152. *She*, for 'her.' See Abbott, § 211; and compare, as to the use of 'he' for 'him,' *ib.* § 206.

154. *Saba*, the Queen of Sheba (1 Kings x. 1–13). So 'sage Saba' in Sir Clyomon and Sir Clamydes. The geographical position of Saba (which is mentioned as an Eastern land below, xii. 22) is strangely moved from its real locality (Arabia Felix) in lines occurring both in Peele's Old Wives' Tale and Greene's Orlando Furioso:

'Saba, whose inhaunsing streams
Cut twixt the Tartars and the Russians.'

In the English History of Doctor Faustus, Saba seems to be thought of as conterminous with India (see Introduction, p. cxix).

Digitized by Google

155. See note to iii. 63, and LUCIFER in Dramatis Personae.

156. *take this book.* See Introduction, p. cviii.

*Ib. peruse*, examine throughout (pervisere); so that the 'thoroughly' here and the 'throughly,' vi. 172, are redundant.

157. *iterating*, repeating.

159. *thunder and lightning.* 'Thunder' should be pronounced as a monosyllable, and 'lightning' as a trisyllable ('light-en-ing').

161. *men in armour.* See i. 123; and compare 'the Three Mighty Ones' summoned by Mephistophiles in act iv. of the Second Part of Goethe's Faust.

163–173. Wagner has unnecessarily attempted, by interpolating words here and there, to arrange these lines as verse.

166. The stage-direction here and in 170, 176, is, according to the imperative fashion of the old play-books, printed '*turne to them.*'

168. *characters and planets*, probably a hendiadys for 'characters of planets.' See iii. 12.

176. *I warrant thee*, viz. that the book contains what I say.

## *Scene VI.*

Like Professor Wagner and Mr. Bullen, I have begun a new scene here, though neither the quarto of 1604 nor that of 1609 indicates a break in the dialogue. In the quarto of 1616 Faust replies to the speech of Mephistophilis ending with l. 162 of sc. v:

'Thanks, Mephistophilis, for this sweet book:
This will I keep as chary as my life';

and the stage-direction follows: 'Exeunt.' Then a new scene begins with the lines assigned to the Chorus at a later part of the play (at the close of the present scene) in the first two quartos, but in the third given to Wagner; after which the third quarto has, 'Enter Faustus in his Study and Mephistophilis.' It is scarcely possible that the dialogue originally continued unbroken, Faustus being supposed at once to master the book given to him by Mephistophilis; far more probably, as Dyce observes, something was intended to intervene here between the 'exit' of Faust and Mephistophilis and their re-appearance on the stage. Possibly, there was a dumbshow introducing apparitions from classical mythology; for to some such, whether summoned by himself or by Mephistophilis, Faustus, as van der Velde suggests, appears to allude in lines 26–30 of the present scene. Moreover, as Prof. Wagner points out, Faustus's expression 'long ere this' (l. 24) would seem to imply that some considerable time had elapsed since Faustus had consigned himself to the Evil One.

Digitized by Google

6. *I tell thee 'tis not half so fair as thou.* The thought has a certain resemblance to that of a famous passage in Tom Jones, bk. i. ch. 4: 'And now, having sent forth streams of light, which ascended the blue firmament before him, as harbingers preceding his pomp, in the full blaze of his majesty rose the sun: than which one object alone in this lower creation could be more glorious, and that Mr. Allworthy himself presented: a human being replete with benevolence, meditating in what manner he might render himself most acceptable to his Creator, by doing most good to his creatures.'

12. *repent; yet.* The quarto of 1604 interpunctuates 'repent yet'; but the change adopted by both Dyce and Wagner seems preferable. Yet = even now.

15. *Be I*, even if I am; or rather 'even if I were.'

*Ib. may*, can. See l. 13, and compare v. 86.

21. *then swords and knives*, &c. These imaginary temptations to suicide, which are merely the delusions (compare Macbeth's dagger) of Faustus' own self-tortured mind, are to be distinguished from his temptation to suicide by Mephistophilis, xiii. 52. According to Düntzer, Lessing's first scheme of his Doctor Faust was probably to end by Faustus committing suicide in despair.

26. *blind Homer.* The tradition of Homer's blindness was as old as the Homeric Hymn to Apollo. See line 172 of the Hymn, and compare Thucydides, iii. 104.

27. *Alexander*, Paris the son of Priam. The double name has been variously explained; according to some, Paris was called Ἀλέξανδρος as the 'protector of men,' i.e. of the shepherds.

*Ib. Oenon's death.* Oenone (whose name is here melodiously abbreviated into 'Oenon'—'Enon' in the quarto of 1604—as in Friar Bacon, iii. 70, and in Thomas Heywood's Iron Age, Part i, act i; compare 'Iphigene' for 'Iphigenia' in The Jew of Malta, i. 1; and in Peele's Tale of Troy, where we also have Cressed for Cressida; 'Adon' for 'Adonis' in Orlando Furioso and elsewhere; 'Aeol' for 'Aeolus' in Greene's Never too Late) was the nymph of Ida beloved by Paris in his youthful days among the shepherds before the three goddesses had appeared to him. He then abandoned her (see Ovid, Heroid., Ep. v), nor (according to the later poets and artists) did she behold him again till, towards the close of the siege of Troy, he had been mortally wounded by the poisoned arrow of Philoctetes. When they met, she refused to heal him, and afterwards died of grief and remorse.—Compare the passage in Friar Bacon; Oenone appears in Peele's Arraignment of Paris.

28. *he that built the walls of Thebes*, Amphion, who, while his twin-brother Zethos was dragging heavy stones to build the walls of Thebes,

Digitized by Google

moved rocks of twice their size by the sounds of his lyre. Compare the references in Pausanias, ix. 8. 4, and Plutarch, de Musica, 3. Wagner also cites the references to the tradition in Hor. Od. iii. 11. 2 and Ov. Metam. xv. 427. Preller notices the parallel myth of Poseidon and Apollo co-operating in the building of the walls of Troy—mechanical strength moving the blocks, and harmony fitting them into their proper places.

34. *argue of divine astrology.* For 'of' in the sense of 'about,' 'concerning,' compare Friar Bacon, i. 158; ii. 100; The Tempest, ii. 1. 81, 'You make me study of that'; and other passages cited by Abbott, § 147.—As to the disputation on astrology, compare Introduction, p. cvii; but Marlowe has no particular obligation in this passage to the English History or the Faustbuch. 'The lines which follow,' writes Prof. Adamson, 'refer to a number of points, and discussions of these points, in the scholastic system of astronomy. The references are so vague that it is hard to tell exactly what solutions Mephostophiles is made to offer. Thus iv. 36–7 seems to refer to the debated points, whether the parts of the cosmos are *materially* (in matter) one, or have essential differences, and v. 38 appears to give an answer familiar in the Platonic astronomy, viz. that the ultimate differences are those of the elements; but this answer would hardly square with the reply in vv. 62–63.'

37. *this centric earth.* Compare Troilus and Cressida, i. 3. 85:

> 'The heavens themselves, the planets and their centre
> Observe degree, priority and place.'

The Ptolemaic or pre-Copernican system of astronomy regarded the earth as the centre of the heavenly system; hence it is here termed 'centric,' that which is placed in the centre. See Prof. Masson's note (Milton's Poetical Works, iii. 221–223) concerning the ideas of astronomy entertained by Milton, who adopted the Ptolemaic system, without being able entirely to abandon belief in the Copernican; especially with reference to Raphael's ironical allusion (Paradise Lost, viii. 84) to the words 'centric' and 'eccentric' as technical terms of the Ptolemaists applied to the centric and non-concentric motions of the planetary bodies. Compare also the reference in Bacon's Essay of Seditions and Troubles to 'the old opinion'; 'which is, That every of them [the Planets], is carried swiftly, by the Highest Motion, and softly in their owne Motion'; and see Mr. Aldis Wright's note, p. 305 of his edition of the Essays.

39. *Mutually folded.* Cf. 'the nine infolded spheres' in Milton's Arcades, 64; and see the myth of Er in Plato's Republic (616-7), adapted by Milton, with the remarks of the commentators.

40, 41. Printed as one line in the quarto of 1604.

Digitized by Google

42. *terminine*, a form apparently invented by Marlowe, equivalent to 'terminus' or 'term.' Compare the form 'convertite' for convert, Jew of Malta, i. 2, which is still occasionally employed. As to the antithetical jingle of this line compare note to opening Chorus, 7, 8.

44. *erring stars*. See iii. 12. The meaning, I suppose, is that they are actual bodies moving through the firmament. 'This and the following lines,' writes Prof. Adamson, 'seemingly answer a question raised by the Arabic astronomers, whether the apparent motion of the planets might not be due to difference in the rate at which they are severally carried round by the great revolution on the "axle-tree." The current theory explained it by postulating a contrary motion of the planets, whether these themselves moved or were carried round by a special mechanism of spheres. The assertion, l. 48, that the planets "differ in their motion upon the poles of the zodiac" leaves the answer open; for it might *either* mean that they have a contrary motion of varying rates, *or* that they move in the same direction but at varying rates.'

45, 46. *both situ et tempore*, as to both the direction of, and the time occupied by, their revolutions.

47, 48, 49. 'According to the Peripatetic view (cf. note to i. 7) the heavenly bodies share (1) in the uniform, equable motion of the *primum mobile*, (2) in a counter-motion, varying for each according to its distance from the *primum mobile*. Cf. Coll. Coimbr. in Aristot. de Caelo, p. 359.—The latter part of the passage probably expresses the accepted view as *ib.*, p. 278: "In primis motum orbium caelestium ab Occasu in Ortum non fieri super polos mundi et per circulum aequinoctialem, sed super alios polos ab iis diversos, nimirum super polos Zodiaci et per circulum Zodiacum."' Adamson.

50, 51. These form one line in the quarto of 1604.

56. *Mars in four*. 'Query *two*? The authorities almost invariably give two years.' Adamson.

58. *freshmen's suppositions*, elementary statements fit for a student in his first year. Those in the text were, Professor Adamson thinks, probably taken from Everard Digby's Theoria Analytica; see note to i. 7.

59. *dominion or intelligentia*. Prof. Adamson illustrates this Christianising scholastic interpretation of the Platonic and Aristotelian view that the heavenly bodies were blessed gods by a quotation from Albertus Magnus: 'Sed si vellemus philosophos ad idem reducere cum sanctis, dicemus quod quaedam intelligentiae sunt in orbibus, deservientes primo in motu orbium, et intelligentiae illae dicuntur animae orbium.' Cornelius Agrippa's conception of these intelligences, governing intelligences which seem in some measure akin to the ἔννοιαι of the Manichaeans and Gnostics (see HELEN in Dramatis Personae), is described in H. Morley's

Digitized by Google

sketch of Cornelius Agrippa's First Book 'Of Occult Philosophy' in 'Life of Agrippa,' i. 125. In Paradise Lost, viii. 180–1, Adam addresses Raphael as 'Pure Intelligence of Heaven.' Cf. Dryden's reference to Milton's 'Uriel, the Intelligence of the Sun' (see Bk. III), in A Discourse concerning the Original and Progress of Satire (Essays of Dryden, ed. W. P. Ker, 1900, ii. 37); and see Prof. Ker's note *ad loc.* Compare for the idea Dante's Inferno, vii. 72 seqq. Dr. Furnivall, in the New Shakspere Society's Transactions, 1877–9, p. 434, says: 'Marlowe will allow only the orthodox eight spheres, with a ninth of the Empyreal Heaven; but Milton had ten, besides the Empyreal, as well explained by Prof. Masson in the Introduction to his Poetical Works of Milton, vol. i, pp. 89 seqq. See Paradise Lost, iii. 481–483:

> 'They pass the planets seven, and pass the fixed,
> And that crystalline sphere whose balance weighs,
> The trepidation talked, and that first moved';

i. e. above the seven planetary spheres they pass (8) the coelum stellatum, the sphere of fixed stars, (9) the coelum crystallinum, the cause of the motion called Trepidation, and (10) the *primum mobile.* 'The Christian Scholastics,' adds Dr. Adamson, 'while often identifying the empyrean with the *primum mobile*, tended towards the Miltonic view, according to which the empyrean is above the ten. It is noticeable that there was great variety of opinion as to the number of heavens, which varied from eight to eleven. It is hardly correct to speak of "the orthodox eight spheres." Digby, from whom Marlowe probably quotes (cf. note to i. 7), comes to no definite conclusion on the matter. A concise statement of the various views is given in Coll. Coimbr. in Aristot. de Caelo, pp. 262–263.' In Dr. Furnivall's paper on Puck's 'Swifter than the Moon's sphere,' and Shakspere's Astronomy, from which a passage is cited above, he reprints the diagram of the Figura of Sperarum from Professor Skeat's edition of Chaucer's Astrolabe (Early English Text and Chaucer Societies' Publications), and the copy in Masson's Milton of the ten-sphere woodcut in an edition (1610) of the Sphaera of Joannes a Sacrobosco. The phrase 'the nine-fold orbs of heaven' occurs in A Looking-Glass for London and England (Dyce's Greene, edition of 1861, p. 129).—It does not appear whence Marlowe took the answer in ll. 62–3; certainly not from the Faustbuch, nor from its English version.

63. *the empyreal heaven*, (quarto of 1604: 'the imperiall heaven,') the highest and most refined region of heaven, supposed to be formed of the element of fire (ἔμπυρος). The phrase recurs in 1 Tamburlaine, ii. 7, and 2 Tamburlaine, ii. 4; compare 2 Tamburlaine, iii. 4, 'the empyreal orb.' After this line the edition of 1616 proceeds:

Digitized by Google

'*Faust.* But is there not *coelum igneum et crystallinum*?
*Meph.* No, Faustus, they are but fables.
*Faust.* Resolve me then in this one question: Why,' &c.

65. *conjunctions, oppositions, aspects.* Terms of astrology, implying the friendly or hostile relations towards one another of particular stars. See Morley, *u. s.*, i. 128. Compare 2 Tamburlaine, iii. 5:

'The shepherd's issue (at whose birth
Heaven did afford a gracious aspéct
And joined those stars that shall be opposite,
Even till the dissolution of the world).'

See also Lodge and Greene's A Looking-Glass for London and England:

'Retrograde conjunctions of the stars
Or oppositions of the greater lights';

and Greene's James IV, i. 1:

'Dread king, thy vassal is a man of art,
Who knows, by constellation of the stars,
By oppositions and by dry aspécts,
The things are past and those that are to come.'

In the same scene King James, striking Ateukin on the ear, bids him tell

'What star was opposite when that was thought.'

*Ib. eclipses.* Quarto of 1604: 'eclipsis.'

67. *Per inaequalem motum respectu totius*, 'on account of their unequal motion with regard to the whole,' i.e. I suppose, because of the several motions which the stars have within the general system of the universe. Or, as Dr. Adamson suggests, the answer may be intended to imply the doctrine that *really* all bodies of the cosmos move in the same direction, but at varying rates.

70. *I will not.* In the play as in the English History of Doctor Faustus, the refusal of Mephistophiles to answer avoids his Manichaean reply in the German Faustbuch. (See Introduction, p. cviii, note 1.)

72. *Move me not*, do not exasperate me. So in Romeo and Juliet, iv. 5. 95:

'Move them no more by crossing their high will.'

75. *against our kingdom*, i.e. against the laws of the infernal monarchy. Compare Titus Andronicus, v. 2. 30:

'Revenge, sent from the infernal kingdom';

and Richard III, i. 4. 47:

'The kingdom of perpetual night.'

76. *on*, for 'of,' but more emphatic. See note on ii. 15.

77. *Think, Faustus . . . the world.* I have ventured to adopt Wagner's suggestion and to assign these words, given to Faustus in the quartos, to the Good Angel. In the quartos, the Good and the Evil Angel are not made to re-enter till after l. 81.

Digitized by Google

78. *Remember this.* Mephistophilis of course refers to his own previous speech.

79. *ugly*, frightful in the literal sense of the word (O. N. 'uggligr,' terrible, from 'ugga,' to fear). Compare 1 Tamburlaine, v. 2: 'ugly darkness with her rusty coach.' The phrase 'ugly hell' recurs below, xiv. 120.

85. *raze thy skin* (quarto of 1604: 'race'), touch the mere surface of thy skin (from French 'raser,' Latin 'radere').—The stage-direction following these words is not in the quarto of 1604.

86, 87. Printed as prose in the quarto of 1604.

87. *Seek to save.* Perhaps Marlowe wrote 'Seek thou to save'; but, on the other hand, this may be one of the lines defective in their first syllable, which, as Dyce observes, commenting on 1 Tamburlaine, ii. 7. 1,

'Barbarous and bloody Tamburlaine,'

and *ib.* 3,

'Treacherous and false Theridamas,'

we occasionally find in our early dramatists; 'and in some of these instances at least it would seem that nothing has been omitted by the transcriber or printer.' Compare x. 29; xiv. 65.

90. *my companion-prince in hell.* Compare Paradise Lost, i. 79–81.

91, 92. These lines are printed without a break between them in the quarto of 1604.

95. *contrary to thy promise.* The same accentuation occurs in Hamlet, iii. 2. 221:

'Our wills and fates do so contrary run.'

The promise is that which he repeats below, l. 100.

97. *And of his dam too.* Cunningham and Wagner refuse to accept these words as Marlowe's, and regard them as a piece of actor's 'gag,' and Mr. Bullen inclines to the same opinion. Mr. Fleay (see Appendix B *ante*) adds the excellent conjecture that this 'gag' was introduced about May 1600, when Grim, the Collier of Croydon, or The Devil and his Dame, by Haughton, was on the stage. In this play 'dame' means wife:

'Now is Belphegor, an incarnate devil,
Come to the earth to seek him out a dame';

but the usual signification 'mother,' or, according to the more popular fancy, 'grandmother,' seems to attach to the form 'dam' in the combination 'the devil and his dam'; see e. g. King John, ii. 1. 28. Compare also C. Tourneur, The Atheist's Tragedie, iv. 3:

'Conjure up
The Diuell and his Dam.'

See on the 'teufels muoter' Grimm's Deutsche Mythologie, 959–960.

100, 101, 102. These lines are omitted in the quarto of 1616; compare Introduction, p. cxxxvii, note 2.



Digitized by Google

*Enter the Seven Deadly Sins.* As to the Seven Deadly Sins see Dramatis Personae, and compare Introduction, p. xcii. The scene which follows is justly described by Düntzer as one of the happiest of the additions made by the drama to the legend; in the Faustbuch (ch. xxiii.) we have instead Belial introducing 'all the spirits of hell to Doctor Faustus, among them seven of the highest rank named by name.' In view of the phrase with which in the English History Lucifer introduces his seven assistant-devils ('I am come to visit thee and to show thee some hellish pastime,' cf. l. 104), Logeman supposes Marlowe, with this passage before him, and the traditional association of certain sins with certain animals, and particular devils with particular sins, to have been led to substitute the devils for the animals in question.

112. *of*, 'on.' See note on ii. 15.

116. *Ovid's flea.* The lascivious 'Carmen de pulice,' formerly supposed to be by Ovid, is described by Bernhardy as 'a production of the later Middle Ages.'

117. *periwig.* This word (thus spelt in the quarto of 1604) is a corruption of the French *perruque* (Müller compares Italian *perrucca*, Spanish *peluca*, Sardinian and Sicilian *pilucca*, derived like the verb *piluccare*, French *éplucher*, from the Latin *pilus*, hair), and spelt 'periwinke' in Hall's Satires. According to Fairholt, 'the earliest notice of periwigs occurs in the privy purse expenses of Henry VIII, where we find under December, 1529, an entry of twenty shillings "for a perwyke for Sexton the king's fool." By the middle of this century their use had become frequent. They are noticed as worn by ladies in Middleton's A Mad World, my Masters,' 1608 (iv. 4).

120. *cloth of arras*, so called from Arras in Artois, where the principal manufacture of such stuffs was. See Nares, i. 35, where reference is made to 1 Henry IV, ii. 4. 549, and Hamlet, iii. 4. In both these scenes the walls are hung with arras, and so Harrison, in his Description of England (bk. ii. ch. 12), mentions 'hangings of tapistrie, arras work or painted cloths,' but says nothing of floor-carpets or floor-cloths. Of course arras would be a preposterously ostentatious covering for the floor, which (as Wagner observes) was not carpeted in olden times, but merely strewed with rushes; and Pride, like Clytaemnestra in the Agamemnon, exceeds all bounds in her wish

> 'The soil o' the road to strew with carpet-spreadings.'

130. *case*, couple. Bullen compares Webster's White Devil (Dyce's ed., 1857, p. 46):

> 'My lord hath left me yet two case of jewels
> Shall make me scorn your bounty';

adding: '(The speaker, Flamineo, goes out presently, and returns with

Digitized by Google

"two case of pistols").' So Harrison speaks of a 'case of dags' or daggers. The expression in Henry V, iii. 2. 5, 'I have not a case of lives,' is explained by Delius to mean 'I have not a couple of lives.'

132. *some of you shall be my father*, i.e. one of you (the devils) is doubtless my father. Cf. Abbott, § 315.

134. *Envy*. Compare the description of Envy in the Faerie Queen, v. 12. 29:

'Thereto her hew
Was wan and leane, that all her teeth arew
And all her bones might through her cheekes be red.'

140. *with a vengeance*. Compare, for this still common expression, Coriolanus, iii. 1. 261: 'What the vengeance!' In R. Bernard's 'Terence in English,' ed. of 1607 (1st ed. 1598), the Latin words 'Quid (malum) me tandem censes velle?' are translated with 'What (a vengeance), thinke you, desire I to have?' See New Shakspere Society's Transactions, 1875–6, p. 460.

144. *bevers* (quarto of 1604: beavers; from O. Fr. *bevre* or *boivre*, to drink; whence beverage), a refreshment between breakfast and dinner. In Nares an amusing passage is cited from Beaumont and Fletcher's The Woman-Hater, i. 3, mentioning 'ordinary eaters, that will devour three breakfasts, and as many dinners, without prejudice to their bevers, drinkings or suppers'—an improvement on the 'quatre repas par jour' which French writers are in the habit of considering the proof of a good digestion waiting upon a comfortably supplied appetite. Harrison, bk. ii. ch. 16, observes that 'heretofore there hath beene much more time spent in eating and drinking than commonlie is in these daies, for whereas of old we had breakefasts in the forenoone, beuerages, or nuntions after dinner, and thereto reare suppers generallie when it was time to go to rest (a toie brought into England by hardie *Canutus* . . . .) now these od repasts—thanked be God—are verie well left.'

148. *Peter Pickle-herring*. Such alliterative combinations as this, and Margery March-beer below, were common in the old moralities, and in the early comedies; see for instance the dramatis personae of Ralph Roister Doister. Laurence Lucifer, in Pierce Pennilesse his Supplication (Nash's Works, ed. Grosart, ii. 44), may also be appositely noted.—Pickle-herring was the Dutch Hans Wurst, who had many similar aliases according to the nationality he was intended to represent. The company of English actors who performed at Dresden in 1626–7 included a 'Robert Pickleherring' (R. Lee). See Fleay's Life of Shakespeare, p. 308.

*Ib. Martlemas-beef*. It is stated in Nares, ii. 553, that 'Martlemas (a corruption of Martin-mass, the feast of St. Martin, Nov. 11th)'—(compare Christmas, Michaelmas)—'was the customary time for hang-



Digitized by Google

ing up provisions to dry, which had been salted for the winter'; see George-a-Greene, the Pinner of Wakefield, where the passage, slightly varied, occurs twice:

'You shall have wafer-cakes your fill,
A piece of beef, hung up since Martlemas,
Mutton, and veal.'

151. *March-beer*, or march-ale, is, according to the same authority, ii. 547, 'a choice kind of ale, made generally in the month of March, and not fit to drink till it was two years old.' Bullen cites Shirley's Captain Underwit (Old Plays, ii. 323) in testimony of the esteem in which the March brewings were held by the judicious.

157. *Sloth*. 'Sloth' is one of the 'Seven Deadly Sinnes of London' in Dekker's pamphlet (see Dramatis Personae), where the entry of Sloth at Bishopsgate is described with some humour. '*Sleepe* and Plenty leade the Fore-Asse,' and among the suite are 'an *Irish Beggar* on the one side, and *One that sayes he has been a Soldier* on the other.'

162. *Minx*, probably from minikin; a diminutive of minion (French mignon). 'Mistris Minx, a marchant's wife,' is a type in Nash's Pierce Pennilesse.

163. *The first letter of my name begins with lechery*. This is the reading of the quarto in 1604, instead of which, in accordance with a suggestion made by the late Mr. J. P. Collier in his Preface, p. cviii, to Coleridge's Seven Lectures on Shakespeare and Milton, &c. (1856), Dyce in his 1870 edition of Marlowe adopted the reading 'the first letter of my name begins with L.' Mr. P. A. Daniel, to whom I owe the above statement, adds: 'It seemed odd to me that such a venerable old joke as this, and one that had been familiar to me from my childhood, should be unknown to specialists like Collier and Dyce, and I sent a note to that effect to the *Athenæum* (Oct. 14, 1876), supporting it with the following two quotations—Latimer, Seven Sermons, &c., ed. Arber, p. 139: "They cal them rewardes, but brybes is the fyrst letter of theyr Christian name"; and *Euphues and his England*, ed. Arber, p. 340: "There is not farre hence a gentlewoman whom I haue long Time loued ... the first letter of whose name (for that also is necessary) is Camilla." I have since noted another instance in Middleton's Family of Love, Act ii, Sc. 3, p. 131 (ed. Dyce): "Her name begins with Mistress Purge, does it not?"' Mr. Daniel, who points out that Mr. Bullen has followed Dyce in adopting Collier's emendation, further shows, by a quotation from H. de Balzac, that this facetious figure is used in French as well as in English.

165. As this line is not assigned to any fresh speaker in the quarto of 1604, I have followed the quarto of 1616 in giving it to Lucifer, as the

Digitized by Google

manager of the show, rather than to Faustus (with Dyce), especially as it hardly accords with his subsequent declaration that what he has seen 'feeds his soul.'

166. *Away, to hell, to hell!* Quarto of 1616: 'Away to Hell, away! On, piper!'

170, 171. These lines, and again 172-174, and 175-176, are printed as continuous prose in the quarto of 1604.

171. *Thou shalt.* As to Faustus' descent into hell see Introduction, p. cix.

172. *take this book.* See *ibid.* p. cviii.

*Ib. throughly*, for 'thoroughly.' See note to iii. 106.

173. *thyself.* This word should probably be omitted as redundant to the metre.

175. *chary*, carefully. 'Chary' is the A.S. cearig, anxious; compare care, cark. So in the Ormulum, 1274: 'turrtle ledeþþ chariȝ lif.' Wagner compares Shakespeare's Sonnet xxii. 11-12:

> 'Bearing thy heart, which I will keep so chary
> As tender nurse her babe from faring ill.'

177. *Exeunt omnes.* This is the stage-direction of the quarto of 1604.

## *Chorus.*

These lines are in the quartos of 1604 and 1609 given to Wagner ('Enter Wagner solus'), but in the quarto of 1616 to the Chorus, to whom they evidently belong. As Dyce observes, 'The parts of Wagner and of the Chorus were most probably played by the same actor; and hence the error.' Before these lines a comic scene between 'Robin' and 'Dick' is added in the quarto of 1616, which is doubtless a later addition.

1. *Learnèd Faustus*, &c. As to the ascent of Faustus into the heavens see Introduction, p. cix.

The flights of magicians are a familiar feature in the stories related of them. The legend of Daedalus and Icarus may have exercised its influence; cf. also Introduction, p. lxxv. According to one account Simon Magus attempted to fly in proof of his supernatural power, but in answer to the prayers of St. Peter fell and sustained serious injuries; whereupon in his vexation he committed suicide. See Smith's Dictionary of the Bible, art. Simon Magus, and the parallels from pagan literature there cited.—As to Dr. Dee's flight in the hall of Trinity see Mullinger's University of Cambridge, ii. 573.

3. *Jove's.* See note to i. 74.

Digitized by Google

6. *Drawn by the strength of yoky dragons' necks.* Wagner directs attention to the entry in Henslowe's Diary (p. 273, Collier) in his 'Enventary tacken of all the properties for my Lord Admeralles men, the 10 of Marche 1598,' 'j dragon in fostes.' The suggestion that 'possibly Faustus alighted in his chariot drawn by dragons, or at least one dragon, at the beginning of the scene following', is not irreconcilable with the supposition that Henslowe's entry refers to the appearance of Faustus indicated in the last two of the following lines added in the quarto of 1616 between lines 5 and 6 of our text:

'He views the clouds, the planets, and the stars,
The tropic zones, and quarters of the sky,
From the bright circle of the hornèd moon
Even to the height of Primum Mobile;
And, whirling round with this circumference,
Within the concave compass of the pole,
From east to west his dragons swiftly glide,
And in eight days did bring him home again.
Not long he stayed within his quiet house,
To rest his bones after his weary toil;
But new exploits do hale him out again:
And, mounted then upon a dragon's back,
That with his wings did part the subtle air'...

if, as Mr. Bullen thinks internal evidence proves, these lines are by Marlowe. (See Bullen's Introduction, p. xxx. For other Elizabethan references to the Primum Mobile, cf. Verity, *u.s.*, p. 114.)

*Ib. yoky.* Compare note to i. 145.

7. *to prove cosmography*, to essay or study the science which, as a line added in the quarto of 1616 explains, 'measures coasts and kingdoms of the earth.'

8. *as I guess.* This phrase, now considered an Americanism, occurs several times in Shakespeare.

10. *of*, where we should say 'in.' See note to ii. 15.

*Ib. holy Peter's feast*, St. Peter's day (June 29th).

11. *to this day*, tô-day (O. E. tô-dæge; compare O. E. to-yere, this year, to-eve, yesterday evening).

## *Scene VII.*

1. *Having now*, &c. As to the journeys of Faustus, and as to the arguments founded on the differences in the accounts of the Faustbuch and of the English History, see Introduction, pp. lxxviii. and cx. seqq.

Digitized by Google

2. *the stately town of Trier.* As to the use in this passage of the German form of the name see Introduction, p. cx, note 2. In his translation of Lucan's Pharsalia Marlowe uses the form 'Trevier' as an equivalent for the Latin 'Trevir' (Lucan, i. 441), to designate the members of the tribe. The attention which the antiquities of Treves (Augusta Trevirorum) commanded about this time is illustrated by the admiration expressed by Abraham Ortelius in his 'Itinerarium per nonnullas Galliae Belgicae partes' (Antwerp, 1584), cited by Wyttenbach, concerning the famous 'Porta Martis' ('Porta Nigra').

3. *airy mountain-tops.* Wagner compares the Latin 'aërii montes.' This is not a Shakespearian use of the epithet.

4. *With walls of flint.* The 'Porta Nigra' at Treves was used as a fortification in the later Middle Ages in the petty wars between the clergy and the citizens.

*Ib. lakes*, ditches.

6. *coasting*, passing along the side or frontier of. From old French *costoier*, modern French *côtoyer*, from *coste* (*côte*), Latin *costa* (rib, side). So in Paradise Lost, iii. 71 (of Satan):

'Coasting the wall of Heaven in this side night.'

See also note on Friar Bacon, i. 144.—For this and the following passages compare Introduction, pp. lxxxviii. and cx. seqq.

7. *We saw*, viz. at Mainz.

11. *straight forth*, in straight lines (like the streets of Thurii designed by Hippodamus). Compare 'forth-rights' = straight paths, in The Tempest, iii. 3. 3.

12. *Quarter the town in four*, &c. For the use of quarter, in the sense of divide, but not necessarily into four parts, cf. Milton's Comus, 27–9:

'But this Isle,
The greatest and the best of all the main,
He quarters to his blue-haired deities';

where however Keightley, according to Masson, finds no shadow of reason for taking the word in its literal sense.

*Ib. equivalents*, equal parts, quarters. The quartos of 1604 and 1609 print 'equivolence.'

13. *learnèd Maro's golden tomb.* In Vergil, reputed as a magician in the Middle Ages (see Wright's Narratives of Sorcery and Magic, i. 99 seqq., on 'Virgil the Enchanter'), Faustus would naturally take special interest. Vergil, says Prof. Sellar, who cites a reference to 'Maronis mausoleum' from a mass sung in honour of St. Paul at the end of the fifteenth century, 'was buried at Naples, where his tomb was long regarded with religious veneration and visited as a temple; and tradition long associated his name, as that of a magician, with

Digitized by Google

the construction of the great tunnel of Posilippo in the immediate neighbourhood.'

14. *The way he cut.* See preceding note. Dyce quotes a passage from Petrarch's Itinerarium Syriacum, describing the famous 'crypt' or tunnel, 'quod vulgus insulsum a Virgilio magicis cantaminibus factum putant: ita clarorum fama hominum, non veris contenta laudibus, saepe etiam fabulis viam facit.' According to Wright, Vergil was also said to have made a contrivance 'by which no man could be hurt in the miraculous vault.'

15. *Thorough.* See note to iii. 106.

17. *In one of which.* This is the reading of the quarto of 1616; those of 1604 and of 1609 have 'in midst of which.' The corresponding passages in the Faustbuch (ch. xxvi.) leave some doubt as to which church was here intended. The epithet 'sumptuous' is applied to St. Mark's at Venice in the English History (see *ib.* p. cxi), and was so understood by the author of the additional lines in the quarto of 1616, which reproduce the special points noted in the History:

> 'Whose frame is pav'd with sundry-colour'd stones,
> And roof'd aloft with curious work in gold'—

referring, of course, to the wonderful mosaic-work of St. Mark's. On the other hand, the line

> 'That threats the stars with her aspiring top'

is not particularly applicable to St. Mark's. In the Faustbuch (*u. s.*) Padua is mentioned as possessing a beautiful 'church with a cupola' (Thumbkirch), and it is stated that there (at Padua) is a church 'called S. Anthonii, the like of which is not found in all Italy.' Of course, supposing Marlowe not to have merely copied the Faustbuch, or its English version, he might have had some other lofty Italian church in his mind's eye,—not however the Duomo at Milan, which would at the present day occur as the readiest example of an Italian Church with an 'aspiring top,' for its central tower and spire had not been completed in Marlowe's day.

18. *threats*, threatens. For similar verbal forms see Abbott, § 290.

*Ib. with her aspiring top.* See note to i. 33. Though 'his' ordinarily represented the genitive of 'it,' 'her' might be used where personification, or association with the notion of female sex, or the gender of the corresponding Latin substantive, caused the noun represented by the pronoun to be treated as of the feminine gender. See Abbott, § 229. The last is the case here; 'temple' is used as a synonym for 'church,' the Latin and Greek words for which are feminines.

Digitized by Google

23-25. In Mr. Bullen's opinion, this is a garbled version of what Marlowe wrote. The edition of 1616 gives:

'I have, my Faustus, and, for proof thereof,
This is the goodly palace of the Pope;
And, 'cause we are no common guests,
I choose his privy-chamber for our use.'

33, 34. These lines, which are wanting in the quartos of 1604 and 1609, are inserted from that of 1616 by Dyce 'as being absolutely necessary to the sense.'

35. *four stately bridges.* This is the reading of the two first quartos; the third has 'two.' The Faustbuch does not help us here; but the English History mentions 'four great stone bridges' over the 'river Thybris.' (See Introduction, p. cxi.) This appears to have been the actual number of bridges at Rome in the fifteenth century (the Ponte Angelo, the two bridges of the Insula, and the Bridge of the Senators). See the account of Poggio (1431) in Gregorovius, Geschichte der Stadt Rom, vi. 709; and cf. as to the preservation of the bridges at the Sack in 1527 Creighton, History of the Papacy, &c., v. 293.

37. *Ponte* (all the quartos 'Ponto') *Angelo.* This again is taken from the English History only. (See *ibid.*) The Ælian bridge, built by the Emperor Hadrian as an approach to his tomb, was called the 'Bridge of St. Peter' in the days of Gregory I; it was not till the eleventh century that the locality began to be called the 'Mons S. Angeli,' whence the same name afterwards came to be used of both castle and bridge.

39. *store of ordnance are.* For the construction of 'store' (signifying 'abundance') as a collective noun with a plural compare Richard II, 1. 4. 5:

'And say, what store of parting tears were shed?'

40. *double cannons.* This probably means cannons with double bores. Two cannons with *triple* bores were taken from the French at Malplaquet, and are now in the Woolwich Museum.

41. *cómplete.* For the accent compare Hamlet, i. 4. 52:

'That thou, dead corse, again in cómplete steel.'

42. *pyramides.* Marlowe frequently uses this plural: so 1 Tamburlaine, iv. 2; The Massacre at Paris, i. 2; and Dido Queen of Carthage, iii. 1. The singular occurs in Beaumont and Fletcher's Philaster, iv. 4:

'Place me, some god, upon a Piramis
Higher than earth.'

43. *Which Julius Caesar brought from Africa,* i. e. from Egypt. But this it would have been rather beyond Julius Caesar's power to do; perhaps the writer of the English History (from which the passage is taken), or his authority, was thinking of the obelisk brought to Rome from Thebes in Egypt by the Emperor Constantius about A.D. 353.

Digitized by Google

45, 46. *Of Styx . . . Phlegethon.* As F. V. Hugo observes, Faustus, in accordance with the fashion of the Renascence, identifies the heathen with the Christian lower world. The Styx, by which even the gods swore (Hesiod, Theogon. 400), was the most ancient, and probably originally the only stream of which the Greeks conceived the existence in the lower world; the Acheron (the river of wailing) and the Pyriphlegethon (the river of fire) are first mentioned in the Odyssey, x. 513.

48. *bright-splendent.* See as to such compounds of two adjectives ('deep-contemplative,' 'strange-suspicious,' &c.), of which the first has an adverbial force and qualifies the second, Abbott, § 2.

56. This line seems corrupt. Mr. Bullen suggests the insertion after 'me' of 'Mephistophilis.'

58. *Unseen by any.* This power of suddenly vanishing or making to vanish was ascribed to the gods of pagan antiquity, and afterwards to the evil spirits into which the popular belief of the Middle Ages had converted them. The power of rendering invisible was attributed to the hat of Fortunatus in the old Teutonic and Breton legend, treated by Dekker in Olde Fortunatus. Compare as to this kind of beliefs Grimm's Deutsche Mythologie, i. 431–432. For a late instance see G. Voigt, Gesch. der Wiederbelebung d. class. Alterth., ii. 281.

*Sound a Sonnet.* This word, which is spelt in various ways (the spelling 'Signate' shows its origin), is of frequent occurrence in the stage-directions of old plays. It means 'a particular set of notes on the trumpet or cornet, different from a flourish'; for in Nares is cited the following direction from Dekker's Satiromastix: 'Trumpets sound a florish, and then a sennate.'

*The Cardinal of Lorraine.* See Dramatis Personae. In the English History, the Cardinal entertained by the Pope is the 'Cardinal of Pavia.'

61. For what follows, whether it was written by Marlowe or not, compare Introduction, pp. cxii. seq.

62. *Fall to.* This colloquialism explains itself by a comparison of Friar Bacon, ix. 237:

'And bid them fall into' [i. e. upon] 'their frugal cates.'

Compare 'go to,' i. e. go on.

67. *Milan,* spelt 'Millaine' in the quarto of 1604.

*Snatches the dish.* Or perhaps, as Logeman suggests, we should read 'the plate,' since the English History mentions 'plate, dish, and cup.'

72. *ha't,* have it.

76. *a pardon,* or indulgence, shortening his stay in Purgatory.

77. *a dirge,* a funeral service. Mr. Thos. Arnold, in his Select English Works of Wyclif, iii. 374, has the following note on the words 'pore mennis dirige':—'In the office for the dead, according to the use of Sarum, at the vigils (which were recited daily unless hindered by the

Digitized by Google

occurrence of the greater festivals) nine psalms were ordered to be sung, followed, when the body was present, by nine different antiphons; but when the body was not present, by one and the same antiphon, which was either *Placebo*, the 9th verse of Ps. cxvi. (cxiv. Vulg.), or else *Dirige*, part of the 8th verse of Ps. v. ("Dirige in conspectu tuo vitam meam"). These vigils, celebrated always on the day before the masses for the dead or for the repose of souls, and connected with those masses, must have made the *Dirige*, loudly repeated nine times after each psalm at the beginning of the antiphon, so familiar to the ears of our forefathers, that one cannot wonder at the employment of the word to express funeral obsequies generally. See the Sarum Breviary (Paris, 1554) and Mr. Way's note on *Dyrryge* in the Camden Society's edition of the Promptorium Parvulorum.' The form 'dirige' is used by Skelton in Colyn Cloute, 427; and in The Boke of Phyllyp Sparowe, 562:

'The sacre with them shall say
*Dirige* for Phyllyppes soule';

whence the sneer of Barklay towards the close of The Ship of Fooles:

'It longeth not to my science nor cunninge
For Philip the Sparow the dirige to sing.'

79. *crossing of yourself.* Compare 1 Tamburlaine, iii. 3:

'Why stay we thus prolonging of their lives?'

and The Jew of Malta, iv. 2: 'He stands as if he were begging of bacon.' These apparent participles are explained by Abbott, § 178, as verbal nouns, before which the prepositional 'a,' 'in,' or 'on' has been omitted; so that the present passage is equivalent to 'are you a-crossing of yourself?' On the other hand, in such passages as xiv. 79, Friar Bacon, ii. 20, and Edward II, i. 4. 272,

'And in the chronicle enrol his name
For purging of the realm of such a plague,'

the substantive use of 'naming' and 'purging' is evident from the preposition 'for' before these words.

81. *Aware* ('ywar' in Chaucer; compare German 'gewahr werden'), beware. Compare Love's Labour's Lost, v. 2. 43:

''Ware pencils, ho!'

84. *with bell, book, and candle.* Cf. Introduction, p. lxxxix, note 1. 'In the solemn form of excommunication used in the Romish Church, the bell was tolled, the book of offices for the purpose used, and three candles extinguished.' See Nares, where reference is made to King John, iii. 3. 12. The process of excommunication, as formulated in 1298 by Archbishop Winchilsea, is here clearly supposed also to refer to exorcism. Compare Fletcher's The Spanish Curate, v. 2:

'Out with your beads, curate,—
The devil's in the dish,—bell, book, and candle!'

Digitized by Google

*Faustus hits him a box on the ear.* See Introduction, p. cxii, note 4, as to this mistranslation of the passage in the German Faustbuch, or 'improvement upon it.'

88, 89. These lines are printed without a break between them in the quarto of 1604.

*Re-enter all the Friars to sing the Dirge.* Professor Logeman correctly points out that the so-called 'dirge' sung by the friars is really a liturgy of excommunication; but this hardly justifies the supposition that a passage has dropped out of the text here; nor is any such explanation necessary for the mention in l. 96 of 'Friar Sandelo,' with whom we have not previously made acquaintance.

96. *took.* Compare Measure for Measure, ii. 1. 189: 'If he took you a box o' the ear'; and other passages in Shakespeare. The verb 'to take' is frequently employed in O. E. in the sense of 'to give'; see for instance The Vision of Piers the Plowman, iii. 45:

'Mede . . . .
Tolde hym a tale and toke hym a noble,
Forto ben hire bedeman.'

Cf. Skeat's Specimens of English Literature, 1394–1579, Glossarial Index, *s. v.* take.

*Chorus.*

3. *stay'd*, stopped. See note on v. 64.

5. *companions.* A quadrisyllable. Compare i. 150.

6. *gratulate his safety*, congratulate him on his safety, testify their pleasure in it. Compare Greene's Orlando Furioso:

'But friendly gratulate these favours found';

and Peele's Edward I, v. 58:

'Friends, gratulate to me my joyous hopes';

and Titus Andronicus, i. 1. 221:

'And gratulate his safe return to Rome.'

7. *conference of*, conversation on. Compare i. 65, and see note on ii. 15.

9. *of astrology.* See the same note.

11. *As.* Compare x. 23, and Friar Bacon, x. 30 and 61; xii. 18; and see Abbott, § 109, for other examples of the Elizabethan use of 'as' for 'that' with the antecedents 'so' and 'such.'

16. *in trial*, by way of experiment or testimony.

17. *'t*, added by Dyce.

*Scene VIII.*

6. *chafing.* See note to v. 69.

7. *look thee out*, seek thee out.

9. *keep out*, keep off. Compare the modern vulgarism 'get out.'

Digitized by Google

11. *roaring.* 'Roaring' is a favourite slang term of our old writers; one of the characters in Jonson's Bartholomew Fair is 'Val. Cutting, a roarer or bully'; the heroine (a real personage) and title of one of Middleton's comedies is 'The Roaring Girl'; Sir Thomas Overbury draws the character of a 'Roaring Boy'—a cant term for bully; and in Middleton and Rowley's A Faire Quarrel the whole art of town bullying is taught at a 'roaring academy.'

21. *ippocras* (quarto of 1604, 'Ipocrase') or hippocras is defined by Dyce as 'a medicated drink composed of wine (usually red) with spices and sugar. It is generally supposed to have been so called from Hippocrates (contracted by our earliest writers to "Hippocras" [so in Skelton's Garlande of Laurell, v. 1426: 'Ipocras']), perhaps because it was strained,—the woollen bag used by apothecaries to strain syrups and decoctions for clarification being termed "Hippocrates' sleeve."' 'Call for a cup of pure Hellicon,' says Madido in The Pilgrimage to Parnassus, ii. 207, 'and he will bring you a cup of pure hypocrise.'

*Ib. tavern.* The quarto of 1604 has the spelling 'taberne' (*taberna*).

23. *Master Parson.* Compare Master Doctor Faustus, x. 1; and the abbreviation 'Mas doctor' in Friar Bacon, vii. 26.

27. *horse-bread*, or horse-loaves, described in Nares as a peculiar sort of bread, made for feeding horses. 'It appears to have been formerly much more common than at present to give bread to horses.' The receipts for making 'horse-loaves are given in various books of hunting'; and reference is made to Fletcher and Shirley's The Night-Walker, v. 1:

> 'Oh, that I were in my oat-tub with a horse-loaf,
> Something to hearten me.'

28. *of free cost*, at no expense. Compare 2 Henry VI, iv. 6. 3 (cited by Abbott, § 168): 'Of the city's cost, the conduit shall run nothing but claret wine.'

## *Scene IX.*

A scene, as Dyce points out, is evidently wanting between the 'exeunt' and 'enter' of Ralph and Robin.

1. *ecce, signum!* The same phrase, as Logeman points out, occurs in the old Taming of a Shrew (p. 175). It is also used by Falstaff, 1 Henry IV, ii. 4. 187.

3. *a simple purchase*, a clear gain or acquisition. So 1 Tamburlaine, ii. 5 (of the acquisition of the crown):

> 'I judge the purchase more important far.'

The word purchase, says Trench in his Select Glossary, is 'properly to hunt, "pourchasser," "procacciare"; and then to take in hunting; then to acquire; and then, as the commonest way of acquiring is by

Digitized by Google

giving money in exchange, to buy. The word occurs six times in our Version of the New Testament . . . in none of these is the notion of buying involved.'—'Purchase' was hence used of the booty of thieves, and became a cant term among them. See Nares, *s. v.*

6. *gull.* Both substantive and verb are favourite slang terms for 'dupe,' still in use, in allusion to the ease with which the bird so called can be caught, and the flutter of its movements. See the lines 'Of a Gull' by J. D. (John Davies), one of the epigrams printed together with Marlowe's 'Ovid's Elegies.'

*Enter* Vintner. The stage-direction 'Enter the Vintner' in the quarto of 1604 follows l. 4.

7. *Drawer.* 'There is an inconsistency here; the Vintner cannot properly be addressed as "Drawer."' Dyce. (See Dramatis Personae; the Vintner is the publican who sells the wine, the Drawer the servant who draws it for the customers.)

9. *Soft.* Compare Othello, v. 2. 338:

'Soft you, a word or two before you go.'

10. *from you*, by you.

12. *etc.* This 'etc.,' which recurs l. 30 below, and is to be found in other plays, shows that room was left for *extempore* additions by the clowns.

Mr. Bullen adds: 'In an old play, The Tryall of Chevalry (1605), we find the stage-direction, "*Exit* Clown, speaking *anything*."'

18. *a matter of truth*, a charge affecting their credit for honesty. Compare The Merry Wives, i. 1. 125: 'what matter have you against me?'

19. *tone*, the one. The forms 'tone' and 'tother' (Scoticè tane, tither) where they occur in O. E. have the article 'the' prefixed to them. The initial *t* is probably the final letter of 'that,' used as the definite article and frequently prefixed in O. E. to 'one' and 'other.'

20. *afore*, before.

22. *scour*, a slang term for 'chastise.' So Nym says to Pistol, Hen. V, ii. 1. 60: 'I'll scour you with my rapier.'

*Ib. you had best.* This seems equivalent to 'you would be or were best,' as to which phrase see Abbott, § 352.

36. After this line the quartos of 1604 and 1609 make Mephistophilis say: 'Vanish villaines, th' one like an Ape, an other like a Beare, the third an Asse, for doing this enterprise.' These words, to which there is nothing equivalent in the corresponding passage in the later quartos, are omitted by Dyce, as what follows (46–47) shows that they ought to have no place in the text. Obviously, we have here an instance of those double endings to scenes which, as Mr. Fleay points out, form a clear proof of alterations having been introduced.

Digitized by Google

38. *awful*, full of awe or fear. For the double (active and passive) meaning of such adjectives see Abbott, § 3.

40. *villains*, low fellows. Compare x. 80.

48. *fine sport with the boys.* Compare Love's Labour's Lost, iv. 3. 169:

'And Nestor play at push-pin with the boys.'

## *Scene X.*

Before this scene another, between Martino, Frederick, and Benvolio, gentlemen of the Imperial Court, is added in the quarto of 1616. For the passage in the Faustbuch to which sc. x. corresponds, see Introduction, pp. cxiv.–cxvii. Two chapters in the original, and in the English History, are interwoven in the play.

2. *thy knowledge.* Throughout this scene the Emperor addresses Faustus with 'thou' and Faustus replies with 'you.' Compare, as to the use of 'thou' and 'you,' Abbott, §§ 231 seqq.

*Ib. the black art.* See note on opening Chorus, 25.

4. *for*, in the sense of 'as regards.' See Abbott, § 149. Compare sc. xiii. 14, 22, 27; and Friar Bacon, xvi. 1.

*Ib. rare effects*, wonderful achievements or manifestations.

*Ib. familiar*, attendant.

5. *list.* This, if not regarded as the subjunctive, is a contraction for 'listest.' So Tempest, iii. 2. 138: 'If thou beest a devil, take 't as thou list.'

10. *endamaged* (quarto of 1604, indamaged), harmed; an obsolete word frequently used by Shakespeare and other Elizabethan writers, and also occurring in Milton and South.

14. *nothing*, in no respect. For this adverbial use of 'nothing' see Abbott, § 55; and, for the corresponding adverbial use of 'something,' *ib.* § 68.

*Ib. answerable to*, in keeping with. Compare The Taming of the Shrew, ii. 1. 361:

'I have a hundred milch-kine to the pail,
Six score fat oxen standing in my stalls,
And all things answerable to this portion.'

'Adjectives, especially those ending in *ful*, *less*, *ble*, and *ive*, have both an active and a passive meaning—so "unmeritable," "medicinable,"' Abbott, § 3.

15. *for that.* For the use of 'that' in conjunctival phrases such as 'for that,' 'in that,' 'after that,' see Abbott, § 287. Compare 'for that,' xiii. 18, and Friar Bacon, ii. 105; and "fore that' (before), *ib.* viii. 35. For the general use of 'that' as a conjunctional affix compare 'if

Digitized by Google

that,' xiii. 3, and Friar Bacon, i. 157; and 'how that,' Friar Bacon, viii. 21.

17-28. These lines are printed as prose in the quarto of 1604, the rest of the Emperor's speech being printed as verse.

18. *sometime*, once; here used as a mere indefinite adverb of time, as in 1 Henry VI, v. 1. 31:

'Henry the Fifth did sometime prophesy,' &c.

In the concluding Chorus of our play, l. 3, 'sometime' means 'formerly.'

*Ib. solitary*, an adverb. Compare 'lively,' l. 51; and 'chary,' vi. 175.

*Ib. set*, seated. Compare The Jew of Malta, v. 4:

'When thou seest he comes
And with his bassoes shall be blithely set,'

i e. comfortably seated; and 3 Henry VI, iv. 3. 2:

'The king by this is set him down to sleep.'

19. *closet*, private room. Compare the Gospel of St. Luke, xii. 3 (A. V.), where Tyndale has 'secret places.'

21. *won*. 'May be right; but query "done"?' Dyce. The A. S. winnan, and still more the Icelandic vinna, were used in the sense of 'to labour.'

*Ib. prowess*, O. Fr. proese (N. Fr. prouesse), from O. Fr. prou, preu, pro (N. Fr. preux), probably derived from the Latin probus, though the derivatives of prudens (prude, whence prud'homme, preud'homme) may have influenced the meaning.

22. *riches*. If the line be not corrupt (of which, as Wagner suggests, the feminine ending is the sole indication), the question is whether 'riches' can here be accentuated on the last syllable. Chaucer still spells and accentuates this word according to its original French singular form 'richesse'; Shakespeare uses it both as a singular and as a plural, but never accentuates it on the ultimate.

23, 24. 'A corrupted passage (not found in the later quartos).' Dyce.

23. *As*. Compare note on Chorus before viii, l. 11.

28. *the world's pre-eminence*, the pre-eminent men of the world. Compare 'the nobility' = the nobles.

29. *The bright . . . acts*. Dyce regards this line as one of the lines defective in the first syllable, adverted to in note on vi. 87.

30. *his*, for 'its.' See note to i. 33. The pronoun refers to the verbal noun 'shining,' but it would almost seem as if Marlowe had had the supposed antecedent 'sun' in his mind.

31. *As*, for 'so as,' which is frequently used for 'so that' (Abbott, § 109).

Digitized by Google

31. *motion*, mention. More usual in the sense of 'proposal'; compare Friar Bacon, ii. 165; v. 16.

33. *cunning*, knowledge. See note on opening Chorus, l. 20.

36. *paramour*. See Dramatis Personae.

42. *so far forth*, to such an extent. Prof. Toller compares Thorpe's Charters, p. 340, l. 20: 'thig sceoldan habban Sandwic swa full and swa forth swa hig hit æfre hæfdon'; and adds that the use of the phrase is not uncommon in charters. Compare also Chaucer, The Man of Lawe, Prologue, 19: 'as far forth as ye may.' 'So far forth' and 'as far forth as that goes' are present Americanisms.

44. *that's just nothing at all*, that is a very easy feat. Compare xii. 12.

45. *if it like your grace*, if it please your grace. Compare Friar Bacon, iv. 55, and Henry V, iv. 3. 77:

> 'Why, now thou hast unwish'd five thousand men;
> Which likes me better than to wish us one.'

As an early example of the use Mr. Toller cites Blick. Hom. lxiv. 34: 'Þe is sélost þæt þú Gode lície' (it is best for thee that thou please God). The form of address 'your grace' is used in Shakespeare to kings and queens, as well as to persons of princely, ducal, and high ecclesiastical rank. In 2 Henry VI, i. 2. 71, it is however contrasted with 'majesty,' the royal or imperial style introduced under Henry VIII, in place of the formerly usual 'highness.' In Friar Bacon, i. 170 and viii. 19, the Prince of Wales is addressed as 'your honour'; in viii. 160 as 'your grace.'

49. *marry*, the common interjection, a corruption of 'Mary' (the Blessed Virgin).

50. *grace*, in the sense of goodness or virtue, the effect of the grace (mercy) of Heaven. Compare xiii. 56, 66.

51. *lively*, in a lifelike manner. See note on l. 18 above; and compare The Winter's Tale, v. 3. 19:

> 'Prepare
> To see the life as lively mocked as ever
> Still sleep mock'd death.'

53. *both*. This is Dyce's correction for 'best,' the reading of the quarto of 1604. Bullen.

56. *Go to*. The adverbial use of 'to' in this phrase must be explained as indicating a forward motion; 'go on to your business.' Compare 'fall to,' vii. 62.

*Ib. presently*, at once.

60. *as true as*, as true as that.

*Ib. Diana*. The story of Diana's punishment of Actaeon is in Ovid's



Digitized by Google

Metamorphoses, iii. 138 seqq. Compare Edward II, i. 1 (in Gaveston's description of the 'Italian masks' proposed by him):

'One, like Actaeon peeping through the grove,
Shall by the angry goddess be transform'd,
And running in the likeness of a hart,
By yelping hounds pull'd down, shall seem to die.'

64. *an* (spelt 'and' here and elsewhere in the quarto of 1604), if. See note on v. 137.

65. *I'll meet with you*, I'll come across you (and settle with you). See l. 83 below.

*Ib. anon*, immediately (A. S. 'on ân,' in one, at once).

*Re-enter Mephistophilis with Spirits in the shape of Alexander and his Paramour.* The quarto of 1616, in which the dialogue of this scene is much fuller, has the following stage-direction for a dumb show at this point: '*Sennet. Enter, at one door, the* Emperor Alexander, *at the other*, Darius. *They meet.* Darius *is thrown down;* Alexander *kills him, takes off his crown, and, offering to go out, his* Paramour *meets him. He embraceth her, and sets* Darius' *crown upon her head; and, coming back, both salute the* Emperor, *who, leaving his state, offers to embrace them; which* Faustus *seeing, suddenly stays him. Then trumpets cease, and music sounds.*' As to these exhibitions of the 'sciomantic' art see note to opening Chorus, l. 25; and compare the story of the summoning of Hector and Achilles by a necromant at the court of the Emperor Maximilian, narrated by Wierus in his work De Praestigiis, &c. (Scheible's Kloster, ii. 188). As to the word 'paramour' see Dramatis Personae, and cf. in the old Taming of a Shrew (p. 200): 'Penthesilea, Hector's paramour.'

68. *had a wart or mole.* See, for this incident, Introduction, p. xci. A similar story from Lercheimer is quoted by Kühne with reference to the shade of Mary of Burgundy, summoned by Tritheim in the presence of her widower, Maximilian I, who recognised a black mark on the neck of the apparition; and he notices a parallel touch in the Indian 'Somaveda.' Cf., as to the Tritheim story, Le Glay, Notice sur Max. I., in Correspondance, &c. (1839), ii. 390. I cannot discover Herman Grimm's (*u. s.*, p. 457) authority for the statement that Tritheim was said to have caused the Blessed Virgin Mary to appear before the Emperor Maximilian.

*Re-enter the* Knight *with a pair of horns on his head.* Tricks of the same kind were related of the Bohemian conjuror Zyto; see Scheible's Kloster, xi. 282. Compare also Dekker's Olde Fortunatus, p. 147 (ed. 1873).

80. *Villain*, low fellow (peasant, *villanus*), in antithesis to gentleman (i. e. man of rank, compare 'an honourable gentleman' of the Duke of Vanholt, xi. 93). Compare ix. 46.

Digitized by Google

81. *good.* This adjective (like 'dear' and 'sweet' in modern usage) is frequently used in the vocative, both by itself, and in the combinations 'good thou,' and more especially 'good now.' Compare The Tempest, i. 1. 3; Romeo and Juliet, i. 5. 8; and Hamlet, i. 1. 70. 'Lovely' is used without a substantive in Friar Bacon, x. 111; but with a participial vocative conjoined. See also note on Friar Bacon, ix. 192.

82. *are you remembered,* do you remember? So frequently in Shakespeare, e. g. in As You Like It, iv. 5. 131:

'He said mine eyes were black and my hair black;
And, now I am remembered, scorned at me.'

As to the use of 'to be' with intransitive verbs, and the consequent indefinite and apparently not passive use of passive participles, see Abbott, §§ 295, 374; and compare xi. 51, xiii. 74.

*Ib. conference.* Compare i. 66.

83. *met with you.* Compare l. 65.

88. *injurious,* insolent, offensive. Compare Friar Bacon, viii. 24, and 'injurious villain' in Richard II, i. 1. 91, and see Clark and Wright's note, *l. c.*

91. *transform him straight.* In the quarto of 1616 Benvolio (as the Knight is there called) seeks to revenge himself upon Faustus by setting an ambush against him, but only to the worse confounding of himself and his friends. This 'addition' corresponds to ch. 35 of the Faustbuch. The stage-direction '*Mephistophilis removes the horns*' is not in the quarto of 1604.

## *Scene XI.*

Here evidently begins a new scene, which plays first on 'the fair and pleasant green' mentioned by Faustus (l. 8), and afterwards (from l. 10) in the house of Faustus at Wittenberg, where he falls asleep in his chair (l. 44). The representation of Faustus's journey on the stage recalls the ambulatory scenes of the Indian drama, and, notwithstanding the scepticism of Professor Logeman, who supposes the whole scene to take place before the door of an inn near Wittenberg, seems to suit the rapidity of movement which would be expected by the audience from Dr. Faustus and his companion.

1, 2. These lines are printed as prose in the quarto of 1604.

*Enter a Horse-courser.* See Dramatis Personae. For the trick played by Faustus upon the horse-courser compare Introduction, p. cxvii. A similar trick is played by Wagner upon a dealer in mules at Florence in 'Christoph Wagner's Leben,' ch. xxii. (Scheible's Kloster, ii. 107). Kühne has collected a host of similar stories, beginning with the famous



Digitized by Google

exploit of the Egyptian thief in Herodotus, ii. 121, and including a trick of Eulenspiegel (Owl-glass), and a Bohemian story of the conjuror Zyto, who changed a handful of grass into thirty pigs, which he sold to a baker called Michael. The baker was afterwards got rid of by the same device as that in our scene; and the story gave rise to the Bohemian proverb, 'A profit, like Michael's from his pigs.' Compare also Scheible, Kloster, xi. 278.

11. *Fustian*, a punning misnomer for Faustus. See iv. 76.

*Ib. mass.* Compare iv. 36.

25. *at any hand*, in any case, any way. Shakespeare uses the phrases 'at any hand,' 'in any hand,' and 'of all hands' in the same sense. So in The Taming of the Shrew, i. 2. 147:

'All books of love, see that at any hand.'

Compare German 'allerhand' and Danish 'allehaande' = all sorts; and Icel. allra handa = of all kinds.

30. *am I made man.* We should say, I am a made man. Logeman compares in S. Rowley's 'When you See Me you Know Me,' Will Summers' assurance to Patch, the Cardinal's fool: 'and thow't be a mayde-man by it' (i. e. by scaring the King). 'Made' is 'finished,' 'complete'; so Fluellen, Henry V, iv. 7. 45, protests against the tales being taken out of his mouth, 'ere it' (the tales) 'is made and finished.'

31. *for forty.* 'Twice forty' and 'forty more' have been here suggested as emendations by Dyce and Wagner.

*Ib. the quality of hey-ding-ding, hey-ding-ding.* The reference, Dr. Furnivall informs me, is to the refrain ('hey ding a ding') of Old Simon the King; see Percy's Folio, Loose and Humorous Songs. A writer in the *Academy* adds that in Chappell's Popular Music of the Olden Time, pp. 262–9, 776, 792, 796, the two versions of Old Sir Simon the King are printed, with the tunes, and all the learning on the subject.

33. *slick*, sleek; an epithet used, as Johnson points out, of horses, by Chapman, Iliads, ii. 680:

'Whom silver-bow'd Apollo bred in the Pierian mead,
Both slicke and daintie, yet were both in warre of wondrous dread.'

Compare the verb 'to slick,' i.e. make smooth, *ib.* xxiii. 259; and the American locution.

*Ib. God b'wi'ye* (quartos of 1604 and 1609 'god buy'), God be with ye, the origin of our 'good bye.'

40. *Thy fatal time*, the time allotted to thee by fate. In Friar Bacon, xiii. 81, 'fatal' signifies 'doomed.'

*Ib. final end.* As to this omission of the article (indefinite or definite), see Introduction, p. xxv. For the tautology compare 'vital life,' l. 3, above.

41. *into.* Quarto of 1604 'unto.'

42. *Confound these passions with a quiet sleep*, lull this agitation

Digitized by Google

in a quiet sleep. Compare Friar Bacon, i. 20; and, for the adjective 'passionate,' iv. 84. See also Paradise Lost, i. 165 (of Satan):

'Cruel his eye, but cast
Signs of remorse and passion.'

43. *call*, mercifully address, offer salvation to. 'Many be called, but few chosen,' St. Matthew xx. 16. Faustus may have had in mind the lines in the 'Dies irae':

'Et latronem exaudisti,
Mihi quoque spem dedisti';

and

'Voca me cum benedictis.'

44. *in conceit*, in thy thoughts, in mind. So Marlowe uses the word as equivalent to fancy or imagination, 1 Tamburlaine, i. 2:

'That in conceit bear empires on our spears';

and *ib.* v. 2:

'Behold our wounded, in conceit, for thee.'

45. *quotha*. See note on iv. 3.

46. *Doctor Lopus*. An allusion (with which it is hardly possible to credit Marlowe, who died in June 1593) to Roderigo Lopez, the Spanish private physician to Queen Elizabeth, who entered into a plot to poison the Queen. Of this plot, which was brought to light by the activity of Essex, and in which King Philip of Spain was implicated, several narratives were drawn up, among the rest one by Bacon, who had been present at the trial of Lopez on February 28th, 1594, when he was found guilty. Bacon's True Report of the Detestable Treason intended by Dr. Roderigo Lopez appears not to have been printed till 1657, and will be found in Spedding's edition of the Letters and Life, vol. i. A fuller report, thought by Mr. Spedding to be by Coke, was printed in the year of Lopez' condemnation to death. The plot is referred to in Middleton's A Game at Chess, iv. 2, cited by Dyce. For a more recent account of Dr. Lopez see Mr. S. L. Lee on the Original of Shylock, in The Gentleman's Magazine for February, 1880, and in the Transactions of the New Shakspere Society, 1887–92, Pt. ii, p. 158, and Mr. A. Dimock's article on The Conspiracy of Dr. Lopez in the English Historical Review, vol. ix, July, 1894, with the notice at the conclusion of the reference to Lopez in our dramatic literature.

*Ib. has*, for 'he has,' modern 'he's.'

51. *known of*. So in quarto of 1604; and there seems no reason to alter the reading. Compare Othello, iii. 3. 319, where the folios read 'Be not acknown on't,' and the first and third quartos 'Be not you known on't,' i.e. be not you aware of it. See note on x. 82.

52. *rid*, a preterite used by Shakespeare as well as 'rode.' The old preterite plural was 'ridon.'

54. *bottle of hay*, a truss of hay. So, in Mucedorus, Mouse, carrying

Digitized by Google

home his bottle of hay, tumbles over the bear; compare also A Midsummer Night's Dream, iv. 1. 37, and Field's A Woman is a Weathercock, where the saying in which the term is still used occurs: 'Methinks he and his lady should show like a needle in a bottle of hay.' See also T. Heywood, The English Traveller, iii. 4. The trick described in the text is referred to by Dryden's Mock Astrologer, iii. 1: 'A witch's horse, you know, when he enters into water, returns into a bottle of hay.' The word 'bottle,' used in this sense of bundle, has a different derivation from the word as now ordinarily employed. The former is from the French 'botel,' a diminutive of 'botte,' a bundle, itself a word probably of Germanic origin (compare N. H. G. 'bosse,' a bundle of flax, O. H. G. 'pozô,' a blade of flax), and used in modern French in such phrases as *botte de paille, de foin*. The latter is from the French *bouteille* (Italian *bottiglia*, M. Lat. *buticula*, a diminutive of *butta;* compare Greek *πίθος*, Gaelic *bòt*, A. S. *bytt*, N. H. G. 'butte, bütte,' a large vessel or boot). Cf. New Shakspere Society's Transactions, 1875–6, Appendix ii. p. 420: '"*Manipola*, a handfull, a gripe, a bundle, a bottell. Manipolo, Manipula, a handfull, a bottle of haie, a wad of straw, a gripe, a bundle."—1598; Florio. "Muzzo, a heape, a masse, a lump, a bundle, a sheefe, a bottle or wad of straw."—1598; Florio.'

56. *the dearest horse*, viz. to him, he shall have to pay most dearly for it. Sir Toby risks the same jest, Twelfth Night, iii. 2.

57. *snipper-snapper*, a comic contemptuous expression for the serving-man (Mephistophiles), from the reduplication 'snip-snap,' which occurs in a song in the old interlude 'Like will to Like' &c., and in Love's Labour's Lost, v. 1. 63. 'Schnippschnapp' is, I think, a comic term in German for idle talk; and the term 'whippersnapper,' in the sense of a contemptible little fellow, is still in use with us.

58. *hey-pass* (quarto of 1604: 'hey, pass'), juggler, from the phrase 'hey-pass' employed by jugglers, as 'hey-presto' continues to be, at the critical point of their tricks. Compare in Pierce Pennilesse's Supplication: 'there are a thousand iugling tricks to be vsed at *Hey, passe*, come aloft!' and L. Barry's Ram-Alley or Merry Tricks, ii. 1:

> '*Taf.* There's no offence;
> My mind is changed.
> *Adri.* I told you as much before.
> *Con.* With a hey-pass—with a repass.'

63. *glass-windows*. Very probably Faustus was supposed to be sitting at the window of his house. Glass-windows were still not universal in these times, although already largely in use. See Harrison's description of England, bk. ii. ch. 12. One can hardly suppose that the Horse-courser alludes to spectacles worn by Faust—which is an ingenious alternative suggestion of Professor Wagner's, but would have been

Digitized by Google

more appropriate in the case of Friar Bacon, who was credited with the invention of spectacles. In the woodcut to the first section of the Ship of Fools the Scholar wears a nightcap and spectacles. In the fifteenth-century painting of the Supreme Court at Malines (now in the Museum there) one of the clerks wears spectacles (Frédéricq, Les Ducs de Bourgoyne, &c., p. 184 note).

73. *So-ho*, the sportsman's cry on finding the hare in her form.

*Ib. No.* Wagner: 'Now.'

75. *away*, i.e. out or off.

82. *Where be they?* For the use of 'be' in questions where doubt is suggested see Abbott, § 299. Compare xii. 24.

83. *ostry*, inn or lodging (compare hostelry). In A Looking-Glass for London and England the term 'ostry-faggot' signifies a faggot in an inn.

91. *the Duke of Vanholt.* See Dramatis Personae.

93. *gentleman*, nobleman or prince. Compare x. 79.

## *Scene XII.*

Before this scene the quarto of 1616 inserts another, in which the Horse-courser merely repeats in a narrative form the excellent jest played upon him.—For Faustus' visit to the court of the 'Duke of Vanholt,' see Introduction, p. cxviii, and compare Widmann's narrative, Part ii. ch. 17 (Scheible's Kloster, ii. 615). For similar instances of magicians conjuring up fruit, dishes of food, &c., see Görres' notes (*ib.* 31; and compare *ib.* xi. 273); cf. also Ritter, *u. s.*, pp. 29–31. The best-known example is the exploit of Faust in Auerbach's cellar at Leipzig. For the conjuring up of spring with its blossoms and its enjoyments in the midst of winter, Ritter compares the doings of Albertus Magnus before the Emperor William of Holland in Tritheim, Chron. Monast. Hirs. sub ann. 1254.

4. *madam*, quarto of 1604 'Madame' (and so throughout the scene).

11. *meat*, food. See note to i. 161.

12. *that's nothing.* Compare x. 44.

14. *so*, provided that. Compare iii. 92.

15. *on them*, of them. See note to ii. 15.

18. *how.* This word, or the preceding '*that*,' is redundant to the construction, which is anacoluthic.

22. *Saba.* See note to v. 154.

24. *be they.* See note to xi. 82.

33. *beholding*, for beholden. Compare xiii. 15; and see Abbott, § 372, as to the use of the affix 'ing' as if equivalent to the old affix 'en' of the passive participle. For the converse use of 'known' for 'knowing' see xi. 51.—This line and the next are printed as verse in the quarto of 1604.

Digitized by Google

## *Scene XIII.*

In the quarto of 1616 the stage-direction runs as follows: 'Thunder and lightning. Enter Devils with covered dishes. Mephistophilis leads them into Faustus' study; then enter Wagner.' As to Faustus' will, see Introduction, p. cxxiii; and compare Widmann's narrative, Part iii. ch. 1 (Scheible's Kloster, ii. 646). Wagner's speech is printed as prose in the quarto of 1604.

2. *goods.* After this the quarto of 1616 adds:

> 'His house, his goods, and store of golden plate,
> Besides two thousand ducats ready coined.'

3. *methinketh.* I follow Wagner in reading thus for 'methinks,' for the sake of the metre.

*Ib. if that.* See note to x. 15.

5. *even now*, at this very moment. See Abbott, § 38.

8. *belike.* See note to i. 43.

There is no exit for Wagner in the quarto of 1604; nor do I know why he should be sent off the scene before the scholars, persons inferior to himself in university standing.

9. *conference.* Compare i. 66.

11. *we have determined with ourselves*, we have agreed with one another. The English language possessing no reciprocal pronouns, the simple personal pronoun, with or without the adjective 'self,' sufficed in A. S. to express reciprocity. This usage survived; so in the Authorized Version, St. Luke's Gospel, xxii. 23: 'And they began to enquire among themselves.'

*Ib. Helen.* See Dramatis Personae. For the summoning of Helen, compare Introduction, p. xciv; and, as to such summonings in general, compare notes to opening Chorus, line 25 and to x. 68. Moehsen (1771; see Scheible's Kloster, ii. 256) cites the account of 'an old Erfurt Chronicle' how the real Dr. Faust summoned 'the heroes of Homerus' before the students at Erfurt. This account is to all intents and purposes identical with that in chapter liii. of the Faustbuch of 1590 (Kühne, p. 140), of which the scene is laid at Erfurt. Moehsen adds that this exhibition of Faust's magic powers was the cause of Dr. Klinge, the Warden of the Franciscans, being sent to him in order to convert him.

10, 12. *beautifulest, admirablest.* See note on i. 160.

13. *that favour, as to*, such a favour as to. 'Such' being frequently used with 'which,' naturally 'that' was also used with 'as.' See Abbott, § 280.

14, 15. *whom . . . for majesty.* This line recurs below, l. 27. For the use of 'for' compare x. 4.

Digitized by Google

15. *beholding.* See note to xii. 33.

17–25. These lines are printed as prose in the quarto of 1604.

18. *For that.* See note to x. 15. The reference to the 'friendship' of the students is taken from the English History of Dr. Faustus. See Introduction, cxx; and cf. *ib.* lxxxviii, note 2.

22. *otherways*, or 'othergates' (Twelfth Night, v. 198), equivalent to 'otherwise,' which is the reading of the quarto of 1616.

*Ib. for.* Compare x. 4.

23. *Sir Paris.* 'Sir' is the chivalrous prefix of mediaeval romance; so Pistol in the Merry Wives of Windsor, i. 2. 83, speaks of 'Sir Pandarus of Troy,' and *ib.* ii. 1. 122, of 'Sir Actaeon.'

24. *the spoils.* Wagner understands 'the spoils' to refer to Helen herself; nor would this be impossible. Compare the use of 'trophe' in the sense of 'victim of Love' (as a translation of Boccaccio's name 'Filostrato,' explained by him to signify 'uomo vinto ed abbattuto da Amore') in the Prologue to Lydgate's Fall of Princes. But Paris, as is repeatedly indicated in the Iliad, robbed Menelaus not only of his wife, but also of other things that were his.

*Ib. Dardania*, Troy (properly the more ancient city on Mount Ida founded by Dardanus).

25. *Be silent . . . words*, a happy reminiscence of the Greek εὐφημεῖτε and Latin 'favete linguis,' the formulae pronounced before religious solemnities such as sacrifices. Apparitions, as the story of Tam o' Shanter teaches, will not always bear being spoken to. For the description of the apparition of Helen in the Faustbuch and the English History, see Introduction, pp. cxix–xxi.

27. *Whom . . . majesty.* See ll. 14, 15, above.

28. *pursu'd.* To 'pursue' is to follow with a desire to inflict punishment or vengeance, to prosecute; hence the legal term 'pursuer' used for 'prosecutor' in Scotland. Compare King Lear, ii. 1. 91:

> 'If it be true, all vengeance comes too short
> Which can pursue the offender.'

Hence 'to pursue' means to seek to inflict punishment or wreak vengeance for an offence, as in our passage, and in Measure for Measure, v. 1. 109:

> 'It imports no reason
> That with such vehemency he should pursue
> Faults proper to himself.'

30. *passeth all compare*, exceeds all comparison. Shakespeare frequently uses 'compare' for 'comparison'; so Romeo and Juliet, iii. 5. 238:

> 'That same tongue
> 'Which she hath praised him with above compare.'

See also Friar Bacon, i. 84. For this use of verbal infinitives ('nearly

Digitized by Google

all of French origin') as substantives see Abbott, § 451. So Marlowe, 1 Tamburlaine, iii. 2, uses 'arise' for 'rising'; Greene, Friar Bacon, i. 2, 'shine' for 'shining'; *ib.* vii. 2, 'repair' for 'arrival'; *ib.* x. 183, 'entertain' for 'entertainment'; *ib.* ix. 205, 'greets' for 'greetings'; and *ib.* xiv. 15, 'repents' for 'penances'; in Orlando Furioso, 'this bad agree' signifies 'this bad agreement'; in A Looking-Glass for London and England we have

'Venus in the brightness of her shine';

and

'to give attend [i.e. attendance] on Rasni's excellence';

and in Sir Clyomon and Sir Clamydes:

'The which propound [i.e. proposition] within my mind doth oftentimes resolve.'

32. *paragon*, model, example. The word is derived through the French from the Spanish 'paragon' or 'parangon,' which is explained from the common combination of the Spanish prepositions 'para' and 'con,' meaning 'compared with.' That however a derivation from the Greek (παρ' ἀγῶνα) was thought of, seems clear from the use of the word in the sense of a supremely excellent, or incomparable model; the English 'over-match' (compare Friar Bacon, i. 63) is evidently intended as an equivalent. So in A Looking-Glass for London and England:

'Come, lovely minion, paragon for fair,'

i.e. incomparable as to beauty.

*Enter an Old Man.* This stage-direction is not given in the quarto of 1604. The Old Man's speech is longer by five lines in the quarto of 1616. —For the Old Man's endeavour, as related in the English History, see Introduction, pp. cxxi. seqq.; and see AN OLD MAN in Dramatis Personae.

36. *Ah, Doctor Faustus.* See Mr. Fleay's comment in Appendix A, p. clxxi.

41, 42. *repentant ... filthiness*, heaviness repentant of, &c. Compare, as to the transposition, Abbott, § 419 a.

42. *vile.* The quarto of 1604 has 'vilde.' See note to i. 107.

50. *calls for.* The quarto of 1616 reads 'claims his.'

*Ib. roaring.* Compare 1 Epistle of St. Peter, v. 8.

51. *almost.* This word is wanting in the quartos of 1604 and 1609.

52. *now.* This word is likewise wanting in the first two quartos.

*Ib. to do thee right*, to pay thee thy due.

*Mephistophilis gives him a dagger.* Wagner doubts whether Marlowe himself 'could have resorted to the clumsy trick of letting Mephistophilis present a dagger to Faustus,' and thinks this passage merely 'a clumsy imitation' of that above, vi. 21–24. There is however a difference between the two situations (see note to vi. 21). It is worthy

Digitized by Google

of note that in Widmann (Part iii. c. 14) Mephistophilis prevents Faustus from the act of suicide, to which he in our text tempts him. Düntzer refers to several passages in the Acta Sanctorum, in which the Devil tempts to suicide those who have entered into a connexion with him. A novel and effective turn is given to the idea of this passage in Lenau's semi-dramatic poem Faust, where the hero actually commits suicide, but thereby delivers himself only the more surely into the clutches of the Devil.—In A Looking-Glass for London and England, the Evil Angel 'tempts' the Usurer, 'offering the knife and rope.'

54. *I see an angel hovers.* Wagner rightly explains 'an angel which hovers.' For this omission of the relative compare Friar Bacon, i. 17, and see Abbott, § 244.—Faustus has not been deserted by his Good Angel.

55. *a vial full of heavenly grace.* The idea is of course taken from that of Unction, especially Extreme Unction.

58, 59. *I feel Thy words to comfort.* 'Thy words' is joined to l. 59 in the quarto of 1604.—There is no reason for substituting 'do' for 'to,' as is suggested by Wagner, who considers the construction of the passage 'in every way irregular.' As to the frequent insertion of 'to' after verbs of perceiving, such as 'feel,' 'see,' 'hear,' see Abbott, § 349, who cites, among other passages, Twelfth Night, i. 5. 315–317:

'Methinks I feel this youth's perfections
. . . . . .
To creep in at mine eyes.'

61. *with heavy cheer*, in a heavy frame of mind. 'Cheer' properly means countenance (Fr. *chère*, O. Fr. *chière*, Spanish and Provençal *cara*, face, which is probably derived from the M. Lat. *cara*, Greek κάρα; another derivation has been suggested from Lat. *quadra*, square, table, in connexion with which may be compared Friar Bacon, i. 59:

'Her front is beauty's table').

Compare The Faerie Queene, i. 1. 2. 8:

'But of his cheere did seeme too solemne sad';

and the passages quoted by Trench from Wiclif's version of Genesis, iii. 19, 'In swoot of thi cheer thou schalt ete thi breed,' and *ib.* iv. 5, 'And Cayn was wroth greetli, and his cheer felde doun.'

62. *hopeless*, for the salvation of which there is no hope. Adjectives with the termination 'less' have both an active and a passive meaning; see Abbott, § 4. Compare note to l. 92 of this scene.

65. *grace*, the divine mercy, as above, l. 55.

69. *in piece-meal.* Compare 1 Tamburlaine, iv. 2:

'That may command thee piece-meal to be torn';

and again 2 Tamburlaine, iii. 5. 'Inchmeal' and 'limbmeal' (O. E.

Digitized by Google

limmæl-um, which shows the suffix to have been originally dative or instrumental) are likewise Shakespearean terms. The suffix 'meal' is the German 'mal' (time), as in 'einmal' (once).

74. *unfeignèd*, for 'unfeigning.' See note to x. 82.

75. *drift*, intention, desire (to repent). Compare 2 Tamburlaine, v. 2:

'The victories
Wherewith he hath so soon dismayed the world
Are greatest to discourage all thy drift.'

*Faustus stabs his arm*, &c. A stage-direction suggested by Dyce. See, as to Faustus' second contract with the Devil, Introduction, pp. cxxii–iii.

76. *age*, old man. 'Age,' says Autolycus, addressing the Old Shepherd (The Winter's Tale, v. 1. 787), 'thou hast lost thy labour.'

80. *I cannot touch his soul*. Compare Book of Job ii. 6 for the idea. There is a passage not altogether dissimilar to ours in The Witch of Edmonton, ii. 1 (Dyce's Ford, iii. 203).

82. *One thing, good servant*. Compare Introduction, p. cxxiii.

84. *have unto my paramour*. 'Unto' is here used, like 'to' (compare 'unto' for 'to' or 'into,' xiv. 107), to indicate apposition. See Abbott, § 109, where the Latin use of the dative with 'habere' is compared. Compare Friar Bacon, xii. 29.

85. *heavenly*. Compare opening Chorus, l. 6.

87. *These*. I see no reason for altering this reading of the quarto.

88. *keep*, preserve unbroken.

90. *twinkling*. As to the omission of the article see Introduction, p. xxv.

*Re-enter Helen*, according to the quarto of 1616, 'passing over the stage between two Cupids.'

91. *Was this the face that launch'd*, &c. This passage, taken together with ll. 21 seqq. above, and with the lines in 2 Tamburlaine, ii. 41,

'Helen, whose beauty summoned Greece to arms,
And drew a thousand ships to Tenedos,'

bears a very striking resemblance to the following lines in the old Taming of a Shrew (p. 169):

'O might I see the centre of my soul,
Whose sacred beauty hath enchanted me,
More fair than was the Grecian Helena
For whose sweet sake so many princes died,
That came with thousand ships to Tenedos.'

(Cf. Introduction, p. lxxxii, note 1.) See also the next note. Cf. Troilus and Cressida, ii. 2. 81–3:

'She is a pearl,
Whose price has launch'd above a thousand ships
And turn'd crown'd Kings to merchants.'

Digitized by Google

This beautiful passage, which Marlowe has nowhere equalled (perhaps the nearest approach is Tamburlaine's speech on Zenocrate in 1 Tamburlaine, v. 2), was no doubt originally suggested by the passage in the Iliad, iii. 156, where the old men of Troy, on seeing Helen appear in her beauty on the walls, declare her worth the war caused by her—a tribute to beauty of which the conception is extolled by Lessing in his Laocoon. The magic of Helen's name inspires Thomas Heywood, in The Faire Maide of the West, part ii. act i, to lines of a quality uncommon with him:

'Wee'l crown our hopes and wishes with more pomp
And sumptuous cost, then Priam did his son's
That night he bosom'd *Hellen*.'

More direct is the comparison with the outburst of Faust on beholding the real Helena (whom he had previously seen as a magical apparition), at the close of act ii. of part ii. of Goethe's tragedy; nor is it possible, in dwelling on this passage, to forget one of the noblest creations of modern English art, Sir F. Leighton's Helen on the Walls. The famous passage in Doctor Faustus is parodied, without very striking wit, in the speech beginning,

'Come from thy palace, beauteous Queen of Greece,'

in T. Randolph's The Conceited Pedlar (1630).

92. *the topless towers*, i.e. the towers which are not (over)topped by any others. The old Taming of a Shrew (p. 206) has 'toplesse Alpes.' Compare also Dido Queen of Carthage, iii. 3:

'And cut a passage through his topless hill';

and A Looking-Glass for London and England:

'Six hundred towers that topless touch the clouds.'

Mr. Bullen also compares Fletcher's Bonduca, iii. 2:

'Loud Fame calls ye,
Pitch'd on the topless Apennine.'

See also Greene's Menaphon (Works, ed. Grosart, vi. 62): 'like the glister of the Sunne vpon the toplesse Promontorie of *Sicilia*.' Marlowe is very fond of this suffix 'less,' which often has the force of 'not able to be' (see Abbott, § 446); so Dido Queen of Carthage, ii. 1, 'quenchless fire'; Edward II, i. 2, 'their timeless sepulchre'; and 2 Tamburlaine, v. 3, 'his timeless death,' i.e. of which time cannot destroy the memory; 1 Tamburlaine, v. 2, 'our expressless bann'd inflictions'; and *ib.* the 'resistless powers of the gods.' Compare also Greene's James IV, ii. 2:

''Tis foolish to bewail recureless things.'

93. *make me immortal with a kiss.* Compare Dido Queen of Carthage, iv. 4:

'For in his looks I see eternity,
And he'll make me immortal with a kiss.'

Digitized by Google

94. *Her lips suck forth my soul.* This is diluted in Greene's James IV, act iv:

> 'Methinks I see her blushing steal a kiss,
> Uniting both your souls by such a sweet,
> And you, my king, suck nectar from her lips.'

I dare not retain the reading 'suckes' of the quarto of 1604; although, as ought not to be overlooked, the same quarto twice a little further on (see notes to vv. 117 and 118 of this scene) suggests the same not uncommon use of a singular noun with a plural verb.

96. *is.* Quarto of 1604, 'be.'

97. *dross.* See note to i. 34.

100. *Menelaus.* This is the reading of the quarto of 1604; but I doubt whether Marlowe did not write 'Menelas.'

101. *wear thy colours on my plumèd crest.* This is quite in the way of the mediaeval versions of the tale of Troy; see for instance the tournaments in Lydgate's Troy-Booke.

102. *wound Achilles in the heel.* The death of Achilles by an arrow shot by Paris and directed by Apollo was an incident in the Aethiopis of Arctinus, reproduced by Ovid (Metamorphoses, x. 605) and mentioned by Horace and Vergil. That the arrow wounded the vulnerable heel of Achilles is related by Hyginus, but not stated by the Latin poets. In the Iliad (xxi. 166) Achilles is wounded in the right arm. See Preller, Griechische Mythologie, ii. 438 note.

107. *hapless Semele,* who perished in the flames in which Zeus had appeared to her in answer to her wish that he should come in his divine majesty.

109. *wanton Arethusa's azur'd arms.* Arethusa being nowhere mentioned as the beloved of the 'monarch of the sky,' whether the phrase be intended to signify Jove or Apollo, Wagner points out that Marlowe's mythology is at fault here, and even suggests a doubt whether there may be 'any corruption' in 'Arethusa.' It would be a sorry attempt to seek to spoil this lovely line by any crude conjecture. Van der Velde thinks that 'the monarch of the sky' means the sky itself, which is mirrored in the spring Arethusa and thus lends it an azure hue. Arethusa was a general name given by the Greeks to springs; and Marlowe may therefore be excused for using the name to signify 'water-nymph' in general. F. V. Hugo has not improved the probable meaning of the passage by translating 'the monarch of the sky' 'le roi des mers.'—If Marlowe was thinking of the reflexion of the sky, or of the character of Arethusa as a sea-nymph, the epithet 'azur'd' has a special significance here; compare The Tempest, v. 43:

> 'Twixt the green sea and the azured vault';

Digitized by Google

but the word may be merely used as an epithet of the veins of the skin; as in The Rape of Lucrece, 419; and in Friar Bacon, i. 83. Skelton in his 'Dyties Solacyons' addresses a lady as a 'Saphyre of Sadnes, enuayned wyth indy blew.' Compare in the same author's Magnyfycence, l. 1597,

'The streynes of her vaynes as asure inde blewe';

and 'azur'd silk' in Peele's Edward I, vi. 21. Shakespeare uses both the forms 'azure' and 'azured' as adjectives.

110. *none but thou shalt be my paramour.* I have followed Dyce in retaining the ungrammatical 'shalt' of the quartos.

*Enter the Old Man.* It does not seem to me absolutely necessary here to begin a new scene, as Dyce and Mr. Bullen suggest, though in the corresponding passage of the Faustbuch (ch. liv), the Old Man's repulse of the Devils occurs two days after Faustus's second contract with Mephistophiles.

114. *sift.* Wagner compares the Authorized Version of St. Luke's Gospel, xxii. 31: 'Satan hath desired to have you, that he may sift you as wheat.' The word here signifies to test or prove; Shakespeare employs it in the sense 'to examine closely,' as in Hamlet, ii. 2. 58: 'Well, we shall sift him.'

115. *furnace,* an allusion to the furnace from which Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego were delivered, Daniel, ch. iii. See also 1 Epistle of St. Peter, i. 7.

117. *Smile.* Quarto of 1604: 'smiles.'

118. *laugh.* Quarto of 1604: 'laughs.'

*Ib. state,* power. Compare opening Chorus, l. 4.

## *Scene XIV.*

This scene has been described (by Mr. Fleay) as the only dramatic death-bed scene which can be compared in horror to 2 Henry VI, iii. 3; something of its intensity may however be found in the morality of *Everyman,* in the passage where the hero, left alone, feels his end approaching: 'the time passeth'—'the day passeth, and is almost ago.' The scene has received important additions in the quarto of 1616, which Wagner has admitted into his text. They consist especially of an opening dialogue between Lucifer, Belzebub and Mephistophilis, and a passage in which the Good and the Evil Angel severally display before the eyes of Faustus the bliss of heaven and the horrors of hell. The latter passage, with a short preliminary dialogue between Faustus and Mephistophilis, is interpolated after the *exeunt* of the Scholars before l. 64.

Digitized by Google

3. *chamber-fellow.* It was long customary at the universities for two, if not more, students to occupy the same room together. See Masson's Life of Milton, i. 109. This seems to be the sense of 'college-mates' in Friar Bacon, xiii. 24.

4. *Now I die eternally.* Logeman interprets this as suggested by the phrase in the English History (ch. lviii), that Faustus was like a criminal, who 'fears every hour to die.'

5. *comes he not?* This is explained by l. 75 below.

7. *Belike.* See note on i. 43.

*Ib. is grown into,* has gradually fallen into. Cf. Tennyson's In Memoriam: 'And grow incorporate into thee.' Similarly, we say 'to grow faint.'

10. *surfeit,* a sickness of the stomach, properly an indigestion caused by excess of eating or drinking. 'Soft, sir,' says Tamburlaine to Bajazet (1 Tamburlaine, iv. 4), 'you must be dieted; too much eating will make you surfeit.' This was the common sickness of the grossly-feeding Elizabethan age. So, in Meres' Palladis Tamia, Greene is said to have 'died of a surfet taken at pickeld herrings and Rhenish wine.'

15, 16. These lines are printed as verse in the quarto of 1604.

17. *Ah, gentlemen,* &c. For the speech of Faustus compare Introduction, pp. cxxv–vii; and Widmann's version, part iii. ch. 16 (Scheible, Kloster, ii. 730).

19. *a student,* in University phrase, a resident.

31. *yea life and soul*— (quarto of 1604, 'yea life and soul'). As van der Velde observes, Mephistophilis prevents Faustus from finishing the sentence.

36. *cunning.* Compare opening Chorus, l. 20.

40. *bill.* See note on i. 20.

43. *Why did not,* &c. Compare Introduction, p. cxxvii.

50. *save.* This word is wanting in the quartos of 1604 and 1609.

54. *let us,* let us go. For this use of auxiliaries without the verb of motion see Abbott, § 405.

56, 57. *and what noise,* &c. Compare Introduction, p. cxxvii.

*The clock strikes eleven.* In the German popular play reprinted by Engel (p. 45), when the clock strikes eleven, a voice is heard: 'Fauste! Judicatus es!'—when it strikes twelve, a voice says: 'Fauste! Fauste! in aeternum damnatus es!' The English History, like the Faustbuch (see Introduction, p. cxxvi), compares the swift passing of time for Faustus, a month before his death, to the running-down of an 'hour-glass'; but does not introduce the clock. The ballad introduces the hour-glass in its place (*ibid.* p. cxxxi). (Cf. *ibid.* p. cxxxix, note 3.)

65. *Now hast . . . live.* Probably an incomplete line (compare note to vi. 87), which seems a preferable supposition to that of 'hour' being

Digitized by Google

a dissyllable here. (The instances cited in note to v. 63 are not analogous, as in the present passage the accent would lie on the inserted sound.)

67. *Stand still . . . heaven.* The corresponding passage in the English History is as follows: 'Ah that I could carry the heavens upon my shoulders, so that there were time at last to quit me of this everlasting damnation.' Logeman conjectures with much probability that this nonsensical passage is the result of a mistranslation of the word 'entbehren' in the Faustbuch by 'carry' = bear. (Cf. Introduction, p. cxxiv, note 2.)

69. *Nature's eye.* So Shakespeare frequently calls the sun 'heaven's eye'; and cf. Chaucer's Troylus and Cryseyde, II. cxx. 1–2:

'The dayes honour, and the heavenes eye,
The nyghtes foo, al this clepe I the sonne.'

70, 71. The quarto of 1604 divides:

'—or let this hour be but a year,
A month, a week, a natural day.'

71. *a natural day*, the common length of a day. Compare Richard III, i. 3. 213:

'God, I pray him,
That none of you may live your natural age,'

i. e. the ordinary length of a man's life.

73. *O lente, lente currite, noctis equi.* From Ovid's Amores, i. 13. 40:

'Clamares, "Lente currite, noctis equi";'

translated by Marlowe in his Ovid's Elegies. Faustus's wish is the exact converse of that of the King in Edward II, iv. 3. 33:

'Gallop apace, bright Phoebus, through the sky,
And dusky night, in rusty iron car,
Between you both shorten the time, I pray,
That I may see that most desired day'—

a passage which doubtless suggested to Shakespeare Juliet's

'Gallop apace, you fiery-footed steeds,' &c.

in Romeo and Juliet, iii. 2. 1. Marlowe occasionally indulges in Latin quotations; see e.g. his Edward II, i. 4. 13; iv. 6. 53–54; v. 4. 67.

74. *still*, constantly, unceasingly. Compare l. 110.

79. *naming of.* For the construction compare note to vii. 79.

80. *Yet will . . . Lucifer.* Though a characteristic feature of 'Marlowe's mighty line' is its masculine or one-syllable ending, yet he occasionally permits himself double endings (see the table of their proportionate numbers in Mr. Fleay's edition of Edward II, Introduction, p. 45), especially in proper names, in which he even uses triple endings. So in our passages; and in 1 Tamburlaine, i. 1:

'Your grace hath taken order by Theridamas';



Digitized by Google

Tamburlaine, i. 2:

'I must be pleased perforce. Wretched Zenócrate!'

*Ib.* ii. 8:

'Then thou for Parthia; they for Scythia and Média.'

*Ib.* ii. 4, there is a triple ending not in a proper name:

'Ah, marry am I; have you any suit to me?'

81, 82. *Where is it now . . . brows.* These two lines are printed as three in the quarto of 1604.

82. *ireful.* This adjective (which also occurs in the old interlude Calisto and Meliboea) is coined like 'fiendful' in the closing Chorus, line 5; and 'wreckful' in Dido Queen of Carthage, i. 2.

83. Compare Revelation vi. 16: 'And said to the mountains and rocks, Fall on us, and hide us from the face of him that sitteth on the throne, and from the wrath of the Lamb'; a passage which is itself a partial reminiscence of Hosea x. 8: 'And they shall say to the mountains, Cover us; and to the hills, Fall on us.' Perhaps also Ps. cxxxix. 7–12, may have been vaguely in the mind of the poet.—Oldham, in A Sunday-thought in Sickness (Works, iii. 177), evidently refers to this passage in Doctor Faustus.

84. *God.* Here the quarto of 1616 substitutes 'heaven.' See Introduction, p. cxxxvii, note 2.

85, 86. Printed as one line in the quarto of 1604.

86. *Then will I . . . earth.* Compare note on v. 77.

88. *nativity*, birth. Compare 1 Tamburlaine, iv. 2:

'Smile stars, that reigned at my nativity.'

Hence to 'cast a nativity' was to find out the position of the planets at the time of a person's birth.

91. *labouring clouds.* I have adopted Dyce's suggestion 'clouds' for 'cloud.' Milton has the phrase 'the labouring clouds' in his L'Allegro, 74 (cited by Wagner).

92. *you.* Dyce has suggested (though doubtfully, as 'it is certain that awkward changes of person are sometimes found in passages of our early poets') 'they' for 'you,' and 'their' for 'your' in the next line.

94. *So that*, provided that. Compare iii. 92. The quarto of 1616 reads: 'But let my soul mount and ascend.'

95–97. *Ah, half . . . on my soul.* These lines are printed as arranged by Dyce.

96–98. *O God . . . ransom'd me.* For these lines the quarto of 1616 substitutes the single line:

'O, if my soul must suffer for my sin.'

See Introduction, p. cxxxvii, note 2.

Digitized by Google

102. *limited*, fixed as a limit. So Comedy of Errors, i. 1. 151:

'I'll limit thee this day
To fix thy life to beneficial help.'

105. *Pythagoras' metempsychosis* (quarto of 1604, 'metemsucossis'). Pythagoras of Samos (born probably in the 43rd Olympiad—608–605—was regarded as the author of the doctrine of the transmigration of souls, which possibly he derived from Egypt, where it was an established dogma. As to Pythagoras as one of the fathers of magic, see Friar Bacon, ix. 30, and note.

107. *Unto*, into or to. Compare note to xiii. 84.

108, 109. Printed as one line in the quarto of 1604.

110. *still*, ever; as above, l. 74, and Friar Bacon, viii. 38. So 'the still-vexed Bermoothes' in The Tempest, i. 2. 229.

*The clock strikes twelve.* For what follows compare Introduction, pp. cxxviii–ix.

119. *let me breathe awhile.* This awfully realistic passage recalls a passage in The Debate of the Body and Soul, 411–416:

'An hundred develen on him dongen,
Ner and ther was he hent;
With hote speres thoruȝ was strongen,
And with oules al to-rent;
At ilke a dint the sparkles sprongen,
As of a brond that were for-brent.'

120. *Ugly hell, gape not.* For the epithet compare vi. 79. The representation of the mouth of hell was familiar to the old mysteries; and fire was often displayed in it. Goethe in his Faust has not omitted the opening of the jaws of hell (see in act v. of Part ii, the passage which, as Loepell says, recalls Dante's Inferno, canto viii).

121. *I'll burn my books*, of magic. Wagner refers to the passage in The Acts of the Apostles, xix. 19, where it is stated of the Ephesians, that 'many of them which used curious arts brought their books together, and burned them before all men.'

*Enter Chorus.* Before the entrance of the Chorus, there follows in the quarto of 1616 a short scene between the Scholars, on finding the mangled limbs of Faustus.—Goethe's Faust closes with a 'Chorus mysticus,' as Marlowe's ends with a Chorus uttering its solemn moral.

1, 2. *Cut is the branch . . . laurel-bough.* These lines are introduced as a comment on Marlowe's own death, in Mr. R. Horne's short but powerful drama The Death of Marlowe. Compare the closing lines of 2 Tamburlaine.



Digitized by Google

3. *sometime*, formerly. So in Dido Queen of Carthage, ii. 1:

'Sometime I was a Trojan, mighty Queen.'

'Sometimes' was similarly used; see Abbott, § 68 a.

5. *fiendful*. Compare note to l. 82.

6. *Only to wonder at*, i.e. to content themselves with wondering at, and not to essay in their own persons.

*Terminat hora . . . auctor opus* (quartos of 1604 and 1609, 'author'). The source of this line, which has an Ovidian sound, but does not occur in Ovid, remains undiscovered. It is also found at the end of The Distracted Emperor, an anonymous tragi-comedy printed for the first time in Mr. Bullen's Collection of Old Plays, and thought by Fleay to be the King Charlemagne referred to in Peele's Farewell (1589), and to be written by Dekker.

Digitized by Google

THE HONOURABLE HISTORY OF

# FRIAR BACON AND FRIAR BUNGAY.

## *Dramatis Personae.*

**King Henry the Third.** Of King Henry III (1216–1272) it may be noticed, in connexion with our play, that he was through life a warm friend and patron of the monks, and that his friendly bearing towards Friar Bacon is therefore quite in character. For the University of Oxford his reign is of signal importance; it is indeed the first reign from which any royal charter or other letter relating to the University has ever been produced. His name was accordingly commemorated as that 'bonae memoriae Henrici quondam regis Angliae' in the annual recitement of the benefactors of the University, referred to in a document of the year 1293. See Introduction to Anstey's Munimenta Academica. He is stated to have introduced large numbers of Parisian students into the University of Oxford, whose members in this reign are said to have at one time numbered 15,000, or, according to another altogether incredible account, 30,000. The turbulence of the students was very great; and together with the claims of the ecclesiastics gave rise to the most serious town-and-gown conflicts known in the history of the English Universities. Several visits of the King to Oxford are chronicled in Anthony Wood's History and Antiquities of the University, bk. i.—It may be added that Henry III's love of the chase (see xii. 82) is historical.

**Edward Prince of Wales,** his son. Edward (afterwards King Edward I) was born in 1239, and was married to Eleanor of Castile in 1254, sixteen years *before* he went on the crusade alluded to in our play (iv. 27; viii. 113). On this crusade he did *no* deeds before the walls of Damascus; but after landing at Acre remained there eighteen months; and in Lingard's words, 'an expedition to Nazareth, the capture of two small castles, and the surprise of a caravan, comprehend the whole of his military labours.' In the first scene of Peele's Famous Chronicle History of King Edward the First his exploits in Palestine are similarly overcoloured.—The story of Prince Edward's love for the

Digitized by Google

Fair Maid of Fressingfield, and of her preference for his envoy Lacy to himself, is doubtless a fiction invented by Greene. See Introduction, pp. cxlviii–ix.

**Emperor of Germany.** Frederick II (1212–1250), 'stupor mundi Fredericus,' the last Emperor of the Suabian house of Hohenstaufen, was of course quite innocent of any connexion with 'Hapsburg' (iv. 45). He was the brother-in-law of King Henry III, whose sister Isabel he married in 1235, without however coming in person to England. The friendly relations between the two houses ended with her death. The Emperor's patronage of a magician like Vandermast is not out of character; his age suspected him of far more serious deviations than this from the orthodoxy which he professed. As to the conjuring of Albertus Magnus before the Emperor (or, more properly, anti-King) William of Holland, who fell in 1256, see note to Doctor Faustus, sc. xi.

**King of Castile.** Ferdinand III, called the Holy, was King in Castile from 1217, and in Leon from 1230, to his death in 1252. This event occurred two years before his daughter's marriage in 1254; he was succeeded by his son Alphonsus X, called the Wise, afterwards one of the Emperors of the Interregnum.

**Lacy,** Earl of Lincoln ('of Lincolnshire,' vi. 19). The original of this character is Henry de Lacy, Earl of Lincoln, who, after being 'the closest counsellor' of Edward I, was one of the 'Ordainers' under his successor. (See Professor Tout's Edward I, English Men of Action series, p. 81.)

**Warren,** Earl of Sussex. I am not sure whether this is an altogether fictitious personage. Warenne was the family name and joint title of a famous Earl of *Surrey* in the reign of Edward I; the family name of the Earls of Sussex in the Tudor period was Ratcliffe, their creation dating from 1529.

**Ralph Simnell,** the King's Fool—not the Prince's, as Dyce points out, referring to vii. 130.

**Friar Bacon.** See Introduction, pp. xxxv. seqq.

**Miles,** Friar Bacon's poor scholar. This designation, which means a poor student attached to Friar Bacon as 'famulus' (see note on **Wagner** in Dramatis Personae of Doctor Faustus), is given to Miles in the stage-direction before scene ii. in the quarto of 1630. The English name Miles is said in Lower's Patronymia Britannica to be 'from "Milo," a most unusual personal name among the Normans; oftener perhaps a corruption of "Michael." In some rural districts "Michaelmas" is commonly called "Milemas."'

**Friar Bungay.** This character was taken by Greene from the Elizabethan story-book (see Introduction, pp. cl. seqq.). 'Bungy's

Digitized by Google

dog' (compare p. 114) is mentioned in Jonson's A Tale of a Tub, ii. 1. See also Sir John Harington to Henry Prince of Wales, 'concerninge his Dogge named Bungey,' in Nugae Antiquae, ed. Park, 1804, i. 390 seqq. The historical Friar Bungay, who derived his name from the place of his birth, was a distinguished member of the group of Franciscan schoolmen who studied and taught at Oxford in the thirteenth century (see Introduction, p. xxxvii). 'Frater Thomas Bongaye' is mentioned in the Registrum Fratrum Minorum as one of the Provincial Ministers of the Order in England, and as buried at Northampton. He incepted at Oxford, and lectured both there and at Cambridge; but in addition to the subjects of his teachings, he was so distinguished a mathematician as to incur, like Friar Bacon, the suspicion of the practice of magic. He is also called 'frater Johannes de Bungey.' See Brewer's Monumenta Franciscana; and cf. Bungay, Thomas, in Dictionary of National Biography, vii. 268.—It might be thought to be in remembrance of the name of Friar Bungay that 'S. mother Bungie' is mentioned by R. Scot in his Discourse of Divels (1584) as a popular witch's name; probably, however, this is only another form of 'mother Bombie,' made famous by Lyly.—Bungay is a well-known Suffolk local name, and harmonises with the other Suffolk places in our play (cf. Nash's Lenten Stuffe, Works, ed. Grosart, vii. 276: 'The floud Waueney running through many Townes of hie Suffolke vp to *Bungey*'). It is a part of the country full of monastic associations.

**Jacques Vandermast.** This foreign sorcerer, whose name is Dutch, is accordingly associated with the 'Belgic schools,' ix. 17; and he is described as a 'Germane' in the stage-direction of scene iv. in the quarto of 1630, and as 'a German of esteem,' vii. 15. This is not incorrect, as the Provinces of the Netherlands formed part of the Empire; but when Vandermast is said, iv. 45, to be 'brought from Hapsburg' (compare ix. 13), this is a mere confusion with later times, when the Emperors were of the house of Habsburg (compare above, note on **Emperor of Germany**). In his odd description of Wittenberg in the Unfortunate Traveller, Nash (Works, ed. Grosart, v. 18) introduces a 'bursten-belly inkhorne orator called *Vanderhulke*,' the author being apparently under the impression that Dutch, or some variety of Low-German, was talked at Wittenberg.—I have not succeeded in tracing any mention of a Dutch magician or scholar of this name; the interest excited by the art of magic and its professors in the Netherlands is however attested by the Dutch version of the Faust-legend, and by other evidence.

**Burden.** This 'Doctor of Oxford' is, ii. 173, called 'Master' of Brasenose. This is of course an anachronism, as Brasenose College (the title of whose Head has always been 'Principal') was not yet in existence. See note to ii. 12.

Digitized by Google

**Mason**; **Clement.** These are of course fictitious personages; the name of Clement may have possibly been suggested to Greene by that of John Clement, an Oxonian of repute in the earlier part of the sixteenth century (see Wood's Athenae, i. 401–402, ed. Bliss).

**Thomas** and **Richard** are clowns, i.e. simple rustics. (See note on **Clown** in Dramatis Personae of Doctor Faustus.)

**A Post**; i.e. a messenger, as constantly in Shakespeare.

**Elinor**, daughter to the King of Castile. Eleanor, daughter of Ferdinand III of Castile and Leon, married Edward Prince of Wales in 1254—the marriage being performed in Spain, according to custom, by proxy on the part of the bridegroom. This is the princess whose fair fame was so foully aspersed by Peele in his Chronicle History of Edward I, possibly on the authority of an old ballad supposed to have been written in the days of popular excitement against Spain in the reign of Philip and Mary. She died in 1290 (not 1291; see C. Wykeham-Martin's History and Description of Leeds Castle, which Edward settled upon Queen Eleanor), deeply lamented both by the people and the King, of whose enduring affection there is ample evidence, including the well-known statue on the Queen's tomb in Westminster Abbey, and the crosses, above all Charing (*Chère reine*) Cross, which he erected to her memory.

**Margaret**, the Keeper's daughter, the Fair Maid of Fressingfield. I cannot resist giving her this title, which is appended to her name in the stage-direction before scene iii. in the quarto of 1630. The heroine of Faire Em is similarly called in that play (sc. xvi, l. 1092) 'the fair maid of Manchester.'

**Hostess of the Bell at Henley.** Of this hostelry no traditions remain, while the Red Lion at Henley is famous as having inspired Shenstone with the reflexion, that through life he had found 'the warmest welcome at an inn.'

---

## *Scene I.*

2. *heaven's bright shine.* Compare note on Doctor Faustus, xiii. 30.

3. *Alate.* The prefix '*a*' in this word represents 'of'; see Abbott, § 24. So in King Lear, i. 4. 308, the quartos have, 'Methinks you are much alate i' the frown,'—where the folios read 'of late.' Compare A Looking-Glass for London and England: 'This is the day that I should pay you money that I took up of you alate in a commodity.'

Digitized by Google

3. *ran the deer.* The hunting phrases 'to run a fox into cover,' 'to run down a fox,' and 'a good run,' are familiar, as well as the expression 'to course a hare.' Compare the French *courir le cerf*; and the similar phrase to 'fly the partridge,' xii. 83.

*Ib. the lawnds.* 'Lawnd' or 'laund' is an old form of lawn, used by Chaucer and several of the Elizabethans. Compare Orlando Furioso:

'The shady lawnds
And thickest-shadow'd groves';

Dido Queen of Carthage, act i.:

'That they may trip more lightly o'er the lawnds';

and The Second Part of the Tritameron of Love (Greene's Works, ed. Grosart, iii. 123):

'A foot like Thetis, when she tript the lands
To steale Neptunus' fauor with her steps.'

The original sense of the word, according to Skeat, was 'a clear space in a wood, and it is probably the same word as lane (compare Dutch "laan," a lane, valley).' For the addition of the *d* to the root compare bands = bans, vi. 127.

4. *Stripp'd*, out-stripp'd. Cf. note to l. 144 infra.

*Ib. frolic* (German *fröhlich*), a favourite word in our play; compare below, 11, 113, &c. Herrick (Ode to Ben Jonson) has 'the frolick wine'; Milton (L'Allegro, 18), 'the frolic wind.' The verb 'to frolic' (l. 138 below) occurs in Spenser.

5. *teasers* (quarto of 1630, 'teisers'). The meaning of this word (which occurs again, ix. 180) is explained by a passage quoted by Dyce from Fuller's Holy State: 'But these *Teasers*, rather to rouze then pinch the game, only made Whitaker find his spirits. The fiercest *dog* is behind, even Bellarmine himself.' A. S. 'tæsan' signifies to pluck; the teazle is the *carduus fullonum*, a plant used to raise the nap on woollen cloth.

6. *Fressingfield.* The village of Fressingfield in Suffolk lies 4½ miles south of Harleston; the parish contains lands which anciently belonged partly to the De la Pole family, and partly to Bury Abbey and Eye Priory. Here (at Ufford Hall) Archbishop Sancroft was born; and hither he retired after sacrificing his see to scruples of conscience. He died at Fressingfield, to which he left munificent bequests; and was buried in the churchyard, where a monument is erected to his memory. See White's History, &c. of Suffolk.

7. *pull'd down*; still, I believe, used as here; while a bird is said to be 'brought down' by a gun.

*Ib. jolly mates*, companions.

Digitized by Google

9. *frankly*, liberally. Compare iii. 11.

*ib. dealt*, distributed. A.S. 'dǽlan,' to distribute; 'dǽl' (German Theil), a part; hence 'dole,' a share in a distribution, a distribution.

12. *a melancholy dump.* This is the reading of the quarto of 1655. The word 'dump' (which recurs iii. 30; v. 102, 104; vi. 66) was used both in the singular and (as it continues to be) in the plural to signify a low state of spirits, like the modern 'vapours' and the French 'vapeurs.' This word, which is connected with 'damp' and the German 'dumpf' (Grimm mentions a substantive 'Dumpf,' signifying a state of bodily indisposition), was the received term for a melancholy strain in music, and is used in this sense in Ralph Roister Doister, ii. 1:

'Then twang with our sonnets, and twang with our dumps,
And heigho from our heart, as heavy as lead-lumps.'

Cf. Peele's Arraignment of Paris, iii. 1. 179–80 (after a shepherd's funeral):

'*Venus.* How now, how cheers thy lovely boy, after this dump of love?

*Paris.* Such dumps, sweet lady, as bin these, are deadly dumps to prove.'

In his prose-writings Greene constantly uses the word in this sense; so in Arbasto the Anatomie of Fortune (Works, ed. Grosart, iii. 180): 'taking his lute, [he] plaied a dumpe, whereto we warbled out these words.' 'O musicians,' ironically says Peter in Romeo and Juliet, iv. 5, 103–105, 'because my heart itself plays "My heart is full of woe": O, play me some merry dump, to comfort me.' See Nares, i. 263, who recalls the title of a poem by Davies of Hereford, 'A Dump upon the Death of the most noble Henrie, Earl of Pembroke,' and who also cites from Day's Humour out of Breath (1608), a passage in which the word is used for an Italian dance. In Orlando Furioso Greene has the verbal form 'dumping.' Compare also the adjective 'dumpish' = melancholy in The Facrie Queene, iv. 2. 5, 7; and the verb 'undumpish' = to restore to good spirits, in Fuller's Worthies, ii. 312 (ed. 1811), cited by Halliwell: 'Our Tarlton was master of his Faculty, when Queen Elizabeth was serious (I dare not say sullen) and out of good humour, he could un-dumpish her at his pleasure.'

15. *Tossing off.* Perhaps the reading of the quarto of 1630, 'tossing of,' might be retained, the construction being as in Doctor Faustus, vii. 79. Compare the Shakespearian 'tosspot.'

16. *the country's sweet content*, the sweet feeling of content inspired by the country.

17. *the bonny damsel fill'd*, the bonny damsel who fill'd. See note to Doctor Faustus, xiii. 54.

Digitized by Google

18. *stammel red.* Stammel was a coarse kind of woollen cloth, of a red colour inferior to scarlet, used for petticoats; so in A Pleasant Comedie of Pasqvil and Katharine, ii. 1. 7: 'Mistress Smiffe . . . hath newly put on her stammel petticoate.' Apparently 'Brystow' (Bristol) 'red' was used in the same sense; see Skelton's Elynour Rumming, 70; where Dyce quotes from Barclay's Fourth Eglogue:

'London hath scarlet, and Bristowe pleasaunt red.'

Dyce believes that the words 'red' and 'stammel' were seldom used together, the former being the understood colour of the latter.

20. *passions*, trouble or excitement. See note to Doctor Faustus, xi. 42.

21. *Sirrah.* See note to Doctor Faustus, ii. 5.

22. *all amort*, properly 'alamort,' French 'à la mort,' dejected. So in The Taming of a Shrew, iv. 3. 36 (cited by Nares):

'How fares my Kate? what, sweeting, all amort?'

32. *my cap and my coat and my dagger.* Douce, On the Clowns and Fools of Shakespeare, in his Illustrations, ii. 317 seqq., thus describes the two kinds of costume worn by the domestic fool in Shakespeare's time: 'In the first of these the coat was motley or parti-coloured, and attached to the body by a girdle, with bells at the skirts and elbows, though not always. . . . A hood resembling a monk's cowl, which, at a very early period, it was certainly designed to imitate, covered the head entirely, and fell down over part of the breast and shoulders. It was sometimes decorated with asses' ears, or terminated in the neck and head of a cock, a fashion as old as the fourteenth century. It often had the comb or crest only of the animal, whence the term *cockscomb* or *coxcomb* was afterwards used to denote any silly upstart.' [Compare v. 51.] . . . 'In some old plays the fool's *dagger* is mentioned, perhaps the same instrument as was carried by the *Vice* or buffoon of the Moralities. . . . The dagger of the latter was made of a thin piece of lath; and the use he generally made of it was to belabour the Devil. It appears that in Queen Elizabeth's time the Archbishop of Canterbury's fool had a wooden dagger and coxcomb. . . . The other dress, and which seems to have been more common in the time of Shakespeare, was the long petticoat. This originally appertained to the idiot or natural fool. . . . It was, like the first, of various colours, the materials often costly, as of velvet, and guarded or fringed with yellow. See Prologue to Henry VIII; Marston's Malcontent, i. 7 and iii. 1.'

40. *lovely.* Dyce's correction, adopted by Grosart, for the 'lively' of the quartos.

*Ib. country-weeds*, rustic dress. The A. S. 'wǽd' signifies a garment (hence 'linwæd,' a linen garment; compare the German 'Leinwand'); the

Digitized by Google

word 'wede' is used in this sense by Chaucer; so in The Clerke's Tale, Pars V[a]:

'My lord, ye wole, that in my fadres place
Ye dide me stripe out of my poure wede,
And richely ye clad me of your grace';

and 'weede' by Spenser; so in The Shepheard's Calender, July, 168:

'Whilome all these were lowe and lief,
And loved their flocks to feede;
They never stroven to be chief,
And simple was theyr weede.'

The word is now, like its paronym weed (A. S. 'weód'), contracted in meaning: 'as respects the earth, those only are "weeds" which are noxious, or at least self-sown; as regards the person, we speak of no other "weeds" but the widow's.' (Trench, English Past and Present, 142.)

42. *none such*, no one like unto her (A. S. 'swilc'). Henry VIII's palace near Leatherhead was called 'Nonsuch.' Like its French equivalent, 'nonpareil' (cf. in A Looking-Glass for London and England: 'beauty nonpareil in excellence'), the word came to be used as a substantive.

48. *the abbot*. I cannot explain this jovial allusion.

51. *by his whole grammar*, viz. I warrant thee.

53, 54. *her sparkling . . . fire*. Compare Richard II, iii. 3. 68–70:

'Yet looks he like a king: behold, his eye
As bright as is the eagle's, lightens forth
Controlling majesty.'

'To lighten' is similarly used x. 142.

59. *Her front is beauty's table*. The 'front' is the forehead. For the singular 'table' in the sense of tablet (Latin 'tabula') compare 'the table of my memory' in Hamlet, i. 5. 98, and 'a writing-table' in St. Luke's Gospel, i. 63, where Tyndale has 'tables.' See also Ford's The Broken Heart, ii. 3:

'Time can never
On the white table of unguilty faith
Write counterfeit dishonour';

and the same poet's Love's Sacrifice, ii. 1: 'I will have my picture drawn most composituously in a square table of some two foot long'; where Dyce explains the word to mean 'the board or strained canvas, on which the picture was to be painted.' In the same play, iv. 2, the word is used very much as in our passage:

'Here was my fate engraven on thy brow,
This smooth, fair, polish'd table.'

Digitized by Google

In Menaphon's Eclogue in Greene's Menaphon,

'Her brows are pretty tables of conceit
Where love his record of delight doth quote,'

the word 'tables' means note-book. Compare note to Doctor Faustus, xiii. 61.

61. *margarites*, pearls (Greek μαργαρίτης, Latin 'margarita'). Compare A Looking-Glass for London and England:

'I'll fetch from Albia shelves of margarites';

and Orlando Furioso:

'Whose shores are sprinkled with rich orient pearl,
More bright of hue than were the margarites
That Caesar found in wealthy Albion.'

Dyce, who quotes the latter passage, notes a reference to the same tradition in Greene's prose-tract, Ciceronis Amor. Probably this word contributed to the choice of the French word for the daisy (*marguérite*), the flower celebrated by allegorising French and English poets, by Chaucer above all. Skelton, in his Garlande of Laurell, 947, addresses a lady of the name of Margaret (Tylney) as

'Of Margarite,
Perle orient,
Lede sterre of lyght,
Moche relucent';

but it is another lady, Mistress Isabell Pennell, whom he afterwards compares to 'the dasy flowre, the fresshest flowre of May.'

62. *cleeves*, cliffs; as again iv. 6. Compare Drayton's Poly-Olbion, xiii. 763:

'Rob Dover's neighbouring cleeves of sampyre.'

63. *beauty's overmatch*, the overmatch or superior of beauty herself. The word 'overmatch,' clearly a supposed translation of 'paragon' (see note to Doctor Faustus, xiii. 32), is used in the sense of a superior, xi. 113; cf. Menaphon (Greene's Works, ed. Grosart, vi. 81): 'Œnone's overmatch'; and Bacon's Essay of Greatnesse of Kingdomes and Estates: '*England* and *France*; whereof *England*, though far lesse in Territory and Population, hath been (neverthelesse) an Overmatch.' Shakespeare has 'overmatching' in the sense of superior in power, 3 Henry VI. i. 4. 21:

'And spend her strength with overmatching waves.'

Compare the similar compound 'countermatch,' ix. 266.

64. *her curious imagery*, the exquisite beauty of her image or appearance. 'Curious' means wrought with care; compare viii. 16, and 'the curious girdle of the ephod' in Exodus xxviii. 8.

Digitized by Google

67. *quainter*, more graceful. Compare iii. 82; in iii. 40 the word 'quaint' is used in its ordinary modern sense of odd, out of fashion. Trench, Select Glossary, p. 172, quotes several passages illustrating the old use of 'quaint' in the sense of 'elegant, graceful, skilful, subtle.' The following passage in Chaucer's Romaunt of the Rose, 2247–2255, illustrates the primitive meaning of the word = trim, which accords with its etymology (from Latin *cognitus*, although a derivation has also been suggested from *comptus* through O. Fr. *cointe*, O. Engl. *coint*, *quoint*):

'And he that loveth truely,
Should him conteine jollily,
Without pride in sundrie wise,
And him disguisen in queintise;
For queint array, without drede
Is nothing proude, who taketh hede;
For fresh array, as men may see,
Without pride may ofte bee.'

See also on this word Earle's Philology of the English Tongue, § 409.

68. *honour's taint*. 'Taint,' as Dyce observes, is equivalent to 'tint' (compare French *teint*, Latin *tinctus*). The verb 'to taint' is used in the sense of to touch, to imbue, in Melicertus' Eclogue in Greene's Menaphon:

'From forth the crystal heaven when she was made
The purity thereof did taint her brow';

and compare 3 Henry VI, iii. 1. 40:

'And Nero will be tainted with remorse.'

70. *the courts of love*. Compare 'Venus' courts,' viii. 85. In both passages the allusion is to the Courts of Love of the days of chivalry, in the literature of which their technicalities played so prominent a part. In the poem The Court of Love, probably misattributed to Chaucer, the poet speaks of himself as commanded 'the Court of Love to see,'

'Where Citherea goddesse was and queene.'

Tribunals called Courts of Love, in which questions of gallantry were decided, and the claims and arguments of the parties were put into verse by the poets, were instituted as early as 1180 both in Provence and in Picardy. See Warton's History of English Poetry, section iii. Elsewhere Warton mentions a publication of the year 1566, by the Protestant preacher and poet Thomas Brice, apparently a ballad, called 'The Court of Venus Moralised.' Of these Courts of Love the remembrance survives in the French romance-literature of the Grand Cyrus school, and in our dramatic literature; see Ben Jonson's The New Inn, iii. 2, where a Court of Love is held.

Digitized by Google

72. *the secret beauties of the maid.* Although Prince Edward is merely speaking of the domestic charms of the Maid of Fressingfield, this pleasing passage irresistibly recalls the beautiful lines in Spenser's Epithalamion, 195–198:

> 'But if ye saw that which no eyes can see,
> The inward beauties of her lively spright
> Garnisht with heavenly guifts of high degree,
> Much more then would ye wonder at that sight.'

73. *foolery*, empty pretence. So in The Shepheard's Calender, February, 111:

> 'But sike fancies weren foolerie,
> And broughten this Oake to this miserye.'

75. *Whenas*, when. Compare viii. 16; x. 100. For the superfluous addition of 'as' as a conjunctional suffix to words that are already conjunctions (whenas, whereas), see Abbott, §§ 116, 135.

77. *Into the milk-house went I with the maid.* With this pretty picture of the 'country Margaret' in her dairy, compare Sir Thomas Overbury's 'Character' of 'A faire and happy Milk-mayd': 'In milking a cow, and straining the teats through her fingers, it seems that so sweet a milk-presse makes the milk the whiter or sweeter; for never came *almond glove* or *aromatique oyntment* on her palm to taint it.'

79. *Pallas 'mongst her princely huswifery.* Pallas Athene was worshipped under the cognomen Ἐργάνη more especially as the patroness of the arts of spinning and weaving; and in Homer ἔργα Ἀθηναίης is a typical expression for female handiwork of supreme excellence, 'princely huswifery.'

81. *to run her cheese.* 'To run' is to force into a form. So Johnson quotes (from Cheyne): 'What is raised in the day, settles in the night; and its cold runs the thin juices into thick sizy substances.' Compare A. S. 'gerunnen' (German 'geronnen') = 'concretus, coagulatus.'

83. *Checkèd*, chequered. From Fr. *échec*, M. Lat. *scaccus*, plural *scacci*, the game of chess, derived from the Persian *schah* (the figure of the king in the game). The Court of Exchequer (*scaccarium*) took its name from the chequered table in the room where it met.

*Ib. with lines of asure.* Compare Doctor Faustus, xiii. 109.

*Ib. her*, the antecedent to 'that' in the following line.

84. *compare.* See note to Doctor Faustus, xiii. 30.

88. *Like Lucrece*, whom (to quote the Argument of Shakespeare's Rape of Lucrece) her husband Collatinus found, 'though it were late in the night, spinning among her maids.'

94. *already*, at once.

Digitized by Google

95. *an learn me that*, if thou learnest (teachest) me that. As to 'an' for 'if' see note to Doctor Faustus, v. 137. For the elliptical construction may perhaps be compared Richard II, i. 1. 59:

'Setting aside his high blood's royalty,
And let him be no kinsman to my liege,
I do defy him and I spit at him'—

where the 'let' is however of course an imperative.—Of the common confusion between the A.S. verbs 'lǽran' (German 'lehren'), to teach, and 'leornian' (German 'lernen'), to learn, an instance may be cited from The Chanon Yeman's Tale, 748:

'Thus was I ones lernèd of a clerk.'

98. *necromancer*. Quarto of 1630, 'nigromancer,' which is the usual spelling in this edition of our play, though the forms 'necromantia,' 'nicromanticke' (and 'negromanticke') also occur. See note on Doctor Faustus, opening Chorus, 25.

99. *costermongers*, properly costard (apple)-mongers or sellers.

103. *prince it out*, play the prince thoroughly. Compare Cymbeline, iii. 3. 85:

'Nature prompts them
In simple and low things to prince it much
Beyond the trick of others.'

Compare 'to lord it out,' v. 120; and 'to scold it out,' xiii. 48; and for other examples of this construction (as to which see Abbott, § 226), to 'lecture it,' ix. 16; to 'revel it,' v. 117; to 'stab it,' viii. 83; to 'frolick it,' xiii. 1. 'Out' is similarly used in the sense of 'thoroughly' or 'plainly,' ii. 18 and viii. 45. Compare the colloquialism 'out and out.'

110. *prease* (quarto of 1630, 'presse'), i. e. press, crowd. So constantly in our old writers; in Chaucer, Skelton, Edwards, and Spenser, as in the 'Good Counseil of Chaucer' beginning 'Fly fro the prease'; and in The Faerie Queene, iv. 4. 34:

'Into the thickest of that knightly prease
He thrust.'

In A Looking-Glass for London and England the verbal form 'to prease' occurs for 'to press':

'My prayers did prease before thy mercy-seat.'

In the same play we have the analogous form a 'mease' for a 'mess' of milk.

*Ib. for fear of the cutpurse*. The cutting of purses, which were worn hanging at the girdle, corresponded to the picking of pockets of later times. See the amusing scene in Jonson's Bartholomew Fair, iii. 1, where Squire Cokes is the victim of the cutpurse or 'pursecutter,'

Digitized by Google

Ezechiel Edgworth. Hence the term 'cutter' for a sharper or bully. Compare note on v. 19.

111. *swap*, sweep or clap.

*Ib. plackerd* or placket, pocket.

121. *For why*, because. Compare vi. 114, and Peele's Edward I, xxii. 250:

'And henceforth see you call it Charing-Cross;
For why the chariest and the choicest queen
That ever did delight my royal eyes,
There dwells in darkness whilst I die in grief.'

Compare the use of 'for' in the sense of 'because,' vii. 63; x. 153; xii. 59; and of the emphatic 'for because,' as to which see Abbott, § 151.

122. *stands so much upon her honest points.* Compare A Midsummer Night's Dream, v. 118 (in a double sense): 'this fellow doth not stand upon points'; and 3 Henry VI, iv. 7. 58:

'Why, brother, stand you therefore on nice points?'

Compare the familiar use of 'insist.'

127. *horse us*, put ourselves on horseback. An example of the old reflexive use of the personal pronoun, which the addition of 'self' only rendered more emphatic. Compare 'commends him,' below, 148; 'resolve you,' ii. 46; 'content thee,' ix. 248; 'counsel me,' x. 75.

128. *post*, hasten (compare l. 167). See note on ii. 149.

135. *policy*, stratagem. So 1 Henry VI, iii. 3. 12:

'Search not thy wit for secret policies.'

One of the Seven Deadly Sins of London in Dekker's tract is 'Politike Bankruptisme,' i.e. feigned or pretended bankruptcy. Compare the use, still obtaining, of 'politic.'

136. *thou know'st . . . Saint James.* For the argument drawn by Mr. Fleay from this passage for the date of the play see Introd., p. cxlvii, and his Appendix B, *ante*, pp. clxxii–iii.

137. *Harleston fair.* Harleston is a small market-town, 4½ miles from Fressingfield. A fair is held there on July 5th; but St. James's day is the 25th of that month.

140. *That come . . . that day.* A reminiscence of Ovid, Ars Am., i. 99:

'Spectatum veniunt, veniunt, spectentur ut ipsae.'

Compare Faire Em. sc. v. (l. 411):

'Two gentlemen . . . . . .
Ofttimes resort to see and to be seen,
Walking the street before my father's door.'

141. *Haunt thee.* The word 'to haunt' is here, ii. 107 and xi. 131, used intransitively; compare also Othello, i. 1. 96; its French original, 'hanter,' is said to be of Norse origin (O.N. 'heimta,' to fetch home), and



Digitized by Google

to have been introduced into French by the Normans. Wagner also compares the use of the German 'hantiren' (v. intr., to carry on a trade), and refers to Grimm's Wörterbuch, *s. v.*—For this use of the datives me, thee, &c., see Abbott, § 220, and compare especially such passages as 1 Henry IV, ii. 4. 223: 'I made me no more ado,' and *ib.* 240: 'I followed me close.' See for the use in A. S., March's Anglo-Saxon Grammar, 150.

142. *not far from thence*, a native of the neighbourhood.

143. *Espy*, spy. Compare Titus Andronicus, ii. 3. 48:

'Now question me no more; we are espied.'

Compare state and estate, strange and estrange, special and especial, &c.

*Ib. who.* As to this common use of 'who' for 'whom' compare x. 56; and see Abbott, § 274.

144. *Cote him.* Dyce, followed by Grosart, explains this to mean 'keep alongside of him; French "côtoyer."' There is really no difference between the meaning of the word and that of 'coast' in Doctor Faustus, vii. 6. By an easy modification 'cote' is used to signify 'pass'; see Hamlet, ii. 2. 306: 'we coted them on the way'; and compare Part ii. of The Returne from Pernassus, ii. 108 (a passage in which a good deal of 'sport is made with hunters' terms'): 'presently coted and outstripped them,' viz. the other members of the hunt. According to note iii. to Old Mortality, vol. ii. chap. viii. (x. 131 in edition of 1830), Claverhouse's charger 'was so fleet, and its rider so expert, that they are said to have outstripped and *coted*, or turned, a hare upon the Bran-Law, near the head of Moffat Water,' where the descent is extremely precipitous.—In Ford's Perkin Warbeck, i. 2, the verb 'to side' is used in the sense of 'to keep pace with.'

148. *Commends him.* See note to l. 127 above.

154. *send how she fares*, send word how she fares. Compare a similar ellipsis in Antony and Cleopatra, v. 2. 29:

'I am his fortune's vassal, and I send him
The greatness he has got';

i.e. I send him an acknowledgement of the greatness he has got.

157. *As if that.* See note to Doctor Faustus, x. 15.

158. *of the news*, concerning the news. See note to Doctor Faustus, vi. 34.

160. *million.* See note to Doctor Faustus, ii. 24. Shakespeare always uses this word, when without an article, in the plural.

165. *morris-dancer*, Dyce's conjecture for 'morris-dance.' The morris-dance, frequently introduced into our old dramas (so in The Two Noble Kinsmen, iii. 5, in Nash's Summer's Last Will and Testament, in Dekker and Ford's The Sun's Darling, ii. 1, and in the Witch of Edmonton, iii. 4) or mentioned in them, is sometimes called a Morisco.

Digitized by Google

The morris-dance is twice noticed in the satire Friar Bakon's Prophesie. The name is probably derived from its having been an imitation of a Moorish dance; but its origin has also been thought traceable to the Salic dance, said to have been instituted by the King of Veii Morrius, a name pointing to Mars, whose priests the Salii were. The morris-dance was specially performed on May-day; compare 'a morris for May-day,' All's Well that Ends Well, ii. 2. 25. See Professor Skeat's note in his edition of The Two Noble Kinsmen. Douce in his observations On the Ancient English Morris Dance in Illustrations of Shakspeare, ii. 431 seqq. (where see a Flemish print), cites 2 Henry VI, iii. 1. 364-65:

'I have seen
Him caper upright like a wild Morisco,
Shaking the bloody darts, as he his bells,'

and notes that 'the bells have always been a part of the furniture of the more active characters in the morris, and the use of them is of great antiquity. The tinkling ornaments of the feet among the Jewish women are reprobated in Isaiah iii. 16, 18. . . . There is good reason for believing that the morris bells were borrowed from the genuine Moorish dance. . . . The numbers of bells round the leg of the morris dancers amounted from twenty to forty. . . . The bells were occasionally jingled by the hands, or placed on the arms and wrists of the parties.' Hence the Fool (163) offers to 'tie a bell about' the Prince. Compare as to the bells in the morris-dance the passage cited above from The Witch of Edmonton, and *ib.* ii. 1.

169. *Mayst*, a zeugma for may.

170. *your honour*. For this address compare viii. 19, and see note to Doctor Faustus, x. 45.

*Ib. your heart's desire*. Query 'all your heart's desire' (Dyce). Mr. Fleay would prefer to scan the second 'your' as a dissyllable.

## *Scene II.*

With the merry foolery of Miles in this and subsequent scenes compare that of Slipper in James the Fourth, and of Adam in A Looking-Glass for London and England.

3. *nostros*. This reading was adopted in a previous edition in deference to Mr. Fleay's conjecture that the reading of the quartos 'nos' arose from an ignoring of the sign of contraction in nŏs = nostros. But there is no evidence that Greene used this sign, or that its use was Elizabethan; and 'nostros' + 'meos' is meaninglessly redundant. The passage is doubtless corrupt; and no quite satisfactory conjecture has been suggested.



Digitized by Google

5. *Ecce quam bonum . . . in unum.* A parody of the first verse of Psalm cxxxiii.

6. *our academic state*, the University, a corporate self-governing community. Below, v. 94, 'college-state' seems to mean the estate or property of the college.

11. *stall'd*, installed, established. Compare Richard III, i. 3. 206:

'Deck'd in thy rights as thou art stall'd in mine.'

*Ib. Brasen-nose* (quarto of 1655: 'Brazednose'). The King's Hall and College of Brasenose was founded in 1509, by the joint benefaction of William Smith, Bishop of Lincoln, and Sir Richard Sutton, Knt., of Prestbury, in Cheshire, for a Principal and twelve Fellows (Calendar of the University of Oxford). In 1508 Sutton had obtained from University College a lease of 'Brasen Nose Hall' and Little University Hall, on the expiration of which 'Brasen Nose' obtained the freehold. Five other halls were afterwards added. 'Brasen Nose Hall, which gave that singular name to the College, is of great antiquity. In the thirteenth century it was known by the same name, which was unquestionably owing to the circumstance of a nose of brass affixed to the gate. The names of others of the ancient halls were derived from circumstances equally trivial.' See Chalmers' History of the University of Oxford, i. 238-239, where is also cited from Wood's Annals the notice of a building at Stamford 'called Brazenose to this day,' which has 'a great gate, and a wicket, upon which wicket is a face or head of old cast brass, with a ring through the nose thereof.' The following is an extract from Miles Windsore's notes copied in Hearne's Diary (MSS. Bodleian), vol. cxxxii. p. 73:

'Coll. Aeneae Nasi antiquitus vocatum Aula philosophorum in vico Scholarium et Universitatis Aula etiam regia.

'Vocat me hic frequens quaerentium percunctatio de nomine loci hujus antiquiori, ut aliquid respondeam: quibus ita satisfactum vellem Polydori verbis Anglicanae historiae lib. 26°. Guil. Smyth episcopus Lyncolniensis Margaritae exemplo ductus, Oxonii eorum adolescentium qui bonis disciplinis dediti se in literis exercerent, Collegium collocavit in aula quam vulgo vocant Brasnose hoc est aeneum nasum: quod eo loci imago aenea facie admodum . . . . pro foribus extet.'

It seems probable that the name of the old 'Brasin' (i.e. Brewing; compare French 'brassin,' a tun for beer) 'House' (cf. the spelling 'Braison-nose,' see note on v. 41 infra), which was transferred first to the Hall and then to the College, was changed into 'Brazen-nose' in consequence of the nose of brass over the gate. For the notoriety of this cf. Beaumont and Fletcher's Philaster, v. 4:

'I'll have his nose, and at mine own charge build
A college, and clap it upon the gate.'

Digitized by Google

Very possibly the tradition of Friar Bacon's Brazen Head, by reason of his supposed connexion with the place, helped to confirm the mistaken spelling. Compare Introduction, p. xxxviii. Perhaps the most extraordinary accumulation of incorrect information is that furnished by Frederick Gerschow, the author of the Diary of Philip Julius, Duke of Stettin (Pomerania-Wolgast), according to whom the college 'aenei vel ignei nasi' was founded by a celebrated necromancer called William Scheid, who became a bishop, and who by his art caused the nose over the gate of the college to speak and emit flames (see the Diary, edited by G. von Bülow and W. Powell, in the Transactions of the Royal Historical Society, 1892).

13. *that*, for 'that which.' See Abbott, § 244.

*Ib. suspect*, suspected. As to the omission of the participial suffix *-ed* in some verbs ending in *-te*, *-t*, and *-d*, see Abbott, § 342. Among his examples are 'deject' for 'dejected,' Hamlet, iii. 1. 163; and 'infect' for 'infected,' Troilus and Cressida, i. 3. 187.

15. *pyromancy*. Cf. Thomas Heywood's Hierarchy of the Blessed Angels, note to bk. viii: 'To these spirits of the fire is ascribed that divination by Pyromancie, which some call *Puroscopan*. In which superstition old pitch was cast into the fire, with the invocation of certain of these Spirits.' This and numerous other '*species* in *Magia*' are explained to Wagner by his familiar spirit Auerhan in a passage in the Life of Christoph Wagner referred to above in note to Doctor Faustus, opening Chorus, 25. They are likewise defined in a treatise On the Species of Ceremonial-Magic, called 'Goetie,' by 'Georg Pictor of Villingen, Dr. Med.' (see Scheible, Kloster, iii. 615–626), and are combined into an Aristophanic polysyllable in Tomkis's Albumazar, ii. 3:

> 'Now then, declining from Theourgia,
> Artenosoria Pharmacia rejecting,
> Necro-puro-geo-hydro-cheiro-coscinomancy,
> With other vain and superstitious sciences,' &c.

'Pyromancy' is explained by Pictor as 'prophesying from fire. The wife of Cicero is said, when after performing sacrifice she saw a flame suddenly leap forth from the ashes, to have prophesied the consulship to her husband for the same year. Others prophesied from the light of a torch of pitch, which was painted with certain colours. When the flame ran together into a point, the prophecy was altogether good; when it was divided, bad; when it mounted up three-tongued, it announced glory; when it divided itself into several directions, it signified death to the sick and sickness to one in health; if it nearly went out, it signified danger; if it hissed, misfortune.'

16. *hydromancy*. The quarto of 1630 has 'thadromaticke'; but I

Digitized by Google

think the word may safely be read 'hydromancy.' Below, 147, where Dyce prints 'necromatic,' the same quarto has 'nicromanticke.'—Of 'hydromancy' Auerhan states: 'In this you conjure the spirits into water; there they are constrained to show themselves, as Marcus Varro testifieth, when he writeth, how he had seen a boy in the water, who announced to him in a hundred and fifty verses the issue of the Mithridatic War. Numa Pompilius likewise had a peculiar way by which he could learn coming events.'—As to Numa Pompilius and his hydromancy, see the curious passage in St. Augustine, De Civitate Dei, Bk. vii. c. xxxv. The ancient Italians, says Professor Seeley (in the Introduction to his edition of Livy), attributed to the deities of streams and fountains (*lymphae*) an influence over the mind, a power of producing both inspiration and insanity. Hence the words 'lymphatus' and 'lymphaticus.' Of these deities the most widely known in Latium were Juturna and Egeria. Egeria was one of the Camenae (or in the older forms Casmenae, Carmenae), Italian water-deities to whom such powers were attributed; and the Muses of the Greeks were likewise originally water-nymphs.

17. *aeromancy*, prophecy from the air. According to Pictor, 'if the wind blew from the east, it signified good fortune; if from the west, evil; calamity, from the south; disclosure of what was secret, from the north; if the wind blew from all quarters at the same time, it signified storm, hail and violent rain.'

18. *To plain out*, to explain, answer clearly. See note on i. 103. Shakespeare uses the verb 'to plain,' Pericles, Prologue to act iii. line 14:

'What's dumb in show I'll plain with speech.'

*Ib. as Apollo did.* This appears to refer to the answering of questions in general, rather than to aeromancy. Compare v. 86. The earliest Greek oracle, that of Zeus at Dodona, has been well said to have been originally a meteorological observatory; the Delphic method was a different one.

20, 21. *by rehearsing of these names.* As to this construction, see note to Doctor Faustus, vii. 79; and compare l. 25 below.

21. *the fable of the Fox and the Grapes.* This fable, which is n°. v, and (slightly altered) n°. clxx, in Furia's edition of the Fables of Aesop, is there said not to be in the Planudine edition, but to be reproduced by both Phaedrus and Babrias. It occurs in Roger L'Estrange's collection of Fables of Aesop and other eminent Mythologists, and is n°. xxxiii. in La Fontaine's Fables, beginning:

'Certain renard gascon, d'autres disent normand.'

25. *a brazen head.* See Introduction, pp. xlii, seqq.

26. *aphorisms.* See note to Doctor Faustus, i. 19.

Digitized by Google

30. *To compass England with a wall of brass.* See Introduction, p. xxi.; and compare Doctor Faustus, i. 86.

34. *Mother Waters' strong ale.* I cannot identify this worthy; perhaps she was a kinswoman of 'S. mother Still,' mentioned by Reginald Scot.

35. *Copper nose.* In the story-book Miles calls the Brazen Head 'Copper-Nose.' In Troilus and Cressida, i. 2. 114, Cressid, in answer to the statement of Pandarus that Helen had praised the complexion of Troilus above Paris, says, 'I had as lief Helen's tongue had commended Troilus for a copper nose.' 'Copper face' and 'Nose Almighty' were nicknames given to Oliver Cromwell, the former perhaps with an allusion to his brewery.—Compare note to v. 42.

38. *suppos'd*, held, regarded as. Compare 1 Henry VI, v. 3. 110:

> 'Say, gentle princess, would you not suppose
> Your bondage happy, to be made a queen?'

39. *cunning.* See note to Doctor Faustus, opening Chorus, 20.

43. *Etérnize.* See note to Doctor Faustus, i. 15.

46. *Resolve you*, satisfy yourselves, be assured. Compare note to i. 127; and note to Doctor Faustus, i. 78.

47. *Make storming Boreas thunder from his cave.* The 'cave of Boreas' is the rocky island of Aeolus, the father of the winds, described in the beginning of Book X of the Odyssey.

48. *dim fair Luna to a dark eclipse.* Compare xi. 14–15, and see note to Doctor Faustus, iii. 38.

51. *pentageron.* The pentagramma, pentageron or pentalpha is the mystic figure 'produced by prolonging the sides of a regular pentagon till they intersect one another. It can be drawn without a break in the drawing, and viewed from five sides exhibits the form of the A (pentalpha). This star-pentagon, according to Lucian, served the Pythagoreans as a salutation and symbol of health (ὑγίεια); afterwards it became a favourite tavern-sign and ale-mark. . . . In German mythology this sign was regarded as the footprint of swan-footed "Nornen" and beneficent "Druden," till Christian notions changed these beings into evil spirits and witches. Henceforth the *Drudenfuss*, the Pentagramma in question, was by the side of the sign of the Cross placed at the door to avert "Druden" and witches.' (From Loeper's note to the passage in Goethe's Faust, where the sight of the pentagramma prevents Mephistopheles from walking out of the room.)—In a letter of Cornelius Agrippa (see Morley's Life, i. 245) the 'pentagram in Matthew' is spoken of, apparently (according to Morley's reference to ch. iii.) referring to the visible figure of the Holy Spirit descending from the heavens.

54. *necromancy.* See note on Doctor Faustus, opening Chorus, l. 25.

*Ib. to the deep*, to the bottom or dregs.

56. *Belcephon* (ix. 143 accentuated Bélcephon), a name, as Mr. Fleay

Digitized by Google

reminds me, no doubt suggested by the Baalzephon of Exodus xiv. 2, and Numbers xxxiii. 7.

59. *that*, for 'so that.' See Abbott, § 283.

62. *The work that Ninus reared at Babylon.* The gates of Ninus are mentioned by Herodotus, iii. 155. But the reference here and in the next line, and again iv. 3–4, is to the walls, of which Herodotus, i. 184, speaks as built by the Assyrian rulers of Babylon, Semiramis among the number, and which Ovid (Metam. iv. 58) calls 'coctiles,' of brick. Compare Chaucer's Legende of Goode Women, Leg. of Tisbe of Babilon, 1–4:

> 'At Babiloyne . . .
> The whiche toune the queene Simyramus
> Leet dichen al about, and walles make
> Ful hye, of harde tiles wel ybake';

and Gower's Confessio Amantis, bk. iii:

> 'I rede a tale, and telleth this,
> The citee, which Semiramis
> Enclosed hath with wall about.'

64. *the portal of the sun*, perhaps with a reference to the description of the palace of Phoebus and its silver gates in Ov. Metam. ii. 1 seqq.

65. *rings*, encircles. Compare iv. 2.

66. *Rye*, connected with the history of the English drama as the birthplace of Fletcher, is now one of the 'dead cities' of Kent, which in the Elizabethan age were still struggling against their inevitable doom of insignificance.

73. *mathematic rules*: compare iv. 53. 'Both ancient Greek and mediaeval thinking,' writes Professor Adamson, 'almost always included astronomy, harmony and optics. Aristotle expressly classifies these under mathematics, and the later writers copied him.' Manifestly, in our and similar passages 'mathematics' merely signifies astrology. See in the English History of Doctor Faustus (Introduction, p. xcviii): 'he named himself an astrologian and a mathematician'; and *ib.*, p. cvii, where the word 'mathematics' is used as equivalent to 'mathematician'; and compare Confessio Amantis, bk. vii:

> 'Mathematique above the erth
> Of high science above the ferth,
> Which speketh upon astronomie
> And techeth of the sterres high,
> Beginning upward fro the mone';

and Peele's The Honour of the Garter, Ad Maecenatem Prologus:

> '. . . Mathesis . . .
> That admirable mathematic skill,
> Familiar with the stars and zodiac,
> To whom the heaven lies open as her book.'

Digitized by Google

Already the Egyptian astrologers were generally called 'mathematici' by the Greeks. See Maury, La Magie et l'Astrologie, &c., 63.

76. *roves a bow beyond his reach*, tries to shoot with a bow beyond his strength, promises more than he can perform. For this use of 'to rove' in the sense of shooting an arrow with an elevation, see the instances quoted in Nares.

79. *in state of schools*, in the honours the schools can give. In modern phrase: have I not taken as good a degree as he?

83. *This is a fable Aesop had forgot.* Burden is thinking of Miles's reference to a fable supposed to be Aesopic, l. 21 above.

88. *what thou can*, whatever thou mayest be able to ask. 'Can' is the subjunctive.

89. *pick-pack*, explained in Nares as 'the older form of pick-a-back, i.e. carried like a pack over the shoulders.' Miles means: 'he'll be upon you,' or 'at you, at once.'

90. *whether the feminine ... be most worthy.* This notable distinction is still to be found in at least one well-known modern Latin grammar.

95. *What book studied you thereon*, in what book did you study. Compare l. 152, and xi. 16; and Hamlet, iii. 1. 44: 'Read on this book.' See Abbott, § 180; and compare for the use of 'on' for 'in' xi. 42, and for that of 'in' for 'on' Doctor Faustus, opening Chorus, l. 19.

100. *I pass not of*, I care not for. Compare Alphonso King of Arragon, act i:

> 'Whoe'er it be, I do not pass a pin';

and Ford's Love's Sacrifice, i. 1:

> 'If, when I should choose,
> Beauty and virtue were the fee propos'd,
> I should not pass for parentage.'

For the use of 'of' in the sense of 'concerning' see note to Doctor Faustus, vi. 34.

105. *for that.* See note to Doctor Faustus, x. 15.

106. *cabalism*, secret art. Compare ix. 29: 'the cabalists that write of magic spells.' The word 'cabal' is from the Hebrew Rabbinical term 'Kabbalâ' (from the Chaldaean 'kabbêl,' to receive), properly meaning the mysterious interpretation of the Old Testament; hence any mysterious or secret doctrine in general; then any secret league, combination, conspiracy or intrigue. On the connexion between the Cabbalah and the religious and the general philosophy, as well as the notions as to magic of the Middle Ages, see Ennemoser's History of Magic (Howitt's Translation), i. 7 seqq., where it is pointed out that the philosophy of Agrippa, Paracelsus, van Helmont, and others closely resembles the Jewish teachings; and that in the Cabbalah are to be found the principal outlines of the later magic, and more especially of

Digitized by Google

witchcraft, which is perfectly represented there. See also for an account of the Cabbalah and the literature of Cabbalism, Morley's Life of Agrippa, i. 69 seqq. Among the Christian writers on Cabbalism the foremost place belongs to Reuchlin, of whose labours the best account will be found in L. Geiger's biography. The term 'Talmud skill' is used as a synonym for Cabbalism in Jonson's The Alchemist, iv. 3.

107. *haunts to Henley.* See note on i. 141. For this use of 'to' without any sense of motion compare Marlowe's Edward II, ii. 1, 'smelling to a nosegay all the day'; and see Abbott, § 188.

108. *for to*, to. Miss Lee (New Shakspere Society's Transactions, 1875–6, p. 242) points out that Greene uses 'for to' eight times in our play. See as to the probable origin of the phrase Abbott, § 152.

109. *alchemy*, the Arabic *al-Kîmiâ*, a word formed with the Arabic article 'al' from the Greek χημεία, which is derived from Χημία, the land of Cham or Ham, a name for Egypt. Thus, notwithstanding the spelling always adopted by Agrippa, viz. 'ars alcumistica,' 'chemistry' is the right spelling, not 'chymistry,' which implies a derivation from χυμός, sap (χύω). 'It was not,' says Trench, English Past and Present, 193, 'with the distillation of herbs, but with the amalgamation of metals, that the chemic art occupied itself at its rise.'

110. *To multiply*, i.e. to multiply gold. Compare All's Well that Ends Well, v. 3. 101–104:

> 'Plutus himself,
> That knows the tinct and multiplying medicine,
> Hath not in nature's mystery more science,
> Than I have in this ring.'

The 'multiplying medicine' of the alchemists was the tincture with which they professed to have the power of making gold. Compare Antony and Cleopatra, i. 5. 36–37:

> 'That great medicine hath
> With his tinct gilded thee';

and see Sir Epicure Mammon's description of the effects of this secret liquid in Jonson's The Alchemist, ii. 1:

> 'When you see th' effects of the Great Medicine
> Of which one part projected in a hundred
> Of Mercury, or Venus, or the Moon,
> Shall turn it to as many of the Sun,
> Nay to a hundred, so *ad infinitum*,
> You will believe me.'

The philosopher's stone was also supposed to have the power of increasing the size of a piece of gold.

111. *private*, privately. Compare 'gorgeous' for 'gorgeously,' xvi. 57; and 'chary' for 'charily,' Doctor Faustus, vi. 175. See Abbott, § 1.

Digitized by Google

124. *exceed*, be excessively or exceptionally good. Compare note to Doctor Faustus, i. 58.

126. *What art thou?* For this use of 'what' where modern usage would have 'who,' compare below, l. 137, vii. 51, and ix. 121; and see Abbott, § 254.

130. *'gainst*. As to this now purely colloquial use of 'against' see Abbott, § 142.

*Ib. guess*, for 'guests,' a not uncommon slurring; so in Munday and Chettle's The Downfall of Robert Earl of Huntington, iii. 2:

'It greatly at my stomach sticks,
That all the day we had no gues,
And have of meat so many a mess.'

Compare the Americanism 'less' for 'let us.'

131. *of door*. As to the omission of the article after prepositions and adverbial phrases see Abbott, § 90.

135. *nor fearèd naught*. For the construction of this line compare viii. 72 and 101, and ix. 44; and see Abbott, § 408. As to the double negative see *ib.* § 406.

149. *in such post*, in such haste. Compare vi. 179 and xv. 4. Shakespeare frequently uses the phrase 'in post' in this sense; so Romeo and Juliet, v. 3. 273:

'And then in post he came from Mantua
To this same place.'

So 'to post' is used for 'to hasten,' i. 128; and in Alphonsus King of Arragon, act iii, occurs the phrase 'posting pace.' The combination 'post-haste' is likewise Elizabethan; the poet Posthaste in Histrio-Mastix is supposed by the late Mr. Simpson to be intended for Shakespeare, at least in the later recension of the play.

154. *mated*, confounded. As to this verb 'mate' or 'amate' (for a different verb 'to mate' see Doctor Faustus, opening Chorus, 2) compare the adjective 'mat' in Chaucer, Old French *mat* (M. Latin *mattus*) and *mater*, from the term 'schach mat' (checkmate) signifying in the Persian game of chess 'the shah (king) is dead.' Diez compares the Hebrew 'mût,' to die; 'met,' dead.—Compare Orlando Furioso:

'Worse than Medusa mateth all our minds';

and Macbeth, v. 1. 86:

'My mind she hath mated and amazed my sight.'

156. *'bash*, for 'abash,' look foolish, from the French *ébahir*; hence the adjective bashful. In xvi. 61, the verb is used in the sense of 'to lower,' as if from the French *abaisser*.—These omissions of the prefix are very common; the following are among those in our play: ''miss' for 'amiss,' xiv. 56; 'gree' for 'agree,' vi. 130; 'vouch' for 'avouch,'

Digitized by Google

vii. 19; 'foretime' for 'aforetime,' ix. 128; ''tide' for 'betide,' xiii. 14; ''gin' for 'begin,' in our scene 159; also ''tirèd' for 'attired,' iii. 45; 'treat' for 'entreat,' v. 82; and 'closure' for 'enclosure,' x. 118. Compare also 'gree' for 'degree'; 'file' for 'defile'; 'tice' for 'entice'; 'dain' for 'disdain.'

157. *miss'd*, a punning repetition of the first syllable of 'mistress.'

165. *motion*, proposal. Compare to 'move questions,' l. 87 above.

171. *frame his art by proof*, give evidence of how he manages his art. Compare King Lear, i. 2. 107: 'Frame the business after your own wisdom.' The A.S. 'fremman,' O.E. 'freme,' means to perform or manage; so in The Faerie Queene, i. 8. 30:

'That on a staffe his feeble steps did frame.'

173. *he the Master there.* See BURDEN in Dramatis Personae.

176. *Hecate.* 'Hecat'' is used as a dissyllable, xi. 18. Shakespeare likewise uses the name both as a dissyllable, and, in 1 Henry VI, iii. 2. 64, as a trisyllable. Milton has 'Hecat'' (*sic* in the first and second editions) in Comus, v. 135, and 'Hecate,' *ib.* v. 535.—Hecate (whose name was originally a cognomen of the Moon-goddess, meaning 'the far-shooting one') was in Greece as well as in Italy the centre of all magic art and ghost-stories. She appears as a powerful deity already in the Theogony of Hesiod and in the Homeric Hymn to Demeter, and continued to be worshipped to a very late date; thus the Emperor Diocletian established a place of worship for her in a crypt at Antioch. 'She was,' says Preller, 'the favourite figure of superstition and of all obscure practices based on the superstition of women, of the common people, or, on the other hand, of the weakly and the over-educated.' Thus she passed into mediaeval legend, and plays a prominent part in magic, where her 'circle' was one of those formed by conjurers. The relations between the Hecate of Middleton's Witch and the Hecate of Macbeth, where the scene in which she figures has been held to be an interpolation, are with much point discussed by Dr. C. H. Herford, *u.s.* pp. 235 seqq.

178. *et nunc et semper*, doubtless a quotation from the Liturgy.

## *Scene III.*

2. *good cheap* (quarto of 1630, 'good chape'), at a low price, French *à bon marché*. Compare 1 Henry IV, iii. 3. 51: 'The sack that thou hast drunk me would have bought me lights as good cheap at the dearest chandler's in Europe'; and see Burton's Anatomy of Melancholy, i. 2. 3. 15: 'the best is alwayes best cheap.'

Digitized by Google

5. *cope*, purchase or exchange. So Conscience as a broomseller sings in The Three Ladies of London:

'Have you any old boots,
Or any old shoon,
Pouch-rings or buskins,
To cope for new broom.'

The root of the word is the same as that of cheap, cheapen, chapman (see l. 16): the A. S. substantive 'ceáp' means a purchase or object of purchase; the A. S. verb 'ceápian,' to buy and sell; 'cípan,' to sell. Compare German *kaufen*. A 'chipping' was the old English term for a market-place; hence many English local names, such as Chipping Norton, Chippinghill, Chepstow. Cheapside and Eastcheap were the old market-places of London. Copenhagen (*Kjöbnhavn*) is equivalent to Chipping Haven. See Isaac Taylor, Words and Places, p. 374.

7. *and set . . . racks.* The edition of 1655 reads: 'and set our *chese* upon the racks.'

8. *prize it* (quartos of 1630 and 1655, 'prise it'), price it, put a price upon it. Compare 'to appraise,' another derivative of the Latin *pretium*. Shakespeare uses both the substantive and the verb 'prize' in the sense of 'price': so xiii. 41; and Antony and Cleopatra, v. 2. 182:

'Caesar's no merchant, to make prize with you
Of things that merchants sold';

and Love's Labour's Lost, v. 2. 224:

'Prize you yourselves: what buys your company.'

10. *naughts*, trifles (Latin *nugae*).

11. *frank*, free, i.e. liberal, bountiful. Compare i. 9. So Shakespeare, Sonnet iv. 4, says of Nature:

'Being frank, she lends to all are free.'

Cf. Legende of Good Women, Didon, 200–202 (of Dido's munificence to Aeneas):

'And all is payed, what that he hath spente.
Thus kan this honourable queene hir gestes calle,
As she that kan in freedom passen alle.'

13. *Phoebus.* It was Zeus, and not Phoebus, who courted Semele (see Doctor Faustus, xiii. 107); but the mythology of the old dramatists is not always very exact. Cf. Doctor Faustus, xiii. 109; and the scene in Peele's Arraignment of Paris, where Saturn sits peaceably with Jupiter and the other gods.

16. *If that.* See note on Doctor Faustus, x. 15.

Digitized by Google

16. *chapman.* Compare note to l. 5 above. Chaucer uses the word in The Shipmanne's Tale:

'For of us chapmen all, so God me save
. . . . . .
Scarsly among us twenty ten shul thrive
Continually, lasting unto oure age.
. . . . . .
For evermore mote we stand in drede
Of hap and fortune in our chapmanhede.'

22. *soothe me up*, soothe me completely. This is a favourite use of 'up' by Greene; compare 'hamper up,' vi. 136; 'unite it up,' *ib.* 159; 'mumbling up,' *ib.* 150; 'taunt us up,' vii. 108; 'honour up,' xii. 21; 'furnish up,' xvi. 74; and towards the close of Alphonsus King of Arragon:

'When I come to finish up his life.'

Marlowe in 1 Tamburlaine, i. 1, uses to 'sound up' in the sense of 'sound loudly'; cf. 'to strike up.'—It thus appears that precedents are not wanting for the use of the expletive in the phrase 'to open up,' to which purists so persistently object.

23. *too broad before*, too openly displayed. Wagner's conjecture 'too broad by far,' seems unnecessary.

30. *in a dump.* See note to i. 12.

38. *Beccles.* This still flourishing little market-town in Suffolk, on the south side of the navigable river Waveney, which separates it from Norfolk, has an interesting local history. It formerly was part of the manor of Bury St. Edmunds monastery. The parish comprises about 1400 acres of marshes and common, which had once belonged wholly to the inhabitants under the name of Beccles Fen, and concerning the tenure and management of which a long series of disputes occurred in the Tudor period, ending with the surrender by the inhabitants to the Crown of the fen previously managed by their own fen-reeves, and with the grant of letters patent to the Corporation of Portreeve, Surveyors and Commonalty of the Fen of Beccles in 1584, confirmed in 1588 and 1605. See White's History of Suffolk.

38. *by*, hard-by. So in Love's Labour's Lost, v. 2. 94:

'I stole into a neighbour thicket by.'

40. *quaint*, here in the sense of strange, shy. (Compare for the other use note on i. 67.) So Bellona, who roughly 'shaked her speare' at Vulcan when, after delivering her from her father's head, he 'proffered her some cortesie,' is called 'queint Bellona' in The Shepheard's Calender, October, 114 (see the 'Glosse').

45. *Tirèd*, attired. See note to ii. 156.

Digitized by Google

49. *You forget yourself.* These words are assigned to Margaret in the quartos; but I think Dyce right in transferring them to Lacy, notwithstanding Grosart's view that 'evidently the Author meant to mark her (already) liking for Lacy, she disliking even to seem to have encouraged another.'

52. *little manners.* So we still speak of 'small courtesy,' 'small kindness.'

59. *Goodman Cob.* 'Goodman' (with its correlative 'goodwife,' whence 'goody') was originally a popular equivalent of the Latin 'paterfamilias,' in the legal rather than the literal sense of the term. Gradually the designation acquired a plebeian flavour, and came to be used as below master (or mistress) in the case of farmers, tradesmen and the like. Cf. Todd's Illustrations of Gower and Chaucer, p. 248, and Dr. Furnivall's 'Scrap' in the Transactions of the New Shakspere Society, 1877–9, p. 103. Compare in the Authorized Version St. Matthew's Gospel, xx. 11, and elsewhere. Miles, xi. 51, addresses the Brazen Head as 'Goodman Head'; and xv. 50, the Devil as 'goodman friend.' In Jonson's Every Man in his Humour the name 'Cob' gives rise to another pun.

61. *'a*, he. Compare note to Doctor Faustus, iv. 3.

62. *hilding*, low creature; a term used of both men and women. According to Nares, i. 420, the word is 'derived by some from "hinderling," a Devonshire word signifying degenerate..... Perhaps, after all, no more originally than a corruption of "hireling" or "hindling," diminutive of "hind," which the following passage in Cymbeline, ii. 3. 128, seems to confirm:

> "A base slave,
> A hilding for a livery, a squire's cloth,
> A pantler, not so eminent."'

Professor Skeat takes the same view.

65. *erst*, formerly, hitherto. Chaucer uses this superlative form as a comparative. See The Knighte's Tale, 708 (Morris).

*Ib. hath.* There is no necessity for changing this reading; cf. Abbott, §§ 247 and 334.

66. *quickened*, enlivened.

69. *in grey*, a phrase frequently used of the homely garb of a shepherd. Mitford, cited by Dyce, quotes from the Shepherd's Ode in Greene's Ciceronis Amor:

> 'A cloak of grey fencèd the rain,
> Thus 'tirèd was this lovely swain;
> . . . . . .
> Such was Paris, shepherds say,
> When with Œnone he did play';

Digitized by Google

and from Peele's Wars of Troy:

'So couth he (Paris) sing . . .
. . . . . .
And wear his coat of grey and lusty green.'

Dyce adds the following passage from Orlando Furioso:

'As Paris, when Œnone lov'd him well,
Forgat he was a son of Priamus,
All clad in grey, sat piping on a reed.'

Compare also in The Song of a Country Swain at the Return of Philander in Greene's The Mourning Garment:

'Fond pride, avaunt! give me the shepherd's hook,
A coat of grey! I'll be a country clown.'

This description of a shepherd's dress is not followed by Spenser in The Shepheard's Calender; it is only when his shepherds are in mourning, that

'The blew is black, the greene in grey is tinct.'

See November, 107. Nor is it adopted by Milton (see Lycidas *ad fin.*). —As to Paris and Œnone, and as to the abbreviation 'Œnon,' see note to Doctor Faustus, vi. 27.

72. *Who but*, ellipsis for 'who was admired or sought but.' Not, as Grosart thinks, for 'who am but.'

74. *Passeth*, surpasseth. Compare vi. 169.

82. *quaint*, trim, pretty, as in i. 67.

87. *store*, plenty, abundance. So constantly in Shakespeare; and compare Doctor Faustus, vii. 39.

88. *gramercies*, or gramercy, many thanks. From the French 'grand merci' or grand mercy, which Chaucer uses in the original form. The phrase recurs v. 112 and xvi. 6. Milton uses the word 'grammercy' for 'great thanks' in the Areopagitica, p. 25 (Hales).

## *Scene IV.*

2. *Ring'd*, encircled. Compare ii. 65.

3. *surge is*. The quartos, according to Dyce, read 'surges.'

4. *That compass'd high-built Babel in*, the walls of Babylon. Compare ii. 63.

6. *promontory-cleeves*. Compare i. 62.

10. *Who dar'd . . seas*. See ELINOR in Dramatis Personæ.

11. *And venture . . deep*. 'A corrupted line. Query, "And venture as Agenor's damsel did?" (Greene would hardly have written here "through the deep," when the preceding line ended with "through the seas.")' (Dyce.) The late Professor Palgrave however thought, a little unkindly,

Digitized by Google

that Greene may have made a tribrach of Agenor.—Europa, the daughter of Agenor King of Sidon (according to Homer the daughter of Phoenix), was carried off by Zeus in the shape of a bull, and borne across the sea into Crete. She is the wandering moon-goddess, and appears on Phoenician coins and in Phoenician legends as identified with Astarte.

12. *wanton*, amorous.

14. *The Pyren Mounts*, the Pyrenees (*Pyrenaei montes*).

15. *Castile.* This accentuation is in accordance with the derivation of the name. It was given to the country previously called Bardulia, about the ninth century, probably in allusion to the castles (*castellae*) which the Christians built in this district, so much exposed to the assaults of the foe. See Schäfer, Geschichte Spaniens, ii. 333.

19. *bide the brunt.* Compare note to Doctor Faustus, i. 93.

21. *After that.* See note to Doctor Faustus, x. 15.

22. *counterfeit*, portrait (from French *contrefaire*, compare German *Konterfey*); so in The Merchant of Venice, iii. 2. 115: 'Fair Portia's counterfeit!'

25. *the virtuous . . deeds*, the discourse or report of his deeds of virtue (valour).

27. *Done.* Dyce suggests the alteration 'shown.' Or perhaps this and the previous line may have been respectively transposed.

*Ib. at the Holy Land*, in the Holy Land. For this use of 'at' for 'in' with reference to a country, compare The Winter's Tale, i. 2. 39:

'When at Bohemia
You take my lord';

and Cavendish's letter (from Hakluyt's Voyages) in Professor Arber's English Garner, ii. 128: 'The matter of most profit unto me was a great ship of the King's, which I took at California.' In Thackeray's The Virginians the American Miss Lydia van den Bosch speaks of the manners and customs 'at America.'

27. *Damas'* (quarto of 1630, 'Damas'), Damascus. Compare viii. 113:

'Who at Damasco beat the Saracens.'

Edward, however, never fought before Damascus. See EDWARD PRINCE OF WALES in Dramatis Personae.

29. *like so of*, to conceive or take such a liking for. Compare x. 56. For a possible explanation of this construction as a result of the old impersonal use of the verb 'me liketh,' 'him liketh,' see Abbott, § 177. But compare 'accept of,' ix. 200.

33. *To Suffolk side*, to the border of Suffolk. So 3 Henry VI, iv. 6. 83:

'In secret ambush on the forest side.'

The 'country-side' is a term still used in the sense of 'district.'



Digitized by Google

33. *to merry Framlingham* (quarto of 1630, 'Fremingham,' which is near the O. E. spelling 'Fremigham'; cf. Thomas Heywood, If you know not Me, you know Nobody, act i. sc. 1:

'Gracious Queene,
. . . . . when we first flockt to you,
And made first head with you at Fromingham.'

According to the note, 'Fromingham' is 'the rustic and local pronunciation' of Framlingham). Framlingham, famed according to Evelyn for its growth of oaks, the tallest and largest perhaps in the world—one of them furnished the beams of the Royal Sovereign—is still more famous for its ancient castle, the origin of which is ascribed to Redwald, King of the East Angles from 593. It was here that King Edmund, the saint and martyr, was besieged by the Danes. After the Norman Conquest, the castle remained royal for two reigns, and after being held by the Bigods (afterwards Earls of Norfolk), and reverting to the Crown, under Edward II, was granted by him to his brother Thomas Plantagenet, whom he created Earl of Norfolk. It then passed by marriage to the Mowbrays, to whose honours and a great part of whose estates the Howards afterwards succeeded. At Framlingham died the victor of Flodden Field; by the attainder of his son the castle was forfeited to the Crown, till Queen Mary, who had found shelter at Framlingham on the death of Edward VI, reversed the attainder. On the execution of the next duke in 1572 the castle and manor once more passed to the Crown, by whom they were granted to Thomas Lord Howard, Baron of Walden, and his uncle Lord Henry Howard. In 1635 the castle was sold to Sir Robert Hitcham, who in the next year, finding the title to the estate hopelessly perplexed, 'in thankfulness to God for his wonderful success,' settled it for pious uses on Pembroke Hall (now Pembroke College), Cambridge. See White's History of Suffolk. Of special works concerning Framlingham may be mentioned Robert Hawes, The History of Framlingham, including brief notices of the Masters and Fellows of Pembroke Hall, in Cambridge; with additions and notes by R. Loder, Woodbridge, 1798; and Framlingham, a Narrative of the Castle, in four cantos, by James Bird, 1831. The mansion at Framlingham, called the 'Guildhall,' occupies the site of the hall which belonged to the Guild of the Blessed Virgin Mary, founded there at an early period, and dissolved about 1537. We may fancy that it was here that the Fair Maid of Fressingfield was to be 'shorn a nun' (xiv. 48).

35. *Hampton-house.* This seems to be an anachronism; for Hampton Court was not a royal residence till Cardinal Wolsey, who had built it, exchanged it with Henry VIII for Richmond. (See Cavendish's Life of Wolsey.)

40. *To will him come*, to desire him to come. The word 'to will'

Digitized by Google

here is the A.S. *willian*; see Morris, English Accidence, 187. Compare Henry VIII, iii. 1. 18:

'They will'd me say so, Madam';

and Faire Em, sc. xv. (l. 1045):

'Therefore, by me
He willeth thee to send his daughter Blanch.'

As to the omission of 'to' before 'come,' compare note to Doctor Faustus, iii. 36.

45. *From Hapsburg* (quarto of 1630, 'Hasburg'), i.e. from Austria (though the Habsburg of course was in Switzerland), or the Empire in general. Compare ix. 13.

49. *Jaques.* This name is often used as a dissyllable; see James IV; As You Like It; and Fletcher's The Noble Gentleman.

48–50. *Padua . . . Rheims.* All these were University towns. The practice of passing from one University to others was very common in the Middle Ages and the Renascence period, more especially of course with such 'scholastici vagantes' as Vandermast.

49. *Bologna.* Pronounce Bolognia. The quarto of 1630, keeping near to the Latin form Bononia, spells 'Bolonia.'

52. *chiefest.* Compare vi. 34, and Orlando Furioso:

'Her love Orlando,
Chiefest of the western peers.'

The form occurs not less than seven times in the Authorised Version.

*Ib. aphorisms.* See note on Doctor Faustus, i. 19.

53. *mathematic rules.* See note on ii. 73.

55. *likes me well.* Compare vi. 139; and see note on Doctor Faustus, x. 45.

58. *wonder Vandermast.* There is no reason to change 'wonder' into 'wondrous,' as Dyce suggests. Compare A. S. compounds such as 'wundor-werc' in The Knighte's Tale:

'Ther saw I many another wunder storie';

and in The Man of Lawe's Tale:

'For to see this wonder chance.'

The construction may probably have arisen from the use of such compounds, unless it is to be explained by the ellipsis of the genitival prefix 'of,' as after 'maner' (manner, sort) in Chaucer and Spenser ('all manner wights,' The Faerie Queene, iv. 10. 7). See also note on v. 75.

61. *Set him but nonplus.* Compare ix. 111. 'To be non-plussed' is a vulgarism current at the present day.

64. *a poet's garland made of bays.* The reference here seems to be, not to the laureateship as a University degree, as in Doctor Faustus, iii.



Digitized by Google

32, but to the special compliment of the bestowal of a laurel wreath upon poets or literary men, of which common usage in the days of the Renascence the example of Petrarch, who was laureated as both poet and historian, is the most famous. The English poet-laureateship as a Court office seems to have arisen out of the engrafting of this custom upon the ancient office of the King's Versifier. Compare note on ix. 116.

66. *Whilst*, i.e. until. Compare x. 55. See for this use Abbott, § 137, where he cites, with other passages, Macbeth, iii. 1. 44:

'We will keep ourself
Till supper-time alone. While then, God be with you!'

In Masson's Life of Milton, v. 94, is cited a sentence upon a blasphemer in Scotland (1656), who was condemned 'to be hanged on a gibbet while he be dead.'

*Ib. we set* (quarto of 1594, 'fit'; which Grosart thinks a possible misprint for 'fet'), i.e. we set forth. Compare Henry V, Chorus before act ii, line 34:

'The King is set from London.'

*Ib. with our troops*, i.e. our trains or suites; see above, line 56.

## *Scene V.*

3. *at an inch*, to the nicest point of time. Compare 2 Henry VI, i. 4. 45:

'We watched you at an inch.'

5. *post horse*'. As to the elision compare note on opening Chorus of Doctor Faustus, l. 28.

6. *fetch*, trick. So in Hamlet, ii. 1. 38: 'a fetch of wit.' A 'fetch' was as late as the eighteenth century a common expression for a practical joke.

8. *the Isle of Ely*. Ralph may possibly be thinking of the popular fancy embodied in the rhyme:

'Saddle your goat or your green cock
And make his bridle a bottom of thread
To roll up how many miles you have rid.'

'Of the green cock,' says Ben Jonson, cited by Wright, Sorcery and Magic, i. 290, 'we have no other ground (to confess ingenuously) than a vulgar fable of a witch, that with a cock of green colour, and a bottom of blue thread, would transport herself through the air, and so escaped (at the time of her being brought to execution) from the hands of justice. It was a tale when I went to school.' The green

Digitized by Google

cock recalls Wagner's Auerhan, who transported him through the air, as Faustus was transported by dragons (see Doctor Faustus, Chorus before sc. vii, l. 6), and as in the English History (see Introduction, p. cix.) he is carried by Mephostophiles in the shape of a horse with wings 'like a dromedary.' The stories of the flights of magicians and witches through the air are infinite in number and variety; cf. note to the Chorus in Doctor Faustus just cited. Ralph's proposed exploit was in later times accomplished by Baron Münchausen.—The Isle of Ely was still essentially an undrained fen in the Tudor times; so that it is appropriately mentioned as a home of geese.

19. *cutting*, cheating, cozening, bullying. The term is probably originally derived from the practice of 'cutting purses,' see note to i. 110. The expression 'cutter' for 'bully' is very common; so in Dekker's Seuen Deadly Sinnes of London the author says of 'Shauing,' one of the Sins: 'Wee haue beene quicke (you see) in *Trimming* this *Cutter* of *Queene Hith*, because 'tis his propertie to handle others so.' In Jonson's Bartholomew Fair one of the characters is 'Val. Cutting, a roarer or bully'; and as late as the Restoration period Cowley reproduced a comedy under the title of 'Cutter of Coleman Street,' of which a disreputable swaggerer is the chief character.

22. *swords and bucklers*. Hence the term 'swash-buckler,' a swaggerer who tries to frighten people by clashing his sword against his buckler.

28. *subsizer*. Cf. Fletcher's The Elder Brother, i. 2:

> 'Bid my subsiser carry my hackney to
> The buttery, and give him his bever' . . .

Sizars (called at Oxford 'servitors') is or was the Cambridge name for poor scholars, who in addition to a pecuniary exhibition, received their commons or food free. A 'size' is a term still employed at Cambridge for a small portion of food, or for a gill of ale. Subsizars, or undersizars, is a term still in use at Trinity College, Cambridge.

33. *Tully's phrase*, Ciceronian Latin. The fashion of calling Cicero by his gentile name, Tully, which was followed by our old writers such as Chaucer and Skelton, obtained with English scholars to a very late date. Of one of Greene's prose-tracts, 'Ciceronis Amor,' the name is rendered into English as 'Tully's Love.'

37. *I can be heard, felt, and understood.* A humorous condensation of the definition of a noun substantive.

41. *Brazen-nose College.* Quarto of 1655, Braison-nose Colledge. The same edition in v. 44 has the spelling Brazen-nose. Cf. note on ii. 11 ante.

42. *Coppersmith's Hall.* The Tinker of Turvey (see the quotation from the T. of T., or Canterbury Tales, London, 1630, ed. J. O.

Digitized by Google

Halliwell, ap. Dr. John Brown, John Bunyan, 3rd ed. 1887, p. 34) boasted that he was a rare fellow, for that he was 'a scholler and was of Brazen-nose Colledge in Oxford; an excellent carpenter, for he builded Coppersmiths' Hall.' In Greene and Lodge's A Looking-Glass for London and England, Adam says: 'his nose was in the highest degree of noses, it was nose *autem glorificam*, so set with rubies, that after his death it should have been nailed up in Coppersmith's hall for a monument.' Compare note to ii. 35. There is a Coopers' Hall in London belonging to a company incorporated in 1501; but I cannot discover a Coppersmith's Hall. Cf. as to the ribald jest about the nose the quip against 'Sir Boniface,' formerly of Brasenose, in T. Heywood's The Wise Woman of Hogsden, iv. 1.

49. *reparrel*, a blunder for 'apparel.'

51. *coxcombs*. See as to this kind of fool's cap the note on i. 32; and compare King Lear, i. 4. 114.

52. *spring*, start, make to fly off. Cf. Ben Jonson's Every Man in his Humour, i. 1. 16:

> 'But their indulgence must not spring in me
> A fond opinion that he cannot err.'

Compare to 'fly the partridge,' xii. 83.

54. *be*. For this use of be after a verb of thinking, see Abbott, § 299.

56. *swones*, a further mutilation of the oath in 53.

62. *fast*, immoveable. Compare 'fast-fancied,' l. 79 below; and the German 'fest,' used of the effects of magic both as a simple word and in the compound 'bannfest.'

65. *light-fingered*. This expression, still applied to cutpurses and pickpockets, occurs already in the old Interlude of Nice Wanton, where Eulalia says to Xantippe:

> 'Your son is suspect light-fingered to be
> Your daughter hath nice tricks three or four.'

75. *Thy fool disguise*. I venture to read thus in lieu of 'thy fool disguis'd' as in the quartos; of which the meaning can hardly be strained into 'thy disguise as a fool.' 'Thy fool disguise' is equivalent to 'thy foolish disguise'; for 'fool' is used adjectivally (like 'wonder' and 'manner'; see note on iv. 58); so in The Merchant of Venice, i. 1. 102, 'this fool gudgeon, this opinion'; and *ib.*, ii. 9. 26, 'the fool multitude, that choose by show.'

79. *Fast-fancied*, tied by fancy; compare 62. 'Fancy' is here used for love, as viii. 7, and elsewhere. Compare 'fancy-free' in A Midsummer Night's Dream, ii. 1. 164.

82. *treat*, entreat. See note on ii. 156.

86. *Apollo*, the Delphic Apollo. Compare ii. 18.

94. *strength*, strengthen. As to the discarding of the suffix *en* in the

Digitized by Google

conversion of nouns and adjectives into verbs, see Abbott, § 290, and compare note on vi. 8.

94. *thy college-state*, the state or estate of thy college. Compare 1 Henry IV, iv. 1. 46:

'Were it good
To set the exact wealth of all our states
All at one cast?'

99. *your manhood and your sword is.* For this use of a singular verb with two singular nouns as subject, see Abbott, § 336.

107. *'fore that*, afore or before that. As to this use of 'that,' see note on Doctor Faustus, x. 15.

110. *in a glass prospective.* As to Bacon's magical glass, see Introduction, p. xl. 'Prospective' is that which looks forward—whether into the future, or the distance, or that which is hidden from the bodily eye—hence equivalent to 'divining'; so 'prospective skill,' xiii. 12. Compare R. Armin's A Nest of Ninnies, p. 4 (Old Shakespeare Society's Publications, 1842): 'a philosopher's cell, who, because he was alwayes poking at Fortune with his forefinger, the wise wittily namde him Sotto as one besotted—a grumbling sir; one that was wise enough, and fond enough, and solde all for a glass prospective, because he would wisely see into all men but himselfe, a fault generall in most.' 'Perspective,' an epithet applied by Shakespeare to a glass 'cut in such a way as to produce an optical delusion' (A. Schmidt; cf. Furnivall's note in New Shakspere Society's Transactions, 1880–5, Part ii, p. 370), seems therefore a superfluous emendation, although undoubtedly this is the more usual form of the adjective. Cf. e.g. Cornelius Agrippa's 'perspective glass,' wherein the magician showed to Thomas Cromwell on his travels abroad King Henry VIII hunting at Windsor, in Nash's Unfortunate Traveller (Works, ed. Grosart, v. 77); and Crabbe's Tales of the Hall, bk. xiv, *ad fin.*:

'What we behold in Love's perspective Glass
Has pass'd away—one Sigh! and let it pass;'

cited by E. Fitzgerald (Life and Literary Remains, i. 442). In The Duke of Stettin's Diary, cited in a previous note (to ii. 11), is mentioned among the other curiosities of Nonsuch a magic mirror in which Henry VIII could see everything, and which broke into pieces immediately on the king's death. In Shirley's The Wedding, iv. 4, a 'perspective glass' is introduced,

'to make those things that lie
Remote from sense, familiar.'

The perspective glass through which, in an allegory borrowed by Bunyan from 2 Epistle to the Corinthians, iii. 18, the Shepherds show the Pilgrims the way to the Celestial City, is of the nature of a telescope.

Digitized by Google

112. *Gramercies.* See note to iii. 88.

*Ib. quite*, i.e. requite, as again vi. 29, 180; viii. 35; xiii. 73. From the Old French *quiter* (from the adjective *quite, cuite*, Latin *quietus*).

118. *Till . . . awhile*, till I and Friar Bacon shall have talked awhile.

121. *black-pots.* According to Nares, a 'black-pot' is a Somersetshire term for a black-pudding, but the word is used by Thomas Heywood for a jug (as 'black-jack' is frequently used; see note to x. 3). For the latter significance, which is evidently that intended here, cf. Part i. of The Returne from Parnassus, Act ii, l. 826, where Luxurio says: 'If Elderton were alive to heare, his blacke potts shoulde put on mourninge apparell, and his nose for verie envie departe out of the worlde.' William Elderton the ballad-maker was a notorious drunkard (see Warton's History of English Poetry, ed. W. C. Hazlitt, iv. 390, note 4). Ralph is therefore referring to the exploits which he contemplates in the taverns; while of course at the same time alluding to the black caps of the masters and scholars. He afterwards (vii. 82) irreverently refers to the 'doting night-caps' of the doctors.

## *Scene VI.*

2. *tempers*, fashions by or after heating. So in Orlando Furioso:

'Where sits Tisiphone, tempering in flames
Those torches that do set on fire avenge.'

Hence the word comes to mean 'to manage,' as in xvi. 44; and compare Alphonsus King of Arragon, act iii:

'Long since dame Fortune temper'd so her wheel,
As that there was no vantage to be seen
On any side, but equal was the gain';

and 'to mix,' as x. 36.

*Ib. toys*, trifles; the German *Zeug*, compare *Spielzeug* (play-things).

3. *his consistory court.* Cf. Paradise Regained, i. 39–42 (of Satan):

'— in mid air
To council summons all his mighty peers,
Within thick clouds, and dark, tenfold involved,
A gloomy consistory.'

The term, originally applied to the meetings of Pope and Cardinals, in England came to signify a regular place of meeting, or council-house, of ecclesiastical persons (see Bradshaw's edition of Milton's Prose Works, ii. 642). The consistory-court proper in England is that of the diocesan-bishop, held by the bishop's chancellor or his commissary, acting as judge.

Digitized by Google

4. *plead homage*, acknowledge the supreme authority of.

7. *the Lincoln earl.* For this adjectival use of local names, compare 'the Lincoln Countess,' l. 126 below; 'the Sussex Earl,' v. 76; 'the Castile Elinor,' iv. 23; and 'the Albion diadem,' viii. 131. See also Fletcher's The Maid's Tragedy, ii. 2: 'the Carthage queen.'

8. *glad'st*, gladden'st. So frequently in Shakespeare. For this use of adjectives as verbs, see Abbott, § 290, and compare 'to short,' viii. 103; and 'to rich,' *ib.* 131. As to the discarding of the suffix *en*, compare note to v. 94.

9. *How Lacy meaneth to*, how Lacy is disposed towards—whether he intends or not to deal fairly by.

*Enter Margaret and Friar Bungay.* 'Perhaps the curtain which concealed the upper stage (i.e. the balcony at the back of the stage) was withdrawn, discovering Margaret and Bungay standing there, and when the representation in the glass was supposed to be over, the curtain was drawn back again.' (Dyce.)

12. *brightsome.* The quartos, 'bright-sunne.' (Dyce.)

*Ib. the paramour of Mars*, Venus.

17. *That . . . swain.* 'Query: "That this fair, witty, courteous," &c. See Margaret's first speech (iii. 64 seqq.) and her speech in the present scene, 31 seqq.' (Dyce.)

19. *Earl of Lincolnshire.* See LACY in Dramatis Personae.

21. *cunning.* See note on Doctor Faustus, opening Chorus, l. 20.

22. *procure*, bring about the success of, as an intermediary. Compare 'proctor' from 'procurator.'

23. *holp*, an old preterite of 'help,' of which the A.S. form was 'healp.' Even the past participle 'holpen' used in the Authorized Version is now archaic. Shakespeare uses the form 'holp.'

29. *quite*, requite. See note on v. 112.

30. *Marg'ret.* Here and elsewhere, in defiance of metre, the quarto of 1665 reads 'Margaret.'

32. *avouch*, avow, maintain, be sufficient for, undertake. Compare x. 86; and 'vouch,' vii. 19. Shakespeare uses the verb 'avouch' in the same sense, and the substantive in Hamlet, i. 1. 57:

> '—I might not this believe
> Without the sensible and true avouch
> Of mine own eyes.'

*Ib. to shadow*, to cover with an excuse.

*Ib. rape.* The quartos, 'cape.' (Dyce.)

37. *England's paramour.* The consonance with the preceding line is unpleasing. I am inclined to think, and I find the late Professor Wagner approving my conjecture, that Greene wrote 'paragon.'

Digitized by Google

50. *Daphne.* The story of Daphne, who, flying from Apollo, was changed into a laurel-tree, is told in Ovid's Metamorphoses, i. 452 seqq.

54. *Recant thee*, retract thy course. 'Thee' is here probably to be construed as an accusative; though it might be a dative following a neuter verb; compare i. 141.

56. *secret*, confidential.

58. *exception.* The quarto of 1594, 'acception.' (Dyce.)

65. *For better die.* The quarto of 1630, 'for dye.' Malone conjectures, 'For sooner dye.'

68. *You're . . . near.* 'An allusion to the proverb, "Early up, and never the nearer."

"In you, yfaith, the proverb's verified,—
Y'are earely up, and yet are nere the neare."'

Munday and Chettle's The Death of Robert Earl of Huntington [iii. 2]. Dyce. 'Near' is the old comparative of nigh (A.S. *nedh*). Abbott, § 478, cites, with other passages, Richard II, v. 1. 88:

'Better far off than near, be ne'er the near.'

69. *in a morn*, in the morning.

76. *I marvel . . himself.* 'Brought love is better than sent love' is still current as a proverbial saying.

81. *the idea.* Pronounce 'th' idéa.' (Cf. below, l. 122, 'the Exchequer'; pronounce 'th' Exchéquer.') The 'idea' is the 'image,' as in the original use of the Greek word *ἰδέα*. Compare Richard III, iii. 7. 13: 'I did infer your lineaments,

Being the right idea of your father,
Both in your form and nobleness of mind.'

*Ib. timely*, early. Compare x. 126. '*Timely*, adv. early. Macbeth, ii. 3. 51:

"He did command me to call timely on him."—

*Molto a buon-hora*, very timely, verie early.—1598; Florio.' (New Shakspere Society's Transactions, 1875–6, p. 459.)

*Ib. too-too.* Compare Alphonsus King of Arragon, act iv.:

'*Cari.* What, hear you nothing of them all this while?
*Duke.* Yes, too-too much, the Milan Duke may say';

and *ib.*, act v:

'Then for that love, if any love you had,
Revoke this sentence, which is too-too bad';

and see 'Observations on the correct method of punctuating a line in Hamlet, i. 2. 129,

["O! that this too-too solid flesh would melt!"]

with reference to the exact force of the word too-too,' by J. O. Halliwell (The Shakespeare Society's Papers, part i. pp. 39–43, in the Shakespeare Society's Publications, 1844), where it is shown that 'too-

Digitized by Google

too' is not a mere reduplication of 'too' ('too, too'), but a provincial word, which became a recognized archaism and signified 'exceeding.' The word is used by Cromwell in a letter from Linlithgow (Carlyle, ch. xxvii): 'The Enemy is at his old lock, and lieth in or near Stirling; where we cannot come to fight him, except he please, or we go upon too-too manifest hazards.'

88. *Deus hic.* Cf. Dekker's If this be not a good Play, &c., edition of 1873, vol. iii. p. 339: '*Deus hic* to all now here.' These words are from the Vulgate translation of Genesis xxviii. 16 ('Surely the Lord is in this place'); unless they are a transposition of the words in a verse of the Roman liturgy for 'Holy Saturday': 'Hic Deus meus,' &c., Exodus xv. 2.

91. *No . . news?* The quartos, according to Dyce, assign these words to 'Mar.'

92. *pursuivants*, the officers attached to the heralds.

104. *some other.* This use of 'other' as a substantival pronoun is explained by its original meaning ('on—ther,' one of two); 'other some' was however a frequent combination.

108. *once*, on this occasion.

114. *For why*, because. See note to i. 121.

118. *I not deny.* As to this omission of the auxiliary 'do' before 'not,' see Abbott, § 305.

121. *mean.* The earlier quartos, 'meant'; which possibly Greene wrote; since, as Grosart points out, the preterite is used in l. 119 above.

127. *bands*, bans. See note to Doctor Faustus, i. 107.

130. *gree*, agree. See note to ii. 156.

132. *'Twere . . between.* I have followed Dyce in printing this and the next line as verse.

135. *that.* For this insertion of 'that' in the second coordinate clause after its omission in the first, see Abbott, § 285.

136. *hamper up.* See note on iii. 22.

137. *portace.* This word, of which the spelling varies as 'portos' (Chaucer), 'portass,' 'portasse,' 'portise,' 'portesse' (Spenser), 'porteous,' and 'porthose,' and which is the same as 'portal' in a statute of James I, is an equivalent of the Latin 'portorium,' i.e. portable breviary or prayer-book. It is of constant occurrence in our old writers.

140. *Then hand-fast hand.* To 'hand-fast' is to strike a bargain by clasping hands, hence especially betroth. Betrothal by means of a form called 'hand-fasting,' in which a double ring, constructed with hoops so as to enclose the fingers of the betrothed pair (a symbol used already in early English and Scottish times, and said to have been practised by the Danes), was employed, customarily preceded the marriage ceremony. The following is extracted from Charles Knight's

Digitized by Google

William Shakspere, a Biography (Pictorial Shakspere), p. 214: 'In a work published in 1543, "The Christian State of Matrimony," we find this passage:—"Yet in this thing also, must I warn every reasonable and honest person to beware, that in the contracting of marriage they dissemble not, nor set forth any lie. Every man likewise must esteem the person to whom he is hand-fasted, none otherwise than for his own spouse; though as yet it be not done in the church, nor in the street. After the hand-fasting, and making of the contract, the church-going and wedding should not be deferred too long."' See also, as illustrating the custom of free-contract or trothplight, Measure for Measure, iv. 1. 72–75; Twelfth Night, v. 154–164; The Winter's Tale, i. 2. 278; The Tempest, iv. 1. 13 seqq.—The above particulars have been collected in a pamphlet published (1873) by Mr. J. C. Hodgson for Mr. J. Malam, the owner of a curious picture considered by him to be an authentic representation of the hand-fasting between Shakespeare and Ann Hathaway, 'which preceded actual marriage at church nearly five months, without bringing any stigma on either.'

146. *Help, Bacon . . now.* 'Some word, or words, wanting here.' (Dyce.)

150. *from mumbling up.* I have adopted Wagner's emendation of 'from' for 'for.' To 'mumble up' is to mumble through. Compare note to iii. 22.

151. *Why speak'st not.* Compare vii. 115 and viii. 13; and see as to such ellipses, Abbott, § 401, where it is observed that while the nominative in the second person plural (or first person) is less commonly omitted, 'the inflexion of the second person singular allows the nominative to be readily understood, and therefore justifies its omission.'

*Ib. Hud, hud.* I cannot venture to explain the force of this interjection of the 'mute' Bungay. 'Hout, hout' is cited by Mätzner from Otway's Venice Preserved, iii. 1, as an interjection used for sending a dog to kennel; and perchance the Friar is attempting to exorcise 'the devils' who have 'enchanted' him (see lines 155–6). The devil usually announced his appearance with some such exclamation in the old mysteries. Possibly Mr. Fleay is right in interpreting 'hud, hud' to be 'hum, hum,' spoken through the nose.

154. *passions.* According to Dyce, the quarto of 1594 reads 'passions,' which I have ventured to leave unchanged. For 'passions,' compare i. 20, and Doctor Faustus, xi. 42; and as to the third person plural in 'th, see Abbott, § 334.

158. *what*, equivalent to 'which,' as the neuter of 'who.' See Abbott, § 252; as also for the use of 'what . . it' in the present passage.

159. *unite it up.* See note to iii. 22.

160. *miscreant*, literally misbeliever (O. French *mescreant*, N. French

Digitized by Google

*mécréant*). Margaret here seems to be thinking of the death of heretics, and thus to be using the word in its literal sense. In 1 Henry VI Shakespeare seems to use the word both in this sense (v. 3. 44) and in the ordinary modern sense of 'villain' (iii. 4. 44), so that Trench's observations (English Past and Present, pp. 129–130) on Talbot's application of the term to the Maid of Orleans (iii. 2) lose much of their point.

161. *Bungay*. The quartos, 'Bacon.' (Dyce.)

163. *straight*. Dyce's suggestion for 'straightway.'

166. *Of courtesy*. Compare note to Doctor Faustus, opening Chorus, l. 20.

169. *we were passing unkind*. Query, 'passing unkind we were.' Dyce.—'Passing' is here equivalent to 'surpassingly.' Compare iii. 74; and 'passing the love of women,' 2 Samuel i. 26.

176. *for fear*. 'Some word or words wanting here.' (Dyce.)

179. *in post*. See note to ii. 149.

180. *quite*, requite. See note on v. 112.

## *Scene VII.*

As to the general resemblance between this scene and sc. x of Doctor Faustus, see Introduction, pp. xxii and xxiii, note 1.

1. *the Regent-house*, the house where the Regents meet, the house of Congregation. Regency is an academical term which has very little significance at the present day, and of which the origin is not very clear. 'Regent Masters' appear originally to have been those who for about two years after their degree held a school in Grammar or any other Faculty at Oxford ('regere scholas Oxoniae') or at any other 'studium generale'; non-Regents, those who had passed this period of probation and were not necessarily engaged in lecturing. 'Regents' are still distinguished as 'necessario Regentes' or 'Regentes ad placitum.' The former comprise all Doctors of every Faculty and all Masters of Arts for two years from their degrees; the latter, Professors, Heads of Houses, certain University and College officers, and Doctors of every Faculty if resident in the University. See Oxford University Calendar, and Anstey's Introduction to Munimenta Academica.

2. *It fits us talk*, it befits us to talk. For the use of the infinitive without 'to' compare note to Doctor Faustus, iii. 36.

*Ib. the king's repair* (quarto of 1630, 'the long repaire'), the King's repairing or coming to this place. Compare Hamlet, v. 2. 228, 'I will forestall their repair hither'; and see as to this use of infinitives as substantive nouns, note to Doctor Faustus, xiii. 30.

3. *trooped with*, attended by; as again xii. 16. For this use of 'with'

Digitized by Google

for by,' see Abbott, § 193. 'Troops' is used in the sense of 'trains' or 'suites,' iv. 66.

4. *alongst*, along. 'Along,' 'amid,' and 'among,' being all derived from adjectives or substantives, had genitive forms (alonges, amiddes, amonges), the *s* in which was changed in usage into *st*. The *st* in 'against' and 'whilst' has the same origin.

*Ib. by east*, to the east. Compare in the Prologue to the Canterbury Tales, 388, 'woning fer by weste,' with Morris's note, *l. c.*; and the nautical expression, 'north-east-by-east.' 'The Dantzic seas' are the Baltic, for which the German name is the Eastern Sea ('Ostsee').

6. *Almain*, German. Compare note to Doctor Faustus, i. 123.

*Ib. Saxon.* The quartos, 'Scoccon.' (Dyce.)

8. *resolv'd for*, resolved to come or go to. Compare 2 Henry IV, ii. 3. 67:

'I will resolve for Scotland.'

9. *plots of stately tragedies.* 'Plots,' 'plats' or 'platforms' of plays were properly outlines or schemes of performances, like that of The Seven Deadlie Sins mentioned above in note on Dramatis Personae of Doctor Faustus. It need hardly be observed that the exhibition of plays as part of the entertainments offered to sovereigns when visiting the universities, though common in the reigns of Elizabeth and of her successors, is an anachronism as applied to that of Henry III.

10. *proud Roscius.* The famous Roman actor Q. Roscius did not perform before 'Roman emperors,' for he died in B.C. 62.

11. *Vaunted*, proudly displayed. Compare Doctor Faustus, opening Chorus, l. 6.

12. *To welcome . . . potentates.* In the quartos this line is given to Clement. (Dyce.)

15. *of esteem*, of repute. Compare l. 109 below.

16. *Don Jaques Vandermast.* See Dramatis Personae.

17. *those*, for 'the.' See note to Doctor Faustus, i. 75.

19. *vouch this task*, answer for, sustain, undertake it. (Latin *vocare*, O. Fr. *voucher*, a law-term used when a person whose possession was attacked *called upon* a third person to stand in his shoes and defend his right. In a secondary sense 'to vouch for' another is to answer to his call, to give one's own guarantee for the matter in dispute. Wedgwood; and see *ib., s. v. advocatus.*) Compare xii. 55, and 'avouch,' vi. 32.

20. *countervail*, match. Compare Romeo and Juliet, iii. 6. 4:

'Come what sorrow can,
It cannot countervail the exchange of joy
That one short minute gives me in her sight.'

To 'vail' or 'avail' is to be of use or value (French *valoir*, Latin *valere*). Compare xiii. 98.

Digitized by Google

23. *hold the German play*, match himself against the German. Compare the phrases cited by Schmidt, to 'hold a wager,' 'hold a penny'; and perhaps to 'hold hand,' in King John, ii. 494: (she) 'holds hand with any princess.' The passage in Henry VIII, v. 4. 90,

'I'll find
A Marshalsea shall hold ye play these two months,'

seems correctly explained by Schmidt 'a prison which shall keep you under,' and wrongly by Delius 'where you shall play (i.e. have hard labour) as a punishment.'

26. *Mas doctor*. In Nares several instances are quoted of this colloquial abbreviation of 'Master,' among them Jonson's Staple of News, ii. 1,

'And you, mas broker,
Shall have a feeling';

and Greene's Quip for an Upstart Courtier, where the plural 'masse' occurs in the phrase 'masse shoemakers.' The term 'mashyp' was similarly used as an abbreviation for 'mastership.' Compare 'Master Doctor Faustus' in Doctor Faustus, x. 1, and 'Master Parson,' *ib.* viii. 23.

32. *rumour*, noise (Lat. *rumor*, Fr. *rumeur*).

33. *hurly-burly*. Of this word, which, according to Henry Peacham, in The Garden of Eloquence (1577), is an example of 'onomatopoeia, when we invent, devise, fayne and make a name intimating the sound of that it signifyeth, as hurlyburly, for an uprore and tumultuous stirre,' an early use has been pointed out in a large number of instances. See the note in Furness's variorum edition on Macbeth, i. 1. 3, 'When the hurly-burly's done.' A still earlier instance of the use of the expression 'Hurlee Burlee' than any of these has been pointed out in N. Udall's translation of the Apophthegms of Erasmus, of which translation the first edition was in 1542. (See an article on a reprint of the 1554 edition of Udall's translation in The Saturday Review, November 24th, 1877.) Shakespeare uses the compound as an adjective in 1 Henry IV, v. 1. 78. 'Hurly' seems to come from the French 'hurler,' to howl or yell; Littré gives the French 'hurlu-burlu' as of unknown derivation.

35. *before the doctors*. See note to l. 1.

37. *ruffflers*. A 'ruffler' is, according to Nares, ii. 755, the term used for a cheating bully in several Acts of Parliament, particularly in one of 27 Henry VIII, and is constantly used to signify any lawless or violent person. Compare the German 'Raufbold' for a brawling bully; and our 'ruffian.' To 'ruffle' is to be turbulent; and a 'ruffle' is used in the sense of a turmoil or scene of plunder in a passage quoted in Nares from the Lover's Complaint, 58:

Digitized by Google

'A reverend man that grazed his cattle nigh—
Sometime a blusterer, that the ruffle knew
Of court, of city.'

40. *Salve, Doctor Burden!* The form of verse in which Miles has the audacity to talk before the Dons is the 'Skeltonical,' so called from its employment by John Skelton, poet-laureate to Henry VIII, in several of his satires, notably in Phyllyp Sparowe, Colyn Cloute, and Why come ye nat to Courte?. It is mentioned with great contempt by Puttenham in his Arte of English Poesie, and belongs to the kind of verse of which, as King James I says, 'the maist part be out of ordour, and keipis na kynde nor reule of flowing, and for that cause are callit *tumbling verse*.' It is well described as follows in Disraeli's Curiosities of Literature: 'The Skeltonical short verse, contracted into five or six, and even four, syllables, is wild and airy. In the quick-returning rhymes, the playfulness of the diction, and the pungency of new words, usually ludicrous, often expressive, and sometimes felicitous, there is a stirring spirit which will be best felt in an audible reading. The velocity of his verse has a carol of its own. The chimes ring in the ear, and the thoughts are flung about like coruscations.' Skelton has the further peculiarity of borrowing in his free way the device of 'macaronic' poetry, which properly consists of the addition to half-lines in one language of half-lines in another (generally Latin), but which in a wider sense of the term means the insertion of foreign fragments, quotations, proverbs, and phrases of all kind, by way of varying and enlivening the diction. Skelton himself justly says of his verse, Colyn Cloute, 53–58:

'For though my ryme be ragged,
Tattered and iagged,
Rudely rayne beaten,
Rusty and moughte [moth] eaten,
If ye take well therwith,
It hath in it some pyth.'

Skeltonical verse is introduced in Munday's The Downfall of Robert Earl of Huntington in the mouth of Skelton himself, who in this play appears as a kind of Prologue and Chorus, and performs the part of Friar Tuck, in which he likewise often falls into (iv. 2)—

'the vein
Of ribble-rabble rhymes Skeltonical.'

For other examples of the use of this metre see Dyce's Introduction to his edition of Skelton's Poetical Works, pp. cvii–cxxx.

41. *lurdan* (from Old French *lourdin*, Modern *lourdaud*, from *lourd*, heavy; compare in Gower's Confessio Amantis, bk. v, 'so lourd a wight'), a lumpish, lazy fellow. Cf. Puttenham, The Arte of English Poesie, bk. I. ch. xiii: 'for as yet for lacke of good ciuility and whole-

Digitized by Google

some doctrines, there was greater store of lewde lourdaines then of wise and learned Lords.' The word is frequently used by Skelton, so in Magnyfycence, 1848:

'I sawe a losell lede a lurden, and they were bothe blynde';

and also spelt by him 'lurdayne' and 'lurdeyne.' It likewise occurs in the forms 'lourd' and 'lourden,' and was at one time supposed to be derived from 'lord Dane,' in hatred and derision of the Danes. See the references to this etymology, cited by Nares, ii. 528, in Lambarde's Perambulation of Kent, The Mirror for Magistrates, and Warner's Albion's England.

63. *For they say*, because they say. See note to i. 121.

67. *lovely*. This word, as a general epithet of praise, is a favourite with both Greene and Marlowe. In 2 Tamburlaine, i. 3, the hero calls his sanguinary sons 'lovely boys.'

68. *sugar'd*. One of the many examples of the use of a participial form with a merely adjectival force; see Abbott, § 294, and compare 'azur'd' in Doctor Faustus, xiii. 109. 'Sugar'd' merely means 'sweet as sugar,' and was so used metaphorically, as in Alphonsus King of Arragon, Prologue, 5, 'Homer's sugar'd Muse,' and in the well-known passage in Meres's Palladis Tamia, Wit's Treasury mentioning Shakespeare's 'sugared Sonnets among his private friends.'

69. *Bewrays*, discovers or betrays. So in Orlando Furioso,

'These words bewray thou art no base-born Moor';

in Edward II, i. 2. 34,

'His countenance bewrays he is displeased';

and frequently in Shakespeare. Compare 'thy speech bewrayeth thee' in St. Matthew xxvi. 73. The dialect form 'wree' still recalls the A. S. 'wrégan,' to accuse (German *rügen*).

71. *a proctor*, a person who speaks with irresistible authority as the executive officer of the University.

73. *veriment*, truly. Chaucer has the form 'verament' in the Rime of Sir Thopas, 2:

'Listeneth, lordings, in good entent,
And I wol tell you *verament*
Of mirth and of solas.'

74. *cease of*. 'Of' is here used in its original sense of 'from,' as the form 'off' is in 'to leave off.'

76. *talis*, tales, what I tell you.

77. *Walis*, Wales. So Skelton in Ware the Hauke, 315-318, rhymes:

'From Granado to Galis [Calais],
From Wynchelsee to Walys,
*Non est* braynsycke *talis*,' &c.



Digitized by Google

78. *gregis*, congregation. Miles compliments the doctors by using a quasi-academical term.

81. *Henry's white son.* Compare A Looking-Glass for London and England: 'Therefore that I may do my duty to you, good master, and to make a white son of you, I will so beswinge jealousy out of you as you shall love me the better while you live'; where Dyce has the following note: '"white" is an epithet of endearment, common in our old writers: so Heywood and Broome in their Late Lancashire Witches, 1634 [act i.], "A merry song now, mother, and thou shalt be my white girle"; and Whiting in his Albino and Bellama, 1638 (or 1637):

"A votary, Albino cal'd by name
Nor Fortune's white boy, yet of Abby-blond."'

Cf. Middleton, Women beware Women, iii. 1. 37. In 1644 was printed a small 4to. tract entitled 'The Devill's *White* Boyes, a mixture of malicious malignants,' &c. See also Nares, ii. 960, *s.v.* 'White Boy,' where T. Warton's illustration is given, that Dr. Busby used to call his favourite scholars his 'white boys.' This popular significance of 'white' lends a kind of emphasis to the necessarily frequent employment of the adjective in Middleton's allegorical play A Game at Chess.

82. *doting night-caps.* Ralph may specially refer to the caps of Doctors of Law and Physic, which are soft to the touch and comfortable of aspect.

*Ib. capable of*, equal to understanding, recognizing.

83. *ingenious*, intellectual (from *ingenium*).

84. *a ship.* See below, l. 101.

85. *niniversity.* A ninny (derived by Johnson from the Span. 'niño,' a child; the fuller form 'ninnyhammer' is apparently post-Elizabethan, as is 'nincompoop' from *non compos*) is a fool; compare 'a pied ninny' in The Tempest, iii. 2. 71; R. Armin's A Nest of Ninnies (1608) is a collection of anecdotes of more or less celebrated fools and jesters.

86. *the Bankside in Southwark*, a part of the borough of Southwark, near St. Saviour's Church, so called from its situation on the river-side, where several theatres were successively built, among them the Globe in 1599; and which from the reign of Henry II downwards had an evil reputation.

89. *pantofles*, slippers. The 'pantoffles' worn by ladies in the Elizabethan age and the early Stuart period were richly coloured and ornamented; see the passages quoted in Fairholt's Costume in England, p. 545. In Peele's Edward I, vi. 1, Queen Elinor calls for her 'pantables' or 'pantaphels.'

90. *with the cork.* Fairholt gives an account of a cork shoe of the

Digitized by Google

age of Elizabeth found in the Thames, which proves that 'between the upper leather and the sole was placed a pad of cork rising considerably towards the heel'; and cites from Wily Beguiled the exclamation of one of the female characters: 'How finely could I foot it in a pair of new cork'd shoes I had bought.'

90. *pinnace* (Fr. *pinasse*, Ital. *pinassa*, Span. *pinaça*), properly a small sloop or bark attending a larger vessel (Johnson); hence the word is here used perversely.

92. *pioners*. This is, according to Dyce, the usual, if not the invariable spelling in our old writers of this word, which should here be accentuated on the penultimate; compare Peele's The Old Wives' Tale:

'Well said; thou playest these pioners well.'

The word (for the use of which in our passage compare Hamlet, i. 5. 163) is from the French *pionnier*, Old French *peonier*, which properly signifies a foot-soldier, like the French *pion*, Old French *peon*, from the Italian *pedone* (*pes*); hence the 'pawn' in chess.

99. *utrum horum mavis*, doubtless a common form of offering a dilemma in academical disputations.

101. *Like Barclay's ship*. The quartos, according to Dyce, have 'Bartlets ship.' Miles, says Dyce, alludes to 'The Shyp of Folys of the Worlde, translated out of Laten Frenche and Doche into Englysshe Tongue, by Alexander Barclay Preste. London by Richard Pynson. 1509, folio.' For a full account of Barclay and his famous translation see the Introduction to Jamieson's edition, which preserves the indispensable woodcuts (Edinburgh, 1874). Concerning its original (of which a prose translation by Watson was printed by Wynkyn de Worde)—the Narrenschiff of Sebastian Brant, which appeared in 1494 and which Gervinus calls the centre of the whole didactive poetry of the age—the necessary information will be found in Goedeke's recent edition (Leipzig, 1872). Inasmuch as the very first section of Barclay's poem treats of 'inprofytable bokes' and addresses itself to 'worthy doctours and Clerkes curious,' Miles's allusion is specially apt.

106. *Domine Dawcock*. This expression is, as Dyce observes, borrowed from Skelton himself. See his Ware the Hauke (where the last two lines of the quotation serve as a refrain):

'*Construas hoc!*
*Domine* Dawcocke!
Ware the hawke!'

Compare also The Bowge of Courte, 303; and Howe the Douty Duke of Albany, &c., 380. Hence the term 'daw' was frequently employed



Digitized by Google

as equivalent to 'simpleton'; so in Jonson's Epicoene Sir John Daw is a foolish knight.

107. *hare-brain'd.* Compare the popular expression 'as mad as a March hare.'

108. *taunt us up.* Compare note to iii. 22.

111. *beadles*, or bedels, the officers attached to the person of the Vice-Chancellor and the Proctors of the University. The office is said to be of great antiquity; until recently there were at Oxford an Esquire Bedel and two Yeoman Bedels (distinguished according to the Faculties), with a Sub-Bedel.

112. *Bocardo*, 'i.e. the old north gate of Oxford, which was used as a prison; so called, we may certainly presume, from some allusion to the Aristotelian syllogism in *Bocardo*. It was taken down in 1771.' Dyce.—'*Bocardo*' is the technical name for one of the moods of the third syllogistic figure. From the extreme difficulty of reducing it to the first figure, '*Bocardo*' was a bye-word among logic-students; and the gaol at Oxford was called by this name, as being hard to get out of.

*Ib. roister*, roisterer, rioter. 'Ralph Roister Doister' is the title of the earliest extant English comedy, and the name of its hero, a vain-glorious blockhead, copied from the Pyrgopolinices in the Miles Gloriosus of Plautus. The name recurs in other early English plays. The verb to 'roist' is also used in the sense of to 'riot.' Douce connects 'roister' (and perhaps 'row') with rouse and carouse. See note to ix. 267.

113. *bolts*, irons to fasten a prisoner's legs. Compare Measure for Measure, v. 1. 350: 'Away with him to prison: lay bolts enough upon him.'

115. *What sayest.* See note on vi. 151.

119. *flurt*, explained in Nares, i. 318, as 'a satirical gesture,' with a reference to Quarles's Emblems:

> 'And must these smiling roses entertain
> The blows of scorn, and flurts of base disdain?'

The O.E. 'flærd,' mockery, occurs in the Ormulum.

120. *revel-dash.* Skelton, in The Bowge of Courte, 368, has the similar compound 'reuell route.'

130. *only*, singularly, specially. See Abbott, § 258, and compare The Faerie Queene, ii. 1. 2. 4:

> 'His onely hart-sore, and his onely foe.'

The A.S. 'ænlic' signifies singular, excellent.

131. *Sussex.* The quartos, 'Essex.' (Dyce.)

*Ib. Ermsby*, 'a trisyllable here, I believe.' (Dyce.) There can be no doubt that this is correct. As to the influence of the letter *r* in

Digitized by Google

introducing an extra syllable see the examples discussed in Abbott, § 478.

132. *One of the privy-chamber*, a chamberlain. Compare the phrase 'of the King's chamber'; as in Macbeth, i. 7. 76:

'those sleepy two
Of his own chamber';

and Pericles, i. 1. 152:

'You are of our chamber, and our mind partakes
Her private actions to your secrecy.'

136. *make greater scapes*, commit greater extravagances, improprieties of conduct. A 'scape' is an 'escape' or deviation from rule. Compare 'escapade.'

139. I have inserted Grosart's stage-direction.

142. *upon that*, on that condition.

## *Scene VIII.*

2. *as did Cassius.* The reference is to the artfulness with which Cassius conducted the conspiracy against Caesar. See Plutarch's Life of Brutus.

*Ib. thy.* The quartos, 'his.' (Dyce.)

4. *Lynceus.* The name of Lynceus (doubtless originally given in allusion to the eyes of the lynx), the steersman of the Argo, became proverbial for one who keeps a keen look-out. Accordingly, in Goethe's Faust, Part ii, Act iii, Lynceus appears as the keeper of the watch-tower.

*Ib. from the shores of Graecia.* A watch-tower was built in Peloponnesus already in the eighth century by Leo III. (Loeper, in a note on the above passage in Goethe's Faust.)

7. *fancies*, loves. Compare note to l. 39 below; and v. 79.

8. *portace.* See note to vi. 137.

13. *what answer'st.* See note to vi. 151.

16. *Whenas.* See note to i. 75.

*Ib. curious*, exquisite. Compare note to i. 64.

19. *your honour.* Compare i. 170; and see note to Doctor Faustus, x. 45.

21. *How that.* See note to Doctor Faustus, x. 15.

24. *Injurious.* Compare note to Doctor Faustus, x. 88.

25. *Hephaestion*, the favourite on the occasion of whose death Alexander the Great displayed so extravagant a grief. See Plutarch's Life of Alexander.

26. *passions.* The quarto of 1594, 'passion.' (Dyce.)

Digitized by Google

33. *corrival*, rival. Compare 1 Henry IV, i. 3. 207:

'So he that doth redeem her thence might wear
Without corrival all her dignities.'

So Greene uses 'coequal' for 'equal' in Orlando Furioso:

'With a sweet applause
Make me in terms coequal with the gods.'

Compare also 'copartner' for 'partner.'

The word 'corrival' is also used in the sense of 'companion'; see Menaphon (Greene's Works, ed. Grosart), vi. 71; 'she expected as others did the arriuall of her newe corriuall'; and 1 Henry IV, iv. 4. 31:

'And many moe corrivals and dear men
Of estimation and command in arms';

Shakespeare uses 'competitor' in the same way, Antony and Cleopatra, v. 1. 42.

35. *quite*, requite. See note on v. 112.

*Ib. 'fore that*, afore or before that. See note to Doctor Faustus, x. 15.

36. *awry*. The prefix *a* in this word is the O. E. 'an,' modern 'on,' as in 'amid,' 'anew.'

38. *still*, ever. Compare Doctor Faustus, xiv. 110.

39. *fancy*, love, as again 109 and 120, and x. 76; and compare above 7, and v. 79. So in Orlando Furioso:

'Damsel be gone; fancy [i.e. love] hath taken leave.'

*Ib. but over-fond*, only too foolish.

45. *cipher out*, express clearly. For a similar use of the word 'to cipher' see the passage from Gough's Strange Discovery, cited in Nares.

48. *force men fall*. See note to Doctor Faustus, iii. 36.

53. *Sethin planks*. 'Sethin' (for which the quarto of 1655 reads 'Sething') or 'Sethim' is clearly another form of 'shittim'; see Exodus xxv. 10: 'And they shall make an ark of shittim wood.' In Henry of Alcmaar's Reineke de Fos, ed. Scheller (Brunswick, 1825), bk. ii. ch. viii. ll. 14 seqq., Sethim-wood is mentioned as the undecaying material of the inner wall-panels of Solomon's temple. Cf. A. F. H. Geyder's translation (Breslau, 1844), ll. 5596–5604, and the note on l. 5597, citing similar passages from Maerlant's Reimbibel and Thomas Cautipratensis' Liber de Natura.—Hence the modern corruption 'satin-wood.' This renders futile several guesses as to words of which 'Sethin' is supposed to have been a mis-spelling; among the rest Wagner's, who on the strength of v. 55:

'Topt with the lofty firs of Lebanon,'

Digitized by Google

conjectures 'Sedarn' (cedarn) to have been mutilated into 'Sethin' by the hand of a stupid printer.

57. *Like Thetis shalt thou wanton*, i.e. sport. Thetis, the consort of Peleus and mother of Achilles, was a Nereid.

59. *lavoltas*. This word had a great fascination for the Elizabethan writers. In Greene's Menaphon (Works, ed. Grosart, vi. 36) we read 'how *Phœbus* fetched his Lauoltas on the purple Plaines of *Neptunus*, as if he had meant to haue courted *Thetis* in royaltie of his roabes.' In Troilus and Cressida, iv. 4. 88, Troilus confesses that he

'cannot sing,
Nor heel the high lavolt.'

See also Soliman and Perseda (printed 1599, and attributed to Kyd), act i:

'Leave protestations now; and let us hie
To tread lavolto, that is women's walk;'

T. Heywood, The Rape of Lucrece, iii. 4:

'Instead of riot, quaffing and the practice
Of high lavoltoes to the ravishing sound
Of chambering music';

and The Pilgrimage to Parnassus, iv. 396-7:

'Love keeps his revels in Corinna's browes,
Daunces levaltoes in her speaking eye.'

The 'lavolta,' 'lavolto,' or 'lavolt' is described in Nares as 'a kind of dance for two persons, consisting a good deal in high and active bounds. By its own name it should be of Italian origin; but Florio, in "Volta," calls it a French dance, and so Shakespeare seems to make it, Henry V, iii. 5. 33 [Bourbon *loquitur*]:

"They bid us to the English dancing schools,
And teach lavoltas high, and swift corantos."

See however Dekker and Ford's The Sun's Darling, ii. 1:

"*Folly*. . . . He's an Italian dancer, his name—
*Dancer*. Signor Lavolta, messer mio."

Compare the description of this dance by Sir John Davies in Orchestra, or A Poem on Dancing, stanza 70:

"Yet is there one the most delightful kind,
A lofty jumping, or a leaping round," &c.'

From some curious lines cited from one of Sir James Harington's Epigrams describing 'the games that have been in request at court,' in W. Singer's Researches into the History of Playing Cards, &c., 1816, p. 254, it would appear that lavolta was either the name of a game, or more probably an expression used at play.

60. *Sirens . . . psalteries*. Mr. J. A. Symonds, who in his Shakspere's Predecessors, p. 563, quotes this passage as an example of

Digitized by Google

Greene's extravagant imagery, which, because it lacks the animating fire of Marlowe's rapture, degenerates into mere bombast, adds: 'There is one good line here. "Sirens with harps and silver psalteries" is pretty; and the whole passage illustrates the rococo of the English Renaissance which Marlowe made fashionable.'

62. *their.* The quartos, 'her.' Dyce.

68. *Danaë*, whom Jove visited as a shower of gold.

69. *tirèd*, attired. Dyce's conjecture for the readings 'tied' and 'try' of the quartos.

*Ib. in Latona's webs*, as if the rays of the sun were a garment fashioned for the sun-god by his mother Latona.

70. *lodge*, for 'lodging' or 'dwelling,' as xi. 12. Dyce compares Romeo and Juliet, iii. 2. 2 (according to the First Folio):

> 'Gallop apace, you fiery-footed steeds,
> Towards Phoebus' lodging.'

71. *the dulcet tones of frolic Mercury.* According to the Homeric Hymn to Hermes, the god on the day of his birth saw a tortoise in the path, and after killing the animal and clearing out the shell, converted it into a stringed instrument to which he sang joyous songs. Hence he is often depicted with the attribute of the tortoise, or as the inventor of the lyre.

74. *this point of schools*, this important argument in the disputations of the schools. Compare 'a point of cunning skill' for a 'test-experiment of learned skill,' ix. 86. A 'point of war' is used differently, in the sense of a signal of war on the trumpet.

75. *Ablata . . effectus.* 'If the cause is removed, the result disappears.' A logical formula.

78. *him.* For this insertion of a redundant pronoun when a proper name is separated by an intervening clause from its verb, see Abbott, § 242.

81. *miss*, lose. Compare in 1 Henry IV, v. 4. 105, 'a heavy miss,' for 'a heavy loss.' In Icelandic 'missa' is to lose.

83. *stab it.* Compare note to i. 103.

85. *Venus' courts.* See note to i. 70.

86. *conquest.* The quarto of 1594, 'conquests.' (Dyce.)

88. *cease*, cause to cease. Compare l. 133 below, and see Abbott, § 291.

90. *act it well*, execute the sentence thoroughly, carry it out to the end. To 'act' is used transitively in the sense of to 'perform' or 'accomplish,' ix. 50, 120, 139.

97. *vaunt him*, proudly display himself. Compare note on i. 127.

102. *over-live*, survive. Compare German 'überleben.'

103. *short*, shorten. Compare note to vi. 8.

Digitized by Google

103. *her.* Query 'our'? (Dyce.) Wagner, however, points out that 'loves' is used of a single person in ll. 124 and 133 of this scene.

104. *Rid me*, get rid of me. For this transitive use of 'to rid' compare Peele's Arraignment of Paris, iii. 4:

'I thank you, Sir, my game is quick, and rids [i.e. clears] a length of ground';

*ib.* iv. 4:

'And rid the man that he may know his pain';

and *ib.*:

'Apollo hath found out the only mean
To rid the blame from us and trouble clean';

and Sir Clyomon and Sir Clamydes:

'Ah death, no longer do delay, but rid the lives of twain.'

107. *abide*, undergo, suffer. Compare the A. S. 'ábídan,' to suffer, and the phrase 'to bide the brunt.'

113. *Damasco.* See note to iv. 27.

120, 121. *So in subduing . . . the richest spoil.* Compare the magnificent passage in Edward III, ii. 2:

'Shall the large limit of fair Britany
By me be overthrown, and shall I not
Master this little mansion of myself?
Give me an armour of eternal steel;
I go to conquer kings; and shall I then
Subdue myself, and be my enemy's friend?
It must not be';

and see also the dialogue between Alexander and Hephaestion in Lilly's Campaspe, v. 4:

'*Alex.* How now, Hephestion, is Alexander able to resist love as he list?

*Heph.* The conquering of Thebes was not so honourable as the subduing of these thoughts.

*Alex.* It were a shame Alexander should desire to command the world, if he could not command himselfe.'

130. *As if that.* See note to Doctor Faustus, x. 15.

131. *rich'd*, enriched. Compare note to vi. 8.

132. *And doth . . . true?* Query, 'And doth the English prince indeed mean true?' (Dyce.)

134. *the title of*, his title or claim to.

140. *Aspasia.* The real name of Aspasia of Phocaea, the favourite of Cyrus the younger, was Milto, but it was changed by her lover in memory of the famous Aspasia beloved by Pericles. After the death of Cyrus his favourite passed into the power of his brother King Artaxerxes, who gave her up to his son and heir Darius, but shortly

Digitized by Google

afterwards made her a priestess at Ecbatana. See Plutarch's Lives of Pericles and of Artaxerxes.

144. *revolt*, overthrown. As to this literal use of words now used metaphorically, see Abbott, p. 12. As to the omission of the *ed* after verbs ending in *t*, see note to ii. 13.

149. *I pray God I like her as I lov'd thee.* Dyce adopts Walker's counsel to 'read for harmony's sake, "'Pray God," and pronounce "lovèd."' But the emphasis seems better, because placing the antithesis where the sense demands it, if we accentuate:

'I pray God I like *her* as I loved *thee*';

moreover, the other way of reading the line creates an antithesis between 'like' and 'lovèd' hardly intended by Greene.

153. *looks.* Dyce doubts whether this can be the right word. Perhaps the word 'looks' may here be used in the sense of rapid, i.e. eager or hasty, glances. Below, xi. 14, the word is used of the glancing rays of the moon.

159. *neat*, pure. Compare Peele's The Old Wives' Tale:

'*Del.* Is this the best wine in France?

*Sac.* Yes.

*Del.* What wine is it?

*Sac.* A cup of neat wine of Orleans, that never came near the brewers in England.'—Hence 'neat' is also used of wine not mixed with water. Compare also the phrase 'the net price.'

160. *your grace.* See note to Doctor Faustus, x. 45.

162. *respect*, consider, take into account. Compare 2 Henry VI, iii. 1. 24:

'Me seemeth then it is no policy,
Respecting [i.e. considering] what a rancorous mind he bears
And his advantage following your decease,
That he should come about your royal person.'

Compare the phrase 'with respect to.'

## *Scene IX.*

This scene may, as Wright remarks in his Sorcery and Magic, i. 128, though referring to an earlier episode in the story-book of Friar Bacon, 'be taken as a sort of exemplification of the class of exhibitions which were probably the result of a superior knowledge of natural science, and which were exaggerated by popular imagination. They had been made, to a certain degree, familiar by the performances of the skilful jugglers who came from the East, and who were scattered throughout Europe;

Digitized by Google

and we read not unfrequently of such magical feats in old writers. When the Emperor Charles IV was married in the middle of the fourteenth century to the Bavarian princess Sophia in the city of Prague, the father of the princess brought a waggonload of magicians to assist in the festivities. Two of the chief proficients in the art, Zytho the great Bohemian sorcerer and Gouin the Bavarian, were pitted against each other, and we are told that after a desperate trial of skill, Zytho, opening his jaws from ear to ear, devoured his rival without stopping till he came to his shoes, which he spit out, because, as he said, they had not been cleaned. After having performed this strange feat, he restored the unhappy sorcerer to life again.' As to the recurring idea of contests between magicians, see Introduction, p. cli, note 4.

3. *mountains.* This is a poetical licence in topography. The German traveller Hentzner, writing in 1598, mentions 'the hills shaded with wood' encompassing the plain in which Oxford lies. See the Introduction to Harrison's Description of England (in the New Shakspere Society's Publications), p. lxxxvii, and compare Harrison's own account, p. 71.

4. *battling.* The verb 'battle' is equivalent to 'batten,' and properly signifies to grow fat. Compare x. 59; and the passage cited in Nares, i. 6, from The Faerie Queene, vi. 8. 38:

> 'The best advizement was, if bad, to let her
> Sleepe out her fill without encomberment;
> For sleepe, they sayd, would make her battill better.'

The transitive use of the word is secondary. At Oxford the terms 'battels' (College provisions) and 'to battel' (to take out provisions from College) are still in use; and at Winchester, as Mr. W. A. S. Benson informs me, the word 'battling' still survives as the name given to a weekly allowance received by the boys of the College. Diez gives the cognate English words 'batful,' very fertile, 'battable,' capable of tillage, and 'batner,' a fatted ox. The derivation is from the Teutonic root 'bat,' which appears in the forms 'better' and 'best.' See Skeat *s. v.* Better.

*Ib. lade,* laden. For other examples of curtailed forms of past participles common in Early English, and used by Elizabethan authors, owing to the tendency to drop the participial inflexion *en,* see Abbott, § 343. So Chaucer uses 'take' for 'taken,' &c.

5. *The town . . . colleges.* It is needless to observe that this spirited description of Oxford applies rather to the age of Greene than to that of Friar Bacon. Speaking of the fifteenth century, Anstey remarks (Introduction to Munimenta Academica, p. lx), that 'of the buildings now at Oxford and which would strike the eye of the stranger, there

Digitized by Google

were few. He would not see at his entrance the tower of Magdalen College (built about 1473); the old Hospital of S. John's was then standing, and used for some years by the new College which displaced its tenants. He would, however, see the spires of S. Mary's and of old All Saints', and the tower of S. John's (Merton) churches. These, with the tower of New College, and the spire of S. Frideswide, alone remain.'

7. *principles of art*, that which lies at the root of the liberal arts. Compare Doctor Faustus, i. 138.

10. *full of pleasant walks*. The College gardens have always been one of the chief charms of our ancient Universities, with their lordly trees and 'level lawns' (Gray). Hentzner notes of the Oxford of 1598 that after meals every student is at liberty 'either to retire to his own chambers, or to walk in the College garden, there being none that hath not a delightful one.'

11. *But for the doctors . . . learnèd*. It can hardly be supposed that Greene, of all men, should have here intended to insinuate as his own the sneer which he puts into the mouth of the 'Hapsburg' doctor. A famous foreign scholar, however, who visited Oxford about the time when this play was written, takes very much the same view of the Oxford doctors as that suggested by Vandermast. Giordano Bruno (who was in England from near the end of 1583 to about the end of 1585) gives the following account of the Oxford professors in a passage referred to by W. König (Shakespeare und Giordano Bruno, in Jahrbuch der deutschen Shakespeare-Gesellschaft, xi. 104), which seems worth extracting from his dialogue 'La Cena de le Ceneri,' no. iv (Opere, Wagner's edition, 1830, i. 179):

'*Frulla.* Questi son i frutti d'Inghilterra; e cercatene pur quanti volete, che li trovarete tutti dottori in grammatica, in questi nostri giorni, ne' quali in la felice patria regna una costellazione di pedantesca ostinatissima, ignoranza e presunzione mista con una rustica inciviltà, che farebbe prevaricar la pazienza di Giobbe. E se non il credete, andate in Oxonia e fatevi raccontar le cose intravenute al Nolano [Bruno himself], quando pubblicamente disputò con que' dottori in teologia in presenza del principe Alasco Polacco, et altri de la nobilità inglese. Fatevi dire, come si sapea rispondere a gli argomenti, come restò per quindici sillogismi quindici volti, qual pulcino entro la stoppa, quel povero dottor, che come il corifeo de l'academia ne puosero avanti in questa grave occasione! Fatevi dire, con quanta inciviltà e discortesia procedea quel porco, e con quanta pazienza e umanità quell' altro, che in fatto mostrava esser Napoletano nato, et allevato sotto più benigno cielo! Informatevi, come gli han fatte finire le sue pubbliche letture, e quelle de immortalitate animae, e quelle de quintuplice sphaera.

Digitized by Google

*Smitho.* Chi dona perle a' porci, non si de' lamentar, se gli son calpestate.'

'There is indeed,' writes Milton of Oxford in 1656, 'as you write, plenty of amenity and salubrity in the place where you are; there aie books enough for the needs of a University: if only the amenity of the spot contributed so much to the genius of the inhabitants as it does to pleasant living, nothing would seem wanting to the happiness of the place.' See Milton's letter to Richard Jones, translated in Masson's Life of Milton, v. 267.

13. *I tell thee, German,* &c. This assertion resembles that of Harrison, who observes (*u. s.*, p. 81): 'Finallie, this will I saie that the professors of either of those faculties' [Law and Medicine] 'come to such perfection in both' [the English] 'vniversities, as the best students beyond the sea doo in their owne or else where.'

*Ib. Hapsburg* (quarto of 1630, 'Haspurge'; quarto of 1655, 'Haspuge'). Compare iv. 45.

14. *Oxenford.* The old spelling of 'Oxford'; compare the first line of The Millere's Tale:

'Whilom ther was dwelling in Oxenforde,' &c.

17. *Belgic,* as Vandermast is a Netherlander.

18. *charm,* overcome by thy magic.

22. *worthies.* 'Worthies' are representative personages of note; so the Nine Worthies of the world were the chief heroes of history, and London had nine municipal Worthies of her own. Compare Fuller's 'History of the Worthies of England.'

23. *The doubtful question,* the puzzling question, that which he will prove unable to answer satisfactorily. Compare note to Doctor Faustus, v. 113.

24. *pyromancy.* See note on ii. 15.

25. *geomancy.* According to the spirit Auerhan, geomancy is 'especially performed with a die of sixteen angles; this the artists cast on the ground, utter certain conjurationes, psalms and other fictitious words taught by them or us [the spirits], or they use a tetragonal die, in which case they must cast sixteen times. And after this has been done, figures are formed which they call "mother," of these others are formed which they call "*filias,*" and then out of these eight they form four figures more; thus there are twelve altogether, like unto the twelve signs of heaven; so afterwards they construct a "thema geomanticum," and therefrom prognosticate all that they desire to know. They ask questions concerning all manner of things: as to how long a man shall live; whether he shall grow rich or not; and whether one who has journeyed away shall return,' &c. See Scheible's Kloster, iii. 120–122, where there is more of this. Cf. also the note to Dante's Purgatorio,

Digitized by Google

xix. 6, in the German translation by 'Philalethes' (King John of Saxony), 2nd ed., 1865, p. 77, where it is stated that the geomantic calculations, originally carried on by points marked in the sand, were afterwards made with pen and ink. This note cites a treatise entitled Vollkommene Geomantie (Freistadt, 1702).

29. *cabalists*, writers on magic. See note to ii. 106.

30. *Hermes*. 'The numerous writings (said by Clemens Alexandrinus to fill forty-two books) which bear the mythological name of Hermes Trismegistus, are productions of Egyptian Platonists. Some belonged to the school of Philo, and were known to Plutarch; others were of a much later date and not unaffected by Christianity. . . . These writings, which have borrowed their name from the god *Thoth*, . . . are only so far interesting as showing the extent to which the adoption and incorporation of existing beliefs and traditions were carried in the age of Ammonius (170 to after 243 A. D.) as the founder of the eclectic school of comprehension.' Donaldson, History of the Literature of Ancient Greece, iii. 186. Compare Gower's Confessio Amantis, bk. iv:

> 'Of whom if I the names calle,
> Hermes was one the first of alle,
> To whom this art is most applied'—

viz. 'alconomie' (alchemy); and 'thrice-great Hermes' in Milton's Il Penseroso, 88. As to the lectures of Cornelius Agrippa on 'Hermes Trismegistus,' see Morley's Life of Agrippa, i. 284 seqq. There is a Dutch translation of Hermes Trismegistus, with 'ene schoone Voorrede' proving that the 'grote Philosooph heeft gebloeyt voor Moyses'; its date is 1652, but it indicates that the fame of Hermes was spread in Vandermast's country.—The choice of the name 'Hermes' was due to the magical (magnetic) powers ascribed to that god; already an old gloss translated 'caduceus' by 'Wunsciligerta' (wishing-rod). See on this subject Ennemoser's History of Magic, ii. 43 seqq. (Howitt's translation).

*Ib. Melchie*. 'Meant, I suppose, for Malchus (Melech), i.e. Porphyrius.' Dyce. 'Porphyry owes the name by which he is so well known to the fashion of translating foreign designations which was common in that age. He was born A.D. 233 at Batanea (Bashan), and his native name was Malchus (i.e. Melek, "a king"). His friend Amelius converted the Semitic name into "Basileus," and Longinus, it seems, subsequently changed this substantive into the adjective Porphyrius (πορφύριος, "clad in purple or royal robes"), which was intended as a synonym. He was a pupil of Origen at Caesarea, and afterwards at Athens was instructed by Longinus in that form of Neo-Platonism which the great critic still maintained. He ultimately at Rome became one of the most zealous adherents of Plotinus, whose

Digitized by Google

works he published and whose biography he wrote. He died some time after 302 A.D. Among his works are a Life of Pythagoras, a fragment probably belonging to his general history of the philosophers, and "The Epistle to Anebo," an effort of scepticism directed against opinions which Porphyrius himself entertained at one period of his life. He raises doubts as to the truth of dualism and daemonology, and as to the efficacy of theurgic arts, incantations and animal sacrifice. The work provoked a reply generally attributed to his scholar Iamblichus.' Donaldson, *u. s.*, iii. 198 seqq.—As to the significance of Porphyry for the history of magic, see Ennemoser, *u. s.*, i. 443 seqq.

30. *Pythagoras.* Compare notes on ii. 73 and on Doctor Faustus, xiv. 105. As to Pythagoras's 'theory of magic,' see Ennemoser, *u. s.*, i. 126; and compare *ib.* 393.

33. *a punctum squarèd to the rest*, I suppose equivalent to 'a mere point, when measured by or compared with the rest.'

34. *compass*, for the plural 'compasses,' i.e. sizes. Compare 'post-horse' for 'post-horses,' v. 5, and 'mightiness' for 'mightinesses,' xvi. 69; and see as to the omission of the plural or possessive syllable in writing, and still more frequently in pronunciation, with nouns in which the singular ends in s, se, ss, ce and ge, Abbott, § 471. Compare also note on Doctor Faustus, opening Chorus, l. 28.

39. *only*, i.e. it alone.

40. *that place*, i.e. the fire of the sun.

43. *concave latitudes.* See ll. 34–37 above.

45, 46. *the spirits . . . geomantic fiends.* These are the 'subjects of the elements' referred to in Doctor Faustus, i. 120. 'Spirits' is here a monosyllable.

47. *ground.* The quartos, 'grounds.' (Dyce.)

48. *strange necromantic.* As Dyce observes, something has dropt out between these two words.

50. *acted*, performed. Compare note to viii. 90.

51. *terrae filii.* See note to l. 25 above.

55. *if they be but charg'd* (quarto of 1630, 'char'd'), i.e. commissioned to do so. Compare below, 104 and 136.

56. *massy.* See note on Doctor Faustus, i. 145.

59. *when proud Lucifer fell.* Compare Doctor Faustus, iii. 70 seqq.

61. *as*, i.e. as they retained.

62. *All subject under Luna's continent*, all being in a subject condition under the moon's sphere. Compare xi. 15, and note on Doctor Faustus, i. 120. The 'continent' is that which contains or covers; compare King Lear, iii. 2. 58:

> 'Close pent-up guilts,
> Rive your concealing continents.'

Digitized by Google

—As to this notion of 'sublunary devils,' and in general illustration of this part of the disputation, see Burton's Anatomy of Melancholy, i. 2. i. 2. The locality of the fallen angels is described as in ll. 63 seqq. in the Dialogue of Salomon and Saturn, *u. s.*, ii. 173, and in the Cursor Mundi, *u. s.*, i. 36.

63. *hung*. The quartos, 'hang.' (Dyce.)

64. *second faults*, i.e. less faults.

67. *understanding*, intelligence or capacity (for performing works of higher magic).

69, 70. *serve for*, equivalent to 'serve.'

70. *vile*. The quartos, 'vild.' (Dyce.) Compare note to Doctor Faustus, i. 107.

75. *instance*, experiment. Royal, as well as popular, audiences often prefer the experimental to the expository part of a scientific lecture.

77. *English Harry*. See note to l. 178 below.

82. *the garden call'd Hesperides*. Compare Dekker and Ford's The Sun's Darling, iii. 3:

'My garden of th' Hesperides';

Edward III, iv. 4:

'The orchard of the Hesperides';

and Orlando Furioso, sc. 1:

'And richer than the plot Hesperides';

on which latter passage Dyce has the following note: 'Most of our writers, strangely enough, use "Hesperides" as the name of a place. So Shakespeare in Love's Labour's Lost, iv. 3. 341:

"Still climbing trees in the Hesperides."

And Greene again [in the passage in the text]; nay, even the very learned and very pedantic Gabriel Harvey has: "the watchfull and dreadfull dragon, which kept the goodly golden apples, in the Occidentall Islands of the Ocean, called Hesperides, one of the renowned prizes of douty Hercules, was a West Indian asse," &c. Pierce's Supererogation, &c., 1593, p. 167.'—The 'Hesperides' were no doubt originally conceived of as nymphs (the daughters of Night), to whom, together with the dragon Ladon, Hera had committed the custody of the golden apples on the Oceanic Isle. But the locality of Atlas and the Hesperides was shifted by later writers, as well as the route taken by Heracles to them. Strabo uses 'Εσπερίδες repeatedly as a geographical expression; and Dionysius (Periegetes) in his poetical geography identified these islands with the Cassiterides.

*The tree appears*. Such magical creations were frequently attributed to conjurers; already in Indian legend Divine power through the hand of a Brahman creates a garden, and Indian conjurers are to this day celebrated for producing flowering trees by their art. 'Virgil' conjured

Digitized by Google

up a garden for the use of Pope Benedict; a similar performance was attributed to Albertus Magnus, and from him transferred to Faustus in the Faustbuch (ch. lvi). See Kühne's note on this passage of the Faustbuch, and his reference to the description of 'tregetoures' performances in Chaucer's The Frankeleine's Tale, vv. 11454 seqq.

84. *Well done!* I have followed Dyce in placing Vandermast's exclamation after the appearance of the tree, though Grosart points out that this approval by Vandermast of what he sees hardly agrees either with his character or with his subsequent words. But it would have no point at all before the 'conjuring,' and may be regarded as an involuntary tribute of applause.

85. *lordings* (quarto of 1630, 'lordlings'); as again xvi. 6. Compare for this word (used already by Robert of Brunne) 2 Henry VI, i. 1. 145, and The Passionate Pilgrim, xvi. 1. In The Winter's Tale, i. 2. 63,

'Come, I'll question you
Of my lord's tricks and yours when you were boys:
You were pretty lordings then?'

the word appears to be used in a diminutive sense, such as the termination *ing* occasionally possesses. See Morris, English Accidence, p. 214.

86. *a point.* Compare note on viii. 74.

87. *Each*, equivalent to 'every' or 'any.' The A.S. *ælc* was thus used.

*Ib. scholar*, mere student or beginner.

89. *Alcmena's bastard*, Hercules.

*Ib. raz'd*, i.e. tore from the ground. The word is employed for the sake of the pun which follows.

106. *come*, descended. Compare Orlando Furioso:

'If thou be'st come of Lancelot's worthy line.'

111. *I have given non-plus.* Compare iv. 61.

112. *Sien*, Siena, the foundation of whose university is dated 1380.

114. *Frankfort, Lutetia, and Orleans.* 'The quartos, "Lutrech." This line is certainly mutilated; and so perhaps is the preceding line: from the Emperor's speech, iv. 41 seqq., it would seem that "Paris" ought to be one of the places mentioned here.' Dyce. Grosart reads: 'Franckford, Utrecht [Paris] and Orleance.' Considering, however, that all the towns mentioned with 'Lutrech' are university towns—'Frankfort' being the Silesian Frankfort-on-the-Oder, where a university was founded in 1506—and, furthermore, that Utrecht was *not* a university town till 1636, and that Vandermast as a Dutchman would hardly boast of having overcome the Dutchmen of Utrecht, I have ventured to put into the text Fleay's ingenious conjecture 'Lutetia.' In the high-flown diction of Vandermast the use of the Latin name can hardly be surprising.



Digitized by Google

116. *Crown me with laurel, as they all have done.* Vandermast asks that the King may bestow on him a wreath of laurel as a special compliment (compare note on iv. 64), as the universities mentioned by him have bestowed upon him the laurel wreath which accompanied the university degree of laureate (compare note to Doctor Faustus, iii. 32). This degree might be taken by the same person at several universities. See the entry in the Cambridge University Register on Skelton's admission *ad eundem* in 1493 (cited by Dyce in his Introduction to Skelton's Poetical Works, p. xiii): 'Conceditur Johī Skelton Poete in partibus transmarinis atque Oxon. Laurea ornato, ut apud nos eadem decoraretur.'

117. *to.* Query 'unto'?

120. *acted.* Compare note on viii. 90.

127. *take not now the foil,* do not suffer thyself to be foiled now. Compare the converse phrase to 'give the foil' in 1 Henry VI, v. 3. 23:

'Then take my soul, my body, soul and all,
Before that England give the French the foil.'

To 'foil' is from the O. Fr. *affoler*, Ital. *affollare*, to press hard; the Fr. *fouler* and Ital. *follare* are said to be derived from the Lat. *fullo*, a fuller. There is another Fr. *affoler*, to make a fool of, derived from the M. Lat. *follus*, said to come from *follĕre*, to move hither and thither, from *follis*, bellows.

128. *foretime*, for 'aforetime' or 'beforetime.' Compare note on ii. 156.

131. *he*, i. e. with whom I disputed.

133. *ruinate*, ruin. Compare 3 Henry VI, v. 1. 83:

'I will not ruinate my father's house.'

This is an example of one of the least pleasing kinds of new formations in Elizabethan English. Compare 'to affectionate' for 'to love,' x. 78.

140, 141. *By all the thrones . . . hierarchies.* Compare 1 Epistle to the Colossians, i. 16, 'thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers,' and Paradise Lost, v. 601:

'Thrones, Dominations, Virtues, Princedoms, Powers,'—

the line which Lauder, in his notorious essay, accused Milton of having stolen from T. Heywood's Frontispiece, where however the Orders of Angels are actually enumerated in the sequence adopted in the work itself, as given below. See Faustbuch, ch. xiii, in which the system of government (*Regiment und Principat*) of the devils is briefly expounded by Mephostophiles. The later treatises on magic variously developed the system of infernal government, which was regarded as corresponding to that of the celestial government. H. Cornelius Agrippa, De Occultâ Philosophia, lib. iii. cap. xvii. distinguishes three hierarchies and nine orders of angels, including in the 'higher hierarchy' Seraphim, Cherubim

Digitized by Google

and Thrones. The following chapter treats 'de ordinibus malorum daemonum, eorundemque casu, et naturis variis.' See Erich Schmidt, Zu den Quellen des ältesten Faustbuches, in Vierteljahrschrift für Literaturgeschichte, i. (1888), 195. Thomas Heywood's Hierarchy of the Blessed Angels (1637) is divided into nine books:

I. Uriel—the Seraphim;
II. Jophiel—the Cherubim;
III. Zaphkiel—the Thrones;
IV. Zadchiel—the Dominations;
V. Haniel—the Virtues;
VI. Raphael—the Powers;
VII. Camael—the Principats;
VIII. Michael—the Arch-Angell;
IX. Gabriel—the Angell.

Cf. Introduction, p. cvi. note. As to the Orders in the lower world, cf. Dante's Inferno, xxvii. 113, where Count Guido of Montefeltro (who had died a Franciscan monk) says that on his death he was sought by St. Francis, but that 'one of the black Cherubim' advanced a stronger claim for immediate possession.

In the Semiphoras Salomonis Regis (Scheible's Kloster, iii. 293) it is, however, stated that 'there be four parts of the world; the most subtle light of the spiritual world contains 4 *Hierarchias, Cherubin et Seraphin, Potestates et Virtutes, Archangelos et Angelos, Spiritus et Animas Hominum.*' And again (*ib.* p. 311): 'In the middle Hierarchia be Dominationes, Potestates, Virtutes, as spirits of intelligence, for governing the Universe: the first of these order what the others execute. The second oppose that which God's law can prevent. The third administer the Heavens, at times they procure the doing of miracles.' Agrippa's doctrine of Virtues, as sequels of the species and forms of the elements, may be gathered from the statement of it in Morley's Life of Agrippa, i. 121 seqq.; the use of the term in the technical books is, I suppose, more or less indefinite.

142. *obey to Vandermast.* For the construction compare Troilus and Cressida, iii. 1. 165:

> 'His stubborn buckles,
> With these your white enchanting fingers touch'd,
> Shall more obey than to the force of steel
> Or force of Greekish sinews.'

Compare French '*obéir à.*'

143. *Belcephon.* Compare ii. 56.

144. *Asmenoth, guider of the north.* So again, xi. 109: 'proud Asmenoth, ruler of the north.' See as to the phrase 'Prince of the East,' LUCIFER in Dramatis Personae of Doctor Faustus.

150. *doth more than art*, practises something beyond ordinary magic.

*Ib. or else I fail*, or I mistake.

153. *came.* 'The quartos, "come"; (but see what follows).' (Dyce.)

157. *for*, since, because. Compare vii. 63.



Digitized by Google

162. *'gainst the spring.* 'The quartos, "springs."' (Dyce.) As to this use of 'against' compare note on ii. 130.

163. *dooms*, sentences, decrees. Compare 'doomer,' x. 139.

*Ib. aphorisms.* See note on Doctor Faustus, i. 19.

170. *I will be . . . thyself.* Dyce thinks 'something wanting here'; but the line gives very good sense: 'I will reward thee as an English King should reward one who has done credit to England.'

172. *fit my cheer*, prepare my entertainment.

174. *as is.* I have ventured to insert 'is' into the text of the quartos, as by this insertion Greene is credited with a line which may conceivably have been remembered by Milton.

177. *amorets.* Compare the use of the word xii. 8, 'whence,' as Dyce observes, 'it is plain that Greene uses the word as equivalent to love-kindling looks. (Cotgrave has "*Amourettes*, Loue-tricks," &c.)' Thomas Heywood uses the word to signify a love-sonnet; Chaucer, in the Romaunt of the Rose, 4758, for a loving woman.

178. *Ned.* This familiar style of address is common with our old dramatists, even towards royal personages. Queen Eleanor is 'Nell' to King Edward (as in our play), as he is 'Ned' to her in Peele's Edward I; and in Greene's James IV the King of England calls his daughter, the King of Scotland's bride, 'my Doll,' 'lovely Doll,' 'fair Doll,' &c. Of course Ralph the fool takes the same liberty, and calls his prince 'Ned,' as Falstaff calls his 'Hal.' Even the German Emperor, above l. 77, addresses the King as 'English Harry.'

180. *teasers.* Compare note on i. 5.

*Ib. the toil*, the net.

182. *progress'd.* 'Progress' was the term usually applied to a royal journey. Compare e.g. Nichols' Progresses and Public Processions of Queen Elizabeth and King James I.

183. *entertain*, entertainment. See note to Doctor Faustus, xiii. 30.

185. *joint*, conjointly.

186. *welcome as*, as welcome as.

192. *Fair of all fairs*, fairest of all fair women. For the use of adjectives as substantives see Abbott, § 5; compare 'gentles,' x. 51; 'lovely,' *ib.* 111; and see note to Doctor Faustus, x. 81.

199. *so as*, in such a way that. See Abbott, § 109. Compare note to Doctor Faustus, Chorus before viii, line 11.

200. *accept of.* Compare iv. 29. Elinor's speech does credit to her Castilian training in the *stilo culto*.

205. *consorting greets*, harmonious greetings. 'Consort' is company, as xvi. 62, and 'to consort' to associate with. As to 'greets' for 'greetings' compare note to Doctor Faustus, xiii. 30.

209. *Salvete*, &c. The quarto of 1630 prints this Skeltonical verse as prose.

Digitized by Google

219. *sewer.* The 'sewer' was the officer who set on the dishes at a feast; the derivation of the word is not (as suggested in Nares) from O. Fr. 'escuyer' (esquire); see Tyrwhitt's note to The Squiere's Tale, 59:

'And eke it nedeth not for to devise
At every cours the order of hir service.
I wol not tellen of hir strange sewes,
Ne of hir swannes, ne hir heronsewes';

where he mentions the word 'sawer' and the O. Fr. 'asseour' from 'asseoir' to place; adding, 'the word "sewes" here signifies dishes, from the same original, as "assiette" in French still signifies "a little dish," or "plate."' The nature of the 'sewer's' office is illustrated by a stage-direction in Macbeth, i. 7, and by the following in Histrio-Mastix, or The Player Whipt, ii. 186–192:

'Bid them come in and sing. The meat's going up.
*Usher.* Gentlemen and yeomen, attend upon the Sewer.
. . . . . .
*Enter* Sewer *with service, in side livery coates.*'

222. *what skills*, what difference does it make (from O. N. 'skilja,' to separate, divide, to make a difference). Compare Sir Clyomon and Sir Clamydes:

'Whither I go it skills not, for Knowledge is my name';

and 2 Henry VI, iii. 1. 281:

'It skills not greatly who impugns our doom.'

*Ib. where the salt . . . behind.* For the well-known custom, according to which, as Dyce says, 'the seats at table above the salt-cellar (which used to be placed about the middle) were assigned to the more distinguished guests, the seats below it, to those of inferior rank,' compare the passage cited in Nares from Jonson's Cynthia's Revels, ii. 2: 'His fashion is not to take knowledge of him that is beneath him in clothes. He never drinks below the salt.'

224. *axioms.* Spelt 'actioms' in the quarto of 1594. Grosart.

226. *cover*, viz. the table (see l. 214 above). So in The Merchant of Venice, iii. 5. 62–66, Lorenzo says: 'Bid them cover the table, serve in the meat.' 'For the table, sir,' says Lancelot, 'it shall be served in; for the meat, sir, it shall be covered.' We still speak of 'covers' (Fr. *couverts*) being laid for dinner.

228. *chop*, where we should say 'hash.'

233. *Lordings* (quarto of 1630, 'Lordlings'). See note to l. 85 above.

*Ib. admire*, wonder (as in 'Nil admirari'). Compare Orlando Furioso:

'Heaven admires to see my slumbering dreams';

Digitized by Google

'wonder not, nor admire not in thy mind,' in Sir Andrew Aguecheek's letter, Twelfth Night, iii. 4. 165; and 'most admired disorder' in Macbeth, iii. 4. 110.

236. *place these potentates.* The Friar leaves it to the King to settle the places according to order of precedence among the imperial, royal and princely guests.

237. *cates.* See note to Doctor Faustus, i. 83.

240. *cates fit for.* Wagner, who is very sensitive about Greene's metrical freedoms, suggests 'cates fit but for.'

241. *of thy consent*, from thy consent. Compare xi. 60. 'To proceed of' is a construction used in our Liturgy.

242. *with such.* 'The quarto of 1594, "with such a."' Dyce reads 'with a'; but I agree with Grosart in thinking that Greene probably repeated the 'such.'

*Ib. pittance.* This word (French *pitance*, M. Latin *pitantia*, most probably derived from the old Romance *pite*, a trifle, M. Latin *picta* small coin, with a reminiscence of *pietas*, pity or charity) is used of a portion of food in The Taming of the Shrew, iv. 4. 61:

'You are like to have a thin and slender pittance';

which is explained, as Schmidt points out, by v. 70:

'One mess is like to be your cheer.'

248. *Content thee.* Compare note to i. 127.

*Ib. these.* 'The quartos, "thee."' (Dyce.)

250. *How little . . . wits*, how plain a living goes to our high thinking at the English Universities.

260. *in honours*, i. e. in outward show.

261. *drugs*, spices.

262. *carvels* (quarto of 1655, 'carveils'). 'Carvel,' 'carveil,' or 'caravel' (French *caravelle*) is a diminutive of 'carabus'; cf. N. Greek *καράβι*, and signifies a kind of ship, thus defined by Kersey in Nares, i. 135: 'A kind of light round ship, with a square poop, rigg'd and fitted out like a galley, holding about six score or seven score tun.' According to Littré, the term would seem to be Portuguese. As is well known, 'Madam Carvel' was the popular (or unpopular) English form of the name of Mdlle. de Keroualle (Duchess of Portsmouth), the mistress *en titre* of Charles II—perhaps in allusion to her light build.

*Ib. richest.* 'An error. (In the preceding line we have had "rich," and just after this we have "richer" and "richest").' (Dyce.)

*Ib. streights*, straits.

264. *royalise*, make royal, do royal honour to. Compare note to Doctor Faustus, i. 15.

265. *th' Ægyptian courtesan.* Cleopatra, who dissolved a pearl in wine.

Digitized by Google

266. *countermatch*, rival. Compare the form 'over-match,' i. 63.—Mark Antony.

267. *carous'd*. This verb is used both transitively and intransitively by Shakespeare. The word 'carouse' is the Old French *carrous*, from the German adverb *garaus*, quite out, i. e. to the bottom of the cup. 'Carousal' cannot have anything to do with the French *carrousel*, Italian *carosello* (supposed to be derived from the Latin *carrus* or *currus*, festive waggon); perhaps the English 'rouse' (compare German *Rausch* and cognate Norse words), though not derived from 'carouse,' was thought to be an abbreviation of it.

268. *Candy*. This place, which still gives its name to an infantile sweetmeat, is in Ceylon.

269. *Persia, down her Volga*. '"This," observes my friend Mr. W. N. Lettsom, "is much as if France were to send claret and burgundy down her Thames."' (Dyce.) Dekker, in The Seuen Deadly Sinnes of London, writes: '*Volga*, that hath fifty streames falling one into another, never ranne with so swift and vnresistable a current.'

270. *spicery*, like the German *Specerey*, which Frisch explains as 'aromata omnium specierum,' is from the Italian *spesieria*, a collection of drugs and spices—the name given to the magazines of apothecaries' and confectioners' wares in the Italian convents. Compare as to these words Max Müller, Lectures on the Science of Language, i. 303.

271. *mirabolans*. 'The quartos, "mirabiles." Mirabolans are dried plums: compare in Greene's Notable Discovery of Cosenage, 1591: "I have eaten Spanish mirabolanes, and yet am nothing the more metamorphosed."' Dyce. Compare also Jonson's The Alchemist, iv. 1:

'She melts
Like a myrobolane.'—

Goethe has a poem to Marianne von Willemer (Suleika), returning a box in which she had sent him 'Mirabellen.'

272. *suckets*, sugar-plums. The word is of frequent occurrence; so in Cyril Tourneur's The Atheist's Tragedie, ii. 5, 'candied suckets'; and in Lady Alimony (a play wrongly attributed to Lodge and Greene, for it mentions 'crop-eared histriomastixes'):

'For she accounts it as a fruitless toil
To browse on suckets in a barren soil';—

margined: 'Saltibus hirsutis haud spatiantur apes.'

275, 276. *Cates . . . gluttony*. 'A corrupted, or rather (as I think) a mutilated passage. The Rev. J. Mitford (in the Gentleman's Magazine for March 1833, p. 217) alters "lamp" to "balm." . . . "Balm," he says, "or the exudation of the Balsamum, was the *only export* of Judaea

Digitized by Google

to Rome; and the balm was peculiar to Judaea." But the correction "balm" does not suit what immediately follows.' Dyce. A bolder attempt has been made to cut the knot of this difficult passage by means of a suggestion adopted by Mr. Fleay, but seemingly due in its origin to Mr. William Bell's emendation, put forward in the Shakespeare Jahrbuch, 1865, i. 392, of Pericles iii. 1. 62, where instead of 'the air-remaining lamps,' for which Malone conjectured 'aye-remaining,' he proposed to read 'the air-retaining lamps,' i.e. lampreys. Undoubtedly the lamprey (muraena) was especially prized by Roman *gourmands*, and Greene might very possibly have had in his mind a story like that in Seneca's Epistles, xcv. 42, to which Professor Wagner appropriately directed my attention as cited by Friedländer, but in which mullet (mullus) is the object of emulation. I cannot say that I have met with any proof of Mr. Bell's assertion that in England the word 'lampreys' is, in common life, abbreviated into 'lamps,' nor can I recognize any close analogy between this form and 'shrimps' or 'whelks.'

276. *grudge not*, grumble not. Compare, among other passages, St. Luke v. 36 (Wiclif): 'and Farisses gruccheden, seyinge to his disciples, Whi eten ze and drynken with pupplicanis'; St. Mark xiv. 5 (Tyndale): 'they grudged agaynst her'; also The Tempest, i. 2. 249; and see below, xi. 111.

276. *a friar's feast*. Compare with the preceding burst of culinary enthusiasm, Sir Epicure Mammon's in Jonson's The Alchemist, ii. 1.

## *Scene X.*

3. *jacks of wine*, pitchers or jugs of wine. 'Black-jacks' are mentioned in Nares as a term formerly in use for a kind of pitchers made of leather. Compare Mucedorus: 'Then to the butterie hatch, to Thomas the butler for a jack of beer'; and Greene's James IV, ii. 1: 'The butler comes with a black-jack and says, Welcome, friend! here's a cup of the best for you.' Oldham, in the character of an Ugly Old Priest, compares his ears to 'a country justice's black-jack.' According to a note in the Index to R. Simpson's School of Shakespeare, 'the use of the vessel gave rise to the Frenchman's report, that "the English drink out of their boots."' Cf. Henry Shirley, The Martyr'd Soldier, iii. 1: 'wore his boots as wide as black-jacks or bombards tost by the King's guard.' See also note to v. 121, *s.v.* black-pots.

4. *jolly Margaret*. Jolly, like jovial, signifies merry, gay, born under the happy star Jupiter.

7. *Laxfield*. 'A large and pleasant village, near the source of the river Blythe, six miles N. by E. of Framlingham.' White, *u. s.*, p. 463.

Digitized by Google

7. *living*, income; as still used of ecclesiastical benefices. Compare a passage in George-a-Greene, from which a line has probably dropt out after the first line:

'To mend thy living take thou Middleham-castle,
The hold of both; and if thou want living, complain,
Thou shalt have more to maintain thy estate.'

8. *jointer*. Unless 'jointer,' as Wagner suggests, is to be taken as a printer's error for 'jointure,' and 'thy daughter' construed as a dative, the word 'jointer' must be understood as equivalent to its more appropriate feminine form 'jointress,' the person on whom a jointure is settled, which occurs in Hamlet, i. 2. 8:

'Our queen,
Imperial jointress to this warlike state.'

9. *So*, provided that. Compare l. 15; and Doctor Faustus, iii. 92.

10. *five-hundred marks*. The mark is 13*s.* 4*d.*, so that, reckoning the value of silver at six times the sum stated, Lambert 'could spend' what was equivalent to an income of about £2000 a year at the present day.

11. *lands-lord of thy holds*, landlord of thy tenements or farms.

12. *By copy all thy living lies in me*, i.e. all thy income is derived from land or farms lent out to thee by me on copyhold. Compare above, l. 7. 'Copyhold tenure' is properly that for which the tenant has to show nothing but the copy of the roll—a tenure which grew up out of encroachments by villains on their lords, by which a customary right was established.

13. *raise my due*, raise or increase my rents.

14. *enfeoff*. To 'enfeoff' is to grant out as a 'feoff,' fief or estate. Serlsby, I take it, means absolutely to make over his property to Margaret, while Lambert merely purposes to settle his on her after his death. Cf. Menaphon (Greene's Works, ed. Grosart, vi. 102): 'whose house and flocks beeing set to sale after his decease, he bought them both foorthwitth for *Samela* . . and therein enfeaft her.'

15. *take her*, give herself. Compare Titus Andronicus, iv. 3. 6:

'Sirs, take you to your tools';

and compare note to Doctor Faustus, vii. 96.

16. *gentles*, gentlemen.

17. *liking*, an adjective.

20. *It joys me*. Compare Richard III, i. 2. 220:

'Much it joys me too,
To see you are become so penitent.'

Dyce observes that if this passage 'be what the author wrote, it is at least very obscurely expressed.' The meaning is: the Keeper is pleased that men of such repute should condescend to take a fancy to a person so lowly as his daughter, and he would think her lucky to be married

Digitized by Google

to even a less man than they are. But the construction is certainly loose. The verb 'to joy' is used personally below, l. 167.

22, 23. *so fortunate to be.* For the omission of 'as' compare Abbott, § 281.

24. *fee.* (A.S. *feoh*), income, hence station. Compare the passage noted in Nares, i. 300 from George-a-Greene:

'Two liveries will I give thee every year,
And forty crowns shall be thy fee.'

Compare also Romaunt of the Rose, 6047:

'That certes if they trowed be,
Shall never leave her land ne fee';

and The Faerie Queene, iv. 9. 13, and iv. 1. 35.

27. *Content.* Dr. Grosart suggests a [thee], as having dropped out after this word.

30. *As*, that. Compare note on Doctor Faustus, Chorus before viii, line 11.

33. *grave.* 'The quarto of 1594, "graves."' Dyce.

36. *temper'd*, mixed. Compare note to vi. 2.

38. *poesies*, poetical composition. Compare the form 'posy,' as in Orlando Furioso:

'Hardby, I'll have some roundelays hung up,
Wherein shall be some posies of their loves';

especially used of a verse cut on a ring, as in The Merchant of Venice, v. 148.

39. *comparisons*, similes, the staple of the love-poetry of the earlier Elizabethan and Marian age.

48. *gree*, for 'degree.' Compare note to ii. 156.

51. *stay*, steadiness. Compare the adjective 'staid.'

55. *while*, until. Compare note to ii. 156.

56. *Who . . . like.* A comparison with l. 78 below seems to show that 'of whom' is merely a repetition for the sake of emphasis. As to the construction 'to like of,' compare iv. 29. As to the use of 'who' for 'whom,' compare i. 143. As to the infinitive without 'to,' see note to Doctor Faustus, iii. 36.

59. *battling.* See note to ix. 4.

*Ib. fatteth.* Dyce emends, superfluously, 'fatten.' Cf. iii. 65 and xii. 40, 49.

60. *stapled*, dressed for sale at the staple. 'Staple' (A.S. *stapul*, compare Modern German *stapeln*, to warehouse) originally signified not, as now, the established merchandise of a place, but the established mart of an article. (See in Trench, Glossary, p. 198, the quotation from Phillips's New World of Words: 'Staple; a city or town, where merchants jointly lay up their commodities for the better uttering of

Digitized by Google

them by the great; a public storehouse.') Hence the great free cities in Flanders were the 'staples' of English goods for sale abroad, and the merchants who traded in them were called the 'merchants of the staple,' till Edward III unwisely named nine towns in England to be the exclusive places for sale of the English 'staple' commodities (of which wool was the chief).

61. *As.* Compare note to Doctor Faustus, Chorus before viii, line 11.

*Ib. Lemnster*, Leominster in Herefordshire, formerly known for its manufactories of woollen cloth, hats, and gloves. Compare Drayton's Poly-Olbion, vii. 145–150:

> 'Lemster, for whose wool whose staple doth excell,
> And seems to overmatch the golden *Phrygian* fell.
> Had this our Colchos been unto the Ancients known,
> When Honor was herself, and in her glory shown,
> He then that did command the Infantry of *Greece*,
> Had only to our Isle adventur'd for this Fleece.'

*Ib. more finer.* Compare Alphonsus King of Arragon:

> 'We should have you more calmer out of hand.'

For other examples of the double comparative and superlative see Abbott, § 11.

63. *strouting*, swelling. The word is used accordingly like the modern 'to strut.'

63. *paggle* (quarto of 1630, I think, 'puggle'). The word seems formed out of reminiscences of 'paddle' and 'bag'; compare The Shepheard's Calender, Februarie, 81:

> 'Thy ewes, that wont to have blowen bags.'

70. *thy head-attire.* Ladies' head-dresses in the Tudor age, though no longer so wonderfully constructed as in the Plantagenet period, when 'the younger and more beautiful the ladies were, the higher were the *chimneys* which they carried,' still admitted of much finery. See Fairholt, *u. s.*, *s. v.* 'Head-dress' in Glossary.

75. *to counsel me*, to advise, or take counsel with, myself. Compare i. 127.

76. *fancy*, love. Compare viii. 39.

77. *Give me.* 'Query: ought these words to be omitted?' Dyce.

78. *Which or to whom.* Compare l. 56 above.

*Ib. myself affectionates.* 'Self' is here used as a substantive, as in the first line of the passage noted by Abbott, § 20 (where the reading of the folios may, as he says, be correct), 2 Henry VI, iii. 1. 217–219:

> 'Even so myself bewails good Gloucester's case,
> With sad unhelpful tears and with dimm'd eyes,
> Look after him and cannot do him good,' &c.

Digitized by Google

'To affectionate' is formed like 'to ruinate,' ix. 133, but is not, like it, a Shakespearean word.

80. *such a base esquire.* Notice that below, xiii. 39, the other of the rivals mentions this rank respectfully.

82. *overreach me,* outdo me. Compare overshine, i. 139 and l. 5 above; over-match, i. 63; and over-watch, xi. 26.

83. *thy country braves,* thy rustic boasts. Compare xi. 115 and xiii. 43; and Peele's Edward I, xii. 75:

> 'And wend with this as resolutely back
> As thou to England brought'st thy Scottish braves.'

85. *dint,* blow, stroke; A. S. *dynt.*

86. *avouch'd.* Compare vi. 32.

91. *wrongs.* 'Query "wings."' (Dyce.)

100. *Whenas.* Compare note on i. 75.

115. *just,* exactly.

118. *closures,* enclosures. Compare ix. 54.

122. *if that.* Compare note to Doctor Faustus, x. 15.

123. *blooms,* blossoms, as xiv. 4.

124. *the flies hæmeræ,* the ephemera, or day-flies.

126. *timely.* Compare vi. 87.

130. *queasy,* fastidious. Compare Much Ado about Nothing, ii. 1. 399: 'In spite of his quick wit and his queasy stomach, he shall fall in love with Beatrice.'

138. The Euphuism of this letter, and of the 'Not thine nor his own' of the signature in particular, might be paralleled from most of Greene's prose-books.

139. *Fond Até.* The goddess of Mischief, who 'fondly,' i.e. playfully, destroys the happiness of human beings.

*Ib. doomer,* who doomest or decreest. Compare ix. 163.

140. *wrapp'st.* Dyce's emendation for the original reading 'wraps,' which, as Grosart suggests, Greene or the copyist may have written after 'that.'

142. *lighten'd,* shone forth. Compare i. 54.

149. *shelves,* the sandbanks of the coasts, i.e. the coasts generally. Compare 3 Henry VI, v. 4. 23:

> 'Shelves and rocks that threaten us with wreck.'

151. *from her lord.* 'Query "from him"? But the earlier part of the speech is also evidently corrupt.' (Dyce.)

153. *for,* because. Compare vii. 64.

154. *at very thought.* 'The quartos, "euery."' (Dyce.) Compare as to these omissions of the article, Introduction, p. xi.

158. *Wealth, trash.* 'Query, "Wealth shall be trash"?' (Dyce.)

Digitized by Google

## *Scene XI.*

I have given Dyce's stage-direction; but the beginning of that of the quarto of 1630 may be quoted as characteristic of the simplicity of Elizabethan stage-arrangements: '*Enter Fryer* Bacon *drawing the courtaines with a white sticke, a booke in his hand, and a lampe lighted by him*,' &c. The 'white sticke' is the magic wand, winged staff, or serpent-staff, used by conjurers, the origin of which is traceable to the wishing-rod of German mythology and the sleep-bringing magic wand of the god Hermes. Compare note on ix. 30, and see on this subject Ennemoser, *u. s.*, ii. 45–47. As to the Brazen Head, see Introduction, pp. xxviii–xxxi.

3. *How chance*, how chances it that. Compare Comedy of Errors, i. 2. 42, cited by Abbott, § 37.

5. *furniture*, weapons, equipment. So of a horse in The Faerie Queene, iii. 1. 11:

'His page,
That had his furnitures not firmly tyde.'

12. *lodge*, abode. Compare viii. 70.

14. *three-form'd Luna*. Diana is by Ovid, Metamorphoses, vii. 94 and 177, called 'dea' and 'diva triformis,' as being at once Diana, Luna, and Hecate.

*Ib. hid her silver looks*. 'Looks' means glances or rays. As to the supposed effects of magic upon the moon, compare note to Doctor Faustus, iii. 38.

15. *her concave continent*, her hollow sphere. Compare note to ix. 62.

16. *read upon*. Compare ii. 95.

17. *tossing*, turning over. Compare xiii. 89.

18. *Hecat'*. Compare note to ii. 176.

21. *aphorisms*. See note to Doctor Faustus, i. 19.

24 *Argus* (quarto of 1630, 'Argos'), the guardian of Io, whom Mercury killed by order of Jupiter, whereupon Juno transferred his hundred eyes to the tail of her bird, the peacock. See Ovid's Metamorphoses, i. 624 seqq.

26. *over-watch*, outwatch, watch through.

*Ib. Phobetor's* (quarto of 1630, 'Phobeter's') *night*. The name Phobetor is formed from the Greek φόβος, fear; νηπίων φόβητρα are infants' bugbears.

29. *Hangs*. This singular is probably explained by the two substantives 'honour and renown' forming a single idea.

31. *within his fist*, probably with allusion to the Scriptural phrase

Digitized by Google

'within the hollow of His hand.' The word 'fist' is used as a dignified one in 3 Henry VI, ii. 1. 154:

> 'Thou shalt know this strong right hand of mine
> Can pluck the diadem from faint Henry's head,
> And wring the awful sceptre from his fist';

and in Orlando Furioso:

> 'Those silver doves
> That wanton Venus mann'th [makes tractable, a falconry term] upon her fist.'

Pistol however uses the word in a way which suggests that it had already acquired a comical sound, in Henry V, ii. 1. 71:

> 'Give me thy fist, thy fore-foot to me give.'

Wagner accordingly suggests 'fee.'

37. *If that.* Compare note to Doctor Faustus, x. 15.

41. *So.* This use of 'so' to express acquiescence, like 'well,' is of constant occurrence in Shakespeare.

42, 43. *on the days, on the nights,* for 'in the days, in the nights.' Compare note on ii. 95.

43. *ten and fifty.* The negro Gumbo, in Thackeray's Virginians, adopts a similar method of numeration, stating that at Castlewood in Virginia 'there were twenty forty gentlemen in livery, besides women-servants.'

46. *nos autem glorificare.* Dyce refers to a parallel facetious passage in A Looking-Glass for London and England, already quoted in note on v. 42. 'Nos autem gloriari oportet' are the opening words of an 'Introit' in the Roman Liturgy, founded partly on the Epistle to the Galatians, vi. 14.

47. *nos autem populare.* Quarto of 1630, 'popelares.'

50. *if I chance to slumber.* Grosart here inserts a stage-direction: '[*He falls asleep; knocks his head against the post, wakes, thinking the head has spoken.*]'

51. *Goodman.* Compare note to iii. 59.

52. *your memento.* Miles refers to the custom of having a Death's head with the inscription 'memento mori' placed for contemplation in a sleeping-chamber. Compare R. Southwell's poem Vpon the Image of Death, stanzas 2 and 3:

> 'I often looke upon a face,
> Most vgly, grisly, bare and thinne;
> I often view the hollow place
> Where eyes and nose had sometimes bin:
> I see the bones across that lie,
> Yet little think that I must die.

Digitized by Google

I read the labell vnderneath,
That telleth me whereto I must;
I see the sentence eake that saith,
Remember, man, that thou art dust:
But yet, alas! but seldome I
Doe think indeede that I must die.'

Compare also 1 Henry IV, iii. 3. 31–35:

'*Bard.* Why, Sir John, my face does you no harm.

*Fal.* No, I'll be sworn; I make as good use of it as many a man doth of a death's head, or a memento mori,' &c.

53. *brown-bill.* 'A weapon formerly borne by our foot-soldiers, and afterwards by watchmen: it was a sort of pike or halbert, with a hooked point.' (Dyce.) In 2 Henry VI, iv. 10, 12, Cade says, 'Many a time, but for a sallet, my brain-pan had been cleft with a brown bill.' 'Brown' is an epithet applied to the 'bill' or 'sword' in A. S. poetry; so in the Battle of Maldon, 162:

'þa Byrhtnoð bræd bill of sceðe (drew sword from sheath)
brad and brun-egg' (brown-edged).

54. *hobgoblins.* This familiar word is said in Nares originally to signify 'clown-goblin or bumpkin-goblin, "Hob" having in old times been a frequent name among the common people, particularly in the country' [compare James IV, v. 4].—See a fragment Of spirits called Hobgoblins, or Robin Goodfellows (described as a kind of spirits 'more familiar and domestical than the others') in Halliwell's Illustrations of the Fairy Mythology of a Midsummer Night's Dream (Shakespeare Society's Publications, 1845).—'Hob' is also used as a substitute for the compound.

58. *cunning.* Compare note to Doctor Faustus, opening Chorus, line 20.

*Ib. of it*, equivalent to 'from it.' Compare ix. 241.

62. *the slow-worm*, a moth, snake. The true sense of the word is slay-worm, A. S. 'slá-wyrm,' the snake that strikes. Compare Herrick's The Night-piece, to Julia:

'No Will-o'-the-wispe mislight thee,
Nor snake or slow-worme bite thee.'

Chaucer, in The Romaunt of the Rose, v. 4755, has 'a slowe.'

*Ib. I'll set a prick against my breast.* Sir Thomas Browne, in Pseudodoxia Epidemica, Vulgar Errors, bk. ii. ch. xxviii, questions, among other things, 'whether the nightingale's sitting with her breast against a thorn, be any more than that she placeth some prickles on the outside of her nest, or roosteth in thorny prickly places, where serpents may least approach her?' The fancy is repeatedly mentioned in our old poets; so in the Rape of Lucrece, 1135–1158:

Digitized by Google

'And whiles against a thorn thou [Philomel] bear'st thy part,
To keep thy sharp woes waking, wretched I
To imitate thee well, against my heart
Will fix a sharp knife,' &c.;

and in Edward III, i. 1:

'Fervent desire, that sits against my heart,
Is far more thorny-pricking than this blade;
That, with the nightingale, I shall be scar'd,
As oft as I dispose myself to rest.'

See also The Passionate Pilgrim, xxi. 9–14:

'Every thing did banish moan,
Save the nightingale alone:
She, poor bird, as all forlorn,
Lean'd her breast up-till a thorn,
And there sung the dolefull'st ditty,
That to hear it was great pity';

and Sir Philip Sidney's song, The Nightingale:

'The nightingale, as soon as April bringeth
Vnto her rested sense a perfect-waking,
While late bare earth, proud of new clothing, springeth,
Sings out her woes, a thorne her song-book making.
. . . . . .
O Philomela faire, O take some gladnesse,
That here is iuster cause of plaintfull sadnesse:
Thine earth now springs, mine fadeth;
Thy thorne without, my thorne my heart inuadeth.'

73. *a peripatetian.* The name of the Peripatetics was given to the philosophical school of Aristotle, because he used to teach while walking about under the portico of the Lyceum at Athens.—Miles puns on the meaning of the name in saying that he will be 'a philosopher of Aristotle's *stamp*.'

76. *Time is past.* In Dryden's Limberham (printed 1678) Woodall says: 'I have waited for you above an hour, but Friar Bacon's head has been lately speaking to me, that time is past.'

80. *the latter day*, the last day. Shakespeare constantly uses 'latter' where we should use 'last'; so in 1 Henry VI, ii. 5. 38:

'And in his bosom spend my latter gasp';

and in 3 Henry VI, iv. 6. 43:

'And in devotion spend my latter days.'

Compare Job xix. 25.

81. [*Rises and comes forward.*] This is Dyce's stage-direction, the propriety of which is doubted by Grosart.

Digitized by Google

92. *Cumentator*, for 'Cunctator.' Dyce prints 'Commentator'; but there is no necessity for amending Miles's Latin.

99. *ruin'd down*, fallen down. Compare Italian 'rovinare,' to fall down with a rush.

107. *aphorisms*. See note to Doctor Faustus, i. 19.

109. *Asmenoth*. See note to ix. 144.

110. *Demogorgon*. See note to Doctor Faustus, iii. 18.

113. *over-match*. Compare i. 63.

115. *braves*. Compare x. 83.

*Ib. end*. The reiteration of the same word or couple of words at the close of several successive lines is a common device in our dramatists; compare that of the name 'Angelica' in Orlando Furioso; Rasni's repetition of the words 'my world' in A Looking-Glass for London and England; that of the words 'my queen' in James the Fourth; and that of the word 'ring' in The Merchant of Venice, v. 192–202.

117. *sorteth to ill end*, comes to an ill end, has an ill ending. Compare 2 Henry VI, i. 2. 107:

'Sort how it will, I shall have gold for all.'

120. *avoid!* equivalent to 'avaunt!' 'away!' So in 2 Henry VI, i. 4. 43: 'False fiend, avoid!' and elsewhere in Shakespeare.

126. *the old proverb*. I owe to the kindness of Mr. C. E. Doble the following references: 'See Ray's Compleat Collection of English Proverbs (ed. 1768, p. 109) for this proverb in the form—"The fox never fares better than when he is bann'd"; and compare in Hislop's Proverbs of Scotland (1862), *s.v.* "Tod," the proverb: "Curses made the tod fat"; with the explanation, "So long as he is cursed only, not hunted, does he thrive."'

129. *a crowned cap*, the college cap which Miles actually assumes in sc. xv, where it is more appropriately called a 'corner-cap.'

131. *haunt*, intransitive. Compare note to i. 141.

134. *To lose . . . head*. As to this indefinite use of 'to' with the infinitive in a gerundive sense, see Abbott, § 357. 'To lose' here signifies much the same thing as 'by' or 'after losing or having lost.' Compare xiii. 2, where 'What means the friar to sit?' is equivalent to 'What means the friar by sitting?'

## *Scene XII.*

1. *prime*. 'The quartos, "prinee."' (Dyce.)

4. *To answer England in equivalence*. This is merely a grand way of expressing 'to be a match for England'; just as 'in four equivalents' in Doctor Faustus, vii. 12, merely means 'in four equal parts' or 'in four parts.'

8. *amorets*. Compare note to ix. 177.



Digitized by Google

12. *gree*, agree. Compare note to ii. 156.

14. *counterfeit*, portrait. Compare note to iv. 22.

16. *troop'd with*. Compare vii. 3.

18. *As*. Compare note to Doctor Faustus, Chorus before viii, l. 11. Dyce considers this line 'corrupted'; but I agree with Grosart that there is no sufficient reason for the assumption.

21. *honour up*, celebrate to the end. Compare note to iii. 22.

29. *to thy lady*. Compare Doctor Faustus, xiii. 84.

34. *unpossible*. For adjectives in Shakespeare compounded with *un*, where we use *in*, see Abbott, § 442. In Orlando Furioso, Greene has 'unconstant'; in The Arraignment of Paris, Peele has 'unpartial.' On the other hand, Greene and Lodge in A Looking-Glass for London and England have 'inspeakable.'

37–39. *when egg-pies . . . bag-piper*. For this burlesque suggestion of an impossible contingency (which seems suggested by visions of the 'Land of Cokayne') compare in the Prologue to Alphonsus King of Arragon:

'*Erato*. But pray now, tell me when your painful pen
Will rest enough.
*Melpom*. When husbandmen shear hogs.'

39. *says*. Superfluously altered by Dyce into 'say.' Cf. below 49, and ante iii. 65; x. 59.

45. *The Fair*. Here fair is a dissyllable, as Dyce, citing Walker, points out. Compare note to Doctor Faustus, v. 63.

49. *Her virgin's right . . . was*. This line is obscure; but it should be observed that 'rich' is a favourite epithet of Greene's, repeatedly employed by him in our play as a general term of praise; compare v. 13, x. 95. The meaning seems to be: 'Her right to the name of Virgin is as good as that belonging to Vesta—or to her priestesses, the Vestal Virgins.'

55. *vouchèd*, avowed, declared. Compare vii. 19.

56. *'querry* (quarto of 1630, 'Quiry'), equerry.

59. *for*, because. Compare note on i. 121.

67. *thyself*. This is Dyce's polite emendation for the 'myselfe' of the quartos; xi. 82, however, Bacon had used almost the same expression; and Grosart is perhaps right in retaining the original reading.

73. *out of all ho*. In Nares this phrase is explained as equivalent to that of 'out of all cry'—from the notion of calling in or restraining a sporting dog, or perhaps a hawk, with a call, or 'ho.' The phrase is, as stated in Nares, used by Swift in his Journal to Stella: 'When your tongue runs, there's no hoe with you, pray.' Compare 'out of all hooping' in As You Like It, iii. 2. 203.

75. *secretary*, person entrusted with secrets.

83. *fly the partridge*. Compare note to v. 52.

Digitized by Google

## *Scene XIII.*

1. *frolick'd it.* Compare note to i. 103.

2. *To sit.* Compare note to xi. 134.

4. *Ah, Bungay, ah.* This is Dyce's conjecture. The second 'ah' is wanting in the quartos.

6. *bruited,* noised. From French *bruit.*

8. *foundation of.* Quarto of 1594, 'on.'

11. *As.* Compare note to Doctor Faustus, Chorus before viii, l. 11.

*Ib. infringe what he deserves,* impair the reputation which is his due.

12. *by prospective skill,* by the art of divination. Compare the 'glass prospective,' v. 110, and below, 28.

14. *'tide,* happen. A. S. *getîdan.* Compare 'betide.'

16. I follow Grosart in giving to Bacon this line, which the quartos and Dyce assign to Bungay.

23. *Cratfield,* a village nine miles from Framlingham, mentioned in Domesday Book. White, *u. s.*, p. 363. Quarto of 1594, 'Crackfield.'

24. *college-mates,* companions at College. This may imply that as students they shared the same room. See note to Doctor Faustus, xiv. 3.

30. *how that.* Compare note to Doctor Faustus, x. 15.

32. *ere long, how.* 'Query, "ere long, sirs, how."' (Dyce.)

33. *fathers live.* 'The quarto of 1594, "father liues."' (Dyce.)

*Enter* Lambert *and* Serlsby. Compare note from Dyce on the stage-direction before vi. 11.

37. *there will be.* Pronounce, 'there'll be.' (Grosart.)

40. *durst.* The past indicative is here used for the present indicative 'darest.'

41. *prize,* set a price upon (compare note to iii. 8); hence risk or venture in combat.

43. *braves.* Compare note to x. 83.

44. *for,* because. See note to i. 121.

45. *will die.* Modern usage would require 'shall die.' See note to Doctor Faustus, i. 46.

48. *scold it out.* Compare note to i. 103.

49. *An if,* if. See note to Doctor Faustus, v. 137.

53. *the Broadgates-hall.* Segrim or, corruptly, Segreve Hall at Oxford was a very ancient seminary for students of the Civil and Canon Law, existing already in the twelfth century. It was afterwards called Broadgates Hall from the wide form of its entrance, 'aula cum lata porta,' or 'aula late portensis.' Cf. the epigram of John Heywood, who



Digitized by Google

was himself educated at Broadgates Hall, on the fashion of wearing farthingales:

> 'Alas poore verdingales must lie in the streete
> To house them no doore in the citee made meete.
> Syns at our narrow doores they in can not win,
> Send them to Oxforde, at Brodegates to get in.'

In 1624 Pembroke College was founded within this Hall, and new buildings were soon erected, the Hall however being preserved, though it received additions. See A. Chalmers' History of the Colleges, &c. of Oxford.

55. *a bout*, the same as 'a veney' below, 66; literally a thrust at arms (from the French verb *bouter*, whence *botte*, a term for a fencing-thrust, Italian *bottare*, derived from the M. High German *bôzen*, which is the same as A. S. *bedtan*, to beat).

60. *my father's is th' abuse*, he is the aggrieved party.

61. *have harm*. This is the reading of the quarto of 1655. 'Have' is wanting in that of 1630.

63. *the event*, the issue.

66. *A veney*. '*Venie*, or as it is sometimes spelt, Venu or Venny, was a very common fencing-term, meaning the onset, from the French *venir*. [Compare our 'come on!'] See Love's Labour's Lost, v. 1. 62: "a sweet touch, a quick venue of wit!" where the word, as in most instances of its use, is figuratively employed.' Collier, note to R. Armin's Nest of Ninnies, *u. s.*, p. 67. In Nares it is noted that the term was also used in matches at cudgels; and that in fencing the Italian term *stoccata* supplanted it, as more fashionable; see Jonson's Every Man in his Humour, i. 5:

> 'Venue, fie, most gross denomination as I ever heard;
> O, the stoccata, while you live, sir, not that!'

69. *mark the ward*, observe how my father guards the thrust.

73. *quite*, requite. Compare note on v. 112.

75. *fathers*. 'Query, "scholars"?' (Dyce.)

78. *these brave lusty Brutes*. A 'brute' or 'bruit of fame' is a report of fame (compare 'to bruit,' above, l. 6), or a famous personage; so in Sir Clyomon and Sir Clamydes:

> 'And doth Neronis love indeed? to whom doth love she yield?
> Even to that noble bruit of fame, the Knight of the Golden Shield';

and *ib.*:

> 'Since I have given my faith and troth to such a bruit of fame
> As is the Knight of the Golden Shield.'

Very probably the name of the mythical Brute or Brut (see note on xvi. 45) may have helped to bring about this personal use of the word. So in Peele's Edward I, ii. 373, Lluellen hopes to be 'chiefest Brute of

Digitized by Google

western Wales,' after previously (in l. 5) having boasted of his descent from 'Trojan Brute.'

81. *their*. 'The quartos, "the."' (Dyce.)

*Ib. fatal*, doomed; so in Henry V, ii. 4. 13:

'Late examples
Left by the fatal and neglected English
Upon our fields.'

82. *cause efficient*. The quartos read 'efficiat.'

89. *tossing*. Compare xi. 17.

92. *stole and alb*, sacred vestments which, like holy water, the devils cannot abide.

*Ib. strong pentageron*. The quartos, 'strange Pentagonon.' 'Strong' is Dyce's conjecture for 'strange,' in view of ii. 51, where see note on 'pentageron.'

93. *the wresting of the holy name*. Compare Doctor Faustus, iii. 47; and see note on l. 9 of the same scene. The names mentioned in the following lines are equivalents of the Divine Name: 'Soter' is σωτήρ, the Saviour; 'Messiah' and 'J H S' are both mentioned in the 'Semiphoras,' as are 'Eloha,' 'Elohim,' 'Adonay,' 'Melech,' and 'Maniah.' The 'Tetragrammaton' consists of the four letters which form the name 'Jehovah,' for which name 'Adonay' is said to be employed as a substitute. 'Alpha' is one of these letters. See Scheible's Kloster, iii. 293 seqq. The quartos read 'Elaim' and 'Tetragramiton.'

96. *five-fold*. Strictly speaking, I suppose, this ought to be 'three-fold' or 'four-fold'; see, as to the hierarchies, note to ix. 140; but perhaps Greene had the virtues of the pentagramma in his mind, and in any case it is impossible to bring order into his loose references to magical lore.

98. *countervail*, be valid against (compare vii. 20); hence seek to equal, usurp the powers of.

100. *repentance can do much*, a text on which Greene preached in his posthumous tract, A Groatsworth of Wit bought with a Million of Repentance.

103. *Which . . . afresh;* apparently a double reference to a kind of miracle related in many legends, and to the superstition that wounds could be inflicted on the absent by magical charms. Possibly there may be here a reminiscence of Hebrews vi. 6.

106. *from sin*. Either this is a zeugma, the idea of 'wash' having been transferred to 'make'; or 'from' is here used in the sense of 'away from,' 'without.' See Abbott, § 158, for the use of 'from,' in such passages as Cymbeline, v. 5. 431:

'This label on my bosom, whose containing
Is so from sense in hardness.'

109. *what Bacon vainly*, i. e. foolishly, *lost*, viz. his soul.

Digitized by Google

## *Scene XIV.*

O. Ritter, *u. s.* p. 19, compares an incident in ch. xv. of Thomas of Reading or The Six Worthie Yeomen of the West, where a girl beloved by a duke whose eyes have been put out by order of his King resolves to become a nun, and repulses the entreaties of her friends in a strain not unlike that of Margaret's speech.—In Massinger's The Maid of Honour the heroine Camiola, whose love has been requited by treachery, takes the vows as a nun.

3. *for the hue.* 'Hue' is used by Greene in the sense of 'beauty' in Alphonsus King of Arragon, act iii: 'Alcumena's hue'; compare also in the Hexametra Alexis in laudem Rosamundae in The Mourning Garment:

'did grieve that a creature
Should exceed in hue, compar'd both a god and a goddess.'

4. *blooms*, blossoms. Compare x. 123.

6. *the dated time of death*, the time appointed for his death.

13. *for that.* Compare note to Doctor Faustus, x. 15.

15. *repents*, penances. Compare note to Doctor Faustus, xiii. 30.

16. *aspiring.* Compare note to Doctor Faustus, iii. 68.

20. *Pride . . . thoughts.* 'A slightly mutilated line.' (Dyce.)

29. *engine*, instrument. So in Venus and Adonis, 367, the tongue of Venus is called 'the engine of her thoughts.'

32. *an humble mind to God;* an inversion for 'a mind humble to, or before, God.'

34. *Farewell, O love!* 'The quartos, "Loue, O Loue."' (Dyce.)

46. *Peggy.* Quarto of 1630, 'Pegge.'

49. *left your love.* Surely Wagner's emendation of 'lost' for 'left' is superfluous.

54. *As die*, as to die. See as to the omission of 'to' after conjunctions, Abbott, § 353.

56. *miss*, for 'amiss'; compare note to ii. 156. 'Miss' or 'amiss' is used as here in the sense of 'fault' in Orlando Furioso:

'Soldier, let me die for the 'miss of all';

in A Looking-Glass for London and England:

'Then cast we lots, to throw by whose amiss
The mischief came, according to the guise;
And lo! the lot did unto Jonas fall';

and *ib.*:

'But pray amends, and mend thy own amiss';

Digitized by Google

and in Peele's Arraignment of Paris:

'That I, a man, must plead before the gods,
Gracious forbearers of the world's amiss.'

57. *fond*, 'fondly,—foolishly, vainly.' (Dyce.) Cf. note to v. 131 ante.

68. *peremptory*, absolute, positive. Compare Henry V, v. 2. 82:

'We will suddenly
Pass our accept and peremptory answer.'

69. *his interest*, i.e. his claim upon me. Compare viii. 134.

78. *my lord*. 'Most probably an addition by some transcriber; which not only injures the metre, but is out of place in the mouth of Warren, who is himself a "lord," and who, when he last addressed Lacy, called him "Sirrah Ned."' (Dyce.)

*Ib. an if*. Compare note to Dr. Faustus, v. 137.

80. *yet*, as yet, still.

87. *Whate'er*. 'The quartos, "Whatsoe'er."' (Dyce.)

88. *the habit of a maiden's heart*, i.e. the reserve customary to a maiden's heart.

92. *thy husband*. 'Query, "thy husband, I"?' (Dyce.) I doubt this.

100. *in a brown study*. This phrase, the origin of which is rather obscure, is used by Adam in A Looking-Glass for London and England: 'Truly, sir, I was in a brown study about my mistress.' Compare also Faire Em, sc. iii. (l. 233): 'How now, Sir Robert, in a study, man?' Other passages are quoted in Nares.

106. *umbles*. From a passage in Holinshed quoted in Nares, ii. 924, it appears that the 'umbles,' i.e. the liver, kidneys, and other inward parts of a deer, were among the keeper's perquisites: 'The keeper hath the skin, head, umbles, chine and shoulders.' It is added in Nares that 'the old books of cookery give receipts for making "umble-pies"; and on this was founded a very flat proverbial witticism, "making persons eat umble-pye," meaning "to humble them."'

109. *And not a bottle of wine*. Lacy appears to have a particular objection to a repast unaccompanied by a glass of wine; see viii. 158–159.

112. *she speaks least*, i.e. she promises as little as possible.

## *Scene XV.*

The stage-direction of the quarto of 1630 is explicit: '*Enter a* Deuill *to seek* Miles.'

1. *sprites*. 'The quarto of 1594, "spirits."' (Dyce.)

Digitized by Google

3. *nine-fold-trenchèd Phlegethon.* Phlegethon, one of the rivers of Hades, is so called because fire flows in it instead of water (φλεγέθειν, to flame; hence the stream is also called Pyriphlegethon); compare Statius' Thebais, iv. 523:

'Fumidus atra vadis Phlegethon incendia volvit';

but the epithet 'nine-fold-trenchèd' seems borrowed from the description 'novies interfusa' (winding nine times round Erebus), twice applied to the river Styx in Vergil (Georgics, iv. 480; Aeneid, vi. 439).

4. *scud,* hurry. So in Orlando Furioso:

'The thief of Thessaly,
Which scuds abroad and searcheth for his prey.'

Compare Dan. 'skyde,' to shoot, move quickly.

*Ib. over-scour,* pass over. So in A Looking-Glass for London and England:

'The proud leviathan that scours the sea.'

The word to 'scour' seems to be derived through the O.F. *escurer* from the Latin *excurare,* used in the sense of 'to sweep clean.' We use the word 'to sweep,' and the Germans the word *fegen,* in the same sense of 'to hurry over.'

*Ib. in post,* in haste. Compare note to ii. 149.

5. *Upon . . . winds.* A reminiscence of Psalm xviii. 10: 'He rode upon the cherubims, and did fly: he came flying upon the wings of the wind.'

8. *lazy bones.* The word 'bones' is constantly used in Shakespeare for the whole body. 'Lazy-bones' as a comic compound is not, so far as I know, Elizabethan.

*Enter* Miles *in a gown and a corner-cap,* i.e. in academicals.

13. *reader.* The 'minor order' of readers, tradesmen or other unlearned persons of good repute ordained for the purpose of performing certain of the offices of the Church, was instituted by Archbishop Parker, but speedily abandoned. After this the same class of men were employed in the Church without receiving orders. See Canon Perry's History of the Reformation in England, Epochs of Church History Series, 173-4.

15. *as an egg's full of oatmeal.* A Milesian version of the phrase 'as an egg is full of meat,' which Mercutio uses in Romeo and Juliet, iii. 1. 24.

18. *Master Plutus.* Miles confounds Plutus, the god of wealth, with Pluto, the god of the lower regions.—(Of course the names are the same in origin; Plutos the son of Demeter signifies the mineral wealth in the bowels of the earth.)

27. *the statute.* Several sumptuary laws were passed in the Tudor

Digitized by Google

reigns; among them those of 33 Henry VIII, regulating the apparel of the different classes of the community; of 1 and 2 Philip and Mary, against wearing of silk by persons under the degree of a knight's son and heir; and Elizabeth's of 1579 against excessive long cloaks and ruffs. See Fairholt, *u. s.*, pp. 196–197, 200, 206.—Hence the expression 'statute-lace' in A Looking-Glass for London and England.

29. *without welt or guard.* A 'welt' (apparently from the Celtic 'gwald,' border) or 'guard' is a facing to a gown; the terms are used synonymously. These facings were made of gold or silver lace for both sexes. Both terms and the adjectives 'guarded' and 'welted' occur in other passages; so 'guarded' in the Merchant of Venice, ii. 2. 164, and 'guarded with yellow' of the fool's dress in the Prologue to Henry VIII, line 16; and in Greene's Quip for an Upstart Courtier: 'a black cloth gown welted and faced.' See Fairholt, *u. s.*, in Glossary.

31. *how then?* what then?

32. *Faith, 'tis a place.* Compare Adam's account of his visit to the same place in A Looking-Glass for London and England.

34. *a pair of cards*, a pack of cards. Dyce cites from Greene's Notable Discovery of Cosenage: 'Out commeth an old paire of cardes, whereat the Barnard teaches the Verser a new game,' &c. In Earle's Microcosmography (1628), an old college butler's 'faculty extraordinary' is said to be 'the warming of a pair of cards, and telling out a dozen of counters for post and pair.' Cf. in Piers Plowman (Text B), *Pass.* XV, v. 119, and Prologue to Canterbury Tales, v. 159, 'a peyre bedes.'

*Ib. A swinging piece of chalk.* Swinging means very big; an epithet still used in modern slang. The original meaning seems to be 'lashing, beating down with a swing of the arm'; the words 'swinger' and 'to beswinge' are used in the same way, as in Orlando Furioso: 'You had best to use your sword better, lest I beswinge you'; and 'swinge-buckler' (used in 2 Henry IV, iii. 2. 24) is an intensification of 'swash-buckler.'—For 'chalk' Grosart suggests 'cheese.'

35, 36. *a white waistcoat*, in the language of the modern tap-room a 'head'; but there is an allusion to a garment which was considered disreputable when worn without a gown.

38. *you are . . . you*, i. e. then we shall suit one another. Compare in A Looking-Glass for London and England: 'I am your man; I am for you, sir.'

45. *lets*, prevents; A.S. *lettan*.

47. *Thou shalt ride on my back.* This is a favourite piece of horse-play in the old miracles and morals, when the Vice belabours the Devil. Compare Adam's 'bombasting' of the Devil in A Looking Glass for

Digitized by Google

London and England, and 'Iniquity's' carrying-off of 'Satan' in Jonson's The Devil is an Ass, v. 4. The remembrance of the device long survived, though with some confusion of parties; for in Dryden's Love Triumphant, iii. 2, Sancho says: 'But what a devilish high back he has gotten, too! He'll carry me away a pick-a-pack, that's certain'; and in The Spanish Friar, i. 2, Lorenzo asks Gomez: 'What devil has set his claws in thy haunches, and brought thee hither to Saragossa? Sure he meant some further journey with thee!'

50. *goodman*. Compare note to iii. 59.

60. *a false gallop*, i.e. a jolting one; perhaps, as Canon Ainger surmises, 'nothing more or less than our familiar "canter."'

## *Scene XVI.*

The 'properties' in the stage-direction to this scene may be identified by a reference to a description of the English regalia, kept in the Jewel House in the Tower of London. The 'pointless sword' borne by the Emperor is the 'curtana' or 'curtein,' the sword of King Edward the Confessor, which in the coronations of English kings was borne by the Earl of Chester. It was blunted in both point and blade, in token of the mercy to be shown by the king to the people; hence its name. Dryden refers to 'curtana' in The Hind and the Panther, ii. 420 seqq. See Ducange, *s.v.* 'curtana,' who cites Matthew Paris's notice of the Earl of Chester bearing the 'curtein' at the wedding festivities of King Henry III. The 'sword with a point' is one of the two swords of Justice, temporal and spiritual. These, like the 'orb' or 'globe,' were originally the symbols of imperial authority, and assumed by kings in imitation of the emperors. The 'rod of gold with a dove on it' is the 'Rod of Equity'; already Charles the Great used such a sceptre of gold, though the dove, signifying the sanctifying power of the Holy Ghost, seems to have been a later addition.

1. *for state*, in, or as to, power and majesty. Compare as to this use of 'for,' note to Doctor Faustus, x. 4; and for the word 'state' in this sense, Doctor Faustus, opening Chorus, 4.

2. *humbles*, humiliates or prostrates himself. Compare All's Well that Ends Well, i. 2. 45:

'In their poor praise he humbled';

(where it seems unnecessary to explain this, with Schmidt, as an absolute construction, or, with Staunton, to read 'be-humbled').

6. *Gramercies*. Compare iii. 88.

*Ib. lordings*. See note to ix. 85.

Digitized by Google

7. *That rules . . . diadem.* Compare in Orlando Furioso:

'It fits me not to sway the diadem.'

8. *these conceivèd joys*, these joys conceived by him.

11. *quite*, requite. Compare note on v. 112.

*Ib. favourites.* 'Query, "favourers"?' (Dyce.)

15. *They did*, i.e. they would.

*Ib. images*, figures—of the three goddesses who appeared before Paris.

18. *Jove.* See note to Doctor Faustus, i. 74.

21. *grac'd with*, honoured by. Compare 'troopèd with,' vii. 3; and 'circled with,' below, 67.

25. *wears*, a confusion of construction for 'wearest.'

43. *I find*, &c. These lines form one of those compliments to Queen Elizabeth which, as Dyce observes, frequently occur at the conclusion of dramas acted during her lifetime—mainly, no doubt, in those acted at Court. Compare Cranmer's prophecy at the close of Henry VIII, which, so far as it refers to Elizabeth's reign, I cannot believe to have been written for recitation before her death.—Another complimentary passage of this kind is at the close of Peele's Arraignment of Paris, where 'Diana describeth the nymph Eliza, a figure of the queen'; even in A Looking-Glass for London and England Jonas contrives a tribute to the saving virtues of Elizabeth.

*Ib. prescience*, accented on the second syllable.

44. *temper'd.* Compare vi. 2.

45. *That here . . . Troynovant.* This is one of the many allusions in our writers to the legend taken from 'Nennius' by Geoffrey of Monmouth, according to which the first inhabitants of Britain were Trojans led to Italy by Aeneas, the wife of whose grandson Silvius bore a son named Brut. Geoffrey of Monmouth, at the end of the First Book of his Historia Britonum, brings Brut to the foundation of Troynovant—New Troy—afterwards London. See H. Morley, English Writers, i. 2. 499–500. Layamon's 'Brut' is an enlarged English version of Wace's Norman-French metrical translation of Geoffrey's History. Milton, in his History of Britain, *ad in.*, writes: 'after this, Brutus in a chosen place builds Troja Nova, changed in time to Trinovantum, now London.' —Compare 'wandering Brute,' below, l. 55; and see also note to xiii. 78, and the passage there cited from Peele's Edward I. Compare also Peele's Anglorum Feriae, England's Holidays:

'Those quiet days that Englishmen enjoy
Under our Queen, fair Queen of Brute's New Troy';

and Dekker's The Seuen Deadly Sinnes of London, where London is called 'This fairest-faced daughter of *Brute*,' and afterwards 'faire *Troynouant*.'

Digitized by Google

46. *From forth.* For this prepositional use of 'forth,' by itself or with 'of' and 'from,' see Abbott, § 156.

48. *deface*, obliterate, i.e. outvie.

*Ib. Phœbus' flower*, the sun-flower.

56. *these.* 'Query, "those"? but our early writers did not always make the distinction between "these" and "those" which is made at the present day.' (Dyce.)

57. *gorgeous*, gorgeously.

58. *Apollo's heliotropion.* The name heliotropium (turnsol) is applied by the old botanical writers to so many distinct plants, that it is needless to suppose Greene in our passage to have had any particular one of these in view.

59. *Venus' hyacinth.* According to the legend in Ovid's Metamorphoses, x. 184–215, the hyacinth was sacred, not to Venus, but to Apollo. The Hyacinthia were a Lacedaemonian festival in honour of Apollo's favourite Hyacinthus, with Apolline processions and games. The identification of the hyacinth of the Greeks and Romans has been much disputed; see Bostock and Riley's note to Plin. Hist. Nat., bk. xxi. c. 38.

*Ib. vail*, lower, a shortened form of 'avale' or 'avail,' from the French *avaller* (*à val*, Latin *ad vallem*).—Compare The Merchant of Venice, i. 1. 26:

> 'And see my wealthy Andrew dock'd in sand,
> Vailing her high-top lower than her ribs
> To kiss her burial';

and in George-a-Greene, the Pinner of Wakefield:

> 'Proud dapper Jack, vail bonnet to the bench
> That represents the person of the king.'

60. *Juno . . . up.* Flowers—though not the gilliflower in particular—were associated with Hera, round whose couch they spring in abundance in Homer. The name 'gilliflower' or 'gillyvor' (the form used in The Winter's Tale, iv. 3. 82 and 98) is applied by our old botanists both to the stock (cheiranthus) and to the clove-pink (dianthus). The former is probably the flower intended by Greene; as the clove-pink is a kind of carnation, the flower mentioned l. 62 below.

61. *'bash*, abash or abase. Compare note to ii. 156.

62. *Ceres' carnation.* There seems again no reason why this flower should be connected with Ceres. If any flower is specially associated with her (Demeter) it is the narcissus, which Proserpine (Persephone) was gathering when Pluto carried her off. In the worship of Demeter herself corn was associated with her; and it is in allusion to the golden corn that Pindar calls her φοινικόπεζα, purple-footed.

Digitized by Google

62. *consort*, company. Compare 'consorting,' ix. 205; and Two Gentlemen of Verona, iv. 1. 64:

'What sayst thou? wilt thou be of our consort?'

With the accent on the first syllable, the word in Shakespeare signifies a band of music; and is probably a mis-spelling of 'concert' (French *concert*, Italian *concerto*, from *concertare*, to discuss; hence an understanding or agreement for a common performance).

63. *Diana's rose*, the rose of England's Virgin Queen. Diana and Cynthia are poetical names constantly applied to Queen Elizabeth. According to Mr. Halpin's Illustrations of the Fairy Mythology of A Midsummer Night's Dream, (old) Shakespeare Society's Publications, 1845, Shakespeare borrowed the phrase 'Diana's bud' (iv. 1. 78) from our passage. See H. P. Stokes, The Chronological Order of Shakespeare's Plays, 51.

64. *is mystical*, is allegorical, has a deeper meaning beneath it.

65. *But, glorious.* 'Some corruption here. Query, "But, glorious comrades of" &c.?' Dyce.

66. *that wealthy isle*, Paradise.

67. *Circled with*, encircled by. Compare 21; and Doctor Faustus, i. 87.

*Ib. Gihon.* See Genesis ii. 13.

*Ib. swift Euphrates.* 'The quartos, "first Euphrates."—That I have rightly corrected the text, is proved by the following line of our author's Orlando Furioso:

"From whence floweth Gihon and swift Euphrates."'

Dyce; who in a note to the latter passage points out that 'Euphrătes' is the usual quantity in our early writers.—Compare Marlowe, 1 Tamburlaine, v. 2:

'As vast and deep as Euphrates and Nile.'

Greene is not very particular about his quantities; so in James IV, act v, he has 'Pactŏlus'; *ib.* in the Prologue, 'Erăto'; and *ib.* act i, 'Ixĭon.' See also note to iv. 11 as to 'Agenor.'

68. *royalizing.* Compare ix. 264, and note on Doctor Faustus, i. 15.

69. *mightiness*, for 'mightinesses.' Compare note on ix. 34. King Rasni, in A Looking-Glass for London and England, paraphrases himself as 'Rasni's royal mightiness.'

70. *Let's march.* 'Query, "Let us march hence"?' Dyce.

74. *It rests*, it remains; French *rester.*

*Ib. furnish up.* Compare note on iii. 22.

75. *Only*, for 'if only.'

76. *jouissance.* Compare Peele's Arraignment of Paris, i. 4:

'They make such cheer your presence to behold,
Such jouissaunce, such mirth, such merriment,
As nothing else their mind might more unbent';

Digitized by Google

and Spenser's The Shepheard's Calender, May 25:

> 'To see those folkes make such jovysaunce,
> Made any heart after the pype to daunce.'

*Omne tulit . . . dulci.* From Horace, de Arte Poetica, 343.—This, as Dyce points out, is Greene's favourite motto. He calls it himself 'mine old poesie'; see the passage cited from Perimedes the Blacksmith, Introduction, p. xvii. It is appended to the titles of eight prose works by him, including Pandosto, the Triumph of Time. In Part I of The Returne from Parnassus, act i, l. 214, Studioso entreats Ingenioso: 'If thou hast ere an omne tulit punctum, ere a *magister artium utriusque academiae*, ere an *opus* and *usus*, ere a needie pamphlet, drinke of a sentence to us, to the healthe of mirth and the confusion of melancholye.' Greene, of course, had died long before the production of this play.—As to the form of this motto, and its bearing upon the question of the date of the play, see Mr. Fleay's Appendix B, ante, p. clxxii.

Digitized by Google

# INDEX TO NOTES


*'a* = he, 162, 239.
*abide* = undergo, 265.
*Acheron*, 186.
Achilles' heel, 206.
*act*, v. tr. = accomplish, 264.
Act to restrain the abuses of players, 158, 164.
*Actaeon*, 194.
adjective used as substantive, 276.
*adjunct*, subst. = object joined to, 153.
*admirablest*, 200.
*admire*, v. intr. = wonder, 277.
*aeromancy*, 230.
*affectionate*, v. tr. = love, 284.
*afore* = before, 190.
*age* = old man, 204.
*Agenor's damsel* (Europa), 240.
*airy* = lofty, 183; or = unreal, 144.
*alate* = of late, 216.
*Albanus* (? Albertus), 147.
*alchemy*, 234.
*Alexander* (Paris), 172.
*all amort*, 219.
*allied* = related, connected, 152.
*Almain*, adj. = German, 143.
*alongst* = along, 254.
*amorets* = 276.
*Amphion*, 172.
*an* = if, 170, 224; *an if* = if, 291.
anagrams of the Divine Name, 153.
*analytics*, 130.
Angels, good and evil, 120.
*anon*, 194.
*answerable to* = in keeping with, 191.
*antarctic*, 152.
*Antwerp's bridge, the fiery keel at*, 140.
*aphorisms*, 132, 243.
*Arethusa*, 206.
*argosy*, 144.
*Argus*, 285.
*Aristotle*, 129, 130, 131.
*arras, cloth of*, 178.
article, the definite, omitted, 196, 235, 284.
*artizan* = artist, 136.
*as* for 'as that,' 193; for 'so as' = 'so that,' 192; omitted after 'so,' 282; with 'so' and 'such' as antecedents, 188, 282; with 'that' as antecedent, 200.
*Asmenoth*, 275.
*Aspasia*, 265.
*aspects* (in astrology), 176.
*aspiring*, 159.
*assure* = pledge, 167.
astronomy, scholastic (*divine astrology*), 173 *seqq.*
*at* for 'in,' 241.
*at an inch*, 244.
*at any hand*, 196.
*Até*, 284.
auxiliary verbs without the verb of motion, 208.
*avoid* = avaunt, 289.
*avouch* = avow, 249.
*aware*, v. tr. = beware, 187.
*away* = off, 199.
*awful* = full of awe, 191.
*awry*, 262.
*azur'd*, 206.
*Babylon*, the walls of, 232.
*bands* = bans, 251.
Bankside, the, in Southwark, 258.
*Barclay's ship* (of Fools), 259.
*'bash* (abash) = lower, 300; = look foolish, 235.
*battle*, v. intr. = fatten, 267.
*be*, after verbs of thinking, 246; in questions expressing doubt, 199.
*beadles* (bedels), 260.


Digitized by Google

*beaten silk*, 163.
*beautifulest*, 200.
*Beccles*, 238.
*beholding* = beholden, 199.
*Belcephon*, 231.
*belike*, 135.
*bell, book, and candle*, 187.
*Belzebub*, 118.
*bever*, 179.
*bewray* = betray, 257.
*bills*, 133.
*bind* = enclose, 161; = engage (for service), 163, 167.
*Black Art, the*, 191.
*black-pots*, 248.
blood, used in signing bonds with the Devil, 167.
*Bocardo*, 260.
*bolts* = irons for the legs, 260.
*bones* = body, 296.
*Boreas, the cave of*, 231.
*bottle of hay*, 197, 198.
*bout*, subst. = thrust, 292.
*boy* = servant, 149.
*brave*, subst. = boast, 284.
*bravely* = finely, 139.
*Brazen-nose*, 228.
*breviated* = abbreviated, 153.
*bright-splendent*, 186.
*broad before* = openly displayed, 238.
*Broadgates-hall*, 291.
*brown-bill*, 287.
*bruit*, v. tr. = noise, 291.
*brunt*, 140.
*Brute*, 299; *Brutes* (of fame), 292.
burning of magical books, 211.
*but only* = but, 158.
*by* = hard by; *by east* = to the east, 254.
*by'r lady*, 162.

*cabalism*, 233.
*cabalist* = writer on magic, 270.
*call* = offer salvation to, 197.
*can*, subjunctive, 233.
*candy*, 279.
*canvass*, v. tr. = examine, 148.
*carouse*, v. tr. consume, 279.
*carvel*, 278.
*case* = couple, 178.
*Cassius*, 261.
*cast*, v. tr. = reckon up, 166.
*Castile*, 241.
*centric* = placed in the centre, 173.
*Ceres' carnation*, 300.
*chafer*, 168.
*chamber-fellow*, 208.
*chapman*, 238.
*characters* (in magic), 136, 153, 171.
*chary* = carefully, 181.
*che sera, sera*, 135.
*check*, v. tr. = chequer, 223.
*cheer* = countenance, frame of mind, 203.
*chiefest*, 243.
*chorus*, 124.
*cipher out* = express clearly, 262.
*circle*, v. tr. = surround, 138, 301.
*circles* (in magic), 136.
*cleeve* = cliff, 221.
Cleopatra, 278.
*closet* = private room, 192.
*closure* = enclosure, 284.
*clown*, 116.
clown's gag, room left for, 190.
*coast*, v. tr., 183.
*college-mate*, 291.
*commence*, v. intr. (as a doctor), 129.
comparatives, double, 283.
*compare* = comparison, 201.
*comparisons* (in poetry) = similes, 282.
*compass* = compasses, 271.
*cómplete*, 185.
*conceit*, subst. = fancy, 138.
*conceit*, subst. = thought, mind, 197.
*conference* = conversation, 137.
*conjunctions* (in astrology), 176.
*consórt* = company, 300.
*consorting greets*, 276.
*continent*, subst. = sphere, 271, 285.
*continent to* = adjoining, 161.
*contrary*, 177.
*cope*, subst. = purchase, 237.
*copper nose*, 231.
*Coppersmith's Hall*, 245.
copyhold tenure, 281.

Digitized by Google

*cork* (in shoes), 258.
*corpus naturale* seu *mobile*, 150.
*corrival*, 262.
*cosmography*, 182.
*costermonger*, 224.
*cote*, v. tr. = pass, 226.
*counterfeit* = portrait, 241, 289.
*countermatch*, subst. = rival, 279.
*countervail*, v. tr. = match, 254, 293.
*Courts of Love*, 222.
*cover* = cover the table, 277.
*Cratfield*, 291.
*crowned cap*, 289.
*cunning*, subst. = knowledge, 126.
*curious* = wrought with care, exquisite, 221, 261.
*cutting* = bullying, 245.

*Damas* (Damascus), 241.
*dame, the devil's*, 177.
*Danaë*, 264.
*Daphne*, 250.
*dated* = appointed, 294.
datives of personal pronouns, so-called 'ethical' use of, 225, 226.
*deal*, v. tr. = distribute, 218.
*deep*, subst. = bottom, 231.
*deface* = obliterate, outvie, 299.
*deity* = divine character, 137.
*delicates*, plur. subst. = delicacies, 138.
*Demogorgon*, 155.
*Deus hic*, 251.
*Diana's rose*, 301.
*dint* = blow, 284.
*dirge*, 186.
*do* (auxiliary), omitted before 'not,' 251.
*do right* = satisfy, pay, 202.
*Domine Dawcock*, 259.
*doom*, subst. = sentence, 276.
*double cannons*, 185.
*doubtful* = extremely difficult, 269.
dragon-chariot, Dr. Faustus's, 182.
*drift*, subst. = desire, 204.
*dump*, 218.
*durst* for 'darest,' 291.

*each* = every or any, 273.
*ecce, signum*, 189.
*economy* (?), 131.
Elizabeth, Queen, dramatic compliments to, 299.
*Ely, the Isle of*, 244.
*Elysium, hell confounded in*, 158.
*Embden*, 166.
*empyreal heaven, the*, 175.
*endamage*, v. tr., 191.
*enfeoff*, 281.
*engine* = instrument, 294.
*Envy* (one of the Seven Deadly Sins), 179.
*equivalence, answer in* = be a match for, 289.
*equivalents*, subs. = equal parts, 183.
*erring stars* (planets), 153, 174.
*erst*, 239.
*espy*, v. tr. = spy, 226.
*eternize*, v. tr., 132.
*Euphrates*, 301.
*exceed*, v. intr. = excel, 137, 235.

*fail*, v. intr. = mistake, 275.
*fair* (a dissyllable), 290.
*fair of fairs*, 276.
*fall to*, 186.
*false gallop*, 298.
*familiar*, adj. = attendant, 191; *familiars*, subst. = attendant demons, 163.
*fancy*, subst. = love, 262.
*fast* = rendered immovable by magic, 246; *fast-fancied* = tied by fancy, 246.
*fatal* = allotted by fate, 196; doomed, 293.
*fee* = income, station, 282.
*fetch*, subst. = trick, 244.
*fiendful*, 212.
*fire* (a dissyllable), 167.
*first letter, the, of my name begins with*, &c., 180.
*fist*, for 'hand,' 285.
*fit* = befit, 253; = prepare, 276.
flights of magicians, 181.
*flurt*, subst., 260.
*foil, take the* = be foiled, 274.
*follow*, v. intr. = follow logically, 150.



Digitized by Google

*fond* = foolish, 169, 262, 295; playful, 284.
*fool* (in compound phrases) = foolish, 246.
*foolery* = empty pretence, 223.
*fools*, the costume of, 219.
*foot* (a plural), 150.
*for* = as to, in, 298; = because, 257, 275; *for that* = for, 191; *for to* = to, 234.
*foretime* = aforetime, 274.
*forth from* = from, 299.
*Fox, the, and the Grapes, the fable of*, 230.
*frame by proof* = show management of, 236.
*Framlingham*, 242.
Franciscans, the, 155.
*frank* = liberal, 218, 237.
*French crowns*, 163.
*freshmen's suppositions*, 174.
*Fressingfield*, 217.
*frolic*, adj., 217.
*from* = without (?), 293.
*front* = forehead, 220.
ful (adjectival suffix), 210.
*furnace*, fig. = trial, 207.
*furniture* = weapons, equipment, 285.
*fustian*, 164.

*Galen*, 131.
*gentleman* = nobleman, prince, 199.
*geomancy*, 269.
*German Valdes*, 112, 137.
*ghost* = spirit, 158.
*Gihon*, 301.
*gilliflowers*, 300.
*glad* = gladden, 249.
*glass-windows*, 198.
*glut*, v. tr., 127, 138.
*go to*, 193.
*God b' w' ye*, 196.
*Golden Fleece, the* (the annual plate fleet), 145.
*good* (as a vocative), 195; *good cheap* = at a low rate, 236.
*goodman*, 239.
*grac'd*, 126.
*grace* = goodness, 193; (style of address or designation), 193; *grace with*, v. tr. = honour by, 299.
*gramercies*, 240.
*gratulate*, v. tr., 188.
*gravel*, v. tr. = puzzle, 142.
*gree* = agree, 251; = degree, 282.
*grey* (as the colour of a shepherd's dress), 239.
*grow into* = 'fall into,' 208.
*grudge*, v. intr. = grumble, 280.
*guard* = facing (of a gown), 297.
*guess* = guests, 235.
*guilders*, 163.
*gull*, v. tr., 190.

*had best* = were best, 190.
*haemerae*, the flies, 284.
*Hampton-house*, 242.
*hand-fast* = betroth, 251.
*Hapsburg* = the Empire, 243.
*has* = he has, 197.
*ha't* = have it, 186.
*haunt*, v. intr., 225; *haunt to*, 234.
*head-attire* (Tudor), 283.
heavenly = very beautiful, 125.
*Hecate*, 236.
*Helen*, 204.
*heliotropion*, 300.
hell, in devils and in the wicked themselves, 159.
*hell-mouth*, 211.
*Hephaestion*, 261.
*her* for 'its,' 184.
*Hermes* (Trismegistus), 270.
*Hesperides*, 272.
*hey-ding-ding* (refrain), 196.
*hey-pass*, 198.
*hierarchies* (of angels and of devils), 274.
*hilding*, 239.
*his* for 'its,' 134, 192.
*hobgoblin*, 287.
*hold*, subst. = holding, tenement, 281; *hold play* = match oneself against, 255.
*holp*, 249.
*Homer, blind*, 172.

Digitized by Google

*honour* (style or address or designation), 227; *honours* = outward show, 278; *honour up* = celebrate to the end, 290.
*hopeless* = for which there is no hope, 203.
*horse-bread*, 189.
*horse-courser*, 116.
*how chance* = how chances it that, 285.
*hud, hud*, 252.
*hue* = beauty, 294.
*humble*, v. intr. = humiliate oneself, 298.
*hurly-burly*, 255.
*hyacinth, Venus'*, 300.
*hydromancy*, 229.

*I guess*, 182.
*idea* = image, 250.
*illiberal*, 135.
*imagery* = appearance, 221.
*in* for 'on,' 126; *in trial* = by way of experiment, 188.
*infanticide*, charges of, 165.
infernal government, the system of (in magic), 274.
infinitive used as a substantive, 201, 253, 264, 277, 281; without 'to,' 157, 253.
*ingenious* = intellectual, 258.
*injurious* = insolent, 195.
*instance* = experiment, 272.
*institute* = institutions, 134.
intelligences, governing, in astrology, 174.
*interest*, subst. = claim, 295.
invisibility (in magic), 186.
*Ippocras*, 189.
*ise* (ize), termination, 132.
*it* (in lieu of a cognate object), 224.
*iterate* = repeat, 171.

*jack of wine*, 280.
*Jerome's Bible*, 135.
*jointer* = jointress (?), 281.
*jolly* = gay, happy, 280.
*jouissance*, 301.
journey on the stage, 195.
*Jove* = God, 137.
*just nothing at all*, 193.
*Justinian*, 134.

*keep out*, v. intr. = keep off, 188.
*kingdom, our* = the laws of the infernal monarchy, 176.
*knaves-acre*, 163.
*known of* = aware of, 197.

*lade* = laden, 267.
*lamp* = lamprey (?), 280.
*Lapland giants and witches*, 144.
*Latona's web*, 264.
*latter* = last, 288.
*laureat* adj., 156; *laureates*, 243, 274.
*lavolta*, 263.
*lawnd* (lawn), 217.
*Laxfield*, 280.
*Lemnster* (Leominster), 283.
*lente currite*, &c., 209.
less (adjectival suffix), 203, 205.
*letters* (in magic), 136.
*level*, v. n. = aim, 129.
*licentiate*, 150.
*light-fingered*, 246.
*lighten*, v. tr. = flash, shine forth, 220, 284.
*like*, v. tr. = please, 193.
*like of* = take a liking for, 241.
*limit*, v. tr. = fix as a limit, 211.
*lines* (in magic), 136.
*lions* (in magic), 143.
*lively*, adv. = in a lifelike manner, 193.
*living* = income, 281.
local names, adjectival use of, 249.
*look out*, v. tr. = seek out, 188.
*looks* = glances, rays, 285.
*Lopus* (Lopez), *Doctor*, 197.
*lording*, 273.
*lovely*, 257.
*Lucifer*, 117, 159.
*Lucrece*, 223.
*lurden*, 256.
*lusty* = pleasant, 147.
*Lutetia* (conjectural), 273.
*Lynceus*, 261.

*made* = complete, 196.
*makes* = make (?), 165.



Digitized by Google

*March-beer*, 180.
*margarite*, 221.
*marry* = Mary, 193.
*Martlemas-beef*, 179.
Mary of Burgundy, apparition of, 194.
*mass* = by the mass, 163.
*massy*, 146.
*master* or *mas'* (in addresses), 189, 255.
*mate*, v. tr., 124, 235.
*mathematic* = astrological, 232.
*matter of truth*, a = a charge affecting character for honesty, 190.
*may* = can, 172.
meal (adjectival suffix), 203.
*mean to* = be disposed towards, 249.
*meat* = dinner, 148; food, 199.
*meet with* = deal finally with, 194.
*Melchie* (Malchus, i. e. Porphyry), 270.
*memento* (mori), 286.
*men in armour* (in magic), 171.
*Mephistophilis*, 118.
*Mercury*, 264.
*metaphysics*, 136.
*mightiness* (plural), 301.
*Miles*, n. pr., 214.
*million* (a plural), 226.
*minerals* = mineralogy, 146.
*minx*, 180.
*mirabolans*, 279.
*miscreant*, 252.
*'miss*, for amiss = fault, 294.
*miss*, v. tr. = lose, 264.
monks, devils disguised as, 155.
monosyllables ending in *r* or *re* used as dissyllables, 167.
moon, magical practices connected with the, 157, 285.
*morris-dancer*, 226.
*motion* = mention, 193; = proposal, 236.
*move*, v. tr. = exasperate, 176.
*multiply* (in alchemy) = multiply gold, 234.
*Musaeus*, 142.
*muse* = poet, 125.
*mystical* = allegorical, 301.
*nativity* = birth, 210.
*natural* = ordinary, 209.
*Nature's eye* (the Sun), 209.
*naughts* = trifles, 237.
*near* (comparative), 250.
*neat* = pure, 266.
*necromancy*, 127.
*Ned*, 276.
negative, double, 235.
*New Testament, the* (in magic), 148.
nightingale, the, and the thorn, 287.
*nimiversity*, 258.
nominative absolute, 148, 169.
*none such*, 220.
*nonplus*, 243.
*nothing* = in no respect, 191.

*obey to*, 275.
*object*, subst., 129, 141.
*object*, v. tr. = suggest as an objection, 145.
*Oenon* (Oenone), 172.
*of* for 'concerning,' 173, 226.
*of* for 'by,' 159.
*of* for 'from,' 257, 278, 287.
*of* for 'on' and 'in,' 150, 182, 188.
*of* for 'to,' 265.
*of free cost* = at no expense, 189.
*old Philip*, 145.
*old wives' tales*, 169.
*Omne tulit punctum*, &c., 302.
*on* for 'in,' 233, 286; for 'of' and 'out of,' 150, 176, 199.
*only* = if only, 301; = singularly, specially, 260.
*oppositions* (in astrology), 176.
oracles, Greek, 230.
*orient*, adj. = bright, 138.
*Orion*, 152.
*ostry*, 199.
*other* (substantival pronoun), 251.
*otherways*, 201.
*out of all ho*, 290.
*over-live* = survive, 264.
*over-match*, subst. = superior, 221.
*over-reach* = outdo, 284.
*over-scour* = pass over, 296.
*over-watch* = outwatch, 285.
*Ovid's flea*, 178.

Digitized by Google

*Oxenford* (Oxford), 269.
*Oxford* buildings, 267; *doctors*, 268; gardens, 268; *mountains*, 267.

*paggle*, 283.
*pair of cards*, 297.
*Pallas*, as the patroness of housewifely arts, 223.
*pantofles*, 258.
*paragon*, 202.
*paramour*, 122.
*pardon* = indulgence, 186.
*Parma, the Prince of*, 139.
participle, present, absolute, 127, 133.
*pass of* = care for, 233.
*passing* = surpassingly, 253.
*passion* = agitation, 196, 219.
*passionate* = agitated, 160.
*pentageron*, the, 231.
*per accidens* (causa), 157.
*peremptory* = absolute, 295.
*perfecter* (comparative), 148.
*peripatetian*, 288.
*periwig*, 178.
*peruse*, 171.
*Phlegethon*, 186, 296.
*Phoebetor*, 285.
*pickadevaunts*, 162.
*Pickle-herring*, 179.
*pick-pack*, 233.
*piece-meal*, 203.
*pinnace*, 259.
*pioners* (pioneers), 259.
*pitchy*, 153.
*pittance*, 278.
*plain out*, v. tr. = explain, answer clearly, 230.
planets, the motions of, in scholastic astronomy, 173–75.
*plaud*, subst., 125.
*plead homage*, 249.
*plot* (of a play) = skeleton, outline, 254.
plural subject with singular verb, 165 (?), 167 (?), 206 (?), 282; plural verb with singular collective noun as subject, 185.
*Plutus*, 296.
*poesy* (posy), poetical composition, 282.
*point of schools*, 264
*Ponte Angelo*, 185.
*poor scholar*, 214.
*portace*, 251.
Posilippo, the grotto of, 184.
*post*, subst. = messenger, 216; *in post* = in haste, 235, 296.
*prease*, subst. = press, crowd, 224.
*precisian*, 151.
*pre-eminence* = pre-eminent men, 192.
*prefer before*, 128.
prefix, omissions of, 235.
prepositions omitted, 148.
*presently* = at once, 193.
*presents, by these*, 169.
Primum Mobile, the, 182.
*prince it* = play the prince, 224.
*principles* = rudiments, 146.
*private* = privately, 234.
*privy-chamber, of the*, 261.
*prise*, v. tr. = price, 237, 291.
*problems* = lectures in mathematics and logic, 142.
*procure* = manage to make successful, 249.
*progress* = make a progress or royal journey, 276.
pronoun, personal, expressing reciprocity, 200; inserted redundantly, 151, 264; second, singular, omitted, 252; relative, omitted, 203, 218.
*prospective* (glass), 247, 291.
*provinces* = dominions, 136.
*prowess* = 192.
*Psalter, the* (in magic), 148.
*pull down* (hunting term), 217.
*purchase*, subst. = acquisition, 189.
*purify* = let pass through purgatory, 169.
*pursue*, v. tr. = prosecute, seek to avenge, 201.
*pyramides*, 185.
*pyromancy*, 229.
*Pythagoras*, 211, 271.

Digitized by Google

*quaint* = graceful, 222; strange, shy, 238.
*quarter*, v. tr. = divide, 183.
*queasy* = fastidious, 284.
*querry* = equerry, 290.
*question with* = enquire of, 169.
*Qui mihi discipulus*, 162.
*quicken* = enliven, 239.
*quiddity*, 149.
*quite* = requite, 248, 292.
*quod tumerarís* (?), 154.
*quotha*, 162.

*r* pronounced as an extra syllable, 260.
*rack*, v. tr. = twist, torture, 158.
Ramus, 296.
*rase* = touch the surface of, 177.
*reader*, 296.
*rector*, 152.
*Regent-house, the*, 253.
*remembered, to be* = to remember, 195.
*renown'd*, 146.
*repair* = repairing, removal, 253.
*repent* = penance, 294.
repetition of the same word at the end of successive lines, 289.
*resolve*, v. tr. = inform, satisfy, 138; *resolve for*, v. intr. = resolve to go to, 254.
*respect* = take into account, 266.
*revolt* = overthrown, 266.
*Rhodes* (Roda), 126.
*rich* (as a general term of praise), 290.
*riches*, 192.
*rid*, v. tr. = get rid of, 265.
*rid* = 'rode,' 197.
*ring*, v. tr. = encircle, 232.
*roaring* (slang term), 189.
*roister*, n. subst., 260.
Rome, the number of bridges at, 185.
*Roscius* (the actor), 254.
*rove a bow* = shoot with a bow, 233.
*ruffler*, 255.
*ruinate*, v. tr. = ruin, 274.
*rumour*, subst. = noise, 255.
*run*, v. tr. = cause to coagulate, 223.
*run*, v. tr. = hunt, 217.
*rutter* (Reiter), 143.
*Rye*, 232.

*Saba*, 170.
*salt, before* or *behind the*, 277.
*Satan*, 159.
*scape* = extravagance, 261.
*scenes* (?), in magic, 136.
*scholarism*, 126.
scholastic disputations burlesqued, 149.
*scour* (slang term), 190.
*scud*, v. intr. = hurry, 296.
*second faults* = minor faults, 272.
*secretary* = person entrusted with secrets, 290.
*see to, and to be seen*, 144.
*seen* = of repute, 146.
*self*, adj., 169.
*self*, subst., 283.
self-control, 265.
*Semele*, 206, 237.
*send* = send word, 226.
*servile*, 135.
*set* = seated, 192.
*set*, v. intr. = set forth, 244.
*Sethin planks*, 262.
*settle*, v. tr., 129.
*Seven Deadly Sins, the*, 120, 178.
*sewer*, 277.
*shadow*, v. tr., (?) = shadow forth, 144; = to cover with an excuse, 249.
*shadows* (in magic), 142.
*she* for 'her,' 170.
*shelves* = sandbanks, coasts, 284.
*shine*, subst., 216.
*show* = pageant, 168.
*side*, subst. = border, 241.
*Sien* (Siena), 273.
*sift*, v. tr. = test or prove, 207.
*signs* (of the Zodiac), 153.
silence at conjurations, 201.
singular verb with two singular nouns as subject, 247.
*sirrah*, 149.
Skeltonical verse, 256.

Digitized by Google

*skill*, v. intr. = make a difference, 277.
*slick* = sleek, 196.
*slops* = breeches, 164.
*Sloth* (one of the Seven Deadly Sins), 180.
*slow-worm*, 287.
*snipper-snapper* (slang term), 198.
*so* = provided that, 160, 199, 281; (interjection) = well, 286; *so as* = in such a way that, 276; *so far forth* = to such an extent, 193.
*so-ho*, 199.
*soft*, adv. = gently, stay, 190.
*Solamen miseris*, &c., 166.
*solitary*, adv., 192.
*sometime* = once, on one occasion, 192; = formerly, 212.
*somewhat* = something, 168.
*sonnet* or *sennet*, 186.
*sort to end* = come to an end, 289.
*speculation* = study, 161.
*spheres*, the, in scholastic astronomy, 175; their infolding, 173.
*spicery*, 279.
*sport with the boys*, 191.
*spring*, v. tr. = set in motion, 246.
*square to* = compare to, 271.
*stall* = install, 228.
*stammel red*, 219.
*stand upon* = insist upon, 150.
*staple*, v. tr. = dressed for sale at the staple, 282.
*state*, subst. = estate, property, 228, 247; = grandeur, 124, 298; = honours, degrees, 233.
*staves-acre*, 163.
*stay*, v. intr. = stand still, 168; v. tr. = stop, 188.
*still* = constantly, 209, 211.
*store* = abundance, 240.
*straight forth* = in straight lines, 183.
*strength* = strengthen, 246.
*strip* = outstrip, 217.
*strout*, v. intr. = swell, 283.
*study, a brown*, 295.
*Styx*, 186.
*subjects* (in magic), 143.
sublunary devils, 272.
*subsizer*, 245.
*suckets*, 279.
*sugar'd*, 257.
suicide, the Devil's temptations to, 203.
sumptuary laws, 296.
*Sun, the, the portal of*, 232.
*suppose*, v. tr. = regard as, 231.
*surfeit*, subst., 208.
*suspect* = suspected, 229.
*swinging* (slang term), 297.
*swones*, 246; *swouns*, 162.

*taint*, subst. = tint, 222.
*take* = give, 188, 281.
*tavern*, 189.
*teasers*, 217.
*temper*, v. tr. = fashion by heating, 248; = mix, 282.
*terminine* = terminus, 174.
*terrae filii*, 271.
*that* in conjunctival phrases, 191, 247; inserted in second co-ordinate clause after omission in first, 251; = so that, 126, 232; = that which, 229.
*therefore* = for it, 149.
*thereon* = therein, 233.
*these* = the, 137.
*Thetis*, 263.
*they* = those, 151.
*this* = this is, 128.
*thorough* = through, 161.
*those* = the, 254.
*Thrasimene*, 124.
*threat*, v. tr. = threaten, 184.
*three-form'd Luna* (Diana), 285.
*throughly* = thoroughly, 181.
*tide*, v. intr. = happen, betide, 291.
*timely* = early, 250.
*tire*, v. tr. = attire, 264.
*to* after verbs of perceiving, 203; inserted before the infinitive, 140; omitted after conjunctions, 294; used without sense of motion, 234; with the infinitive, gerundival use of, 289; *to this day* = to-day, 182.

Digitized by Google

*tone* = the one, 190.
*tongues* (languages), in magic, 145.
*too-too*, 250.
*topless* = which are not overtopped, 205.
*toys* = trifles, 248.
transposition of substantive and adjective, 202.
*trash*, 134.
treasure hidden in the earth, 146; in foreign ships, 146.
*treat* = entreat, 246.
*trees*, magical, 272.
*Trier*, 183.
*Trinity, the*, a holy name not to be lightly mentioned on the stage, 158.
triple endings in Marlowe's verse, 209.
*troop*, subst. = train, suite, 244; v. tr. = attend, 253.
*Tully's phrase*, 245.

*ugly* = terrible, 177.
*umbles*, 295.
*unfeigned* = unfeigning, 204.
*unpossible*, 290.
*unto* = for, 204; = into or to, 211.
*up* (with verbs) = completely, 238.
*upon that* = on that condition, 261.

*vail*, v. tr. = lower, 300.
*vaunt*, v. tr., 125, 264.
*veney*, 292.
*vengeance, with a*, 179.
Venice, St. Mark's Church at, 184.
verb, intransitive, used reflexively, 152.
verbal nouns with prepositions omitted resembling pres. participles, 187.
Vergil's tomb, 183.
*veriment* = truly, 257.
Vice, the, and the Devil (in old plays), 297.
*vild* (vile), 142.
*villain* = low fellow, 191, 194.
*virtue* = power, 156.
*Volga*, the, 279.
*vouch*, v. tr. = undertake, 254; = avow, declare, 290.

wand, the magic, 285.
*ward* (in fencing) = guard, 292.
water, supposed effects of magic on, 139, 146, 157.
*waxen wings*, 126.
*weeds* = clothes, 219.
*welkin*, 153.
*well seen* = highly reputed, 146.
*welt* = facing (of a gown), 297.
*what* for 'which,' 252; for 'who,' 235.
*what will be shall be*, 135.
*whenas* for 'when,' 223.
*whereas* for 'where,' 126.
*whereby*, with 'such' as antecedent, 158.
*while, whilst* = until, 244, 282.
*white* (as an epithet of endearment), 258.
*who* for 'whom,' 226, 282.
*will* for 'shall,' 135, 291; v. tr. = desire, 242.
*win*, v. tr. = laboriously perform, 192.
*with* = by, 253.
*Wittenberg*, 126, 138.
*wonder* (in compound phrases = wondrous), 243.
*worthies*, 269.
wounds reopened by magic, 293.
*writ* = written, 168.

*yoky*, 182.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

DATE DUE

FEB 6 1987
FEB 20 19
DEC 2 2 1997
SEP 2 2 1998
1 1 1998
DEC 1 0 2000
DEC 2 3 2000

Digitized by Google

BOUND
OCT 1
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN
3 9015 00055 8612
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google